















Deposited Jan'y. 23. 1847

Attest.

Wm. W. R. [Signature]

James M. Smith  
Sept 20 1844





## RECOMMENDATIONS.

---

*Mount Pleasant, Ohio, April 24th, 1846.*

I HAVE carefully examined Mr. James E. Carroll's MS. Key to Mitchell's Geography. The design of the work is well conceived and ably executed. The author, who is a practical teacher, has not only answered the *questions* demanded by the Geography, but, with great research, he has added much additional information, from the most authentic sources.

Important changes have been made in some countries, and interesting discoveries in others, since Mitchell's Geography was compiled; but, both in that work, and this Key, these changes are very properly noticed.

In view both of the plan and of the manner in which that plan is carried out, I think the Key before us will be a valuable acquisition to teachers, to private students, and to families generally.

ELISHA BATES.

I cordially concur in the above recommendation.

B. MITCHELL,

*Pastor of the Presbyterian Church, Mt. Pleasant, Ohio.*

I most cheerfully concur in the above recommendations.

I. BARNES,

*Minister of M. P. Church, Mt. Pleasant, Ohio.*

---

*Wheeling, Va., April 24, 1846.*

This may certify, that having carefully examined (in manuscript) Mr. Carroll's Key to Mitchell's School Geography, I am much pleased with it.

This Key is one of those happy "*hits*" which come "once in a thousand," and astonish us in no way but by its extreme simplicity, the beauty of its arrangement, and its amazing utility. The remarkable accuracy of this Key, and the unquestionable authority of the works chiefly consulted in its compilation, speak highly for the zeal and discretion of its author, and commend his work as a safe and infallible guide. It strikes me that this Key is a work which will be extensively introduced, and sought after by teachers, and that it is to be regarded as a valuable accession to the catalogue of books for Common Schools.

J. P. STUART, A. M.

---

*West Alexander, Pa., April 27, 1846.*

On a careful examination of the submitted manuscript copy of the Key to Mitchell's School Geography, by Mr. James E. Carroll, I am fully satisfied that it is a work worthy of extensive patronage. It is admirably adapted to the wants of all, either studying or teaching the important branch of Geographical science.

The plan of the work greatly facilitates the teacher, and gives interest to the pupil in acquiring a knowledge of his lesson, and confidence in himself at the time of recitation. We know of no work that is more needed in this day, as an academic, family, or Common School book, than this; nothing

of the kind having ever been published. From its design, plan and execution, I judge it truly worthy, and cordially wish it a wide circulation.

JOHN McCLUSKY, A. M.,  
Principal of the West Alexander Academy, and pastor of the  
Presbyterian Church.

---

*Bethany College, Va., April 25, 1846.*

Having in rather a cursory way examined the design and execution of Mr. J. E. Carroll's Key to Mitchell's Geography, still I cannot withhold my commendation of it as a work of very considerable merit, — as a valuable compilation of a great variety and amount of information, an accurate knowledge on the subjects of which it treats, and as greatly facilitating the labours of school teachers in the communication of instruction in this most useful science. We cannot but desire for this valuable work an extensive circulation amongst the amateurs of the science of Geography, as the teachers of the book whose Key of interpretation, and statement of accurate responses it is.

A. CAMPBELL, Pres. Bethany College.

---

*Bethany College, 28th April, 1846.*

I consider the Key to Mitchell's Geography, by Mr. J. E. Carroll, a work deserving encouragement.

J. P. MASON, A. M.,  
Prof. of Mathematics and Mechanics.

---

To those who desire to avail themselves of the aid of such a work, I have no hesitation in recommending Mr. Jas. E. Carroll's "Key to Mitchell's Geography," as containing a large amount of valuable Geographical and statistical information, compiled with much care and arranged in a perspicuous manner.

*April 29th, 1846.*

R. RICHARDSON, M. D.,  
Prof. Chem. in Bethany College.

---

I have examined with some attention a portion of a work, in manuscript, by Mr. James E. Carroll, entitled, "A Key to Mitchell's School Geography," &c., and have formed a very favourable impression with regard to the design and execution of the work. It presents the subject with about that degree of amplification necessary for an instructor who employs Mitchell's work as a text-book for his classes, and furnishes additional matter in the proper place, compiled from the latest and best authorities, which is thus rendered at once available to the teacher for the purposes of recitation. The undersigned is strongly impressed with the belief that much additional interest would be given to the study of Geography, by the use of such a work by teachers, and that it would likewise form a convenient manual for parents, in giving instruction to their children in this branch of useful knowledge, and with these impressions he would recommend the work to public patronage.

A. F. ROSS, A. M.,  
*29th April, 1846.*

Prof. Languages of Bethany College, Va.

---

*Washington College, April 30th, 1846.*

From a partial examination of Mr. James E. Carroll's Key to "Mitchell's School Geography," I am persuaded that it is precisely what its title-page



imports: "A complete Key to S. Augustus Mitchell's School Geography, containing full answers to all the questions on the maps, with much additional information from the most recent and authentic sources."

I cheerfully recommend it to all *private students*, as a valuable aid in acquiring an accurate knowledge of this most useful science.

ROBERT MILLIGAN, A. M.,

*Prof. of Eng. Literature, in Washington College, Pa.*

I can concur in the above recommendation.

RICHARD H. LEE, A. M.,

*Prof. of Belles Lettres and Biblical Economy in Washington College, Pa.*

I also concur in the above recommendation.

W. P. ALRICH, A. M.,

*Prof. of Math., Chem., and Nat. Phil., Washington College, Pa.*

I also cheerfully concur in the foregoing recommendation.

N. MURRAY, A. M.,

*Prof. of Languages, Washington College, Pa.*

May 1st, 1846.

Having examined a considerable portion of Mr. J. E. Carroll's "Key to Mitchell's School Geography," I am fully satisfied that it is peculiarly adapted to the use of teachers of private students of Geography, and of parents giving instruction to their children at home. It contains a vast amount of information in a small compass, is well arranged, accurate, and brings up the science to the present time.

Great care has evidently been bestowed on its preparation, and the author has, in my opinion, happily succeeded in producing an invaluable aid to that class of persons for whom the work is designed.

S. R. WILLIAMS, A. M.,

*Prof. Nat. Philos., Astron., and Chemistry, in Jefferson College, Canonsburg, Penna.*

I cheerfully concur in the above recommendation.

A. B. BROWN, A. M.,

*Prof. Rhetoric, Logic, and General History, Jeff'n College.*

From a brief examination of some parts of the aforementioned work, I concur in the preceding recommendations.

T. BEVERIDGE, D. D.,

*Professor of Eccl. Hist. and Biblical Criticism, Ass. Theol. Seminary, Canonsburg, Pa.*

June 3d, 1846.

Having cursorily examined Mr. Carroll's Geographical Key, (in manuscript), I have no hesitation in saying that I regard it as a valuable work. The materials have been drawn from sources of the highest authority, and arranged with much care.

To parents desirous of examining the progress of their children, to private students, and to young and inexperienced teachers, this work will be found of great value. I feel assured its publication will aid very much in promoting the study of Geography.

JOSEPH RAY, M. D.,

*Professor of Mathematics and Natural Philosophy, Woodward*

1 \* *College, Cincinnati.*

*Franklin College, June 25th, 1846.*

From a cursory examination of the subjoined "Key," I am satisfied it is all it imports. It is a valuable contribution to the science of Geography, affording ample facilities to all engaged in the study, of acquiring a full and accurate knowledge of the elements of Geographical science. It gives evidence of careful and extended research on the part of the author; and is cordially recommended to the patronage of all friends of Literature.

JOSEPH GORDON, A. M.,

*Prof. of Math. and Nat. Phil., Franklin College, New Athens, Ohio.*

We concur in the above recommendation most cheerfully.

A. M. BLACK, A. M.,

*Professor of Languages.*

A. D. CLARK, A. M.,

*Pres. of Franklin College, New Athens, Ohio.*

---

*Mt. Pleasant, Jeff. Co., O., August 3d, 1846.*

Having with considerable care examined (in manuscript,) the Key to Mitchell's Geography, compiled by Mr. Jas. E. Carroll, I am fully satisfied it is not only all that its title imports, a "Complete Key to Mitchell's Geography," but in addition, contains a large amount of Geographical information, drawn from the most unquestionable sources, and so arranged and interspersed throughout the body of the work, as to become a valuable accessory, not only to private students and teachers generally, but also to parents, desirous of examining the progress of their children in this most necessary and interesting branch of Education.

As a valuable and cheap reference, also, this Key will doubtless find its way to many private libraries.

GEO. R. JENKINS, A. M.,

*Principal of the Mt. Pleasant High School.*

---

*Philadelphia, Sept. 7th, 1846.*

From a copious examination of the Key to Mitchell's School Geography and Atlas, by Mr. James E. Carroll, of Mount Pleasant, Ohio, I am satisfied that it is compiled with much care, in strict conformity with the work from which it is derived, and that it is a valuable adjunct thereto. In its general arrangement, it is eminently characterised by that quality so valuable in all elementary works, viz., simplicity and distinctness, and I have no doubt that it will be found to be a useful assistant, in attaining such a knowledge of the earth as may be acquired by an attentive study of our best geographies.

I observe that all the recent discoveries noticed in the Geography and Atlas, have also been carefully noted in the Key; and the latest political changes in our own, as well as in other parts of the globe, are correctly embodied in it. The various additional facts in statistics appear to be derived from the latest sources, and are calculated to increase the utility of the work.

In conclusion, I feel satisfied that Mr. Carroll's treatise will be found, in conjunction with the work with which it is connected, one of the best practical books in the science of Geography, for the use of teachers, heads of families, and private pupils, yet published in the United States, and trust that it may be justly appreciated and liberally patronized.

S. AUGUSTUS MITCHELL.

A

# COMPLETE KEY

TO

## MITCHELL'S

## SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY,

CONTAINING

FULL ANSWERS TO ALL THE QUESTIONS  
ON THE MAPS;

WITH MUCH ADDITIONAL INFORMATION,

FROM THE MOST

RECENT AND AUTHENTIC SOURCES.

PRINCIPALLY DESIGNED AS AN AID TO TEACHERS IN HEARING THE  
RECITATIONS, BUT EQUALLY ADAPTED TO THE USE  
OF PRIVATE STUDENTS AND FAMILIES.

~~~~~  
BY JAMES E. CARROL.

*Samuel*

~~~~~  
*Ex 1*

PHILADELPHIA:  
THOMAS, COWPERTHWAIT & CO.

1847.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1846, by  
JAMES E. CARROLL,  
in the clerk's office of the District Court of the United States for the  
District of Ohio.

6554

~~~~~  
STEREOTYPED BY J. FAGAN.

~~~~~  
PRINTED BY SMITH AND PETERS.  
~~~~~

(6)

G 131  
.M686

## PREFACE.

---

THERE are perhaps few stronger tokens of the growth of education in the United States, than the increased demand for elementary works, especially those which treat of Geography. The study of this science has, in fact, become almost universal throughout our country; and its importance is so generally felt, that we seldom find a youth, of even a common education, who has not made it more or less a study. A thorough knowledge of geography is doubtless, to a considerable degree, a substitute for extensive travelling, and personal observation of the various countries of the earth. He that would become acquainted with the world, with the endless variety of human character and condition, with the manners, customs, laws, and institutions of every nation, and the productions, whether animal, vegetable, or mineral, of every land and every clime, finds his quickest and surest method to be the study of this science.

We shall now briefly state the DESIGN OF THE PRESENT WORK. It is intended chiefly for the aid of teachers, but it may be consulted with profit by private students of geography, and also by parents giving instruction to their children at home. Not that we consider the usual questions of geography of difficult solution, from any particular *abstruseness*, and that therefore a key is necessary. But the difficulty experienced in teaching this science is of a rather peculiar nature. Geography, as now taught, abounds in an endless variety of details, having seldom any logical relation to each other; and the successful teacher should have a ready and accurate answer to each of these ten thousand questions; or else, on the other hand, be embarrassed and impeded in the midst of his recitation. And in order to this, he should have an adequate Key, or otherwise devote an amount of time to the lessons of his classes, which few teachers can spare. In fact, no one can expect to retain in his memory every one of the details of the ordinary lessons in geography; any more than he could the



answers to a number of pages of problems in common arithmetic. It is, therefore, as reasonable that the teacher should be supplied with a Key in the one case as in the other ; and yet we believe no work of the kind has, hitherto, appeared in our country. This *desideratum* has been mentioned to the author, by many teachers ; and a desire manifested that it should, at an early day, be supplied.

Impressed with this view, he has been induced to prepare the present work and offer it to the public. He believes that it contains a complete answer to every question in the most approved school geography of our country, and that it will at once relieve the teacher from embarrassment and perplexity, in teaching or reviewing his classes. This leads us to speak of the PLAN OF THE WORK.

The plan is simple, and may be briefly stated. It is adapted to the last edition of Mitchell's School Geography, but it will answer any edition of that work, inasmuch as no material changes have been made in it from the first. MITCHELL'S GEOGRAPHY is chosen, because, after comparing all the school geographies in common use with one another, and with several of the best and most recent authorities, both American and European, his work was thought to be more accurate than any other ; and also better arranged, and better adapted for teaching. The Key, however, will be valuable to those who use any of the school geographies extant ; although teachers who have it, would do well to procure Mitchell's work also, as the former is designed to be used in connexion with the latter. It is, at the same time, so arranged that it may be used by itself with profit and convenience.

The Key, as will be seen, is printed in type of different sizes. Full answers to all Mitchell's questions will be found in the larger type. In the smaller type, there is an amplification of the same matter from the other authorities which have been consulted. Condensed views of the various countries of the earth, drawn from the most respectable authors, with copious details of their statistics, are thus thrown before the eye of the teacher, at the very point where such aid will be the most welcome and useful. In this part of the work, there is a large amount of valuable matter, which the teacher can easily make available in oral instruction, and in occasional remarks to his classes.

There are here given the boundaries, extent, latitude, longitude, and population of all the Empires, Countries, Kingdoms, Republics, States, Provinces and Islands; the boundaries, latitude, longitude, and extent of the principal Peninsulas; a description of the principal Capes and Promontories; the latitude, longitude, and extent of the principal Oceans, Seas, Archipelagoes, Bays, Gulfs, Sounds, Straits, Channels, and Lakes; a description of the principal Rivers and Mountains; and the population of many of the principal Cities and Towns in the WORLD. Also the boundaries, latitude, longitude, length, breadth, extent in square miles and in acres, and the population of every state in the Union are added. Likewise, an aggregate of the population of each state, for every ten years, since 1790; with the number of white males and females, of colored males and females, and of slaves; of those engaged in the learned professions; in agriculture; in commerce; in manufactures and trades; in navigating the ocean, lakes, rivers, and canals, in each state, district, and territory; and also the name and population of each county, parish, district, township, town, &c., in the United States.

The boundaries are first given, as far as indicated by the initials of the same, appended to Mitchell's questions; and afterwards more fully and in greater detail by the author.

The area and population also, of countries imperfectly known, and whose statistics depend on calculation, are frequently given, in addition to the statements made in Mitchell's work.

In fact, without in any way diminishing the utility of this work *as a Key*, there has been added a great amount of statistical information, which will render it valuable, as a cheap and convenient book of reference.

We are thus led to speak of the **USES OF THE WORK**. But little need be said on that point, as its utility, we think, is evident.

If teaching were pursued generally as a profession in our country; if teachers looked forward to no other business, a treatise of this kind would be less necessary than at present. But with most instructors, teaching is but an occasional or temporary business. While giving instruction in a variety of branches, the majority of teachers are preparing themselves for other pursuits, and have but little time for studying the very branches which they are teaching;

consequently, they need every aid of this kind which they can command.

This Key, we believe, surmounts every material difficulty in teaching geography, and makes it a pleasure rather than a task. This abundantly appears from the fact, that it contains a full answer to every question on the maps of Mitchell's Atlas, with much additional instruction ; all of which is so arranged that the teacher need not be at any loss in conducting the most difficult recitation. By its means, also, parents may ascertain the progress of their children at school, and may give them correct instruction at home. It will likewise be useful to persons advanced in life, who may wish to refresh their memory in geography, as well as for those who, under any circumstances, wish to study this science without the aid of an instructor.

The information, statistical, &c., contained in this Key, has been drawn from the most authentic sources, and nothing has been allowed to pass without the most careful revision and comparison of from eight to ten authors. The corroboration of such a variety of authorities will very much lessen the probability of error.

The works chiefly consulted are the following :—" *ENCYCLOPÆDIA OF GEOGRAPHY*," by Hugh Murray, F.R.S.E., (London, 1840.) Balbi's "*ABREGÉ DE GÉOGRAPHIE*," (last edition, 1842.) "*PENNY CYCLOPÆDIA*." McCulloch's "*UNIVERSAL GAZETTEER*," (New York, 1845.) "*DESCRIPTIVE AND STATISTICAL GAZETTEER OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA*," by Haskel and Smith, (New York, 1845,) and the "*UNIVERSAL PRONOUNCING GAZETTEER*," by Thomas Baldwin, (Philadelphia, 1845.)

Believing, as he does, that few branches of common education are better calculated to expand the mental powers, and to lay the foundation for higher attainments, and for a mature and well-balanced mind, than the study of Geography ; he hopes that this humble offering to the cause may not be in vain ; and that the work may meet his expectation in becoming the means of abating, in some measure, the toils and perplexities of Teachers.



## TO TEACHERS.

---

TEACHERS will observe, that the figures at the beginning of the lessons in the Key, refer to the *page, lesson, and map*, in Mitchell's Geography and Atlas.

Also in describing Rivers, Lakes, Mountains, Boundaries, &c., on the Maps of N. America and the U. States, frequent reference is made to the various other Maps in the Atlas, where those countries are exhibited on a larger scale.

The same course is pursued in regard to the Map of Europe, from which frequent reference is made to the Maps exhibiting the countries under consideration, on a larger scale; as, for example, to Map No. 19, of Great Britain; to Map No. 20, of Germany, Switzerland, and Northern Italy.

In "Descriptive Geography" the Key has been arranged to correspond with Mitchell's "Observations on the Questions," which see on pages 84 and 85 of his "School Geography."

# EXPLANATION

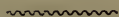
OF THE

## ABBREVIATIONS EMPLOYED IN THIS WORK.

There are several abbreviations used throughout this work, in order that a greater amount of matter may be reduced to a small compass. The following are the principal,—and will, by a little attention, become familiar.

|             |                       |                |                                                                   |
|-------------|-----------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Ala.....    | Alabama.              | mt., mts. .... | Mount, Mountains.                                                 |
| Anc.....    | Anciently.            | N. ....        | North or Northern.                                                |
| Arab.....   | Arabic.               | N. C.....      | North Carolina.                                                   |
| Ark.....    | Arkansas.             | nat. ....      | native.                                                           |
| C. H. ....  | Court House.          | N. H. ....     | New Hampshire.                                                    |
| cap.....    | capital.              | N. J.....      | New Jersey.                                                       |
| co. ....    | county.               | N. Y. ....     | New York.                                                         |
| Conn.....   | Connecticut.          | Oo. ....       | Ohio.                                                             |
| cr. ....    | creek.                | Pa.....        | Pennsylvania.                                                     |
| Del. ....   | Delaware.             | pop.....       | population.                                                       |
| dep. ....   | department.           | Port. ....     | Portuguese.                                                       |
| E. ....     | East or Eastern.      | prov. provs... | province, provinces.                                              |
| Flor. ....  | Florida.              | pron. ....     | pronunciation.                                                    |
| Fr. ....    | French.               | R. r. ....     | River, river.                                                     |
| ft. ....    | feet.                 | R. I. ....     | Rhode Island.                                                     |
| Ga. ....    | Georgia.              | Russ.....      | Russian.                                                          |
| Ger.....    | German.               | S. ....        | South or Southern.                                                |
| gov. ....   | government.           | sq. ms. ....   | square miles.                                                     |
| Gr. ....    | Greek.                | S. C.....      | South Carolina.                                                   |
| Hung.....   | Hungarian.            | Sp. ....       | Spanish.                                                          |
| Ill. ....   | Illinois.             | Sw. ....       | Swedish.                                                          |
| Ia. ....    | Indiana.              | Tenn. ....     | Tennessee.                                                        |
| Io. ....    | Iowa.                 | Ter.....       | Territory.                                                        |
| Ky. ....    | Kentucky.             | Turk.....      | Turkish.                                                          |
| La. ....    | Louisiana.            | U. S.....      | United States.                                                    |
| lat. ....   | Latitude, Latin.      | Va.....        | Virginia.                                                         |
| long. ....  | longitude.            | Vt.....        | Vermont.                                                          |
| m. ms. .... | mile, miles.          | W.....         | West or Western.                                                  |
| M. A. ....  | Mitchell's Atlas.     | Wis. ....      | Wisconsin.                                                        |
| M. G. ....  | Mitchell's Geography. | W.....         | { Following a number, Washington City.                            |
| Me. ....    | Maine.                |                |                                                                   |
| Mass. ....  | Massachusetts.        | N. S. E. W..   | { North, South, East West, and so of other points of the compass. |
| Md. ....    | Maryland.             |                |                                                                   |
| Mich. ....  | Michigan.             |                |                                                                   |
| Miss. ....  | Mississippi.          |                |                                                                   |
| Mo. ....    | Missouri.             |                |                                                                   |

# CONTENTS.



|                                        |         |
|----------------------------------------|---------|
| To Teachers .....                      | Page xi |
| Explanation of the Abbreviations ..... | xii     |

## PART FIRST.

### GEOGRAPHICAL EXERCISES.

#### EASTERN AND WESTERN HEMISPHERES.

|                                                |    |
|------------------------------------------------|----|
| Questions on the different zones .....         | 21 |
| Questions on the Map of the World, No. 1. .... | 23 |
| Northern and Southern Hemispheres .....        | 25 |

|                                             |    |
|---------------------------------------------|----|
| NORTH AMERICA .....                         | 26 |
| Oceans, Seas, Gulfs, Bays .....             | 26 |
| Straits, Sounds .....                       | 27 |
| Lakes, Rivers .....                         | 28 |
| Peninsulas, Islands .....                   | 29 |
| Capes, Mountains .....                      | 30 |
| Deserts, Divisions .....                    | 31 |
| Capitals, Tropics, Circles, and Zones ..... | 32 |

|                                  |    |
|----------------------------------|----|
| UNITED STATES .....              | 33 |
| Gulfs, Lakes, Rivers .....       | 33 |
| Capes, Bays, Sounds .....        | 34 |
| Islands, Mountains, States ..... | 35 |
| States continued .....           | 37 |

|                                  |    |
|----------------------------------|----|
| SOUTH AMERICA .....              | 38 |
| Mountains, Rivers, Capes .....   | 39 |
| Gulfs and Bays, Islands .....    | 40 |
| Lakes, Grassy Plains .....       | 41 |
| Divisions .....                  | 41 |
| Capitals .....                   | 42 |
| Equator, Tropics and Zones ..... | 42 |
| Latitude and Longitude .....     | 43 |
| EUROPE .....                     | 43 |
| Seas .....                       | 43 |
| Islands .....                    | 44 |
| Gulfs, Channels .....            | 45 |
| Straits .....                    | 45 |
| Mountains, Capes .....           | 46 |
| Rivers, Peninsulas .....         | 47 |
| Divisions, Capitals .....        | 48 |
| Latitude, Longitude, &c. ....    | 49 |
| ASIA .....                       | 50 |
| Seas .....                       | 50 |
| Mountains, Gulfs .....           | 51 |
| Capes, Rivers .....              | 52 |
| Islands, Straits .....           | 53 |
| Peninsulas .....                 | 53 |
| Isthmuses, Lakes .....           | 54 |
| Divisions .....                  | 54 |
| Capitals .....                   | 55 |
| Circles, Zones .....             | 56 |
| Latitude, &c. ....               | 56 |
| AFRICA .....                     | 57 |
| Straits, Gulfs, Bays .....       | 57 |
| Channels, Capes .....            | 57 |
| Rivers .....                     | 58 |
| Lakes, Islands .....             | 59 |
| Mountains .....                  | 60 |
| Divisions .....                  | 60 |

|                                              |    |
|----------------------------------------------|----|
| Deserts, Oases .....                         | 61 |
| Capitals .....                               | 62 |
| Tropics, Zones .....                         | 63 |
| Latitude, &c. ....                           | 63 |
| OCEANICA .....                               | 64 |
| Malaysia — Divisions .....                   | 64 |
| Islands, Straits, &c. ....                   | 64 |
| Australasia .....                            | 64 |
| Colonies, Straits, Gulfs, Islands, &c. ....  | 65 |
| Polynesia — Archipelagoes, and islands ..... | 66 |
| Tropics, Zones, &c. ....                     | 67 |

## PART SECOND.

### DESCRIPTIVE GEOGRAPHY.

|                            |    |
|----------------------------|----|
| NORTH AMERICA.....         | 68 |
| Divisions .....            | 68 |
| Gulfs .....                | 71 |
| Bays .....                 | 72 |
| Sounds .....               | 74 |
| Straits, Lakes .....       | 75 |
| Peninsulas .....           | 78 |
| Capes .....                | 80 |
| Islands .....              | 81 |
| Mountains .....            | 86 |
| Rivers .....               | 88 |
| Distances .....            | 91 |
| Population of Cities ..... | 91 |
| Russian America .....      | 92 |
| Greenland .....            | 92 |
| British America .....      | 93 |
| New Britain .....          | 94 |
| Canada West .....          | 95 |

|                                         |     |
|-----------------------------------------|-----|
| Canada East . . . . .                   | 96  |
| New Brunswick . . . . .                 | 97  |
| Nova Scotia . . . . .                   | 98  |
| Newfoundland . . . . .                  | 99  |
| United States . . . . .                 | 99  |
| Lakes . . . . .                         | 100 |
| Bays . . . . .                          | 103 |
| Sounds, Rivers . . . . .                | 106 |
| Capes . . . . .                         | 117 |
| Islands . . . . .                       | 118 |
| Mountains . . . . .                     | 120 |
| Population of Cities . . . . .          | 122 |
| Distances, &c. . . . .                  | 122 |
| Eastern or New England States . . . . . | 122 |
| Maine . . . . .                         | 124 |
| New Hampshire . . . . .                 | 127 |
| Vermont . . . . .                       | 128 |
| Massachusetts . . . . .                 | 129 |
| Rhode Island . . . . .                  | 132 |
| Connecticut . . . . .                   | 133 |
| Middle States . . . . .                 | 136 |
| New York . . . . .                      | 137 |
| New Jersey . . . . .                    | 140 |
| Pennsylvania . . . . .                  | 142 |
| Delaware . . . . .                      | 145 |
| Southern States . . . . .               | 146 |
| Maryland . . . . .                      | 146 |
| District of Columbia . . . . .          | 148 |
| Virginia . . . . .                      | 149 |
| North Carolina . . . . .                | 153 |
| South Carolina . . . . .                | 156 |
| Georgia . . . . .                       | 158 |
| Florida . . . . .                       | 160 |
| Alabama . . . . .                       | 162 |
| Mississippi . . . . .                   | 164 |
| Louisiana . . . . .                     | 167 |
| Texas . . . . .                         | 169 |



|                                    |         |
|------------------------------------|---------|
| Western States .....               | 170     |
| Ohio .....                         | 171     |
| Kentucky .....                     | 175     |
| Tennessee .....                    | 177     |
| Michigan .....                     | 179     |
| Indiana .....                      | 181     |
| Illinois .....                     | 184     |
| Missouri .....                     | 187     |
| Arkansas .....                     | 189     |
| Wisconsin .....                    | 191     |
| Iowa .....                         | 193     |
| Indian Territory .....             | 195     |
| Missouri Territory .....           | 196     |
| Oregon Territory .....             | 197     |
| Upper or New California .....      | 199     |
| Mexico .....                       | 201     |
| Guatemala or Central America ..... | 202     |
| West Indies .....                  | 203     |
| <br>SOUTH AMERICA .....            | <br>204 |
| Divisions .....                    | 204     |
| Rivers .....                       | 208     |
| Gulfs, Bays .....                  | 209     |
| Islands .....                      | 210     |
| Straits .....                      | 211     |
| Cities, Capes .....                | 212     |
| Distances .....                    | 213     |
| New Grenada .....                  | 213     |
| Venezuela .....                    | 214     |
| Ecuador .....                      | 215     |
| Guiana, Peru .....                 | 216     |
| Bolivia .....                      | 217     |
| Chili .....                        | 218     |
| Brazil .....                       | 219     |
| Buenos Ayres .....                 | 220     |
| Paraguay .....                     | 222     |
| Uruguay .....                      | 222     |
| Patagonia .....                    | 223     |

|                                              |     |
|----------------------------------------------|-----|
| EUROPE .....                                 | 224 |
| Divisions .....                              | 224 |
| Seas .....                                   | 242 |
| Gulfs .....                                  | 245 |
| Channels .....                               | 246 |
| Straits, Rivers .....                        | 247 |
| Lakes .....                                  | 256 |
| Peninsulas .....                             | 258 |
| Capes, Islands .....                         | 259 |
| Mountains .....                              | 272 |
| Distances .....                              | 274 |
| Norway .....                                 | 274 |
| Sweden .....                                 | 275 |
| Russia .....                                 | 276 |
| Denmark .....                                | 278 |
| Holland .....                                | 279 |
| Belgium .....                                | 279 |
| England .....                                | 280 |
| Wales .....                                  | 286 |
| Scotland .....                               | 287 |
| Ireland .....                                | 296 |
| France .....                                 | 306 |
| Spain .....                                  | 308 |
| Portugal .....                               | 310 |
| Germany .....                                | 311 |
| German Provinces of Austria .....            | 316 |
| German Provinces of Prussia .....            | 319 |
| Germanic Confederation .....                 | 329 |
| Switzerland .....                            | 330 |
| Italy .....                                  | 332 |
| Kingdom of Sardinia .....                    | 334 |
| Monaco .....                                 | 335 |
| Lombardy and Venice, or Austrian Italy ..... | 336 |
| Parma, Modena .....                          | 337 |
| Lucca, Tuscany, States of the Church .....   | 338 |
| San Marino .....                             | 339 |
| Kingdom of Naples .....                      | 340 |



|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| Greece .....                       | 341 |
| Turkey in Europe .....             | 342 |
| ASIA .....                         | 344 |
| Divisions .....                    | 344 |
| Seas .....                         | 354 |
| Gulfs .....                        | 359 |
| Straits .....                      | 361 |
| Capes, Rivers .....                | 362 |
| Islands .....                      | 370 |
| Lakes .....                        | 377 |
| Mountains .....                    | 378 |
| Peninsulas .....                   | 381 |
| Deserts .....                      | 383 |
| Latitude, Longitude, &c. ....      | 384 |
| Siberia .....                      | 384 |
| Turkey in Asia .....               | 386 |
| Syria .....                        | 387 |
| Palestine .....                    | 388 |
| Arabia .....                       | 389 |
| Persia .....                       | 399 |
| Afghanistan .....                  | 400 |
| Beloochistan .....                 | 401 |
| Independent Tartary .....          | 402 |
| Chinese Tartary .....              | 403 |
| Hindoostan .....                   | 409 |
| Chin India, or Farther India ..... | 412 |
| China .....                        | 413 |
| Thibet and Corea .....             | 415 |
| Empire of Japan .....              | 416 |
| AFRICA .....                       | 418 |
| Divisions .....                    | 418 |
| Gulfs, Bays, Straits, &c. ....     | 430 |
| Capes .....                        | 431 |
| Rivers .....                       | 432 |
| Mountains .....                    | 436 |
| Islands .....                      | 437 |

|                              |         |
|------------------------------|---------|
| Deserts .....                | 440     |
| Tropics, Zones, &c. ....     | 441     |
| Morocco .....                | 441     |
| Algiers, or Algeria .....    | 442     |
| Tunis .....                  | 442     |
| Tripoli.....                 | 443     |
| Barca.....                   | 443     |
| Beled-el-Jerid .....         | 444     |
| Egypt .....                  | 444     |
| Nubia, &c. ....              | 445     |
| Abyssinia .....              | 446     |
| Senegambia .....             | 447     |
| Liberia .....                | 448     |
| Upper and Lower Guinea ..... | 448     |
| Southern Africa .....        | 449     |
| Eastern Africa .....         | 450     |
| Soudan .....                 | 451     |
| African Islands .....        | 451     |
| <br>OCEANICA .....           | <br>452 |
| Malaysia .....               | 452     |
| Australasia .....            | 454     |
| Polynesia .....              | 455     |

# PART FIRST.

---

## GEOGRAPHICAL EXERCISES.

---

### EASTERN AND WESTERN HEMISPHERES.

---

#### QUESTIONS ON THE DIFFERENT ZONES.

*Pages 34-5.—Lesson 21st.—Map of the World, No. 1.*

*Question.* On map of the World No. 1, Western Hemisphere, point out the countries that are in the Torrid Zone.

*Answer.* They are part of Mexico, the whole of Guatimala, Colombia, Guiana, Peru, and Brazil.

*Q.* Point out the islands in the Torrid Zone, beginning at the left-hand side of the map.

*A.* They are the Sandwich, the Mulgrave, the Navigator's, the Friendly, the Fejee, New Caledonia, the Society, the Georgian, the Marquesas, the Gallapagos, the West Indies, and the Cape Verde.

*Q.* Point out the countries in the Torrid Zone, on the map of the Eastern Hemisphere.

*A.* They are part of the Great Desert, the whole of Senegambia, Guinea, Lower Guinea, Soudan, Ethiopia, Zanguebar, part of Arabia, part of Hindoostan, Siam, and part of China.

*Q.* Point out the islands in the Torrid Zone, in the Eastern Hemisphere, beginning at the left hand.

*A.* They are St. Helena, part of Madagascar, the Mascarenha, Ceylon, Sumatra, Java, part of Formosa, Hainan, the Philippine, the Ladrone, the Caroline, Borneo, Celebes, the Spice, Timor, New Guinea, New Ireland, New Britain, Louisiade, and part of Australia.

*Q.* Point out the countries in the North Temperate Zone of the Western Hemisphere.

*A.* They are a part of Asia, part of New Britain, Labrador, part of Greenland, Canada, United States, and part of Mexico.

*Q.* Point out the Islands in the North Temperate Zone of the Western Hemisphere.

*A.* They are the Aleutian, Vancouver's, Newfoundland, and the Azores.

*Q.* Point out the countries in the North Temperate Zone, of the Eastern Hemisphere.

*A.* They are a part of Siberia, France, Spain, Barbary, part of the Great Desert, Egypt, Austria, Italy, Turkey, Persia, part of Arabia, Tartary, part of Hindoostan, Thibet, and part of China.

*Q.* Point out the Islands in the North Temperate Zone of the Eastern Hemisphere.

*A.* They are Iceland, the British Islands, Seghalien, Jesso, Nippon, Kiusiu, the Loochoo, and part of Formosa.

*Q.* Point out the countries in the South Temperate Zone, of the Western Hemisphere.

*A.* They are Chili, Buenos Ayres, and Patagonia.

*Q.* Point out the Islands in the South Temperate Zone, of the Western Hemisphere.

*A.* They are New Zealand, Chiloe, Falkland, Terra del Fuego, South Shetland, South Orkney, Sandwich Land, and part of Graham's Land.

*Q.* Point out the countries in the South Temperate Zone, of the Eastern Hemisphere.

*A.* They are Cape Colony, and Caffraria.

*Q.* Point out the Islands in the South Temperate Zone, of the Eastern Hemisphere.

*A.* They are Tristan d'Acunha, Marian and Crozet's, Kerguelen's Land, part of Madagascar, part of Australia, and Van Diemen's Land.

The countries in the North Frigid Zone of the Western Hemisphere, are part of Asia, part of New Britain, and part of Greenland.

The countries in the North Frigid Zone of the Eastern Hemisphere, are Lapland, part of Asia, with the Islands of Spitzbergen, Nova Zembla, and New Siberia.

The only land in the South Frigid Zone of the Western Hemisphere, is a part of Graham's Land, and Victoria Land; and in the South Frigid Zone of the Eastern Hemisphere, there is Enderby's Land, and the Antarctic Continent.

*Q.* In what Zone does the United States lie?

*A.* North Temperate.

*Q.* What Zone contains the largest animals?

*A.* Torrid.

*Q.* Which Zones contain the most useful animals?

*A.* Temperate.

*Q.* Which Zones produce the most hardy animals?

*A.* Frigid.

*Q.* Which Zone is most subject to violent storms of wind?

*A.* Torrid.

Q. In which Zone are the people the most industrious ?

A. North Temperate.

Q. Which Zone is the most subject to earthquakes ?

A. Torrid.

Q. In which Zones is the climate most healthy ?

A. Temperate.

Q. Which of the Temperate Zones contains the most powerful and civilized nations ?

A. North Temperate.

## EASTERN AND WESTERN HEMISPHERE.

*Page 50.—Lesson 33.—Map of the World, No. 1.*

Q. Of what Hemispheres does this map consist ?

A. Eastern and Western.

Q. What does the Eastern Hemisphere comprise ?

A. All that part of the earth lying east of longitude 20 degrees west from Greenwich.

Hemisphere signifies half a globe.

Q. What great divisions does the Eastern Hemisphere contain ?

A. Europe, Asia, and Africa.

These divisions form the Eastern Continent, or Old World.

Q. What does the Western Continent comprise ?

A. All that part of the earth lying west of longitude 20 degrees west from Greenwich.

Q. What great divisions does the Western Hemisphere contain ?

A. North America, and South America.

These divisions form the Western Continent, or the New World.

Q. What is a continent ?

A. A great extent of land, containing many countries. America is a continent. (M. G. p. 14.)

Q. What great division lies partly in the Eastern and partly in the Western Hemisphere ?

A. Oceanica.

This division is composed chiefly of Islands. (M. G. p. 50.)

Q. Which Hemisphere contains the greatest amount of land ?

A. Eastern.

Q. Which Hemisphere contains the greatest amount of water ?

A. Western.

Q. Which Hemisphere contains the largest Islands ?

A. Eastern.

Q. Which is the largest Island in the world ?

A. Australia, or New Holland.



- Q. Which are the two next largest ?  
 A. Borneo, and New Guinea.  
 Q. Which is the largest division of the Eastern Hemisphere ?  
 A. Asia.  
 Q. Which is the smallest division of the Eastern Hemisphere ?  
 A. Europe.  
 Q. Which division of the Eastern Hemisphere extends farthest south ?  
 A. Africa.  
 Q. Which extends farthest to the north ?  
 A. Asia.  
 Q. Which extends farthest south, Europe or Asia ?  
 A. Asia.  
 Q. Which extends farthest west ?  
 A. Africa.  
 Q. Which extends farthest east ?  
 A. Asia.
- 

*Pages 50-1.—Lesson 34.—Map of the World No. 1.*

- Q. Which is the most southern land in the Eastern Hemisphere ?  
 A. Enderby's Land, and Antarctic Continent.  
 Q. Which is the most southern land in the Western Hemisphere ?  
 A. Victoria Land, and Graham's Land.  
 Q. What is an Ocean ?  
 A. It is a vast body of salt water. (M. G. p. 51.)  
 Q. What five Oceans are in the Eastern Hemisphere ?  
 A. Northern, Southern, Pacific, Atlantic, and Indian ?  
 Q. What four Oceans are in the Western Hemisphere ?  
 A. Northern, Southern, Pacific, and Atlantic. There are only five Oceans, of which four extend into both Hemispheres. The Indian, is the only Ocean that is wholly in one Hemisphere. (M. G. p. 51.)  
 Q. Which is the largest Ocean ?  
 A. Pacific.  
 Q. Which is the second in extent ?  
 A. Atlantic.  
 Q. Which is the third in extent ?  
 A. Indian.  
 Q. Which is the fourth in extent ?  
 A. Southern, or Antarctic.  
 Q. Which is the fifth in extent ?  
 A. Northern, or Arctic.  
 Q. Which is the largest division of the Western Hemisphere ?  
 A. North America.

- Q. Which extends farthest east?  
 A. South America.  
 Q. Which extends farthest west?  
 A. North America.  
 Q. Is North America in north or south latitude?  
 A. North latitude.  
 Q. Why is it in north latitude?  
 A. Because it is north of the Equator. (M. G. p. 24.)  
 Q. Is South America mostly in north or in south latitude?  
 A. It is mostly in south latitude.  
 Q. Why is it mostly in south latitude?  
 A. Because it is mostly south of the Equator. (M. G. p. 24.)  
 Q. In what direction does South America lie from North America?  
 A. South, or more strictly, S. S. E.  
 Q. What regions lie south and south-east of South America?  
 A. South Shetland, South Orkney, Sandwich Land, and Graham's Land.  
 Q. What region lies south-west of South America?  
 A. Victoria Land.
- 

## NORTHERN AND SOUTHERN HEMISPHERES.

*Pages 51-2.—Lesson 35.—Map of the World No. 2.*

- Q. What Hemispheres does this map comprise?  
 A. Northern and Southern.  
 Q. Which Hemisphere contains the greatest quantity of land?  
 A. Northern.  
 Q. Which Hemisphere contains the greatest quantity of water?  
 A. Southern.  
 Q. What great divisions are wholly in the Northern Hemisphere?  
 A. Asia, Europe, and North America.  
 Q. What great divisions are partly in the Northern Hemisphere?  
 A. Africa, South America, and Oceanica.  
 Q. What does the Northern Hemisphere comprise?  
 A. All that part of the earth north of the Equator.  
 Q. What does the Southern Hemisphere comprise?  
 A. All that part of the earth south of the Equator.  
 Q. What great divisions are partly in the Southern Hemisphere?  
 A. Asia, South America, and Oceanica.  
 Q. What four regions lie nearest the North Pole?  
 A. New Siberia, Nova Zembla, Spitzbergen, and Greenland.  
 Q. What four regions lie nearest the South Pole?  
 A. Victoria Land, Antarctic Continent, Graham's Land, and Enderby's Land.

- Q. What navigator has sailed nearest the South Pole?  
*A.* Captain James C. Ross, in 1840. (M. G. p. 52.)  
 Q. What other navigator sailed nearly as far south?  
*A.* Captain James Weddell, in 1823. (M. G. p. 52.)
- 

## NORTH AMERICA.

*Pages 52-3.—Lesson 36.—Map No. 4.*

## OCEANS.

- Q. What Ocean bounds North America on the east?  
*A.* Atlantic.  
 Q. What Ocean bounds it on the west?  
*A.* Pacific.  
 Q. What Ocean bounds it on the north?  
*A.* Arctic, or Northern.  
 An Ocean is a vast body of salt water. (M. G. p. 52.)

## SEAS.

- Q. What sea is north of British and Russian America?  
*A.* Polar.  
 Q. What sea between the West Indies and South America?  
*A.* Caribbean.  
 Q. Tell what a Sea is.  
*A.* It is a collection of water smaller than an Ocean, and surrounded by land, as the Mediterranean Sea, the Black Sea, &c. (M. G. p. 9.)

## GULFS.

- Q. What great Gulf lies east of Mexico?  
*A.* Gulf of Mexico.  
 Q. What Gulf between Mexico and California?  
*A.* Gulf of California.  
 Q. What Gulf west of Newfoundland?  
*A.* Gulf of St. Lawrence.  
 Q. What Gulf south-east of Boothia Felix?  
*A.* Gulf of Boothia.

## BAYS.

- Q. What great Bay separates Prince William's Land from Greenland?  
*A.* Baffin's Bay.  
 Q. What great Bay is south-west of Prince William's Land?  
*A.* Hudson's Bay.  
 Q. What Bay south of Hudson's Bay?  
*A.* James' Bay.



- Q. What Bay between Nova Scotia and New Brunswick ?  
*A.* Bay of Fundy.  
 Q. What two Bays on the east coast of the United States ?  
*A.* Delaware and Chesapeake.  
 Q. What Bay east of Yucatan ?  
*A.* Bay of Honduras.  
 Q. What Bay west of Yucatan ?  
*A.* Bay of Campeche.  
 Q. What Bay east of Guatemala ?  
*A.* Bay of Guatemala.  
 Q. What Bay west of Alaska ?  
*A.* Bristol Bay.  
 Q. Describe a Bay.  
*A.* It is a part of the sea extending into the land, as the Gulf of Mexico, Hudson's Bay. (M. G. p. 10.)

## STRAITS.

- Q. What Straits between America and Asia ?  
*A.* Bhering's.  
 Q. What Strait west of Greenland ?  
*A.* Davis'.  
 Q. What does it connect ?  
*A.* Baffin's Bay and the Atlantic Ocean.  
 Q. What three Straits north of Labrador ?  
*A.* Hudson's, Frobisher's, and Cumberland.  
 Q. What Strait separates Newfoundland from Labrador ?  
*A.* Strait of Belle Isle.  
 Q. What is a Strait ?  
*A.* It is a narrow passage connecting different bodies of water, as the Strait of Gibraltar, &c. (M. G. p. 10.)

## SOUNDS.

- Q. What two Sounds in Baffin's Bay ?  
*A.* Smith's and Lancaster's.  
 Q. What Sound on the east coast of Greenland ?  
*A.* Davy's.  
 Q. What two Sounds in Russian America ?  
*A.* Norton and Prince William's.  
 Q. What Sound between Washington or Queen Charlotte's, and Quadra and Vancouver's Island ?  
*A.* Queen Charlotte's.  
 Q. What Sound north of Cape Hatteras ?  
*A.* Albemarle.  
 Q. Describe a Sound.  
*A.* It is a small or narrow sea, so shallow that its depth may be measured by a line dropped from the surface to the bottom, as Long Island Sound, Pamlico Sound. (M. G. p. 10.)

## LAKES.

Q. What five Lakes are in the northern part of the United States?

A. Superior, Michigan, Huron, Erie, and Ontario.

Q. What river do they all flow into?

A. St. Lawrence.

Q. Name the principal Lakes in British America.

A. Winnipeg, Athabasca, Great Slave, and Great Bear.

Q. What Lake in the northern part of California?

A. Great Salt Lake.

Q. What Lake is in the southern part of Guatemala?

A. Lake Nicaragua.

Q. Tell what a Lake is.

A. It is a collection of water surrounded by land, as Lake Superior, Lake Winnipeg, or the Lake of Geneva, in Switzerland. (M. G. p. 10-11.)

*Pages 53-4.—Lesson 37.—Map No. 4.*

## RIVERS.

Q. What River flows into the Polar Sea?

A. Mackenzie's.

Q. Which are the two chief Rivers that flow into Hudson's Bay?

A. Nelson, and Churchill.

Q. What River of the United States flows into the Pacific Ocean?

A. Columbia.

Q. What River flows into the Gulf of California?

A. Colorado.

Q. Which two large Rivers flow into the Gulf of Mexico?

A. Mississippi, and Rio del Norte.

Q. What River flows into the Gulf of St. Lawrence?

A. St. Lawrence.

Q. What River flows into the Gulf of Georgia?

A. Frazer's.

Q. What River flows into Ungava Bay?

A. Koksah.

Q. What River flows from Lake Chapala?

A. Grande, or Rio Grande de Santiago.

Q. What River flows from Lake Nicaragua?

A. San Juan.

Q. Describe a River.

A. It is a stream of fresh water, running from springs or from

lakes, into the Ocean, as the Mississippi, the Amazon, &c. (M. G. p. 11.)

*Q.* How are Rivers shown on Maps ?

*A.* By black lines, winding according to their course, (M. G. p. 28.)

## PENINSULAS.

*Q.* What Peninsula is in the south part of Russian America ?

*A.* Alaska.

*Q.* What Peninsula north of Hudson's Bay ?

*A.* Melville.

*Q.* What Peninsula in the southern part of British America ?

*A.* Nova Scotia.

*Q.* What Peninsula in the southern part of the United States ?

*A.* Florida.

*Q.* What Peninsula in the western part of Mexico ?

*A.* California.

*Q.* What Peninsula in the eastern part of Mexico ?

*A.* Yucatan.

*Q.* What is a Peninsula ?

*A.* It is a portion of land, nearly surrounded by water. Africa and South America are Peninsulas. (M. G. p. 14.)

## ISLANDS.

*Q.* What Island lies east of Greenland ?

*A.* Iceland.

*Q.* What Island west of Greenland ?

*A.* Disco.

*Q.* What Island in Hudson's Bay ?

*A.* Southampton.

*Q.* What four Islands in the Gulf of St. Lawrence ?

*A.* Newfoundland, Anticosti, Cape Breton, and Prince Edward's.

*Q.* What Islands east of Savannah ?

*A.* Bermudas.

*Q.* What Islands south-east from Florida ?

*A.* Bahamas.

*Q.* What Islands between North and South America ?

*A.* West Indies.

*Q.* Which are the four largest of the West India Islands ?

*A.* Cuba, Hayti, Jamaica, and Porto Rico. These are called the Great Antilles.

*Q.* Which are the two chief Islands on the west coast of British America ?

*A.* Quadra and Vancouver's, and Washington or Queen Charlotte's.

*Q.* Tell what Islands are.

*A.* They are portions of land, entirely surrounded by water, as the British Islands, or Newfoundland. (M. G. p. 14.)

#### CAPIES.

*Q.* Which is the most western Cape of North America?

*A.* Prince of Wales.

*Q.* Which is the most eastern Cape?

*A.* Race.

*Q.* Which is the most southern Cape?

*A.* Gorda.

*Q.* Which is the most southern Cape of Greenland?

*A.* Farewell.

*Q.* What three Capes on the east coast of the United States?

*A.* Cod, Hatteras, and Cannaveral.

*Q.* Which is the most southern Cape of the United States?

*A.* Sable.

*Q.* The most southern Cape of California?

*A.* St. Lucas.

*Q.* The most eastern Cape of Guatemala?

*A.* Gracias à Dios.

*Q.* What is a Cape?

*A.* It is a point of land extending into the sea, as the Cape of Good Hope, Cape Horn, &c. (M. G. p. 14.)

#### *Pages 54-5-6.—Lesson 38.—Map No. 4.*

#### MOUNTAINS.

*Q.* What Mountains extend through the whole of North America?

*A.* Rocky.

*Q.* What are they called in Mexico?

*A.* Mexican Cordilleras.

*Q.* What Mountains extend along the west coast of Upper California?

*A.* The coast range, and the Sierra Nevada.

*Q.* What Mountains extend through the eastern part of the United States?

*A.* Alleghany.

*Q.* What two Mountains are in the southern part of Russian America?

*A.* St. Elias and Fairweather.

*Q.* What two Mountains are in the western part of British America?

*A.* Brown and Hooker.

*Q.* What is a Mountain?

*A.* It is a portion of land, raised up to a great height.

*Q.* What Highlands are in the northern part of Greenland?

*A.* Arctic Highlands.

Mountains and Hills are often called Highlands. (M. G. p. 55.)

*Q.* What two Peaks are in the western part of the United States?

*A.* Frémont's,\* Long's, and Pike's.

Mountains that are higher than those around them are sometimes called Peaks. (M. G. p. 55.)

*Q.* What Peaks are in the northern part of Mexico?

*A.* Spanish.

*Q.* What Volcano is in the southern part of Mexico?

*A.* Popocatepetl.

*Q.* What two Volcanoes are in Guatemala?

*A.* Water and Consiguina.

*Q.* What is a Volcano?

*A.* It is a burning mountain, with an opening at the top, which is called a crater. (M. G. p. 15.)

#### DESERTS.

*Q.* What Desert lies in the western part of the United States?

*A.* Great American.

*Q.* What Desert lies west of the Colorado River?

*A.* Sandy.

*Q.* What is a Desert?

*A.* Plains covered with sand are denominated deserts; some are also covered with stones and gravel. Deserts are generally destitute of water. (M. G. p. 17.)

#### DIVISIONS.

*Q.* Which is the most south-western division of North America?

*A.* Russian America.

This is called Russian America because it belongs to Russia.

*Q.* Which is the most eastern division of North America?

*A.* Greenland.

This is sometimes called Danish America because it belongs to Denmark.

*Q.* Which is the largest division in the North?

*A.* British America.

This is called British America because it belongs to Great Britain.

*Q.* Which is the largest division in the centre?

*A.* United States.

---

\* Frémont's Peak is named after Captain Frémont of the U. S. army. In the year 1842 that officer ascended to its summit, and ascertained its height. (M. G. p. 55.)



Q. Which is the largest division in the south ?

A. Mexico.

Q. Which division lies south of Mexico ?

A. Guatemala.

This division is likewise called Central America.

Q. What small division lies north of Guatemala ?

A. Balize.

Q. What great Archipelago lies east of Mexico and Guatemala ?

A. West Indies.

Q. What is an Archipelago ?

A. It is a sea filled with Islands, as the Grecian Archipelago, east of Greece, or the West Indies, which is sometimes called the Colombian Archipelago. (M. G. p. 10.)

#### CAPITALS.

Q. What is the capital of British America ?

A. Montreal. (*Quebec was formerly the capital.*)

Q. What is the capital of the United States ?

A. Washington.

Q. What is the capital of Mexico ?

A. Mexico.

Q. What is the capital of Guatemala ?

A. San Salvador.

#### TROPICS, CIRCLES, AND ZONES.

Q. What part of North America is crossed by the Tropic of Cancer ?

A. Mexico.

Q. What parts are crossed by the Arctic Circle ?

A. Greenland, British America, and Russian America.

Q. In what Zone is the middle part of North America ?

A. North Temperate.

Q. In what Zone is the southern part ?

A. Torrid.

Q. In what Zone is the northern part ?

A. North Frigid.

Q. What countries of North America are in the North Frigid Zone ?

A. Greenland, British America, and Russian America.

Q. What countries are in the North Temperate Zone ?

A. British America, United States, and Mexico.

Q. What countries are in the Torrid Zone ?

A. Mexico, Guatemala, and the West Indies.

Q. In what Zone is the largest part of North America ?

A. North Temperate.

## UNITED STATES.

*Page 56.—Lesson 39.—Map No. 5.*

Q. What country bounds the United States on the north?

A. British America.

Q. What Ocean bounds it on the east?

A. Atlantic.

Q. What Ocean bounds it on the west?

A. Pacific.

Q. What Gulf bounds it on the South?

A. Gulf of Mexico.

## GULFS, &amp;c.

Q. What Gulf separates Quadra and Vancouver's Island from Oregon?

A. Gulf of Georgia.

Q. What Republic lies south-west of the United States?

A. Mexico.

## LAKES.

Q. What five great Lakes are in the northern part of the United States.

A. Superior, Huron, Michigan, Erie, and Ontario.

Q. What is the name of the eastern part of Lake Huron?

A. Manatouline Lake.—(*In some maps Georgian Bay.*)

Q. What Lake lies east of Lake Ontario?

A. Champlain.

Q. What Lake lies north-west of Lake Superior?

A. Lake of the Woods.

## RIVERS.

Q. What great River extends through the middle of the United States?

A. Mississippi.

Q. Which are its three great western branches?

A. Missouri, Arkansas, and Red.

Q. Which is its principal eastern branch?

A. Ohio.

Q. Into what Gulf does the Mississippi flow?

A. Gulf of Mexico.

Q. What River with two names in the western part of the United States?

A. Oregon, or Columbia.

Q. What are its two principal branches?

A. Lewis, and Clarke's.

Q. What three Rivers flow into the Atlantic Ocean north of Cape Cod?

A. Penobscot, Kennebec, and Merrimack.

*Q.* What three between Cape Cod and Cape Charles ?

*A.* Connecticut, Hudson, and Delaware.

*Q.* What three flow into Chesapeake Bay ?

*A.* Susquehanna, Potomac, and James.

*Q.* What River flows into Albemarle Sound ?

*A.* Roanoke.

*Q.* What two flow into Pamlico Sound ?

*A.* Tar, and Neuse.

*Q.* What seven Rivers flow into the Atlantic between Cape Lookout and Cape Cannaveral ?

*A.* Cape Fear, Great Pedee, Santee, Savannah, Alatomaha, St. Mary's, and St. John's.

*Q.* What three Rivers flow into the Gulf of Mexico east of the mouth of the Mississippi ?

*A.* Pearl, Pascagoula, and Apalachicola.

*Pages 56-7.—Lesson 40.—Map No. 5.*

CAVES.

There are eight Capes on the Atlantic coast of the United States.

*Q.* What are they ?

*A.* Cod, Malabar, Charles, Henry, Hatteras, Lookout, Fear, and Cannaveral.

*Q.* What two Capes are on the west side of Florida ?

*A.* Romans, and Sable.

*Q.* What Cape west of Apalachee Bay ?

*A.* St. Blas.

*Q.* What four Capes are on the Pacific coast of the United States ?

*A.* Flattery, Foulweather, Orford, and Mendocino.

BAYS.

*Q.* What Bays between Cape Cod and Cape Hatteras.

*A.* New York, Delaware, and Chesapeake.

*Q.* What four Bays are on the west coast of Florida ?

*A.* Chatham, Tampa, Vacassar, and Apalachee.

*Q.* What three bays between Cape St. Blas and the mouths of the Mississippi River ?

*A.* Pensacola, Mobile, and Black.

*Q.* What Bays on the coast of Texas ?

*A.* Galveston, Matagorda, Espiritu Santo, and Nueces.

SOUNDS.

*Q.* What Sounds between Cape Lookout and Cape Cod ?

*A.* Pamlico, Albemarle, and Long Island.

*Q.* What sound on the coast of Quadra and Vancouver's Island ?

*A.* Nootka.



## ISLANDS.

*Q.* What Island is there on the coast of Maine ?

*A.* Mount Desert.

*Q.* What two Islands lie south of Massachusetts ?

*A.* Nantucket and Martha's Vineyard.

*Q.* What Island lies south of Rhode Island ?

*A.* Block.

*Q.* What Island lies south of Connecticut ?

*A.* Long Island.

*Q.* What Islands lie south of Florida ?

*A.* Florida Reefs, and Tortugas Islands.

*Q.* What Island is separated from Oregon Territory by the Gulf of Georgia ?

*A.* Quadra and Vancouver's.

## MOUNTAINS.

*Q.* What range of Mountains is in the western part of the United States ?

*A.* Rocky.

*Q.* What range near the coast of the Pacific ?

*A.* Cascade range.

*Q.* What three ranges of Mountains are in the eastern part of the United States ?

*A.* Cumberland, Alleghany, and Blue Ridge.

These three ranges are called sometimes the Apalachian Mountains. (M. G. p. 57.)

*Q.* In what state is the Black Mountain ?

*A.* North Carolina.

This is the highest mountain in the eastern part of the United States. (M. G. p. 57.)

*Q.* What Mountains are in Pennsylvania and New Jersey ?

*A.* Blue.

*Q.* What Mountains are in Vermont and New Hampshire ?

*A.* Green, and White.

The White Mountains are the highest in New England. (M. G. p. 57.)

*Q.* What Mountains are in Arkansas and Missouri ?

*A.* Ozark.

*Pages 57-8.—Lesson 41.—Map No. 5.*

## STATES.

*Q.* How many States are there in the United States ?

*A.* Thirty.

*Q.* How many Territories ?

*A.* Five. (Wisconsin, Iowa, Indian, Missouri, and Oregon.)

The first two comprise what remains of the late Territories of the same names, after the formation of the new States of Wisconsin and Iowa, in 1846. They are not yet organized, but will doubtless be known by their old appellations.

There is also a District, called the District of Columbia, which you will see on Map No. 11. It contains Washington City, the Capital of the United States. Thus the United States contain 36 separate divisions. (M. G. p. 57.)

There are 14 States lying along the Atlantic Ocean, between New Brunswick and the Florida Reef.

*Q.* What are they?

*A.* Me., N. H., Mass., R. I., Conn., N. Y., N. J., Del., Md., Va., N. C., S. C., Ga., and Flor.

*Q.* What State lies north of Long Island Sound?

*A.* Conn.

*Q.* To what State does Long Island belong?

*A.* To N. Y.

*Q.* What five States lie on the Gulf of Mexico?

*A.* Texas, La., Miss., Ala., and Flor.

*Q.* What two States lie west of the Mississippi River?

*A.* Ark., and Mo.

*Q.* What Territories between the Mississippi and the Rocky Mountains?

*A.* Ia., Mo., and Indian.

*Q.* What Territory lies north-west of the State of Wisconsin?

*A.* Wis.

*Q.* What five States lie directly east of the Mississippi River?

*A.* Miss., Tenn., Ky., Ill., and Wis.

*Q.* What State lies on both sides of the Mississippi?

*A.* La.

*Q.* What State is bounded in part by Lakes Huron, Michigan, and Superior?

*A.* Mich.

*Q.* What three States are bounded in part by Lake Erie?

*A.* N. Y., Pa., and Oo.

*Q.* What State is bounded in part by Lake Ontario?

*A.* N. Y.

*Q.* What two States does Lake Champlain separate?

*A.* N. Y., and Vt.

*Q.* What two States are separated by the Connecticut River?

*A.* N. H., and Vt.

*Q.* What two States are separated by the Delaware River?

*A.* Pa., and N. J.

*Q.* What two States are separated by the Potomac River?

*A.* Va., and Md.

*Q.* What two States are separated by the Savannah River ?

*A.* S. C., and Ga.

*Q.* What two States are separated by the Chattahoochee River ?

*A.* Ga., and Ala.

*Q.* What five States are bounded in part by the Ohio River ?

*A.* Ia., Ill., Oo., Ky., and Va.

*Q.* What two States are separated in part by the Cumberland Mountains ?

*A.* Va., and Ky.

*Q.* What two States are separated by the Alleghany Mountains ?

*A.* N. C., and Tenn.

*Pages 58-9.—Lesson 42.—Map No. 5.*

STATES, &c.

*Q.* Which is the largest State ?

*A.* Texas.

*Q.* The smallest ?

*A.* R. I.

*Q.* What is the Capital of the United States ?

*A.* Washington.

*Q.* Which of the Eastern States have each two Capitals ?

*A.* Conn., and R. I.

The six Eastern States are Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut.

*Q.* What is the Capital of each ?

*A.* Me., Augusta ; N. H., Concord ; Vt., Montpelier ; Mass., Boston ; R. I., Newport and Providence ; Conn., Hartford and New Haven.

The four Middle States are New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and Delaware.

*Q.* What is the Capital of each ?

*A.* N. Y., Albany ; N. J., Trenton ; Pa., Harrisburg ; Del., Dover.

The ten Southern States are Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, and Texas.

*Q.* What is the Capital of each ?

*A.* Md., Annapolis ; Va., Richmond ; N. C., Raleigh ; S. C., Columbia ; Ga., Milledgeville ; Flor., Tallahassee ; Ala., Tuscaloosa ; Miss., Jackson ; La., New Orleans ; Texas, Austin.

The ten Western States are Ohio, Kentucky, Tennessee, Michigan, Indiana, Illinois, Missouri, Arkansas, Wisconsin, and Iowa.

Q. What is the Capital of each ?

A. Oo., Columbus ; Ky., Frankfort ; Tenn., Nashville ; Mich., Detroit ; Ia., Indianapolis ; Ill., Springfield ; Mo., Jefferson City ; Ark., Little Rock ; Wisconsin, Madison ; Iowa, Iowa City.

Q. Through what States does the 40th parallel of latitude pass ?

A. N. J., Pa., Va., Oo., Ia., Ill., and Mo.

Q. Through what Territory does it pass ?

A. Indian.

Q. Through or near what Cities and Towns does it pass ?

A. Philadelphia, Lancaster, Bedford, Wheeling, Zanesville, Columbus, Beardstown, and Quincy. These places have all the same, or very nearly the same latitude.

Q. What six places have nearly the same latitude as Washington City ?

A. Woodstock, Portsmouth, Madison, Vincennes, Vandalia, and St. Charles.

By placing a ruler on the map directly on the place named, keeping it parallel with the lines that cross the map from east to west, the learner will see at once all those places that have the same latitude. (M. G. p. 59.)

Q. What places have the same latitude as the City of New York ?

A. Newark, Beaver, Bolivar, Peru, Logansport, Peoria, and Burlington.

Q. What places have the same latitude as Boston ?

A. Worcester, Detroit, St. Joseph, and Galena.

Q. Through what States does the meridian of Washington pass ?

A. N. Y., Pa., Md., Va., and N. C.

Q. Through or near what Cities or Towns does it pass ?

A. Elmira and Geneva.

These places therefore have the same longitude as Washington City. (M. G. p. 59.)

Q. What four places have about the same longitude as Boston ?

A. Salem, Newburyport, Portsmouth, and Dover.

---

## SOUTH AMERICA.

*Pages 59-60.—Lesson 43.—Map No. 17.*

Q. What Ocean bounds South America on the east ?

A. Atlantic.

Q. What on the west ?

A. Pacific.

Q. What Sea bounds it on the north ?

A. Caribbean.

## MOUNTAINS.

- Q. What are the principal Mountains of South America?  
*A.* Andes.  
 Q. What is their length?  
*A.* 4,800 miles. (See map No. 17.)  
 The highest peak, Mount Sorato, is nearly 5 miles high. It is the highest Mountain in America. (M. G. p. 59.)  
 Q. What is the next highest Mountain?  
*A.* Illimani.  
 Q. On what side of South America are the Andes?  
*A.* West.  
 Q. What Mountains are on the east?  
*A.* Brazilian.  
 Q. How long are they?  
*A.* 2,100 miles. (See map No. 17.)  
 Q. What Mountains are in the west part of Brazil?  
*A.* Geral.  
 Q. What Mountains are between Brazil and Guiana?  
*A.* Acary.

## RIVERS.

- Q. Which is the largest River in South America?  
*A.* Amazon.  
 Q. Which is its largest branch?  
*A.* Madeira.  
 Q. Which is the second River in length?  
*A.* Rio de la Plata.  
 Q. Which is the third?  
*A.* Orinoco.  
 Q. Which is the fourth?  
*A.* St. Francisco.  
 Q. Into what Ocean do these flow?  
*A.* Atlantic.  
 Q. What River flows into the Caribbean Sea?  
*A.* Magdalena.

## CAPES.

- Q. Which is the most northern Cape of South America?  
*A.* Gallinas.  
 Q. Which is the most southern Cape?  
*A.* Horn.  
 Q. Which is the most eastern?  
*A.* St. Roque.  
 Q. Which is the most western?  
*A.* Blanco.



## GULFS AND BAYS.

- Q. What two Gulfs are on the Caribbean Sea ?  
*A.* Darien and Venezuela.  
 Q. What two are on the west coast ?  
*A.* Guayaquil and Penas.  
 Q. What are the principal Bays on the west coast ?  
*A.* Panama and Choco.  
 Q. What are the principal Bays on the east coast ?  
*A.* All Saints, St. Matthias, and St. George.

## ISLANDS.

- Q. What Islands are in the Caribbean Sea ?  
*A.* Buen Ayre and Margarita.

These are a part of the Little Antilles, which form the southern division of the West Indies. Margarita belongs to Venezuela, and is the only West Indian Island that is owned by a South American power. (M. G. p. 60.)

- Q. What five Islands north of South America ?  
*A.* Trinidad, Tobago, Grenada, Barbadoes, and St. Vincent.  
 These form a part of the Caribbee Islands. (M. G. p. 60.)

- Q. What Island lies between the Amazon and Para Rivers ?  
*A.* Joannes.

- Q. What Islands on the coast of Brazil, south of the Equator ?

*A.* Itamaraca, Abrolhos, St. Sebastian, Cananea, St. Catharina, and Taramandi.

- Q. What Islands east of Patagonia ?

*A.* Falkland.

- Q. What Island south of Patagonia ?

*A.* Terra del Fuego.

- Q. What Island east of Terra del Fuego ?

*A.* Staten Land.

- Q. What Island east of Staten Land ?

*A.* South Georgia.

- Q. What Islands south of Terra del Fuego ?

*A.* Camden.

- Q. What Island south of Chili ?

*A.* Chiloe.

- Q. What three Archipelagoes south of Chiloe ?

*A.* Chonos, Madre de Dios, and Queen Adelaide's.

- Q. What Island south of the Gulf of Penas ?

*A.* Wellington.

- Q. What Islands west of Chili ?

*A.* Juan Fernandez and St. Felix.

- Q. What Island in the Gulf of Guayaquil ?

*A.* Puno.

*Pages 61-2.—Lesson 44.—Map No. 17.*

## LAKES.

- Q. What Lake lies in the north-west part of Venezuela?  
*A.* Maracaybo.  
 Q. What Lake forms part of the boundary between Peru and Bolivia?  
*A.* Titicaca.  
 Q. What two Lakes are in Bolivia?  
*A.* Ubahy and Xarayes.  
 Q. What three Lakes are in Buenos Ayres?  
*A.* Del Valle, Porongos, and Ibera.  
 Q. What two Lakes are in the southern part of Brazil?  
*A.* Dos Patos and Mirim.  
 Q. What Lake in Peru forms the source of the Amazon River?  
*A.* Reyes.

## GRASSY PLAINS.

- Q. What are the extensive grassy plains in the east part of Brazil called?  
*A.* The Sertam.  
 Q. What are the elevated plains in the west part of Brazil called?  
*A.* Campos Parexis.  
 Point out in Venezuela the word Llanos, and in Buenos Ayres the word Pampas. These are the names given to extensive plains in those parts of South America. They are, like the Sertam in Brazil, the Prairies in North America, and the Steppes of Asia, covered with grass, on which vast herds of cattle roam and feed. (M. G. p. 61.)

## DIVISIONS.

The three most northern divisions on the west side of South America are called the Colombian States.

- Q. Which are they?  
*A.* Venezuela, New Grenada, and Ecuador.  
 The next two lying immediately south of these are called the Peruvian States.  
 Q. What are their names?  
*A.* Peru, and Bolivia.  
 Q. Which is the largest division of South America?  
*A.* Brazil.  
 Q. Which is the smallest division?  
*A.* Paraguay.  
 Q. Which division belongs to the British, Dutch, and French?  
*A.* Guiana.  
 Q. Which is the most northern division of South America?  
*A.* New Grenada?

- Q. Which is the most western division ?  
*A.* Ecuador.  
 Q. Which is the most eastern division ?  
*A.* Brazil.  
 Q. Which is the most southern division ?  
*A.* Patagonia.  
 Q. Which two divisions are separated by the Andes ?  
*A.* Buenos Ayres, and Chili.

## CAPITALS.

- Q. What is the Capital of New Grenada ?  
*A.* Bogota.  
 Q. What is the Capital of Venezuela ?  
*A.* Caraccas.  
 Q. What is the Capital of Ecuador ?  
*A.* Quito.  
 Q. What is the Capital of Peru ?  
*A.* Lima.  
 Q. What is the Capital of Bolivia ?  
*A.* Chuquisaca.  
 Q. What is the Capital of Brazil ?  
*A.* Rio Janeiro.  
 Q. Of Paraguay ?  
*A.* Assumption.  
 Q. Of Uruguay ?  
*A.* Montevideo.  
 Q. Of Buenos Ayres ?  
*A.* Buenos Ayres.  
 Q. Of Chili ?  
*A.* Santiago.

## EQUATOR, TROPIC, AND ZONES.

- Q. What States does the Equator pass through ?  
*A.* Brazil, Venezuela, New Grenada, and Ecuador.  
 Q. What is the Equator ?  
*A.* It is an imaginary great circle, extending from east to west round the globe, at an equal distance from each pole. (M. G. p. 22.)  
 Q. What States does the Tropic of Capricorn pass through ?  
*A.* Brazil, Paraguay, Buenos Ayres, and Bolivia.  
 Q. In what Zone is that part of South America, that lies north of the Tropic of Capricorn ?  
*A.* Torrid.  
 Q. In what Zone is that part south of the Tropic of Capricorn ?  
*A.* South Temperate.  
 Q. What portion of South America is in the Torrid Zone, the largest or smallest ?  
*A.* Largest.



Q. How do you know it is in the Torrid Zone?

A. Because it lies on both sides of the Equator, and between the Tropic of Cancer and the Tropic of Capricorn. (M. G. p. 29.)

#### LATITUDE AND LONGITUDE.

Q. In what Latitude is the greatest part of South America?

A. South Latitude.

Q. Why is it in South Latitude?

A. Because it is mostly south of the Equator. (M. G. p. 24.)

Q. What is Latitude?

A. It is distance from the Equator either north or south. (M. G. p. 24.)

Q. In what Longitude is South America, reckoning from Greenwich?

A. West Longitude.

Q. How do you know it is in West Longitude?

A. Because the numbers increase towards the left hand. (M. G. p. 26.)

Q. What is Longitude?

A. It is distance east or west from an established meridian. (M. G. p. 25.)

#### EUROPE.

*Pages 62-3.—Lesson 45.—Map No. 18.*

Q. What Ocean bounds Europe on the West?

A. Atlantic.

Q. What Ocean bounds it on the North?

A. Arctic.

Q. What Sea bounds it on the south?

A. Mediterranean.

Q. What Mountains bound it on the east?

A. Ural.

#### SEAS.

There are eight Seas in Europe.

Q. What are they?

A. White, Baltic, North, Irish, Mediterranean, Marmora, Black, and Azov.

Q. What Sea is on the north of Russia?

A. White.

Q. What Sea between Russia and Sweden?

A. Baltic.

Q. What Sea between Scotland and Denmark?

A. North.

Q. What Sea between England and Ireland?

A. Irish.

- Q. What Sea between Europe and Africa ?  
*A.* Mediterranean.  
 Q. What Sea south of Turkey ?  
*A.* Marmora.  
 Q. What two Seas south of Russia ?  
*A.* Black, and Azov.  
 Q. What is the name of the Sea between Greece and Asia ?  
*A.* Archipelago.  
 Q. What is an Archipelago ?  
*A.* It is a sea filled with Islands, as the Grecian Archipelago, east of Greece ; or the West Indies, which is sometimes called the Colombian Archipelago. (M. G. p. 10.)

## ISLANDS.

- Q. What large Islands lie west of Europe ?  
*A.* British.  
 The Island containing England, Scotland, and Wales, is called Great Britain.  
 Q. What Island lies west of Great Britain ?  
*A.* Ireland.  
 Q. What four groups of Islands are west and north of the British Isles ?  
*A.* Hebrides or Western, Orkney, Shetland, and Faroe ?  
 Q. What large Island lies west of Norway ?  
*A.* Iceland.  
 Q. What Islands are in the Baltic Sea ?  
*A.* Aland, Dago, Oesel, Gothland, Oland, Rugen, Zealand, and Funen.  
 Q. What Islands in the Mediterranean belong to Spain ?  
*A.* Balearic.  
 Q. What Island belongs to France ?  
*A.* Corsica.  
 Q. What Islands belong to Great Britain ?  
*A.* Malta, and Ionian.  
 Q. What Island belongs to Egypt ?  
*A.* Candia.  
 Q. What Island south of Italy ?  
*A.* Sicily.  
 Q. What Mountain do you observe on it ?  
*A.* Etna.  
 Q. What Island east of Greece ?  
*A.* Negropont.  
 Q. What small Island between Tuscany and Corsica ?  
*A.* Elba.  
 This Island is remarkable for being the place to which Napoleon Buonaparte was banished in 1814. (M. G. p. 63.)

Q. What Island bears the same name as a kingdom in Italy ?

A. Sardinia.

Q. What small Island between England and Ireland ?

A. Isle of Man.

#### GULFS.

Q. What gulf between Sweden and Russia ?

A. Bothnia.

Q. What two Gulfs in the Baltic Sea ?

A. Finland, and Riga.

Q. What Gulf south of France ?

A. Lyons.

Q. What Gulf south of the Kingdom of Sardinia ?

A. Genoa.

Q. What Gulf east of Italy ?

A. Venice.

Q. What Gulf in the Black Sea ?

A. Burgas.

Q. What Bay north of Spain ?

A. Biscay.

*Pages 63-4.—Lesson 46.—Map No. 18.*

#### CHANNELS.

Q. What Channel between France and England ?

A. English.

Q. What Channel between Wales and Ireland ?

A. St. George's.

Q. What Channel between Ireland and Scotland ?

A. North.

Q. What Channel between Denmark and Norway ?

A. Skager Rack.

Q. What Channel between Denmark and Sweden ?

A. Cattegat.

Q. What Channel between the Marmora and Black Seas ?

A. Constantinople.

#### STRAITS.

Q. What Strait between France and England ?

A. Dover.

Q. What Strait between Europe and Africa ?

A. Gibraltar.

Q. What Strait between Corsica and Sardinia ?

A. Bonifacio.

Q. What Strait between the Mediterranean and the Sea of Marmora ?

A. Dardanelles.

Q. What Strait between the Black Sea and the Sea of Azov?

A. Enikale.

Q. What Strait between Italy and Turkey?

A. Otranto.

#### MOUNTAINS.

Q. What Mountains form the boundary between Europe and Asia?

A. Ural.

Q. What Mountains divide Sweden and Norway?

A. Dofrafield.

Q. What Mountains divide France and Spain?

A. Pyrenees.

Q. What Mountains in France?

A. Cevennes and Auvergne.

Q. What Mountains in the north of Spain?

A. Cantabrian.

Q. What Mountains in the south of Spain?

A. Sierra Morena and Sierra Nevada.

Q. What Mountains in Switzerland?

A. Alps.

These are the highest in Europe. Mt. Blanc is the highest of the Alps, being nearly three miles high. (M. G. p. 64.)

Q. What Mountains extend through Italy?

A. Apennine.

Q. What Mountains in the east of Austria?

A. Carpathian.

Q. What Mountains extend through Turkey?

A. Balkan.

#### CAPES.

Q. Which is the most northern Cape of Europe?

A. North Cape.

Q. Which is the most southern?

A. Matapan.

Q. Which is the most southern Cape of Norway?

A. The Naze.

Q. Which is the most southern Cape of England?

A. Lizard Point.

Q. Which is the most southern Cape of Ireland?

A. Cape Clear.

Q. Which is the most northern Cape of Spain?

A. Ortegal.

Q. Which is the most western Cape of Spain?

A. Finisterre. (The name is from the Latin *finis terræ*, which is equivalent to the English "Land's-end.")

Q. Which is the most southern cape of Portugal ?

A. St. Vincent.

Q. Which is the most southern cape of Greece ?

A. Matapan.

## RIVERS.

Q. What Rivers flow into the White Sea ?

A. Onega, Dwina, and Mezene.

Q. What Rivers flow into the Gulf of Bothnia ?

A. Umea, Tornea Kalix, Lulea, Skelleftea, Indal, Lutsna and Dal.

Q. What Rivers flow into the Baltic Sea ?

A. Duna, Niemen, Vistula, and Oder.

Q. What Rivers flow into the North Sea ?

A. Elbe, Weser, Ems, and Rhine.

Q. What Rivers flow into the Atlantic Ocean ?

A. Shannon, Seine, Loire, Gironde, Minho, Douro, Tagus, Guadiana, and Guadalquivir.

Q. What Rivers flow into the Mediterranean Sea ?

A. Ebro, Rhone, and Tiber.

Q. What River flows into the Gulf of Venice ?

A. Po.

Q. What Rivers flow into the Black Sea ?

A. Danube, Dniester, Bog, and Dnieper.

Q. What River flows into the Sea of Azov ?

A. Don.

## EUROPE.

*Pages 64-5.—Lesson 47.—Map No. 18.*

## PENINSULAS.

Q. What Peninsula lies west of the Baltic Sea and the Gulf of Bothnia ?

A. Sweden and Norway.\*

Q. What Peninsula lies south of Norway ?

A. Denmark.

Q. What Peninsula lies south of France ?

A. Spain and Portugal.

Q. What Peninsula lies west of the Gulf of Venice ?

A. Italy.

Q. What Peninsula lies south of Turkey ?

A. Greece.

Q. What Peninsula lies west of the sea of Azov ?

A. Crimea.

\* Called the Scandinavian Peninsula.



## DIVISIONS.

- Q. What grand division of the earth lies east of Europe ?  
 A. Asia.
- Q. What country lies east of the Ural Mountains ?  
 A. Siberia.
- Q. Which is the largest division in Europe ?  
 A. Russia.
- Q. What divisions lie west of the Baltic Sea and the Gulf of Bothnia ?  
 A. Sweden and Norway.
- Q. What division lies south of the Baltic Sea ?  
 A. Prussia.
- Q. What division lies west of the Black Sea ?  
 A. Turkey.
- Q. What division lies west of the Archipelago ?  
 A. Greece.
- Q. What division lies west of the Gulf of Venice ?  
 A. Italy.
- Q. What division lies north of the Gulf of Venice ?  
 A. Austria.
- Q. What division lies north of the Mediterranean Sea ?  
 A. France.
- Q. What divisions lie west of the Mediterranean Sea ?  
 A. Spain and Portugal.
- Q. What divisions lie on the Black Sea ?  
 A. Turkey and Russia.
- Q. What seven divisions lie on the North Sea ?  
 A. Norway, Scotland, England, Denmark, Hanover, Holland, and Belgium.
- Q. What divisions lie on the Baltic Sea ?  
 A. Sweden, Denmark, Russia, and Prussia.
- Q. What divisions lie on the Atlantic Ocean ?  
 A. Norway, Scotland, Ireland, France, Spain, and Portugal.
- Q. What divisions lie on the Mediterranean Sea ?  
 A. Spain, France, Italy, and Greece.

## CAPITALS.

- Q. What is the Capital of Sweden ?  
 A. Stockholm.
- Q. Of Russia ?  
 A. St. Petersburg.
- Q. Of Denmark ?  
 A. Copenhagen.
- Q. Of Hanover ?  
 A. Hanover.



- Q.* Of England ?  
*A.* London.  
*Q.* Of Holland ?  
*A.* Hague.  
*Q.* Of Belgium ?  
*A.* Brussels.  
*Q.* Of Prussia ?  
*A.* Berlin.  
*Q.* Of Saxony ?  
*A.* Dresden.  
*Q.* Of Wirtemberg ?  
*A.* Stuttgart.  
*Q.* Of Bavaria ?  
*A.* Munich.  
*Q.* Of Switzerland ?  
*A.* Berne.\*  
*Q.* Of France ?  
*A.* Paris.  
*Q.* Of Spain ?  
*A.* Madrid.  
*Q.* Of Portugal ?  
*A.* Lisbon.  
*Q.* Of Sardinia ?  
*A.* Turin.  
*Q.* Of Tuscany ?  
*A.* Florence ?  
*Q.* Of the Popedom ?  
*A.* Rome.  
*Q.* Of Naples ?  
*A.* Naples.  
*Q.* Of Austria ?  
*A.* Vienna.  
*Q.* Of Turkey ?  
*A.* Constantinople.  
*Q.* Of Greece ?  
*A.* Athens.

## LATITUDE, LONGITUDE, &amp;c.

- Q.* In what Latitude is Europe ?  
*A.* North Latitude.  
*Q.* How do you know it is in North Latitude ?  
*A.* Because it is north of the Equator.  
*Q.* In what Longitude is it mostly ?  
*A.* East Longitude.

---

\* Berne is usually considered the capital of Switzerland ; but Zurich and Lucerne share with it that honour, each being alternately the seat of government for two years at a time. (M. G.)

- Q. How do you know it is in East Longitude ?  
 A. Because the numbers increase towards the right hand.  
 Q. What parts of Europe are in West Longitude ?  
 A. Portugal, Spain, France, England, Scotland, and Ireland.  
 Q. Which is the most northern country of Europe ?  
 A. Norway.  
 Q. Which is the most southern ?  
 A. Greece ?  
 Q. Which is the most eastern ?  
 A. Russia.  
 Q. Which is the most western ?  
 A. Ireland.
- 

## ASIA.

*Pages 65-6-7.—Lesson 48.—Map No. 23.*

- Q. What great division bounds Asia on the west ?  
 A. Europe.  
 Q. What great division bounds Asia on the North-east ?  
 A. North America.\*  
 Q. What great division bounds it on the South-west ?  
 A. Africa.  
 Q. What Ocean bounds it on the north ?  
 A. Arctic, or Northern.  
 Q. What Ocean bounds it on the south ?  
 A. Indian.  
 Q. What Ocean bounds it on the east ?  
 A. Pacific.

## SEAS.

- Q. What Sea divides Asia from Africa ?  
 A. Red.  
 Q. What Sea separates Hindostan from Arabia ?  
 A. Arabian.  
 Q. What Sea lies west of Syria ?  
 A. Mediterranean.  
 Q. What two Seas lie north of Turkey ?  
 A. Marmora, and Black.  
 Q. What Sea lies east of Nova Zembla ?  
 A. Kara.  
 Q. What Sea lies east of Kamtschatka ?  
 A. Kamtschatka.  
 Q. What Sea lies west of Kamtschatka ?  
 A. Ochotsk.  
 Q. What Sea lies west of the Kurile Islands ?  
 A. Jesso.

---

\* Separated from Asia by Bhering's Strait, 40 ms. wide.

Q. What Sea lies between Nippon and Corea ?

A. Japan.

Q. What Sea lies west of Corea ?

A. Yellow.

Q. What Sea lies east of Cochin China ?

A. China.

Asia contains three interior seas :

Q. Which are they ?

A. Caspian, Aral, and Dead.

#### MOUNTAINS.

Q. What Mountains separate Europe from Asia ?

A. Ural.

Q. What Mountains bound Siberia on the south ?

A. Little Altai, and Great Altai.

Q. What Mountains extend through Mongolia ?

A. Thian-Chan.

Q. What Mountains bound Thibet on the north ?

A. Kuen-lun.

Q. What Mountains bound Hindoostan on the north-east ?

A. Himmaleh. (Spelled also Himala and Himalaya.)

Q. Which is the highest of the mountains, and its height ?

A. Choumalarie, 29,000 feet high.\* (M. A.)

Q. What Mountains in the southern part of Hindoostan ?

A. Ghaut.

Q. What Mountains are in Turkey ?

A. Taurus.

Q. What Mountains are in Persia ?

A. Elborz.

Q. What Mountains bound Independent Tartary on the south ?

A. Hindoo Koosh.

Q. What Mountains are in China ?

A. Peling, and Meling.

Q. What Mountains separate Circassia from Georgia ?

A. Caucasus.

#### GULFS.

Q. What three Gulfs are in the north part of Siberia ?

A. Obi, Yenisei, and Lena.

Q. What two Gulfs between Persia and Arabia ?

A. Persian, and Ormus.

Q. What two Gulfs on the west coast of Hindoostan ?

A. Cutch, and Cambay.

Q. What Gulf separates Hindoostan from Ceylon ?

A. Manaar.

---

\* This is the highest mountain in the world ; it is 5½ ms. high. (M. A.)

- Q. What Gulf south of Birmah ?  
 A. Martaban.  
 Q. What Gulf between Siam and Cambodia ?  
 A. Siam.  
 Q. What Gulf east of Anam ?  
 A. Tonquin.  
 Q. What Gulf near the Yellow Sea ?  
 A. Petchelee.  
 Q. What Gulf north of Kamtschatka ?  
 A. Anadir.

## CAPES.

- Q. Which is the most northern Cape of Asia ?  
 A. Cevero Vostochnoi.  
 Q. Which is the most southern Cape ?  
 A. Romania.  
 Q. Which is the most eastern Cape ?  
 A. East Cape.  
 Q. Which are the most southern capes of Hindoostan and Birmah ?  
 A. The most southern Cape of Hindoostan is Comorin ; of Birmah, Negrais.

---

*Pages 67-8.—Lesson 49.—Map No. 23.*

## RIVERS.

- Q. What three great Rivers flow into the Northern Ocean ?  
 A. Obi, Yenisei, and Lena.  
 Q. What River flows into the channel of Tartary ?  
 A. Amoor.  
 Q. What two large Rivers flow through China ?  
 A. Hoang-Ho, and Yang-tse-Kiang.  
 Q. What River separates Cochin China from Cambodia ?  
 A. Cambodia.  
 Q. What River flows into the Gulf of Martaban ?  
 A. Irrawaddy.  
 Q. What two Rivers flow into the Bay of Bengal ?  
 A. Ganges, and Burrampooter.\*  
 Q. What River bounds Hindoostan on the west ?  
 A. Indus.  
 Q. What two Rivers unite and flow into the Persian Gulf ?  
 A. Euphrates, and Tigris.  
 Q. What Rivers flow into the Caspian Sea ?  
 A. Volga, and Ural.  
 Q. What two Rivers flow into the Sea of Aral ?  
 A. Amoo and Sihon.

---

\* This river is also sometimes spelled Brahmapootra, and sometimes Brahmaputra.

*Q.* What River flows through Little Bokhara?

*A.* Cashgar.

## ISLANDS.

*Q.* What Island west of Syria?

*A.* Cyprus.

*Q.* What Island south of Hindoostan?

*A.* Ceylon.

*Q.* What Islands in the Bay of Bengal?

*A.* Andaman, and Nicobar.

*Q.* What Island west of Malacca?

*A.* Pulo Pinang.

*Q.* What Island south of China?

*A.* Hainan.

*Q.* What Islands east of China?

*A.* Formosa, and Loo-choo.

*Q.* What Islands form the Empire of Japan?

*A.* Jesso, Niphon, Sikoke, and Kiusiu.

*Q.* What Island east of Mantchooria?

*A.* Saghalien.

*Q.* What Islands south of Kamtschatka?

*A.* Kurile.

*Q.* What range of Islands east of Kamtschatka?

*A.* Aleutian, or Fox.

*Q.* What three Islands north of Siberia?

*A.* Kotelnoi, Liaghoff, and New Siberia.

## STRAITS.

*Q.* What Strait separates Asia from North America?

*A.* Bhering's.

*Q.* What Strait between the Islands of Jesso and Niphon?

*A.* Matsmay.

*Q.* What Strait between Corea and Japan?

*A.* Corea.

*Q.* What Strait between China and Formosa?

*A.* Formosa.

*Q.* What Strait between Malacca and Sumatra?

*A.* Malacca.

*Q.* What Strait between Arabia and Abyssinia?

*A.* Babelmandeb.

*Q.* What two great divisions does this Strait separate?

*A.* Asia and Africa.

## PENINSULAS.

*Q.* What Peninsula lies between the Persian Gulf and the Red Sea?

*A.* Arabia,

*Q.* What Peninsula south of Siam?

*A.* Malacca.

*Q.* What Peninsula between the Yellow Sea and the Sea of Japan?

*A.* Corea.

*Q.* What Peninsula between the seas of Ochotsk and Kamtschatka?

*A.* Kamtschatka.

#### ISTHMUSES.

*Q.* What Isthmus between the Red Sea and the Mediterranean Sea?

*A.* Suez.

*Q.* What two great divisions does it unite?

*A.* Asia and Africa.

*Q.* What Isthmus west of the Gulf of Siam?

*A.* Kraw.

### *Pages 68-9.—Lesson 50.—Map No. 23.*

#### LAKES.

*Q.* What three Lakes are in the southern part of Siberia?

*A.* Tchany, Altyn, and Baikal.

*Q.* What two are in Soongaria?

*A.* Balcash and Zaizan Nor.

The word Nor, in Central or Middle Asia, appears to mean Lake. (M. G. p. 68.)

*Q.* What Lake is in Little Bokhara?

*A.* Lop-Nor.

*Q.* What three Lakes in China?

*A.* Koko-Nor, Yonting, and Poyang.

*Q.* What Lake in Afghanistan?

*A.* Zurrah.

The Caspian, Aral, and Dead Seas, are in fact Lakes, but have been called Seas, because their waters are salt. (M. G. p. 68.)

#### DIVISIONS.

*Q.* To what Empire do the northern parts of Asia belong?

*A.* Russian.

*Q.* What Empire in the middle and eastern parts of Asia?

*A.* Chinese.

*Q.* What great division in the south of Asia?

*A.* India.

*Q.* What country north of the Altai Mountains?

*A.* Siberia.

*Q.* What great division south of the Altai Mountains?

*A.* Chinese Tartary.



*Q.* What great division east of the Caspian Sea?

*A.* Independent Tartary.

*Q.* What country south of the Black Sea?

*A.* Turkey.

*Q.* What country east of the Mediterranean Sea?

*A.* Syria.

*Q.* What country east of the Red Sea?

*A.* Arabia.

*Q.* What country south of the Caspian Sea?

*A.* Persia.

*Q.* What countries east of Persia?

*A.* Afghanistan and Beloochistan.

*Q.* What country between the Arabian Sea and the Bay of Bengal?

*A.* Hindoostan. (This is often written Hindostan.)

*Q.* What countries east of the Bay of Bengal?

*A.* Birmah and Siam.

*Q.* What division east of the Cambodia River?

*A.* Anam.

*Q.* What countries are included in Anam?

*A.* Cambodia, Cochin China, Tonquin, and part of Laos.

*Q.* What country north of Anam?

*A.* China.

The Chinese Empire includes nine different countries.

*Q.* What are they?

*A.* Soongaria, Mongolia, Mantchooria, Little Bokhara, Little Thibet, Thibet, Bootan, Corea, and China.

Independent Tartary includes six different countries.

*Q.* What are they?

*A.* Kirguis, Turcomania, Khiva, Khokan, Bokhara, and Koon-dooz.

Afghanistan includes two different States.

*Q.* What are they?

*A.* Herat and Cabul.

*Q.* What Empire lies east of the Chinese Empire?

*A.* Japan.

#### CAPITALS.

*Q.* What is the capital of Siberia?

*A.* Tobolsk.

*Q.* Of the Tartar States, Khokan, Khiva, and Bokhara?

*A.* Khokan, Khiva, and Bokhara.

*Q.* Of Persia?

*A.* Teheran.

*Q.* Of the Arabian States, Hedjaz, Yemen, Nedsjed, and Oman?

*A.* *Hedjaz*, Mecca; *Yemen*, Sana; *Nedsjed*, Deraia; *Oman*, Muscat.

*Q.* Of Herat?

*A.* Herat.

*Q.* Of Cabul?

*A.* Cabul.

*Q.* Of Lahore?

*A.* Lahore.

*Q.* Of Hindoostan?

*A.* Calcutta.

This city is more properly the capital of British India. There are several capitals of native states, but Calcutta is the seat of the ruling power in Hindoostan.

*Q.* Of Thibet?

*A.* Lassa.

*Q.* Of Birmah?

*A.* Ava.

*Q.* Of Siam?

*A.* Bangkok.

*Q.* Of Anam?

*A.* Hue.

*Q.* Of China?

*A.* Pekin.

*Q.* Of Corea?

*A.* Kingkitao.

*Q.* Of Japan?

*A.* Jedo.

#### CIRCLES, ZONES, LATITUDE, &c.

*Q.* What country in Asia does the Arctic Circle pass through?

*A.* Siberia.

*Q.* What countries does the Tropic of Cancer pass through?

*A.* Arabia, Hindoostan, Birmah, and China.

*Q.* In what zone is the northern part of Asia?

*A.* North Frigid.

*Q.* In what zone is the central part of Asia?

*A.* North Temperate.

*Q.* In what zone is the southern part of Asia?

*A.* Torrid.

*Q.* In what Latitude is Asia wholly?

*A.* North Latitude.

*Q.* How do you know it is in North Latitude?

*A.* Because the numbers increase from the bottom towards the top of the Map. (M. G. p. 24-5.)

- Q. In what Longitude is Asia from Greenwich ?  
 A. East Longitude.  
 Q. How do you know it is in East Longitude ?  
 A. Because the numbers increase towards the right hand. (M  
 G. p. 26.)
- 

## AFRICA.

*Pages 69-70.—Lesson 51.—Map No. 25.*

- Q. What Sea bounds Africa on the north ?  
 A. Mediterranean.  
 Q. What Sea bounds it on the east ?  
 A. Red.  
 Q. What Ocean bounds it on the east ?  
 A. Indian.  
 Q. What Ocean bounds it on the West ?  
 A. Atlantic.

## STRAITS.

- Q. What Strait separates Morocco from Spain ?  
 A. Gibraltar.  
 Q. What Strait separates Abyssinia from Arabia ?  
 A. Babelmandeb.

## GULFS.

- Q. What Gulf between Tripoli and Barca ?  
 A. Sidra.  
 Q. What Gulf between Berbera and Arabia ?  
 A. Aden.  
 Q. What Gulf south of Upper Guinea ?  
 A. Gulf of Guinea.

## BAYS.

- Q. What Bays on the southern part of the west coast ?  
 A. Great Fish, Walvisch, Santa Cruz, and St. Helena.  
 Q. What Bay on the east coast north of Caffraria ?  
 A. Delagoa.

## CHANNELS.

- Q. What Channel between Madagascar and Mozambique ?  
 A. Mozambique.

## CAPES.

- Q. Which is the most northern Cape of Africa ?  
 A. Bon. (Sometimes written Bona.)  
 Q. Which is the most southern Cape ?  
 A. Agulhas.  
 Q. Which is the most eastern Cape ?  
 A. Guardafui.

Q. Which is the most western Cape?

A. Verde.

Q. What celebrated Cape near the southern extremity of Africa?

A. Cape of Good Hope.

Q. What two Capes on the Desert coast?

A. Bojador, and Blanco.

Q. What Cape at the southern extremity of Liberia?

A. Palmas.

Q. What Cape at the northern extremity of Mozambique?

A. Delgado.

Q. What Cape at the northern extremity of Zanguebar?

A. Bassas.

#### RIVERS.

Q. Which is the principal River in Africa?

A. Nile.

The Nile is remarkable for flowing 1600 miles without receiving the smallest tributary. (M. G. p. 70.)

Q. Into what Sea does the Nile empty?

A. Mediterranean.

Q. What are its three chief branches?

A. El Abiad, Bahr el Azrek or Abawi, and Tacazze.

Q. What three Rivers empty into the Atlantic Ocean on the west coast of Africa?

A. Senegal, Gambia, and Rio Grande.

Q. What River in Liberia?

A. St. Paul's.

Q. What River empties into the Gulf of Guinea?

A. Niger.

This is a very remarkable river; though heard of 20 centuries ago, its source and mouth were discovered only a few years since. (M. G. p. 70.)

Q. What River between Angola and Benguela?

A. Coanza.

Q. What River between Loango and Congo?

A. Congo.

Q. What River south of Benguela?

A. Bembaroughe.

Q. What River runs through the country of the Hottentots?

A. Orange.

Q. What River flows into Delagoa Bay?

A. Manice.

Q. What River flows into the Mozambique Channel?

A. Zambeze.

Q. What Rivers run through Zanguebar?

A. Ozee and Webbe.

*Q.* What Rivers flow into Lake Tchad ?

*A.* Yeou and Shary.

## LAKES.

*Q.* What two Lakes in Soudan ?

*A.* Tchad and Fittre.

*Q.* What Lake north of Bambarra ?

*A.* Dibbie.

*Q.* What Lake in Abyssinia ?

*A.* Dembea.

*Q.* What Lake in Barbary ?

*A.* Lowdeah.

*Q.* What Lake west of Zanguebar and Mozambique ?

*A.* Maravi. (Salt.)

*Pages 70-1.—Lesson 52.—Map No. 25.*

## ISLANDS.

*Q.* What three groups of Islands in the Atlantic Ocean belong to Portugal ?

*A.* Azore, Madeira, and Cape Verde.

*Q.* What group of Islands belong to Spain ?

*A.* Canary.

*Q.* What three Islands in the Gulf of Guinea belong to Portugal ?

*A.* Prince's, St. Thomas's, and Annobon.

*Q.* Which is the most northern Island in the Gulf of Guinea ?

*A.* Fernando Po.

*Q.* What two Islands south of the Equator belong to Great Britain ?

*A.* Ascension and St. Helena.

St. Helena is remarkable for being the place of imprisonment and burial of Napoleon Buonaparte. He died here in 1821, after a residence of six years. In the year 1840 his remains were taken to France. (M. G. p. 70.)

*Q.* What great Archipelago in the Indian Ocean ?

*A.* Ethiopian.

*Q.* Which are its principal Islands and groups ?

*A.* Madagascar, Comoro, Seychelle, Almirante and Mascarenha.

*Q.* Which are the Mascarenha Islands ?

*A.* Bourbon and Mauritius.

The latter is often called the Isle of France.

*Q.* What Islands belong to Great Britain ?

*A.* Mauritius, Seychelle, and Almirante.

*Q.* What Island belongs to France ?

*A.* Bourbon.



- Q. What Islands belong to Muscat ?  
*A.* Pemba, Zanzibar, and Monfia.  
 Q. What Islands between Madagascar and Mozambique ?  
*A.* Comoro.  
 Q. What Islands north-east of Cape Gardafui ?  
*A.* Socotra, and Abd' el Curia.  
 Q. To what power does Socotra belong ?  
*A.* To Keshin. (This is a petty state on the southern coast of Arabia.)

## MOUNTAINS.

- Q. What Mountains extend through Barbary ?  
*A.* Atlas.  
 Q. Which is the highest Peak of the Atlas Mountains ?  
*A.* Mt. Miltsin.  
 Q. How high is it ?  
*A.* 11,900 feet. (M. A.)  
 Q. What Mountains between Soudan and Guinea ?  
*A.* Kong.  
 Q. What Mountains between Soudan and Ethicpia ?  
*A.* Mountains of the Moon, or Jibbel el Kumri.  
 Q. What Mountains in Congo ?  
*A.* Crystal.  
 Q. What Mountains in Cape Colony ?  
*A.* Snow, or Sneeuw Bergen.  
 Q. What Mountains west of Mozambique ?  
*A.* Lupata.

These Mountains have been called by Geographers the Backbone of the world, but their very existence is now considered doubtful. (M. G. p. 71.)

- Q. What Mountains in Madagascar ?  
*A.* Radama, and Red.

## DIVISIONS.

- Q. What great division occupies the northern part of Africa ?  
*A.* Barbary.  
 Q. What States does Barbary include ?  
*A.* Morocco, Algiers, Tunis, Tripoli, and Beled-el-Jerid.  
 Q. What great division lies south of Barbary ?  
*A.* Great Desert.  
 Q. What great divisions lie south of the Great Desert ?  
*A.* Soudan, and Senegambia.  
 Q. What great divisions lie south of Soudan ?  
*A.* Upper Guinea, Lower Guinea, and Ethioplia.  
 Q. What great division lies west of Soudan ?  
*A.* Senegambia.



Q. What great division on the west coast, on both sides of the Equator?

A. Lower Guinea.

Q. What great division on the east coast, on both sides of the Equator?

A. Zanguebar.

Q. What great division lies south of the Mountains of the Moon?

A. Ethiopia.

Q. What colony occupies the southern extremity of Africa?

A. Cape Colony.

Q. What two races of men inhabit the country north of Cape Colony?

A. Hottentots, and Boshuanas.

*Pages 71-2.—Lesson 53.—Map No. 25.*

Q. What countries lie on the Red Sea?

A. Egypt, Nubia, and Abyssinia.

Q. In what country are the mouths of the river Nile situated?

A. Egypt.

Q. What is the district comprised between the outlets of the river Nile called?

A. Delta.

Q. What is a Delta?

A. It is a term applied to those districts embraced by the outlets of rivers. The Nile, Niger, Ganges, Mississippi, and other great streams, have each their respective deltas. (M. G. p. 72.)

DESERTS.

Q. What Desert occupies a large portion of the north of Africa?

A. Great Desert.

Q. What Desert between the river Nile and the Red Sea?

A. Nubian.

A. What Desert is crossed by the Tropic of Capricorn?

A. Challahengah.

Q. How long and wide is the Great Desert?

A. It is 3,000 miles long, and 1,000 wide. (M. A.)

This is the largest Desert in the world; and though extremely hot, and in most places destitute of water, yet contains a number of fertile spots called Oases, all of which are inhabited. (M. G. p. 72.)

OASES.

Q. Which are the five principal Oases?

A. Fezzan, Tuat, Agdass, Bilmah, and Tibesty.

There are four other Oases.

Q. Which are they?

A. Augela, Siwah, El Dakhel, and El Khargeh.

*Q.* What is the western part of the Great Desert called ?

*A.* Sahara.

#### CAPITALS.

*Q.* What is the Capital of Morocco ?

*A.* Morocco.

*Q.* Of Algiers ? (Called Algeria by the French. The name is now becoming familiar with us.)

*A.* Algiers.

*Q.* Of Tunis ?

*A.* Tunis.

*Q.* Of Tripoli ?

*A.* Tripoli.

*Q.* Of Fezzan ?

*A.* Mourzuk.

*Q.* Of Egypt ?

*A.* Cairo.

*Q.* Of Nubia ?

*A.* New Dongola.

*Q.* Of Foota Jallon ?

*A.* Timboo.

*Q.* Of Ashantee ?

*A.* Coomassie.

*Q.* Of Dahomey ?

*A.* Abomey ?

*Q.* Of Benin ?

*A.* Benin.

*Q.* Of Kaarta ?

*A.* Kemmoo.

*Q.* Of Timbuctoo ?

*A.* Timbuctoo.

*Q.* Of Bambarra ?

*A.* Sego.

*Q.* Of Houssa ?

*A.* Kashna.

Soccatoo, or Sackatoo, the chief city of the Fellatahs, the ruling people in Soudan, is perhaps more properly the capital of Houssa.

*Q.* Of Yaribba ?

*A.* Eyeo.

*Q.* Of Bornou ?

*A.* Kouka.

*Q.* Of Bergoo ?

*A.* Wara.

*Q.* Of Darfur ?

*A.* Cobbe.

- Q.* Of Kordofan ?  
*A.* Ibeit.  
*Q.* Of Abyssinia ?  
*A.* Gondar.  
*Q.* Of Congo ?  
*A.* St. Salvador.  
*Q.* Of Angola ?  
*A.* St. Paul de Loando.  
*Q.* Of Benguela ?  
*A.* St. Felipe de Benguela.  
*Q.* Of Cazembe ?  
*A.* Cazembe.  
*Q.* Of Monomotapa ?  
*A.* Zimbao.  
*Q.* Of Mozambique ?  
*A.* Mozambique.  
*Q.* Of Cape Colony ?  
*A.* Cape Town.  
*Q.* Of Imerina ?  
*A.* Tananarivou.

## TROPICS, ZONES, LATITUDE, &amp;c.

- Q.* What parts of Africa are crossed by the Tropic of Cancer ?  
*A.* The Great Desert, and Egypt.  
*Q.* What parts by the Equator ?  
*A.* Lower Guinea, Ethiopia, and Zanguebar.  
*Q.* What parts by the Tropic of Capricorn ?  
*A.* Hottentot country, Desert of Challahengah, Boshuana country, and Mozambique.  
*Q.* In what Zone is Africa mostly ?  
*A.* Torrid.  
*Q.* In what Zone is that part of it north of the Tropic of Cancer ?  
*A.* North Temperate.  
*Q.* In what Zone is that part of it south of the Tropic of Capricorn ?  
*A.* South Temperate.

Africa comprises about 37 degrees of North Latitude, and 35 degrees of South Latitude.

- Q.* In what Latitude then is it mostly situated ?  
*A.* North Latitude.

Africa comprises more than 50 degrees of East Longitude, and about 18 degrees of West Longitude.

- Q.* It what Longitude is it then mostly ?  
*A.* East Longitude.

## OCEANICA.

*Pages 72-3.—Lesson 54.—Map No. 28.*

## DIVISIONS.

- Q. Which are the three grand divisions of Oceanica ?  
*A.* Malaysia, Australasia, and Polynesia.  
 Q. Which is the largest division of Oceanica ?  
*A.* Polynesia.  
 Q. Which is the smallest division of Oceanica ?  
*A.* Malaysia.

## ISLANDS.

- Q. What three considerable Islands does the Equator pass through in Malaysia ?  
*A.* Sumatra, Borneo, and Celebes.  
 Q. What Island lies south-east of Sumatra ?  
*A.* Java.  
 Q. What five Islands east of Java ?  
*A.* Bally, Sumbawa, Jeendana, Floris, and Timor.  
 Q. What Islands east of Celebes ?  
*A.* Spice.  
 Q. What Islands east of the China Sea ?  
*A.* Philippine.  
 Q. Which are the the two largest of the Philippine Islands ?  
*A.* Luzon, and Mindanao.

## STRAITS.

- Q. What Strait separates Sumatra from Malacca ?  
*A.* Malaçca.  
 Q. What Strait separates Sumatra from Java ?  
*A.* Sunda.  
 American vessels generally pass through the Straits of Sunda, on going to or returning from China. (M. G. p. 73.)  
 Q. What Strait between Borneo and Celebes ?  
*A.* Macassar.

## ISLANDS.

- Q. What Islands between Borneo and Mindanao ?  
*A.* Sooloo.

## MOUNTAIN.

- Q. What Mountain in Sumatra directly under the Equator ?  
*A.* Mount Ophir.

## ISLANDS.

- Q. Which is the largest Island of Australasia ?  
*A.* Australia, or New Holland.  
 Q. What are its divisions ?  
*A.* North Australia, South Australia, West Australia, and New South Wales.

## COLONIES.

Q. What Colony on the east coast of Australia?

A. Botany Bay.

Q. What Colony on the west coast?

A. Swan River.

Q. What Colony on the South?

A. South Australia.

## ISLAND.

Q. What Island south of Australia?

A. Van Diemen's Land or Tasmania.

## STRAITS.

Q. What Strait separates Australia from Van Diemen's Land?

A. Bass'.

Q. What Strait separates Australia from Papua or New Guinea?

A. Torres'.

## GULFS.

Q. What two Gulfs on opposite sides of Australia?

A. Carpentaria, and Spencer's.

## RIVER, &amp;c.

Q. Which is the principal River in Australia?

A. Murray.

Q. Which are the principal Mountains in Australia?

A. Blue, and Berkeley's. (The southern part of the Blue Mountains is called the Australian Alps.)

Q. Which is the principal town?

A. Sydney.

## ISLANDS, &amp;c.

Q. What large Island north of Australia?

A. Papua or New Guinea.

Q. What Islands north-east of Australia?

A. Solomon's Archipelago, New Georgia, New Ireland, New Britain, and Louisiade.

Q. What Islands east of Australia?

A. New Hebrides, New Caledonia, and Norfolk.

Q. What Sea between Australia and New Hebrides?

A. Coral.

Q. What Islands south-east of Australia?

A. New Zealand.

Q. What Strait between the two largest Islands of New Zealand?

A. Cook's.

Q. What Strait between the middle and southernmost Islands of New Zealand?

A. Foveaux.



*Q.* What Bays in the northern part of New Zealand?

*A.* Bay of Islands and Bay of Plenty.

*Page 74.—Lesson 55.—Map No. 28.*

ARCHIPELAGOES AND ISLANDS.

*Q.* Which Archipelago of Polynesia does the Equator pass through?

*A.* Central.

*Q.* Which are the principal Archipelagoes and Islands of Polynesia, north of the Equator?

*A.* Magellan's Archipelago, Anson's Archipelago, Caroline Islands, Ladrone Islands, Sandwich Islands, and America Islands.

*Q.* What Archipelago lies on the 140th meridian of Longitude west from Greenwich?

*A.* Mendana's.

*Q.* What groups of Islands does it contain?

*A.* Washington Islands, and Marquesas Islands.

*Q.* Which are the principal Islands east of the 160th meridian of Longitude west from Greenwich, and south of the Equator.

*A.* Society Islands, Georgian Islands, Cook's or Hervey's Islands, Austral Islands, Palliser's Islands, Paumotu or Pearl Islands, Gambier Islands, Prince of Wales Islands, and King George's Islands.

*Q.* Which are the principal Islands that lie west of the 160th meridian of Longitude west from Greenwich, and south of the Equator?

*A.* Navigator's Islands, Friendly Islands, Fejee Islands, Habaii Islands, Tonga Islands, and Kermadec Isles.

*Q.* Which is the most northern Island of Polynesia?

*A.* Mellishes.

*Q.* Which are the most southern Isles of Polynesia?

*A.* Kermadec.

*Q.* Which is the most eastern Island of Polynesia?

*A.* Easter.

*Q.* Which are the most western Islands of Polynesia?

*A.* St. Andrew's.

The most important group of Islands belonging to Polynesia is on the 20th parallel of North Latitude.

*Q.* Which is it?

*A.* Sandwich.

*Q.* Which is the principal of the Sandwich Islands?

*A.* Hawaii or Owhyhee.

*Q.* What high mountain is on the Island of Hawaii and its height?

*A.* Mouna Roah, Mt., 16,000 feet high. (M. A.)



*Q.* What distinguished personage was killed here in the year 1779?

*A.* Captain Cook.

TROPICS, ZONES, &c.

*Q.* What Tropic crosses the northern part of Oceanica?

*A.* Tropic of Cancer.

*Q.* What Tropic crosses the southern part?

*A.* Tropic of Capricorn?

*Q.* What great circle crosses the central or middle part?

*A.* Equator.

*Q.* In what Zone is the northern part of Oceanica?

*A.* North Temperate.

*Q.* In what Zone is the middle part?

*A.* Torrid.

*Q.* In what Zone is the southern part?

*A.* South Temperate.

Oceanica comprises 50 degrees of South Latitude, and 40 North Latitude.

*Q.* In what Latitude, then, is it mostly?

*A.* South Latitude.

Oceanica comprises about 85 degrees of east, and 72 of west longitude from Greenwich.

*Q.* In what Longitude, then, is it mostly?

*A.* East.

## PART SECOND.

### DESCRIPTIVE GEOGRAPHY.

#### NORTH AMERICA.

*Pages 85-6.—Lesson 62.—Map No. 4.*

##### DIVISIONS.

*Q.* How is Russian America bounded ?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the Arctic Ocean, E. by British America, from which it is separated by the  $141^{\circ}$  of longitude W. from Greenwich ; S. by the Pacific Ocean and British America ; and W. by Bhering's Strait and the Pacific Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital ?

*A.* New Archangel. (This is merely a fortified trading post, on Sitcha island, with a small village attached to it.)

RUSSIAN AMERICA comprehends the N. W. part of N. America, being that part of it adjacent to Asia, between  $54^{\circ} 40'$  and  $71^{\circ} 20'$  N. lat., and  $130^{\circ}$  and  $168^{\circ}$  W. long. Area estimated at 500,000 sq. ms., including the Aleutian islands and several other groups. Pop., according to Balbi, 50,000.

*Q.* How is British America bounded ?

*A.* This country, taken in its full extent, is bounded N. by the Arctic Ocean, N. E. and E. by Baffin's Bay, Davis' Strait, and the Atlantic Ocean ; S. by the U. S. and the Atlantic Ocean ; and W. by Russian America and the Pacific Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital ?

*A.* Montreal.

That part of America now belonging to Great Britain, is an assemblage of vast, ill-defined, and straggling territories, the remnant of that mighty empire of which the American revolution deprived her. Their great extent and resources will, however, one day enable them to equal some of the most potent of the now existing states.

Area, 2,310,000 sq. ms.—Pop. 1,690,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* How are the United States bounded ?

*A.* They occupy the middle division of N. America, and are bounded N. by British America, E. by New Brunswick and the Atlantic Ocean, S. by the Gulf of Mexico, Mexico, and Upper California, and W. by the Pacific Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital ?

*A.* Washington.

The territory of the United States lies between  $25^{\circ}$  and  $49^{\circ}$  of N. lat., and between  $66^{\circ} 50'$  and  $125^{\circ}$  W. long. from Greenwich; or between  $9^{\circ} 35'$  E., and  $48^{\circ} 20'$  W. long. from Washington. Its greatest length is 3000 ms., and its greatest breadth is 1700 ms., containing, exclusive of Texas, about 2,300,000 sq. ms. It has a frontier line of about 10,000 ms.; a sea-coast of 3600; and a lake coast of 1200 ms. It contains about one-twentieth of the habitable land of the whole earth. The population in 1790 was 3,929,328; in 1800, 5,309,758; in 1810, 7,239,903; in 1820, 9,638,166; in 1830, 12,856,165; in 1840, 17,062,666; of which 2,487,116 were slaves. Employed in agriculture, 3,717,756; in commerce, 117,575; in manufactures and trades, 791,545; navigating the ocean, 56,025; navigating rivers, lakes, canals, &c., 33,067; in mining, 15,203; learned professions, 65,236.

The foregoing statement excludes the Indians, who are never reckoned in the population of the U. S. It excludes Texas also, the latest census being that of 1840. The population of the U. S. is now (1846) estimated at 20 millions.

*Q.* How is Mexico bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by Upper California and the U. States; E. by the U. S. and the Gulf of Mexico; S. E. by the Caribbean Sea; S. by Guatemala; and S. W. and W. by the Pacific Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Mexico.

MEXICO was until recently an extensive territory, but of late years it has been much abridged. Texas has been separated from it since 1836, and Upper California was taken possession of by the United States in 1846. Originally it was a native empire; afterwards it became the principal of the Spanish viceroyalties; it was for some time a federal, but is now a central republic of North America, situated chiefly in the southern part. When entire, it lay between  $16^{\circ} 40'$  and  $42^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $86^{\circ} 40'$  and  $124^{\circ} 30'$  W. long. Extreme length from S. E. to N. W., about 2700 ms.; greatest breadth, from E. to W., near 1000 ms. The area was estimated at about 1,656,000 sq. ms., but now it is reduced to from 920,000 to 980,000 sq. ms., or four and a half times the extent of France. The best authorities reckon the population at about 7,000,000.

*Q.* How is Guatemala bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by Mexico, Yucatan, Balize, and the Bay of Honduras; E. by the Caribbean Sea; S. E. by the Colombian province of the Isthmus; and S. and S. W. by the Pacific. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* San Salvador.

GUATEMALA, or CENTRAL AMERICA. Under this term is included the long and comparatively narrow tract of country connecting the continents of N. and S. America, lying between lat.  $8^{\circ} 5'$  and  $16^{\circ} 60'$  N., and long.  $80^{\circ} 50'$  and  $94^{\circ} 12'$  W. Length N. W. to S. E., about 1000 ms., breadth varying from 90 to 250 ms. The area has been estimated at 200,500 sq. ms. Pop. 2,000,000. As in all the Spanish American States, the proportion of whites to the entire population is small; the native Indians and the half-breeds form a great majority.

*Q.* How is Balize bounded ?

*A.* It is bounded N. and E. by the Bay of Honduras ; S. by Guatemala ; and W. and N. W. by Yucatan. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital ?

*A.* Balize.

BALIZE or British Honduras, is a settlement belonging to Great Britain, on the E. side of the peninsula of Yucatan, chiefly between  $16^{\circ}$  and  $18^{\circ} 25'$  N. lat. and  $88^{\circ} 15'$  and  $89^{\circ} 35'$  W. long. It is extensive, for its population, the latter is about 4000, of whom only 300 are whites. The felling and exporting of mahogany and logwood are the chief pursuits.

*A.* How is North America bounded ?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the Arctic Ocean ; E. by the Atlantic Ocean, which separates it from Europe and Africa ; S. and W. by the Pacific Ocean, which separates it from Asia, Australasia, and Polynesia. (M. A.)

NORTH AMERICA comprises that portion of the New World extending northward from the Isthmus of Darien. The area of this vast region is estimated at from 7,400,000, to 7,950,000 sq. ms. Its sea-coast has an extent of about 9500 ms. on the eastern and somewhat less on the western side, exclusive of that on the frozen shores of the northern borders.

AMERICA, or the New World, is one of the great divisions of the globe, surpassing all the others in magnitude, with the exception of Asia, to which, however, it is but little inferior. This vast continent stretches N. and S. a distance of about 9000 ms., or from about  $71^{\circ}$  N. lat., to Cape Horn, in about  $56^{\circ}$  S. lat., and from  $35^{\circ}$  to  $168'$  W. long. from Greenwich. Where broadest, N. America, excluding Greenland, is about 3200 ms. across, and S. America is about the same width. It is very irregularly shaped, being divided by the Gulf of Mexico and the Caribbean Sea into the two enormous peninsulas of N. and S. America, united by the Isthmus of Darien, not more than 36 ms. across. The estimates that have been formed of the area of America differ widely. Balbi supposes it to amount to 14,790,000 sq. ms., and Hassel, about 16,500,000 sq. ms. The following estimate, which is that given in the article *America* in the new edition of the *Encyclopædia Britannica*, does not differ materially from Balbi's ; and the ability with which the article referred to is written, renders its statements of the highest authority.

|                                                                            | sq. Eng. ms. |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| North America .....                                                        | 7,400,000    |
| South America .....                                                        | 6,500,000    |
| Islands .....                                                              | 150,000      |
| Greenland and the islands connected }<br>with it N. of Hudson's Straits. } | 900,000      |
| Total.....                                                                 | 14,950,000   |

In Mitchell's Atlas, the area of America is estimated at 15 millions sq. ms., which seems to be about a fair average of the different authorities.

In 1838, the population was estimated by McCulloch at 46,931,000. Some authors of the same period do not carry it beyond 40,000,000, though this is obviously a low calculation. (In 1846, according to M. A., the population is 50,465,000 ; this is estimating the U. S. at 20,000,000.)



## GULFS.

*Q.* Where is Coronation Gulf?

*A.* It is on the N. coast of British America, and leads into the Polar Sea. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Boothia?

*A.* It is in the N. part of British America; having Prince William's Land on the N., Melville Peninsula on the E., Boothia Felix on the N. W., and leads into Prince Regent's Inlet, and the Polar Sea. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of St. Lawrence?

*A.* It is bounded N. by Canada East and Labrador, S. by Nova Scotia and Cape Breton Island, E. by Newfoundland, and W. by New Brunswick and the peninsula of Gaspé (Canada East), and leads into the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

This gulf lies chiefly between the 46th and 51st degs. of N. lat., and the 57th and 65th of W. long. At its N. W. extremity it receives the River St. Lawrence; and it communicates with the Atlantic on the N. E. by the Strait of Belleisle, between Labrador and Newfoundland; on the S. E. by its principal outlet, the Channel called St. Paul's, between Newfoundland and Cape Breton; and on the S. by the Gut of Canso, between Cape Breton and Nova Scotia. It contains the large Islands of Anticosti and Prince Edward; and the Magdalen Islands, a group about lat.  $47^{\circ} 30'$ , and between long.  $61^{\circ} 27'$  and  $62^{\circ}$  W., inhabited by perhaps 1000 Canadian, French, English, and Irish settlers, who carry on a profitable fishery. The Is. of St. Pierre and Miquelon, which lie E. of the Magdalen group, belong to France.

*Q.* Where is Welcome Gulf?

*A.* It is in the N. part of Hudson's Bay; having N. Melville Peninsula, E. Southampton Island, and leads into Fox Channel. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Georgia?

*A.* It separates Quadra and Vancouver's Island from Oregon Territory, and leads into the Pacific Ocean. (M. A.)

This gulf is about 120 ms. in length from N. to S., but the breadth varies from 6 to 20 ms. It contains several clusters of islands, and branches off into a great number of canals, most of which were examined by Captain Vancouver and his officers. On the N. it is connected with the Pacific by Queen Charlotte's Sound, and on the S. by the Straits of Juan de Fuca.

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of California?

*A.* It is on the W. Coast of Mexico, between Mexico and the Peninsula of Old California, and leads into the Pacific Ocean. (M. A.)

This gulf extends from about  $23^{\circ} 30'$  to  $32^{\circ}$  N. lat. Its length is above 700 ms.; its breadth varies from about 40 to 150 ms. It is sometimes called Vermillion Sea, also the Sea of Cortez.

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Mexico?

*A.* It is S. of the U. S., and E. of Mexico; bounded N. W., N., and N. E. by the U. S., E. by Cuba, S. E. by the Peninsula

of Yucatan, and S. and W. by Mexico, and leads into the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

This is a large inland sea, on the S. E. coast of N. America, connected by the Florida channel with the Atlantic Ocean, and by the channel of Yucatan with the Caribbean Sea, situated between lat.  $18^{\circ} 10'$  and  $30^{\circ} 20'$  N., and between long.  $81^{\circ}$  and  $98^{\circ}$  W. Length from E. to W. 1000 ms., breadth 800 ms., area about 800,000 sq. ms.

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Tehuantepec?

*A.* It is a semi-elliptical indentation of that part of the Pacific Ocean, stretching between Guatemala and the state of Oaxaca in Mexico. (M. A.)

*Q.* What is a Gulf or Bay?

*A.* It is a part of the sea extending into the land, as the Gulf of Mexico, Hudson's Bay, &c. (M. G. p. 10.)

#### BAYS.

*Q.* Where is Bristol Bay?

*A.* It is W. of the Peninsula of Alaska, and leads into the Pacific Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Melville Bay?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Greenland, and leads into Baffin's Bay. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Hudson's Bay?

*A.* It is a large bay, extending from the Atlantic Ocean westward nearly into the centre of British America, having East Maine on the E., James' Bay on the S., and New South Wales and New North Wales on the S. W. and W., and leads into the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

This is a large Bay or inland sea, extending between  $51^{\circ}$  and  $64^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $76^{\circ}$  and  $95^{\circ} 30'$  W. long., and surrounded on all sides by the partially explored British territories. Its length from S. S. E. to N. N. W. is nearly 1200 ms.; greatest breadth estimated at 600 ms.; area, probably near 350,000 sq. ms. It is connected with the Atlantic by Hudson's Straits, a sea about 500 ms. in length, and generally upwards of 100 ms. in breadth. The southern part, extending from about  $51^{\circ}$  to  $55^{\circ}$  N. lat., is called James' Bay.

*Q.* Where is Musquito Bay?

*A.* It is in the E. part of Hudson's Bay. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Ungava Bay?

*A.* It is on the N. coast of Labrador, and leads by Hudson's Strait into the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is James' Bay?

*A.* It is the southern extension of Hudson's Bay, lying N. of Canada West. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is San Francisco Bay?

*A.* It is on the coast of Upper California, and leads into the Pacific Ocean. (M. A.)



*Q.* Where is the Bay of Fundy?

*A.* It is between Nova Scotia and New Brunswick, and leads into the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

This bay sets up between Cape Sable, the S. point of Nova Scotia, and Mount Desert Island, in Me., a distance of 150 ms. From Eastport to St. Johns, New Brunswick, is 60 ms. The Bay is divided, in its N. E. part, into 2 branches, the N. W. called Chignecto Bay, the head of which is 170 ms. from Eastport. The S. E. part is called the Basin of Mines, 150 ms. from Eastport.

*Q.* Where is Delaware Bay?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of the U. S., situated between the States of N. J. and Del., and leads into the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

This is a large arm of the sea, at the mouth of Delaware r., 65 ms. long, and 18 ms. across at its mouth, between Cape May on the N., and Cape Henlopen on the S. In the middle it is 30 ms. across. At the mouth of the Bay is the Delaware Breakwater, a fine artificial harbour, erected by the General Government.

*Q.* Where is Chesapeake Bay?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of the U. S., situated in the E. part of Md. and Va., and leads into the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

This bay has its entrance wholly in Va., between Cape Charles on the N., and Cape Henry on the S., which are about 12 ms. apart. But the Bay lies mostly in Md., dividing the State into two parts, called the Eastern and the Western shore. It is about 200 ms. long,\* and from 7 to 20 broad, and generally 9 fathoms deep, being the largest bay in the U. S. The Susquehanna r. at its N. extremity, the Potomac r. on the W., and James r. near its mouth, are the largest rivers which flow into it. The entire surface of country drained by the rivers which flow into the Chesapeake Bay, is estimated at 70,000 sq. ms.

*Q.* Where is Tampa Bay?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Flor., and leads into the Gulf of Mexico. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Galveston Bay?

*A.* It is in the S. E. part of Texas, lying N. of the island of Galveston, setting up, from the Gulf of Mexico, inland. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Bay of Campeche?

*A.* It is the southern extension of the Gulf of Mexico, having the Mexican State of Yucatan on the E., and those of Tabasco and Vera Cruz on the S. and W. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Bay of Honduras?

*A.* It is in the W. part of the Caribbean Sea, having Guatemala on the S., and Balize and Yucatan on the W. (M. A.)

This bay is situated on the E. coast of Central America, between the Cape of Honduras, near 16° N. lat., and 86° W. long., and Cape Catoche,

---

\*According to Mitchell it is 190 ms. long.

in about  $21^{\circ} 35'$  N. lat., and  $87^{\circ}$  W. long. The approach to the coasts of this Bay is very dangerous, especially during the prevalence of the northerly winds.

*Q.* Where is the Bay of Guatemala?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of Guatemala, and leads into the Caribbean Sea. (M. A.)

#### SOUNDS.

*Q.* Where is Norton's Sound?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Russian America, and leads into the Pacific Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Prince William's Sound?

*A.* It is on the S. coast of Russian America, and leads into the Pacific Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Smith's Sound?

*A.* It is in the N. part of Baffin's Bay, between Greenland, and the North Georgian Islands. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Lancaster's Sound?

*A.* It separates N. Devon from Prince William's Land, and connects Baffin's Bay and the Polar Sea. (M. A.)

This sound was by Parry called Barrow's Strait. It is the Sir James Lancaster's Sound of Baffin, and is the connecting channel between Baffin's Bay on the E. and the Polar Sea on the W. It lies in a direction parallel to the Equator, between the latitudes of  $73^{\circ} 45'$  and  $74^{\circ} 40'$  N., its mouth in Baffin's Bay, being nearly on the 80th meridian. It is therefore, about 200 ms. in length from E. to W., and between 60 and 70 ms. in average width. Both shores are broken by a great number of Inlets, and that of the Prince Regent, on the S., is of very considerable extent. The latter was found by Ross to terminate in a great Gulf, which he called Boothia. Its shores are desolate and barren, and are covered with ice and snow.

*Q.* Where is Davy's Sound?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of Greenland, and leads into the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Queen Charlotte's Sound?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of British America, between Washington or Queen Charlotte's, and Quadra and Vancouver Island, and leads into the Pacific Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Albemarle Sound?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of the U. S., on the coast of N. C., in the N. E. part of the State, and leads into the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

This is a large Inlet from the Ocean, extending 60 ms. from E. to W., and is from 4 to 15 ms. wide. It communicates with Pamlico Sound on the S., and the Ocean E., by several narrow Inlets; and with Chesapeake Bay by a canal through the Dismal Swamp. It receives the waters of the Roanoke, Chowan, and some smaller rivers.

*Q.* What is a Sound?

*A.* It is a narrow sea, so shallow that its depth may be mea-

sured by a line dropped from the surface to the bottom, as Long Island Sound, Pamlico Sound. (M. G. p. 40.)

## STRAITS.

*Q.* Where is Bhering's Strait?

*A.* It separates America from Asia, and connects the Pacific with the Arctic Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Davis' Strait?

*A.* It separates Greenland on the E. from Prince William's Land on the W., and connects Baffin's Bay with the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

This strait stretches N. N. W. and S. S. E., and where narrowest under the Arctic Circle, it is from 150 to 160 ms. across; but its length is not accurately determined. It derives its name from John Davis, an English navigator, by whom it was discovered between 1585 and 1587.

*Q.* Where are Cumberland, Frobisher's and Hudson's Straits?

*A.* They separate Prince William's Land from Labrador, and connect Hudson's Bay with the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Strait of Belleisle?

*A.* It separates Labrador from Newfoundland, and connects the Gulf of St. Lawrence, on the N. E., with the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Gut or Strait of Canso?

*A.* It separates Cape Breton Island from the peninsula of Nova Scotia, and connects the Gulf of St. Lawrence on the S. with the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Strait of Juan de Fuca?

*A.* It separates Quadra and Vancouver's Island on the S. from Oregon Ter., and connects the Gulf of Georgia with the Pacific Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* How wide is Bhering's Strait?

*A.* Forty miles. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Prince Regent's Inlet?

*A.* It separates Boothia Felix from Prince William's Land, and connects the Gulf of Boothia with Barrow's Strait. (M. A.)

*Q.* What is a Strait?

*A.* It is a narrow passage connecting different bodies of water, as the Strait of Gibraltar, &c. (M. G. p. 10.)

## LAKES.

*Q.* Where is Great Bear Lake?

*A.* It is in the N. W. part of British America, and flows by the Bear Lake R. into Mackenzie's R. (M. A.)

This is a very irregularly shaped and extensive sheet of fresh water; between about 65° and 67° N. lat., and under the 120th deg. of W. long. It is 160 ms. in length.

*Q.* Where is Great Slave Lake?

*A.* It is in British America, S. E. of Great Bear Lake, and flows into Mackenzie's R. (M. A.)

This Lake is 300 ms. in length from E. to W. and from 60 to 100 ms. in width. It is full of wooded islands, and its outlet at the W. extremity, in long.  $119^{\circ} 30'$  W. lat.  $61^{\circ} 30'$  N., flows N. W. into the Polar Sea.

*Q.* Where is Athabasca Lake?

*A.* It is in British America, S. E. of Great Slave Lake, and flows by the Slave R. into Great Slave Lake. (M. A.)

This is an extensive Lake, being about 200 ms. in length, and from 14 to 15 ms. in average width. Fort Chippewyan, at its W. S. W. extremity, is in lat.  $58^{\circ} 42'$  N. long.  $111^{\circ} 18'$  W. It receives the Athabasca R.; and the Slave R. flows from it into Great Slave Lake, lying about 170 ms. N. E. Its N. shore is high and rocky, whence it is sometimes called the Lake of the Hills.

*Q.* Where is Winnipeg Lake?

*A.* It is in the S. part of British America, S. E. of Athabasca Lake, and N. W. of Lake Superior, and flows by Nelson R. into Hudson's Bay. (M. A.)

This Lake is between  $50^{\circ} 30'$  and  $54^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $95^{\circ} 30'$  and  $99^{\circ} 30'$  W. long. Length about 250 ms.; greatest breadth 70 ms. It receives the waters of several small lakes in every direction, and contains a number of small islands.

*Q.* Where is Lake Superior?

*A.* It is between the U. S. and Canada West, and flows by St. Mary's Strait or River into Lake Huron. (M. A.)

This is the largest and most westerly of the five great lakes, which are connected with the St. Lawrence R., and supposed to be the largest body of fresh water in the world. It lies between  $46^{\circ} 35'$  and  $49^{\circ}$  N. lat. and  $84^{\circ} 30'$  and  $92^{\circ} 20'$  W. long. Its length, following the bend of the lake, is about 430 ms.; greatest breadth, above 160 ms. It is about 1200 or 1500 ms. in circumference, 900 ft. deep, and 641 ft. above the level of the Ocean. Area estimated at 28,000 sq. ms. The boundary between the U. S. and Canada passes through its central part. It contains many considerable islands, one of the largest of which, Isle Royal, is about 100 ms. long, and 40 ms. broad.

*Q.* Where is Lake Huron?

*A.* It lies on the boundary between the U. S. and Canada West, and between Lake Superior on the N. W., Lake Michigan on the N. W. and W., and Lakes Erie and Ontario on the S. and S. E., and flows by St. Clair River into Lake St. Clair, whence it flows by Detroit River into Lake Erie. (M. A.)

This is one of the five great lakes of N. America, and its shape is so irregular that it is difficult accurately to determine its exact dimensions. It lies between  $43^{\circ} 5'$  and  $46^{\circ} 15'$  N. lat. and  $80^{\circ}$  and  $84^{\circ} 50'$  W. long. Its length, from S. S. E. to N. N. W., following the curve, is about 280 ms.; its greatest breadth from E. to W. exclusive of Manitouline Lake, or



Georgian Bay, is near 100 ms. Area estimated at about 19,000 sq. ms. The greatest depth is at least 1000 ft. Lake Huron is divided into two unequal portions by a long peninsula and the Manitouline chain of islands; the parts to the N. and E. are called North Channel and Georgian Bay. The islands of Lake Huron are said to amount to 32,000. The boundary between the U. S. and Canada passes along the middle of the main Huron 225 ms. and between lesser Manitouline and Drummond's islands, by what is called the middle passage, and curves round to the N. and W. 25 ms. to the entrance of St. Mary's River.

*Q.* Where is Lake Michigan?

*A.* It is in the N. part of the U. S., and the N.E. extremity communicates with the N.W. end of Lake Huron, by the Strait of Michilimacinac, or Mackinaw, by which, and its N. part, it separates the two peninsulas of the state of Michigan. (M. A.)

This is one of the five great lakes of N. America connected with the R. St. Lawrence, and is the third in size, being inferior only to Lake Superior and Lake Huron. It lies wholly in the U. S., between  $41^{\circ} 38' 58''$  and  $42^{\circ}$  N. lat., and between  $85^{\circ} 50'$  and  $88^{\circ}$  W. long. Its length, about 320, but following the curve of the lake, is near 350 ms.; its greatest breadth, about 90 ms.; containing about 16,981 sq. ms. The principal bays are Green Bay, on the N. W., and Great and Little Traverse Bays, on the E. It contains several islands in its N. part. The surface of this lake is about 600 ft. above the level of the sea; its depth is stated to be 900 ft.

*Q.* Where is Lake Erie?

*A.* It lies between the U. S. and Canada West; it has the peninsula of Canada West on the N., and the States of Oo., Pa., and N.Y., on the S. and S.E., and flows, by Niagara R., into Lake Ontario. (M. A.)

This is one of the five great lakes of N. America, between  $41^{\circ} 25'$  and  $42^{\circ} 55'$  N. lat., and between  $78^{\circ} 55'$  and  $83^{\circ} 34'$  W. long. It constitutes part of the boundary between the U. S. and Canada, has an elliptical shape, and is about 250 ms. long, and varies in its breadth from 10 to 63 ms. It receives at its W. end, through Detroit R., the discharge of water from the great upper lakes, and discharges its own waters through Niagara R., celebrated for its stupendous water-fall, into Lake Ontario. Its surface is elevated 565 ft. above tide-water at Albany, 52 ft. below Lakes Michigan and Huron, and 322 ft. above the level of Lake Ontario. Its waters are more shallow than those of the other great lakes. The greatest depth which has been obtained by sounding, is 270 ft. Its mean depth is not over 120 ft. A little N. W. of the mouth of Sandusky Bay, is a group of Islands, called North, Middle and South Bass Islands. In the N. part of the S. Island, is Put-in Bay, which has 12 ft. of water, and affords the best harbour on the Lake, and is easily accessible. Into this harbour Commodore Perry brought his prizes, after the battle of Lake Erie. The battle was fought a little to the N. W. of this, Sept. 10th, 1813.

*Q.* Where is Lake Ontario?

*A.* It is between the State of N. Y. and Canada West, and flows into the R. St. Lawrence. (M. A.)

This is the smallest and most easterly of the five great lakes of N. America, which communicate with the R. St. Lawrence, situated between  $43^{\circ} 10'$  and  $44^{\circ} 10'$  N. lat., and  $76^{\circ}$  and  $80^{\circ}$  W. long. It receives Niagara R., the great outlet of the upper lakes, in its S.W. part, and has its outlet by St. Lawrence R. in its N. E. part; in which, immediately below the lake, is the cluster denominated "the Thousand Islands." Its shape approaches to a long and narrow ellipse, being 190 ms. long, and 55 ms. wide in its widest part, and about 480 ms. in circumference. Area estimated at 5400 sq. ms. The boundary between the U. S. and Canada passes through the middle of the lake. The surface is about 334 ft. below that of Lake Erie, and 231 ft. above the tide-water in the St. Lawrence and Hudson. The greatest depth is upwards of 600 ft., so that its bottom is considerably below the level of the Atlantic. Lake Ontario is nearly 1000 ms. distant from the Atlantic Ocean.

*Q.* Where is Lake Chapala?

*A.* It is in the S. part of Mexico, and flows by the River Grande into the Pacific Ocean. (M. A.)

This lake is 90 ms. in length and 30 in breadth, and its E. end is about 200 ms. N.W. of the city of Mexico.

*Q.* Where is Lake Nicaragua?

*A.* It is in the S. part of Guatemala, or Central America, and flows by the R. St. Juan into the Caribbean Sea. (M. A.)

This is the most considerable lake of Central America, comprised within the State of Nicaragua, and extending principally between the 11th and 12th degs. of N. lat., and the 84th and 86th of W. long., about 12 ms. in a direct line from the Pacific, and 90 ms. from the Caribbean Sea. It is of an oval shape: length, N. W. to S. E., about 120 ms.; average breadth, perhaps, about 40 ms. It has numerous creeks and harbours, and several islands. The surface of the lake is about 134 ft. and its bottom  $42\frac{1}{2}$  ft. (Eng.) above the level of the Pacific. At its W. extremity, the Lake of Nicaragua is connected by a small r. with the Lake of Leon. The latter is 40 ms. in length by 20 in breadth, and is but 13 ms. from the Pacific, and 5 from the R. Tosta, which enters that ocean.

*Q.* What are the lengths of the first four and of the last Lake?

*A.* According to Mitchell's Atlas,—Great Bear Lake is 160 ms. long; Great Slave, 300; Athabasca, 200; Winnipeg, 300; Nicaragua, 120.

*Q.* What is a Lake?

*A.* It is a collection of water, surrounded by land, as Lake Superior, Lake Winnipeg, or the Lake of Geneva, in Switzerland. (M. G., p. 10.)

#### PENINSULAS.

*Q.* Where is the Peninsula of Alaska?

*A.* It is in the S. part of Russian America, and is surrounded by the Pacific Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Melville Peninsula?

*A.* It is in the N. part of British America, N. of Hudson's



Bay; having Fox Channel on the S. E., Fury and Hecla Strait on the N., and the Gulf of Boothia on the W. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Peninsula of Greenland?

*A.* It is in the N. E. part of N. America, having S. and E. the Atlantic Ocean, and W. Baffin's Bay and Davis' Strait. (M. A.)

Various concurrent accounts render it probable that Greenland is not, as was formerly supposed, a peninsula of the new continent, but an insular group, consisting of two or three large islands, surrounded by several other smaller ones. That portion which is best known is situated between Iceland and the American continent. The most southern point is Cape Farewell, in lat.  $59^{\circ} 49'$  N., long.  $43^{\circ} 54'$  W. A large portion of the eastern, as well as the whole northern coast, is still unexplored. The whole country may be regarded as one enormous mass of rocks; in many places it rises close to the water's edge into precipitous and lofty mountains, crowned with inaccessible cliffs. The climate is extremely cold, but very healthy. Pop. variously estimated at from 6000 to 20,000, all Esquimaux, except about 150 Europeans. Greenland belongs to Denmark.

*Q.* Where is the Peninsula of Nova Scotia?

*A.* It is in the S. part of British America, having the Bay of Fundy and the Gulf of St. Lawrence on the N., and the Atlantic Ocean on the S. (M. A.)

NOVA SCOTIA (or New Scotland) is one of the British colonies of N. America, consisting of an oblong-shaped peninsula, between  $43^{\circ} 20'$  N. lat., and  $61^{\circ}$  and  $66^{\circ} 20'$  W. long.; connected with New Brunswick by a low sandy isthmus, only 9 ms. across, and separated from Cape Breton by the narrow strait called the Gut of Canso. Its length, from Cape Canso on the E. to Cape St. Mary on the W., is above 260 ms.; its greatest breadth, measuring on a line at right angles with the preceding, is about 100 ms. Area estimated at 15,620 sq. ms., about 1-5th part of which consists of lakes, rivers, and salt-water inlets. Pop. in 1838, 155,000, now about 180,000. The government of Nova Scotia comprehends, in addition to the above peninsula, the island of Cape Breton.

*Q.* Where is the Peninsula of Florida?

*A.* It is in the S. part of the U. S., having the Atlantic on the E., and the Gulf of Mexico on the S. and W. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Florida, Lesson 109, Maps No. 5 and 12,—Key, pages 161–2.*

*Q.* Where is the Peninsula of Yucatan?

*A.* It forms the most E. part of Mexico, having the Caribbean Sea and the Bay of Honduras on the E., and the Gulf of Mexico and the Bay of Campeche on the N. and W. (M. A.)

This Peninsula is principally included in the Mexican state of Yucatan, between  $16^{\circ}$  and  $21^{\circ} 40'$  N. lat., and  $86^{\circ} 45'$  and  $91^{\circ}$  W. long.

*Q.* Where is the Peninsula of California?

*A.* It extends along the W. coast of N. America, having the Gulf of California on the E., and the Pacific Ocean on the S. and W. (M. A.)

This Peninsula is called Lower California. Upper California extends from the extremity of the Gulf to the 42d parallel of N. lat.

*Q.* Where is the Peninsula of Boothia Felix?

*A.* It is in the N. part of British America, having Prince Regent's Inlet on the E., the Gulf of Boothia on the S. E. and S., and the Polar Sea on the W. (M. A.)

From the exploration of Messrs. Simpson and Dease, of the Hudson's Bay Company, it seems highly probable that Boothia Felix is an island, and not a peninsula. During the summer of 1839, these gentlemen traversed the unexplored coast of the Arctic Ocean, extending from Cape Turnagain, the eastern cape of Bathurst Inlet, and the easternmost point reached by Captain Franklin in 1821, to the Gulf of Boothia, an extent of about 400 miles. This exploration, with those previously made by Franklin, Beechey, and Ross, added to the earlier efforts of Hearne, Cook, and Mackenzie, has served to make known the continental shores of North America lying on the Arctic Ocean, stretching from Bhering's Straits to the Gulf of Boothia, a distance of 2500 miles. All these coasts are rugged and irregular, and are broken into innumerable bays and inlets. The climate is of the most rigorous character; the seas are thickly coated with ice, except during the three or four months of the short summer, during which time also the waters are filled with icy fragments, tossed about. The musk-ox, the wolf, and the fox, are the only animals which endure the rigour of winter in these regions; the deer take their flight into milder climates. The shores, however, are often crowded with the walrus and the seal. A few scattered families of Esquimaux wander along the shores and islands, constantly employed in providing for their wants, and defending themselves against the rigour of the climate, in which they display no small degree of industry, and even ingenuity.

*Q.* What is a Peninsula?

*A.* It is a portion of land nearly surrounded by water. Africa and South America are Peninsulas. (M. G. p. 14.)

#### CAVES.

*Q.* Where is Cape Prince of Wales?

*A.* It is the W. extremity of America, on the E. side of Bhering's Strait, opposite East Cape, on the shore of Asia. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Bathurst?

*A.* It is on the N. coast of British America. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Brewster?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of Greenland. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Farewell?

*A.* It is the S. extremity of Greenland, at the entrance of Davis' Strait. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape St. Lewis?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of Labrador, in British America. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Race?

*A.* It is the E. extremity of Newfoundland, and of N. America. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Sable?

*A.* It is the S. extremity of Nova Scotia. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Cod?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of the U. S., being a Peninsula of Mass., on the S. side of Mass. Bay. (M. A.)

This Cape lies S. and E. of a bay of the same name. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Hatteras?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of the U. S. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Sable?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Fa. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape St. Antonio?

*A.* It is the W. extremity of Cuba. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Gracias à Dios?\*

*A.* It is the most E. point of Guatimala. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Mendocino?

*A.* It is on the coast of Upper California. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Moro Hermoso?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Lower, or Old California. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape St. Lucas?

*A.* It is the most S. point of Lower, or Old California. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Gorda?

*A.* It is the most S. point of N. America. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Point De Witt Clinton?

*A.* It is on the N. coast of British America. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Point Beechy?

*A.* It is on the N. coast of Russian America. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Point Barrow?

*A.* It is the N. extremity of Russian America. (M. A.)

Capes are frequently called Points. (M. G., p. 86.)

*Q.* What is a Cape or Point?

*A.* It is a point of land extending into the sea, as the Cape of Good Hope, Cape Horn, &c. (M. G., p. 14.)

#### ISLANDS.

*Q.* Where is Nunnivack Island?

*A.* It is in the Pacific Ocean, off the W. coast of Russian America. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Kodiak Island?

*A.* It is in the Pacific Ocean, off the S. coast of Russian America, and E. of the Peninsula of Alaska. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Sitcha Island?

*A.* It is in the Archipelago of George III., which lies W. of the S. E. part of Russian America. (M. A.)

---

\* That is, "*Grace of God.*"

*Q.* Where is Washington or Queen Charlotte's Island?

*A.* It is in the Pacific Ocean, off the W. coast of British America. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Quadra and Vancouver's Island?

*A.* It is in the Pacific Ocean, on the W. coast of British America, separated from the mainland by the Gulf of Georgia, and from the U. S. by the Strait of Juan de Fuca. (M. A.)

This island is 300 ms. in length, and 80 in its greatest breadth.

*Q.* Where are the North Georgian Islands?

*A.* They are in the Arctic Ocean, lying to the N. of British America. (M. A.)

MELVILLE ISLAND, the most westerly of these, upwards of 100 ms. both in length and breadth, and in lat.  $75^{\circ}$  N., is memorable as containing the spot where Captain Parry spent two years, and braved with success the extremest rigour of an arctic winter. The sun disappeared on the 4th of November, and was not seen till the 3d of February following.

A succession of islands extends eastward from the one now described; first the small one of Byam Martin, then that of Bathurst, almost equal to Melville; and next Cornwallis, also of considerable size. Only the southern coasts were seen by Captain Parry, (their discoverer,) as he sailed along; and their aspect appears closely to resemble Melville Island. Cornwallis is separated by Wellington Channel from an extensive coast, which received the name of North Devon, and reaches to the shores of Baffin's Bay; but whether it forms a continuous tract with Greenland, or is composed of one or more islands, remains yet to be discovered.

*Q.* Where is Southampton Island?

*A.* It is in the N. part of Hudson's Bay. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Disco Island?

*A.* It is in Disco Bay, on the W. coast of Greenland. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Island of Newfoundland?

*A.* It is situated in the Atlantic Ocean, S. E. of Labrador, from which it is separated by the narrow Strait of Belleisle.

This is a large island of British America, between lat.  $46^{\circ} 40'$  and  $51^{\circ} 37'$  N., and long.  $52^{\circ} 25'$  and  $59^{\circ} 15'$  W. Its form approaches that of a triangle. Length of a curved line passing through its centre, 420 ms.; greatest breadth, near 300 ms. Area estimated at 56,000 sq. ms. Pop. fluctuating, in consequence of many persons, who visit the island in the fishing season, leaving it during winter: according to the census of 1836, it amounted to 73,705, but is now estimated at 82,000.

*Q.* Where is Anticosti Island?

*A.* It is in the mouth of the St. Lawrence R.; N. of Prince Edward's Island, and W. of Newfoundland. (M. A.)

This Island is about 130 ms. long, and 30 broad. It is uncultivated and uninhabited, with the exception of two families, who have been established here for the purpose of assisting persons cast away on the coast.

*Q.* Where is Prince Edward's Island?

*A.* It is in the S. W. part of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, lying



N. of the Peninsula of Nova Scotia, S. of Anticosti Island, W. of Cape Breton Island, and E. of New Brunswick. (M. A.)

This Island belongs to Great Britain, and lies between  $45^{\circ} 56'$  and  $47^{\circ} 5'$  N. lat., and  $62^{\circ}$  and  $64^{\circ} 25'$  W. long. Length from east to west about 100 ms., and of a curved line passing through its centre, 140 ms.; greatest breadth, 37 ms. Pop. about 35,000.

**Q.** Where is Cape Breton Island?

**A.** It is in the S. extremity of the Gulf of St. Lawrence; lying E. of Prince Edward's Island, and between the N. end of Nova Scotia, from which it is separated by the Gut of Canso, and the S. W. point of Newfoundland, from which it is separated by the principal entrance into the Gulf of St. Lawrence. (M. A.)

This island lies between  $45^{\circ} 27'$  and  $47^{\circ} 4'$  N. lat. and  $59^{\circ} 45'$  and  $61^{\circ} 38'$  W. long. Its length is about 110 ms., its greatest breadth, 85 ms. The area is probably about 4000 sq. ms. Pop. in 1827, 18,700; now, 20,000. It extends in a N. by E. direction, forming a barrier between the Atlantic Ocean and the Gulf, which it completely landlocks, and forms into a large inland sea. It belongs to Great Britain.

**Q.** Where are the Bermudas Islands?

**A.** They are in the Atlantic Ocean, lying E. of the U. S. (M. A.)

The Bermudas or Somers' Islands, are a group in the Atlantic Ocean, belonging to Great Britain, said to be above 350 in number; in about lat.  $32^{\circ} 20'$  N., and long.  $64^{\circ} 50'$  W.; 645 ms. N. E. of Atwood's Keys, the nearest of the W. India Islands, and 580 ms. from Cape Hatteras, in N. C., and 900 ms. E. of Savannah. The principal islands are St. George's, St. David's, Long Island (or Bermuda), Somerset, and Ireland. The Bermudas are estimated to contain about 20 sq. ms. or from 12,000 to 13,000 acres. White pop. in 1837, 4033; coloured and free blacks, 4422, the whole now estimated at 9000. The climate of the Bermudas is that of perpetual spring. The name is derived from the supposed discoverer, Bermudez, a Spaniard, who is said to have touched here in 1522.

**Q.** Where are the Bahama Islands?

**A.** The Bahamas, or Lucayos, are a chain of low islands in the Atlantic Ocean, extending in a S. E. and N. W. direction, between the N. side of Hayti in the W. Indies, and the coast of E. Fa., in the U. S. and are the most N. group of the W. Indies. (M. A.)

The Bahamas consist of several hundred islands, of various magnitudes, extending nearly 600 ms. from Turk's Island, in  $21^{\circ} 23'$ , to the Mantanilla reef, in  $27^{\circ} 50'$  N. lat., and from  $71^{\circ} 5'$  to  $79^{\circ} 5'$  W. long. Some of the largest islands, as the Great Bahama, and Lucayo (now called Abaco), with many smaller ones, remain without inhabitants. They belong to Great Britain. Guanahani, St. Salvador, or Cat, one of these islands, was the first land discovered by Columbus, on the 12th of Oct., 1492. Like the neighbouring islands, it was densely peopled by Indians, who were harmless and inoffensive. The total number of sq. ms. in the Bahamas, including all the islands from New Providence to Key Sal and Anguilla, is, according to Porter's

Tables, 5424. The pop. in 1832, was 4674 whites, 4069 colored and free blacks, and 9765 slaves. In 1837 the total pop. was 19,943 ; it is now about 22,000.

*Q.* Where are the West Indies ?

*A.* They are situated in the wide interval of sea between N. and S. America, extending in a curve from the shore of Fa., on the N. peninsula of America, to the shores of Venezuela on the southern. On the E. and N. they are bounded by the Atlantic ; on the S. the Caribbean Sea separates them from the coast of Colombia ; on the W. the broad expanse of the Gulf of Mexico is interposed between them and that part of the continent. (M. A.)

WEST INDIES is the name given to the Archipelago which separates the Gulf of Mexico and the Caribbean Sea from the Atlantic, situated between  $10^{\circ}$  and  $27^{\circ}$  N. lat. and  $59^{\circ} 30'$  and  $85^{\circ}$  W. long. The W. Indian Archipelago is divided into three principal groups, the Bahamas, the Great Antilles, and the Little Antilles. The individual islands, with the exception of Hayti (which is independent), are owned by different European powers. The Spanish possessions are the largest, comprehending more than half the area of the archipelago. They are Cuba, Porto Rico, with the little island of Culebra, and the Isle of Pines. The French possess Guadaloupe, Martinique, and Mariegalante, with a few adjacent islets, and part of St. Martin's ; to the Danes belong St. John, St. Thomas, and Santa Cruz ; to the Dutch, the three little islands of St. Eustatia, Saba, and St. Martin's ;\* to the Swedes, the small island of St. Bartholomew. The English possess the Bahamas, Jamaica, Anguilla, Barbuda, Antigua, St. Christopher, Nevis, Montserrat, Dominica, St. Lucia, Barbadoes, St. Vincent, Grenada, Tobago, and Trinidad, besides some smaller islands.

*Q.* Where is the Island of Cuba ?

*A.* It is in the West Indies, lying S. of the U. S., E. of Mexico, and N. of Jamaica, being the largest of the Great Antilles. (M. A.)

CUBA is an island belonging to Spain, being the largest, most flourishing and important of the W. Indian Isles. Its figure is long and narrow, approaching to that of a crescent, with its convex side looking towards the Arctic Pole ; its W. portion, lying between Fa. and the peninsula of Yucatan, leaves two entrances into the Gulf of Mexico. It is situated between  $19^{\circ} 47'$  and  $23^{\circ} 9'$  N. lat., and  $74^{\circ}$  and  $85^{\circ}$  W. long. Length, following the curve of the island, about 760 ms. ; its breadth, which is very irregular, varies from 130 to 25 ms. The area is computed at 42,212 sq. ms. Pop. in 1831, 830,000 ; estimated in 1846 at 1,128,000. Cuba was discovered by Columbus, on his first voyage, in 1492 ; in 1511 the Spaniards made their first settlement, since which time it has remained in their possession. Havana is the chief town, and seat of government.

*Q.* Where is the Island of Hayti ?

*A.* It is in the W. Indies, and next to Cuba, the largest of the Great Antilles ; having N. the Atlantic Ocean, E. the Mona passage, separating it from Porto Rico ; S. the Caribbean Sea,

---

\* St. Martin's belongs jointly to the Dutch and French.



and W. the Windward passage, which lies between it and Cuba and Jamaica. (M. A.)

HAYTI, or HAÏTI, called also St. Domingo and Hispaniola, next to Cuba the largest of the W. India Islands, is situated between  $17^{\circ} 41'$  and  $19^{\circ} 59'$  N. lat., and  $68^{\circ} 25'$  and  $74^{\circ} 34'$  W. long. Its shape is somewhat triangular, the apex directed eastward; but it has several considerable peninsulas and promontories, which render its outline very irregular. Its extreme length, from E. to W., is about 400 ms.; its breadth varies from 40 ms., near its E. extremity, to 155 ms. about its centre. The area is computed at about 25,000 sq. ms. The pop., in 1826, was, according to Balbi, 800,000, but some others estimate it considerably higher. This island was discovered by Columbus, in his first voyage, and from him received the name of Hispaniola, that is, "Little Spain." It was called, afterwards, St. Domingo, from the town of this name, which was one of the first settlements made on the island. The name of Haïti was given to it by Dessalines, the first Haytian emperor, after he had expelled the French, in 1803. It is said to be the original Indian name of the island, and to signify "mountainous." Hayti forms a Republic, with a President, chosen for life, and assisted by a legislature, consisting of two houses, a senate and a house of representatives. On the expulsion of the late president, Boyer, the eastern, or Spanish portion of the island, separated itself from the former government, and now constitutes the Independent Republic of St. Domingo. Port au Prince is the capital of the old, and St. Domingo of the new Republic.

Q. Where is the Island of Jamaica?

A. It is in the West Indies, and the third in point of size of the Great Antilles; lying S. of Cuba, W. of Hayti, and N. E. of Guatimala. (M. A.)

JAMAICA (Nat. *Xaymāca*) is the largest of the British W. India Islands. It lies in the Caribbean Sea, between lat.  $17^{\circ} 44'$  and  $18^{\circ} 30'$  N., and long.  $76^{\circ} 12'$  and  $78^{\circ} 25'$  W.; about 100 ms. S. of Cuba, and 120 ms. W. of Hayti, from which it is separated by the Windward Channel. Shape nearly oval; greatest length, E. to W., 150 ms.; average breadth, nearly 40 ms. Area estimated at 6250 sq. ms. As no complete census has ever been taken, the pop. is not accurately known; it is, however, estimated at 375,000. In 1834, there were 297,186 negro slaves, all of whom were set free on the 1st of August, 1838. Spanish Town is the capital.

Q. Where is the Island of Porto Rico?

A. It is in the W. Indies, being the smallest and most easterly of the Great Antilles; having N. the Atlantic Ocean, and S. the Caribbean Sea, separated on the E. from the Virgin Islands by the Virgin Passage, and from Hayti on the W. by Mona Passage, 80 ms. across. (M. A.)

PORTO RICO (Span. *Puerto Rico*, i. e. "rich port,") is one of the W. India islands, belonging to Spain, and deriving its name from its chief town, St. Johns, or San Juan de Porto Rico, situated between  $17^{\circ} 50'$  and  $18^{\circ} 32'$  N. lat., and  $65^{\circ} 43'$  and  $67^{\circ} 20'$  W. long. Its form is almost a parallelogram, the N. and S. coast-lines running nearly due E. and W. Length, E. to W., 100 ms.; greatest breadth about 40 ms. Area, 3700 sq. ms. Under the old colonial system of Spain, in 1788, the pop. did not exceed

80,650; whereas it amounted, in 1836, according to the official returns, to 357,086, of whom only 41,818 were slaves. It has doubtless increased in pop. since that time, but we have no information in regard to the amount.

*Q.* Where are the Caribbee Islands?

*A.* They are a series of small islands, being the most eastern group of the W. Indies, situated in the Caribbean Sea, and extending from Porto Rico to Trinidad, which is included. (M. A.)

CARIBBEE ISLANDS is the name of that portion of the W. Indies that includes the vast chain of islands which extends, in a circular sweep, from Porto Rico on the N. to Trinidad on the S. They comprise the Windward and Leeward Islands. The principal islands, reckoning from the N., are Santa Cruz, St. Christopher's,\* Antigua, Guadaloupe, Dominica, Martinico or Martinique, St. Lucia, Barbadoes, St. Vincent, Grenada, Tobago, and Trinidad. The name is derived from the Caribs, or Caribbees, a tribe of S. American aborigines, who, when Columbus discovered America, were in possession of the smaller W. India Islands; from which, however, they have been nearly extirpated by the Europeans.

The Caribbee Islands are divided into the Leeward and Windward groups; the first consists of the islands that lie between Porto Rico and Martinico, the latter included. The Windward Islands comprise the remainder of the Caribbees. The most northern of the Leeward Islands, viz. Anegada, Virgin Gorda, Tortola, St. Thomas', St. John's, Culebra, and Bique, are called the Virgin Islands.

*Q.* Where are the Islands of Curaçoa, Margarita, Buen Ayre, Oruba, Tortuga, and Orchilla?

*A.* They are situated in the Caribbean Sea; lying off the N. coast of S. America, being the islands that form the Little Antilles. (M. A.)

CURAÇOA is situated in the Caribbean Sea, in about lat.  $12^{\circ} 6' N.$ , and long.  $69^{\circ} W.$  Its length is 35 ms.; its greatest breadth 6 ms. It was originally settled by the Spaniards, but at present it belongs to Holland.

MARGARITA is in the Caribbean Sea, off the N. coast of S. America, and belongs to Venezuela. Lat. about  $11^{\circ} N.$ , long.  $64^{\circ} W.$  Length about 45 ms.; greatest breadth above 20 ms.

*Q.* What are Islands?

*A.* They are portions of land, entirely surrounded by water, as the British Islands, or Newfoundland. (M. G. p. 14.)

## NORTH AMERICA.

*Page 87.—Lesson 63.—Map No. 4.*

### MOUNTAINS.

*Q.* Where are the Rocky Mts., and what is their length?

*A.* The Rocky Mts., called also Chippewyan Mts., is a chain in the W. part of N. America, which commences in the N. part

\* Called by sailors, familiarly, St. Kitt's.

of Mexico, and runs, nearly N. N. W., through the whole extent of the continent; or, in other words, they extend through Russian America, British America, and the U. States, and are 4000 ms. in length. (M. A.)

This chain, though forming a part of the vast mountain system, which extends through the whole length of America, is not, as was formerly supposed, continuous with the Cordilleras of Mexico. With a large part of the Rocky Mountains we are but very imperfectly acquainted. Mount Brown and Mount Hooker, situated near  $53^{\circ}$  N. lat., and between  $115^{\circ}$  and  $117^{\circ}$  W. long., are the highest of this chain that have yet been measured, the former having an elevation of near 16,000 ft., the latter of 15,700 ft. Between  $42^{\circ}$  and  $42^{\circ} 40'$  N. lat., and near  $110^{\circ}$  W. long., there is a break in this mountain chain, called the South Pass, or Fremont's Pass, through which there is an easy road, the ascent and descent being so gradual that it is scarcely perceptible.

*Q.* Where is the Sierra Nevada or Snowy Range?

*A.* It is in the W. part of Upper or New California. (M. A.)

This range of mountains was first explored by Captain, now Colonel Frémont, U. S. A. During the winter of 1843-4, he travelled along its base for a distance of 1000 miles: he estimates its loftiest peaks at 15,500 feet in height. It is constantly covered with snow, hence its name.

*Q.* Where are the Alleghany Mts.? and what is their length?

*A.* They are in the E. part of the U. S., extending from the Catskill Mts. in N. Y., in a S. W. direction to Ga. and Ala., where they sink to elevated hills; they separate Tenn. and N. C., and are 900 miles long.

They run in separate and somewhat parallel ridges, with a breadth of from 50 to 200 ms., and at a distance from the Atlantic of from 50 to 130 ms., and terminate in the Catskill Mts. E. of the Hudson R., though some choose to extend them much farther to the N. E., reaching to the White Mts. in N. H., and even farther. But N. E. of the Catskill the range is not continuous and well defined. They are also sometimes called the Appalachian Mts. They consist of a number of ridges, denominated the Blue Ridge, North Mountain, Jackson's Mountain, Laurel Mountain, Cumberland Mountain, &c. This great chain divides the waters which flow into the Atlantic on the E., from those which flow into the Mississippi and the Lakes to the N. and W.

*Q.* Where are the Arctic Highlands?

*A.* They are in the N. part of Greenland. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Mexican Cordilleras?

*A.* They extend through the central part of Mexico. (M. A.)

This is the name given to the Mexican portion of the great mountain chain which traverses the American continent from N. to S. The highest summits are Popocatepetl and the peak of Orizaba.

*Q.* Where is Mount St. Elias?

*A.* It is in the S. E. part of Russian America. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Mount Brown?

*A.* It is the highest Peak in the Rocky Mts. that has yet been measured, in the W. part of British America. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Mount Hooker?

*A.* It is in the W. part of British America, S. of Mount Brown, being, next to it, the highest peak of the Rocky Mts. that has yet been measured. (M. A.)

*Q.* Tell the heights of the last three Mts.

*A.* Mount St. Elias is 17,900 ft.; Mount Brown, 16,000; Mt. Hooker, 15,700. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Fremont's Peak?

*A.* It is on the boundary between Missouri and Oregon territories. (M. A.)

This mountain, which is elevated 13,570 feet above the Gulf of Mexico, is named after Captain, now Colonel Frémont, U. S. A., who ascended to its summit, August 15th, 1842, and determined its height and character.

*Q.* Where is Long's Peak?

*A.* It is in the W. part of the U. States. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Pike's Peak?

*A.* It is in the W. part of the U. States, S. E. of Long's.

*Q.* Where are the Spanish Peaks?

*A.* They are in the N. W. part of Texas. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Volcano of Popocatepetl?

*A.* It is in the S. part of Mexico. (M. A.)

This is the most elevated mountain summit in N. America, among those which have been measured with any accuracy. Height 17,723 ft. Lat. about 19° N., long. 98° 33' W.

*Q.* Where is the Water Volcano?

*A.* It is in the N. W. part of Guatemala. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Volcano of Consiguina?

*A.* It is in the S. part of Guatemala. (M. A.)

*Q.* What is a Volcano?

*A.* It is a burning mountain, with an opening at the top, called a crater. (M. G. p. 15.)

#### RIVERS.

*Q.* Where is Mackenzie's River?

*A.* It is in British America. It originates in the Great Slave Lake, and, flowing north-westerly, empties itself into the Polar Sea, in about 69° N. lat., and 135° W. long. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Great Fish River?

*A.* It is in British America, rises N. E. of Great Slave Lake, flows first E., then N. E., and empties into the Gulf of Boothia. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Churchill River?

*A.* It is in British America, rises S. of Athabasca Lake, flows in a general course N. E., and empties into Hudson's Bay. (M. A.)



*Q.* Where is Nelson River?

*A.* It is in British America; it forms the outlet of Lake Winnipeg, flows N. E., and empties into Hudson's Bay. (M. A.)

Nelson R. may be regarded as the lower portion of the Saskatchewan, which rises in the Rocky Mts. and flows into Lake Winnipeg.

*Q.* Where is the St. Lawrence River?

*A.* It issues from Lake Ontario, in about  $44^{\circ} 10'$  N. lat., and  $76^{\circ} 30'$  W. long., and flowing north-easterly, falls into the Gulf of St. Lawrence, in about  $49^{\circ} 30'$  N. lat., and  $64^{\circ}$  W. long. (M. A.)

During a part of its course it forms the boundary line between the British N. American territories and those of the U. S. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, pages 114, 115.*

*Q.* Where is Frazer's River?

*A.* It is in British America, rises in the Rocky Mts., flows first N. W., then S. and W., and empties into Howe's Sound, a tributary of the Gulf of Georgia, in  $49^{\circ} 7'$  N. lat. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Columbia River?

*A.* It is chiefly in Oregon territory; its N. branch rises in the Rocky Mts., in  $50^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $116^{\circ}$  W. long., and thence pursues a northern route to near McGillivray's pass in the Rocky Mts. It then turns S. and proceeds to Fort Colville. To the S. of this it tends to the W. Thence it pursues a westerly course for 60 ms. It thence passes to the southward until it reaches Wallawalla, in  $45^{\circ}$  N. lat. It now takes its last turn to the westward, and empties into the Pacific Ocean between Cape Disappointment and Point Adams. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Sacramento River? (Rio Sacramento.)

*A.* It is in the N. W. part of Upper or New California; rises in Winter Range, in the S. part of Oregon, and flows first S. W., and afterwards E. of S., and empties itself into S. Francisco Bay.

*Q.* Where is Colorado River?

*A.* It is in Upper or New California; rises in the Mexican Cordilleras, flows S. S. W., and empties into the Gulf of California. (M. A.)

It is called Rio Colorado, or Red River, because, owing to the fall of rains upon the red clayey soil of which its banks consist, its waters assume that colour.

*Q.* Where is the Rio Grande del Norte?

*A.* Through the whole of its course, it forms the boundary between the U. S. and Mexico; rises in the Mexican Cordilleras, and, flowing in a general south-easterly direction, falls into the Gulf of Mexico, near  $26^{\circ}$  N. lat. and  $97^{\circ} 20'$  W. long. (M. A.)

This river is also called the Rio Bravo, or Rio Bravo Del Norte, that is, the "rapid river of the North," but is now best known as the Rio Grande.

*Q.* Where is the Brazos River?

*A.* It is in Texas, rises in about lat.  $33^{\circ}$  N., flows in a general course nearly S. E., and empties into the Gulf of Mexico, in about  $28^{\circ} 50'$  N. lat., and  $95^{\circ} 20'$  W. long. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Mississippi River?

*A.* It extends through the middle of the U. S., and forms, with the Missouri, its principal affluent, the longest river in the world. It rises from two small lakes, in about  $47^{\circ} 10'$  N. lat., and  $95^{\circ} 54'$  W. long., and, after pursuing a S. E. course of about 600 ms., reaches the falls of St. Anthony, where it descends perpendicularly 16 ft., and where are 58 ft. of rapids. Thence it flows a south-easterly, and then southerly direction; and, after forming the boundary between Mo., Ark., and La., on the W., and Ill., Ky., Tenn., and Miss., on the E., discharges its waters, through many mouths,\* into the Gulf of Mexico. (M. A.)

This is the largest river in the U. S., and it is undoubtedly also one of the noblest in the world; whether we consider its great length, its vast tributaries, the extent of country which it drains, and the distance to which it is navigable, it well deserves the title, which the Indians give it, of the "father of waters." The import in the Algonquin Indian language, which prevails in its upper parts, of *Missi Sepe*, the name by which it is designated, is *Great River*. It drains a country of over 1,000,000 sq. ms. in extent, eminently fertile, sending through it to its destined market a vast amount of produce, and receiving in return the productions of other parts of the world. Its reputed source was discovered by Schoolcraft, July 13th, 1832, to be Itasca Lake, in  $47^{\circ} 10'$  N. lat., and  $95^{\circ} 54'$  W. long., at an elevation of 1500 ft. above the ocean, and 2800 ms.† from its entrance into the Gulf of Mexico. J. N. Nicollet, in his map and report of the Basin of the Upper Mississippi river, published by order of the U. S. Senate, 1843, lays down the actual source in a small lake about 5 ms. S. S. W. of lake Itasca. About half-way from its source, it receives the Missouri, a river much longer than itself, and which ought clearly to be considered as the main stream; for our capricious nomenclature cannot alter the relations of nature. But the Mississippi, having been first discovered and explored, has retained its name to the Gulf of Mexico. This error being now past remedy, the Missouri must be considered as a tributary of the Mississippi.

*Q.* Give the lengths of all these rivers, and the parts of the Ocean into which they flow.

*A.* Mackenzie's R. is 2500 ms. long, and flows into the S. part of the Polar Sea:—Great Fish R. is 600, and flows into the W. part of the Gulf of Boothia:—Churchill R. is 900, and flows into the W. part of Hudson's Bay:—Nelson R. is 1600, and flows

---

\*The principal of which are called the Balize, or North-east Pass, in  $29^{\circ} 7'$  N. lat., and  $89^{\circ} 10'$  W. long., and the South-west Pass, in  $29^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $89^{\circ} 25'$  W. long.

† Or, if we measure from the head of the Missouri, which may be regarded as its true source, it will amount to 4100 ms.



into the S.W. part of Hudson's Bay :—St. Lawrence R. is 2200 (including the lakes), and flows into the N.W. part of the Gulf of St. Lawrence :—Frazer's R. is 750, and flows into the E. part of the Gulf of Georgia :—Columbia R. is 1200, and flows into the North Pacific Ocean :—Rio Sacramento R. is 400, and flows into the N.E. part of S. Francisco Bay :—Colorado R. is 1100, and flows into the N. part of the Gulf of California :—Rio Grande is 1800, and flows into the W. part of the Gulf of Mexico :—Brazos R. is 650, and flows into the N.W. part of the Gulf of Mexico :—Mississippi R., including the Missouri, is 4100, and flows into the N. part of the Gulf of Mexico. (M. A.)

*Q.* What is a River ?

*A.* It is a stream of fresh water, running from springs or from lakes, into the ocean, as the Mississippi, the Amazon, &c. (M. G., p. 11.)

*Q.* What stream do you observe extending along the east coast of the U. States from Florida to the Grand Bank of Newfoundland ?

*A.* Gulf Stream. (M. A.)

#### DISTANCES.

*Q.* How many miles is it from Labrador to Russia ?

*A.* 3400. (M. A.)

*Q.* From Labrador to Denmark ?

*A.* 2600. (M. A.)

*Q.* From Quadra and Vancouver's island to Mongolia ?

*A.* 4100. (M. A.)

*Q.* From California to Corea ?

*A.* 5200. (M. A.)

*Q.* From California to Thibet ?

*A.* 9500. (M. A.)

*Q.* From California to Hindostan ?

*A.* 10,600. (M. A.)

*Q.* From the U. States to Greece ?

*A.* 5000. (M. A.)

*Q.* From the Bermudas to Madeira ?

*A.* 2800. (M. A.)

*Q.* From the U. States to Egypt ?

*A.* 6600. (M. A.)

*Q.* From Guatemala to Hindostan ?

*A.* 12,200. (M. A.)

#### POPULATION OF CITIES.

*Q.* Which are the seven largest cities in North America ? The population of these is 80,000 and upwards.

*A.* Boston, New York, Philadelphia, Baltimore, New-Orleans, Havana, and Mexico. (M. A.)

There are ten cities that contain between 40,000 and 60,000 inhabitants each.

*Q.* Which are they ?

*A.* Montreal, Cincinnati, San Luis Potosi, Guadalaxara, Oaxaca, and Guanajuato, Queretaro, La Puebla, New Guatemala, and Puerto Principe. (M. A.)

There are seventeen cities that contain between 20,000 and 38,000 inhabitants each.

*Q.* Which are they ?

*A.* Quebec, St. John's, N. B., Albany, Washington, Richmond, Pittsburg, Louisville, Charleston, Zacatecas, Durango, Valladolid, Leon, Cartago, St. Jago, Kingston, St. John's, P. R., and Matamoros. (M. A.)

*Q.* What is a city ?

*A.* It is a large collection of houses and inhabitants. (M. G. p. 37.)

## RUSSIAN AMERICA.

*Page 88.—Lesson 64.—Map No. 4.*

*Q.* What Sea bounds Russian America on the north ?

*A.* Polar.

*Q.* What Ocean on the south ?

*A.* Pacific.

*Q.* What country on the east ?

*A.* British America.

*Q.* What is the most northern point ?

*A.* Point Barrow.

*Q.* The most western cape ?

*A.* Prince of Wales.

*Q.* What peninsula in the south ?

*A.* Alaska.

*Q.* What two mountains in the south-east ?

*A.* Mount St. Elias, and Mount Fairweather.

*Q.* On what island is New Archangel situated ?

*A.* Sitcha.

*For a further description see Key, page 81.*

## GREENLAND.

*Page 89.—Lesson 65.—Map No. 4.*

*Q.* What Bay bounds Greenland on the west ?

*A.* Baffin's.

- Q. What Ocean on the east ?  
 A. Atlantic.  
 Q. What is its southern Cape ?  
 A. Farewell.  
 Q. What missionary stations on the west coast ?  
 A. Holsteinborg, Sukkertop, New Hernhut, Lichtenfels, Julian-shaab, and Lichtenau.  
 Q. What land on the east coast ?  
 A. Scoresby's.  
 Q. Does the largest or smallest part of Greenland lie north of the Arctic circle ?  
 A. Largest.  
 Q. What Zone then is it in ?  
 A. North Frigid.  
*For a further description see Key, page 32.*
- 

## BRITISH AMERICA.

*Page 90.—Lesson 66.—Map No. 4.*

- Q. What bounds British America on the north ?  
 A. Polar Sea.  
 Q. On the west ?  
 A. Russian America.  
 Q. On the south ?  
 A. U. S.  
 Q. On the east ?  
 A. Atlantic Ocean.  
 Q. What separates it from Greenland ?  
 A. Baffin's Bay.  
 Q. In what continent is British America ?  
 A. Western.  
 Q. What circle extends through the north part ?  
 A. Arctic.  
 Q. In what zone is that part of it which lies north of the Arctic Circle ?  
 A. North Frigid.  
 Q. In what zone is the southern part ?  
 A. North Temperate.  
 Q. In what latitude is British America ?  
 A. North Latitude.  
 Q. In what longitude from Greenwich ?  
 A. West Longitude.  
*For a further description see Key, page 68.*

## NEW BRITAIN.

*Pages 91-2.—Lesson 67.—Map No. 4.*

- Q. What territory on the east coast ?  
 A. Labrador.  
 Q. On the west ?  
 A. New Caledonia.  
 Q. East side of Hudson's Bay ?  
 A. East Main.  
 Q. West side ?  
 A. New North Wales, and New South Wales.  
 Q. On the coast of Baffin's Bay ?  
 A. Prince William's Land.  
 Q. West of the Gulf of Boothia ?  
 A. Boothia Felix.  
 Q. East of Bathurst Inlet ?  
 A. Victoriana.  
 Q. What large bay in New Britain ?  
 A. Hudson's.  
 Q. How long and wide is it ?  
 A. 1200 ms. long, and 600 wide. (M. A.)  
 Q. Between New Britain and Greenland ?  
 A. Baffin's.  
 Q. How wide is it ?  
 A. 350 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Name the four largest lakes in New Britain.  
 A. Great Bear, Great Slave, Athabasca, and Winnipeg.  
 Q. The length of each.  
 A. Great Bear, 160 ms. ; Great Slave, 300 ; Athabasca, 200 ;  
 Winnipeg, 300. (M. A.)  
 Q. What large river flows into the Polar Sea ?  
 A. Mackenzie's.  
 Q. Its length ?  
 A. 2500 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. What two rivers flow into Lake Athabasca ?  
 A. Peace, and Athabasca.  
 Q. Their lengths ?  
 A. Peace, 800 ; Athabasca, 600. (M. A.)  
 Q. What river flows into Lake Winnipeg ?  
 A. Saskatchewan.  
 Q. Its length ?  
 A. 1200 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. What river connects Lake Winnipeg with Hudson's Bay ?  
 A. Nelson.

*Q.* Which are the principal forts ?

*A.* York, Reliance, Resolution, Churchill, Severn, Albany, and Moose.

Fort York is the chief station of the Hudson's Bay Company, and the residence of the Governor.

*Q.* The principal Indian tribes ?

*A.* Copper Indians, Dog Rib, Chipewayans, Knistineaux, Black Feet, and Abbitibbes.

*Q.* What mountains are in the west part of New Britain ?

*A.* Rocky.

*Q.* Their length ?

*A.* 4000 ms.

*Q.* Which are the two highest ?

*A.* Mt. Brown, and Mt. Hooker.

*Q.* The height of each ?

*A.* Mt. Brown, 16,000 ft. ; Mt. Hooker, 15,700. (M. A.)

Area of New Britain in sq. ms. 1,852,000.—Pop., 40,000.

## CANADA WEST.

*Page 93.—Lesson 68.—Map No. 5.*

*Q.* What lakes separate Canada West from the U. States ?

*A.* Ontario, Erie, Huron, and Superior.

*Q.* What river, in part, from New York ?

*A.* St. Lawrence.

*Q.* What river from Canada East ?

*A.* Ottawa.

*Q.* What is the eastern part of Lake Huron called ?

*A.* Manitouline Lake, or Georgian Bay.

*Q.* What isles in the north part ?

*A.* Manitouline.

*Q.* What island in the western part of Lake Superior ?

*A.* Royale.

*Q.* What is the length of Lakes Superior, Huron, Erie, and Ontario ?

*A.* Superior, 430 ms. ; Huron, 280 ; Erie, 250 ; Ontario, 190. (M. A.)

*Q.* On Map No. 14, tell who was defeated on the River Thames, in 1813.

*A.* Proctor, (a British General).

*Q.* Who was killed there ?

*A.* Tecumseh.

He was a celebrated Indian chief.



*Q.* On Map No. 11, tell what battles were fought in 1814, near the Falls of Niagara.

*A.* Fort Erie, and Chippewa. (M. A.)

## CANADA EAST.

*Page 95.—Lesson 69.—Map No. 5.*

*Q.* What country lies west of Canada East?

*A.* Canada West.

*Q.* What two States lie south?

*A.* N. Y., and Vt.

*Q.* What State lies east?

*A.* Me.

*Q.* The principal river?

*A.* St. Lawrence.

*Q.* Its length?

*A.* 2200 ms. (This includes the lakes.) (M. A.)

*Q.* What Lake does the Saguenay flow from?

*A.* St. John's.

*Q.* The length of the Saguenay?

*A.* 400 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* The Ottawa?

*A.* 600 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* What River unites Lakes Champlain and St. Peter's?

*A.* Sorelle.

This river is known also by the names of the Chambly and Richelieu.

*Q.* The population of Quebec?

*A.* 30,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Of Montreal?

*A.* 40,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* What three Lakes are in Lower Canada (Canada East)?

*A.* St. John's, St. Peter's, and Temiscanning.

CANADA is a vast territory of N. America, belonging to Great Britain, lying principally in a N. E. and S. W. direction, along the N. side of the St. Lawrence, and the N. and E. sides of Lakes Ontario, Erie, Huron, and Superior, extending from  $64^{\circ} 15'$  to near  $91^{\circ}$  W. long., and from  $41^{\circ} 45'$  to  $52^{\circ}$  N. lat. The other portion of Canada, or that on the S. side of the St. Lawrence, is of comparatively limited dimensions: it stretches along the river from near Montreal to point Gaspé, at its embouchure, having on the S. the territory of the U. S. and New Brunswick. On the N., Canada has Labrador and the inhospitable territories belonging to the Hudson's Bay Company, the boundary in this direction being the elevated ground, or water-shed, separating the rivers which run S. to the St. Lawrence and the great lakes from those which run N. to Davis's Strait and Hudson's Bay.\*

---

\* Or, it is bounded N. by the British possessions round Hudson's Bay and by Labrador, E. by the Gulf of St. Lawrence, S. by New Brunswick



Canada was formerly divided into Upper and Lower, or, as they might have been designated, English and French Canada, but the two provinces were united under one government in 1841, by act of the British parliament. At the same time the name of the Upper Province was changed to Canada West, and of the Lower to Canada East, without, however, any change of boundaries. The Ottawa or Grand R., which has its sources in about  $48^{\circ} 30'$  N. lat., and  $80'$  W. long., and flows in an E. S. E. direction till it unites with the St. Lawrence, near Montreal, forms, nearly in its whole extent, the line of demarcation between the two provinces; Lower Canada (Canada East) comprises the whole territory lying N. E. of the Ottawa, on both sides of the St. Lawrence, to its mouth, in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Area estimated at 200,000 sq. ms. Pop. in 1830, 511,917, in 1846, 694,000. Upper Canada (Canada West) comprises all the territory lying S. and W. of the Ottawa R., and extends westward along the chain of the great lakes. Area vaguely estimated at 145,000 sq. ms. Pop. in 1835, 336,461, in 1846, 515,000. Chief town, Toronto. Canada West is entirely an inland province; but, from its having the great lakes and a part of the St. Lawrence for its boundary, it has a vast command of internal navigation, and by means of the Welland and Rideau Canals, a ready access to the ocean. More than three-fourths of the inhabitants of Canada East are of French descent, and French is the prevailing language. Quebec was formerly the capital of this province and of all the British possessions in N. America. The entire pop. of Canada is now, 1846, about 1,200,000. Montreal is now the seat of government.

---

## NEW BRUNSWICK.

*Page 95.—Lesson 70.—Map No. 7.*

- Q. Which is the chief River?  
 A. St. John's.  
 Q. What Island lies near New Brunswick?  
 A. Prince Edward's.  
 Q. What Gulf to the eastward?  
 A. St. Lawrence.  
 Q. What two Bays north-east?  
 A. Chaleurs and Miramichi.  
 Q. What Bay on the south?  
 A. Fundy.  
 Q. What Peninsula south-east?  
 A. Nova Scotia.  
 Q. What is the population of St. John's?  
 A. 25,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Of Frederickton?  
 A. 3000. (M. A.)

---

and the U. States, and W. by the British territories, between which and Canada the limits do not appear to be accurately defined.

Q. Of St. Andrew's?

A. 4000. (M. A.)

Q. Of Chatham?

A. 2000. (M. A.)

Q. Of New Castle?

A. 2000. (M. A.)

Q. On what River is the city of St. John's?

A. St. John's.

NEW BRUNSWICK is a province of British America, lying on the W. side of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, between lat.  $45^{\circ} 5'$  and  $48^{\circ} 5'$  N., and long.  $63^{\circ} 47'$  and  $67^{\circ} 53'$  W., bounded N. by Lower Canada, S. by Nova Scotia and the Bay of Fundy, and W. by the state of Me. Extreme length, from N. to S., 180 ms.: average breadth, 150 ms.: probable area, 28,000 sq. ms. Pop. in 1834, 119,557; estimated in 1846 at 130,000.

---

## NOVA SCOTIA.

*Page 96.—Lesson 71.—Map No. 7.*

Q. What Islands lie east and south-east of Nova Scotia?

A. Cape Breton, and Sable.

Q. What Island north?

A. Prince Edward's.

Q. What separates Nova Scotia and Cape Breton?

A. Gut of Canso.

Q. What Ocean on the south-east?

A. Atlantic.

Q. What Bay on the north-west?

A. Fundy.

Q. What is the population of Halifax?

A. 18,000. (M. A.)

Q. Of Lunenburg?

A. 4000. (M. A.)

Q. Of Liverpool?

A. 3000. (M. A.)

Q. Of Arechat?

A. 2000.

Q. Of Yarmouth?

A. 5000. (M. A.)

Q. The southern Cape of Nova Scotia?

A. Sable.

*For a further description, see Key, page 79.*

## NEWFOUNDLAND.

*Page 97.—Lesson 72.—Map No. 7.*

Q. What separates Prince Edward's Island from New Brunswick?

A. Northumberland Strait.

Q. What bounds Newfoundland on the east?

A. Atlantic Ocean.

Q. On the west?

A. Gulf of St. Lawrence?

Q. What Strait separates it from Labrador?

A. Bellisle.

Q. What banks are near the Island?

A. Grand Bank, and Green Bank.

Q. How long and wide is the Grand Bank?

A. It is 600 ms. long, and 200 wide. (M. A.)

Q. Newfoundland?

A. It is 420 ms. long, and from 45 to 300 wide. (M. A.)

Q. What is the population of St. John's?

A. 11,000. (M. A.)

Q. Of Harbour Grace?

A. 6000. (M. A.)

Q. Of Placentia?

Q. 2000. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, page 82.*

## UNITED STATES.

*Page 104.—Lesson 77.—Map No. 5.*

Q. How are the United States bounded?

A. They occupy the middle division of N. America, and are bounded N. by British America, E. by New Brunswick and the Atlantic Ocean, S. by the Gulf of Mexico, Mexico, and Upper or New California, and W. by the Pacific Ocean.

Q. What is the capital of the United States?

A. Washington.

*For the extent, &c., of the United States, see Key, pages 68-9.*

The capitals of countries, the scholar will perceive by the explanation on the map, are made by a large dot with eight small ones around it; and the capitals of states on maps No. 4 and 5, are made by a small ring or circle with a dot in the middle of it. (M. G.)

Q. Which are the six Eastern States?

A. They are Me., N. H., Vt., Mass., R. I., and Conn.

*Q.* Point out their capitals.

*A.* Me., Augusta; N. H., Concord; Vt., Montpelier; Mass., Boston; R. I., Newport and Providence; Conn., Hartford and New Haven.

*Q.* Which are the four Middle States?

*A.* They are N. Y., N. J., Pa., and Del.

*Q.* Point out their capitals.

*A.* N. Y., Albany; N. J., Trenton; Pa., Harrisburg; Del., Dover.

*Q.* Which are the ten Southern States?

*A.* They are Md., Va., N. C., S. C., Ga., Flor., Ala., Miss., La., and Texas.

*Q.* Point out their capitals.

*A.* Md., Annapolis; Va., Richmond; N. C., Raleigh; S. C., Columbia; Ga., Milledgeville; Flor., Tallahassee; Ala., Tuscaloosa; Miss., Jackson; La., New Orleans; Texas, Austin.

*Q.* Which are the ten Western States?

*A.* They are, Ark., Tenn., Ky., Mo., Ill., Ia., Oo., Mich., Wis., and Io.

*Q.* Point out their capitals.

*A.* Ark., Little Rock; Tenn., Nashville; Ky., Frankfort; Mo., Jefferson City; Ill., Springfield; Ia., Indianapolis; Oo., Columbus; Mich., Detroit; Wis., Madison; Iowa, Iowa City.

*Q.* Which are the Territories of the U. States?

*A.* They are, Wis., Io., Indian, Mo., and Oregon.

*Q.* How many States are there?

*A.* Thirty.

*Q.* How many Territories?

*A.* Five.

*Q.* How many States and Territories are there altogether?

*A.* Thirty-five.

Besides these, the District of Columbia contains the seat of government; so that the whole of the divisions of the U. S. are thirty-six in number. (M. G. p. 104.)

#### LAKES.

*Q.* Where is Lake Superior?

*A.* It is between the U. S. and Canada West, and flows by St. Mary's Strait or River into Lake Huron. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, page 76.*

*Q.* Where is Lake Huron?

*A.* It lies on the boundary between the U. S. and Canada West, and between Lake Superior on the N.W., Lake Michigan on the N.W. and W., and Lakes Erie and Ontario on the S. and S.E., and flows by St. Clair River into Lake St. Clair, whence it is conducted by Detroit River into Lake Erie. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, pages 76-7.*

*Q* Where is Lake Michigan?

*A.* It is in the N. part of the U. S., and the N. E. extremity communicates with the N. W. end of Lake Huron, by the Strait of Michilimackinac, or Mackinaw, by which, and its N. part, it separates the two peninsulas of the state of Mich. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, page 77.*

*Q.* Where is Lake Erie?

*A.* It lies between the U. S. and Canada West; it has the Peninsula of Canada West on the N., and the States of Oo., Pa., and N. Y. on the S. and S. E., and flows by Niagara R. into Lake Ontario. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, page 77.*

*Q.* Where is Lake Ontario?

*A.* It is between N. Y. and Canada West, and flows into the R. St. Lawrence. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, pages 77-78.*

*Q.* Where is Lake Champlain?

*A.* It lies between the states of N. Y. and Vt., and flows into the Sorelle or Richelieu R., by which it discharges its waters into the St. Lawrence. (M. A.)

This lake extends from the town of Whitehall, N. Y., to the 45° N. lat. 116 ms. and extends about four miles further into Canada, making its whole length 120 ms. It is navigated to St. John's, Canada, 20 ms. from the line. The breadth is from half a mile to 10 ms.; but including the expanse which contains its large islands, it is 15 ms. wide. Its broadest part unobstructed by islands, is opposite to Burlington, Vermont. Its chief islands are North Hero, South Hero, and La Motte, which, with some smaller islands, and the peninsula of Alburg, constitute Grand Isle county, Vermont. The superficial extent is between 600 and 700 sq. ms. This lake was discovered by Champlain, a French navigator, in 1609. It was the theatre of many important military operations, in the French, the Revolutionary, and our last war with Great Britain.

*Q.* Where is the Lake of the Woods?

*A.* It lies between Lake Winnipeg and Lake Superior, chiefly in Canada West, but the S. part extends into the N. part of Wis. Territory, and flows by a small stream into Rainy Lake. (M. A.)

*Q.* Tell the length of each lake.

*A.* Superior is 430 ms. long; Huron, 280; Michigan, 320; Erie, 250; Ontario, 190; Champlain, 120; Lake of the Woods, 100. (M. A.)

*Q.* Which two are wholly in the U. States?

*A.* Michigan, and Champlain.

*Q.* Where is Manitouline Lake?

*A.* It is in Canada West, being the E. part of Lake Huron. (M. A.)



*Q.* Where is Moosehead Lake ?

*A.* It is in the W. part of Me., and is the source of the E. branch of the Kennebec R. (M. A.)

This is the largest lake in Me., situated between the counties of Somerset and Piscataquis. Its form is very irregular. The length is about 35 ms.; the breadth varies from about 10 to 15 ms., and it contains 100,000 acres.

*Q.* Where is Chesuncook Lake ?

*A.* It is in the W. part of Me., 10 ms. N.E. of Moosehead Lake. The Penobscot R. passes through it. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Timiscouata Lake ?

*A.* It is in the N. part of Me., and flows into Madawaska R., by which it discharges its waters into the St. John's. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Lake Memphramagog ?

*A.* It is in the N. part of Vt., and S. part of Canada East, but lies mostly in Canada, and flows into the R. St. Francis. (M. A.)

This Lake is about 30 ms. long, and from 2 to 3 broad, and lies mostly in Canada. About 7 or 8 ms. of the S. part extend into Vt. It contains about 15 sq. ms. in Vt., and receives Clyde, Barton, and Black Rivers. It discharges its waters through St. Francis R. into Lake St. Peter's, an expansion of St. Lawrence R., 15 ms. below the mouth of Sorelle or Richelieu R.

*Q.* Where is Lake George ?

*A.* It is in the E.N.E. part of N. Y., situated between the counties of Washington and Warren, and has its outlet into Lake Champlain. (M. A.)

Lake George, or Horicon, is 230 ft. above the Hudson R.: it is 33 ms. long, from 2 to 3 wide, and is said to have as many islands as there are days in the year. One of them, called twelve-mile island, it being that distance from Caldwell, situated in the middle of the lake, contains 20 acres, elevated 30 or 40 ft. above its surface. In picturesque scenery it is unsurpassed in the U. S., perhaps in the world. On account of the purity of its waters, the French called this lake Lac Sacrament, the bottom being visible to the depth of 30 or 40 feet. Its shores contain the remains of several old forts, memorable in the revolutionary wars. Its outlet, which is 3 ms. long, connects with Lake Champlain.

*Q.* Where is Lake Okee-cho-bee ?

*A.* It is in the S. part of Flor. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Lake Pontchartrain ?

*A.* It is in the S.E. part of La., communicating, by several outlets, called the Rigolets, with Lake Borgne. (M. A.)

This Lake is 45 ms. long, and 25 ms. broad: it communicates with Lake Maurepas on the W., and Lake Borgne, through the Rigolets on the E., and with New Orleans through St. John's bayou, and a canal. It receives several rivers on the N., and is the outlet of considerable commerce from New Orleans.



*Q.* Where is Lake Pepin ?

*A.* It is an expansion of the Mississippi R., between Wis. and Io. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Itasca Lake ?

*A.* It is in the N. E. part of Io., and is the source of the Mississippi R. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Rainy Lake ?

*A.* It lies between Wis. and British America, N. W. of Lake Superior, S. E. of Lake of the Woods, and flows into Lake Superior. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Red Lake ?

*A.* It is between Io. and Wis., lying S. W. of the Lake of the Woods, and flows into Red R. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is St. Croix Lake ?

*A.* It is in the W. part of Wis., and flows into the Mississippi R. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Winnebago Lake ?

*A.* It is in Wis., between Fond du Lac and Calumet counties, and flows into Fox R., by which it discharges its waters into Green Bay. (M. A.)

This lake is 24 ms. long and 10 broad. The water is clear. Its outlet, in the N. W. part, is Fox R., which also enters it on the W. side, and is a large stream, flowing into Green Bay.

*Q.* Where is Flat Bow Lake ?

*A.* It is in the S. part of British America, and flows into McGillivray's R. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Kulluspelm Lake ?

*A.* It is in the N. E. part of Oregon, S. of Flat Bow Lake, formed by Clark's or Flathead R. (M. A.)

---

*Page 105.—Lesson 78.—Map No. 5.*

BAYS.

*Q.* Where is Passamaquoddy Bay ?

*A.* It lies partly in the State of Me., and partly in the British province of New Brunswick, and leads into the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

The entrance of this bay is about 6 ms. wide from N. to S., and its length is about 12 ms. Campobello Island divides the entrance into two passages. It also contains Deer Island. The bay is well sheltered, has everywhere a sufficient depth of water for the largest vessels, and is never closed by ice. The boundary of the U. S. passes on the W. side of Campobello Island, into the St. Croix R., which enters the N. W. part of this bay.

*Q.* Where is Penobscot Bay ?

*A.* It is on the S. coast of Me., and leads into the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

Penobscot Bay is a fine body of water, extending from the ocean at Owl's Head, 20 ms. to Belfast Bay; and across the mouth of the bay, from Owl's Head to Burnt Coat Island, it is about 30 ms. wide. It embosoms a number of islands, the principal of which are Deer Island, Fox Islands, Isle au Haut, Long Island, and others. From an elevated summit back of Camden, and from other points, this bay, with its beautiful islands, and numerous vessels under sail, presents a delightful prospect. The bay and Penobscot R. contain many fine harbours, the principal of which are those of Castine, Belfast, Frankfort, Bucksport, Bangor, and others. The total tonnage of the district above Belfast, in 1840, was 37,130; of Belfast, 38,218.

*Q.* Where is Casco Bay?

*A.* It is in Cumberland county, on the S. coast of Me., and leads into the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

This bay sets up from the Atlantic Ocean, between Cape Elizabeth and Cape Small Point, 20 ms. apart, and affords fine anchorage. It contains 300 islands, mostly small, but generally very productive.

*Q.* Where is New York Bay?

*A.* It is between N. J. and Long Island, and leads into the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Delaware Bay?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of the U. S., situated between the States of New Jersey and Delaware, and leads into the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, page 73.*

*Q.* Where is Chesapeake Bay?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of the U. S., situated in the E. part of Md. and Virginia, and leads into the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, page 73.*

*Q.* Where is Chatham Bay?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Flor., and leads into the Gulf of Mexico. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Tampa Bay?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Flor., and leads into the Gulf of Mexico. (M. A.)

This is a large bay in the Gulf of Mexico, and is called by the Spaniards Espiritu Santo. It is 40 ms. long, and in one place 35 ms. wide, with from 15 to 20 ft. of water on the bar. It is easy of access, and affords a safe anchorage for any number of vessels. Little Tampa Bay, in its N. part, is an elliptical basin, 10 ms. in diameter, but very shallow. There are numerous islands at the mouth of Tampa Bay, and it abounds with fish and water-fowls.

*Q.* Where is Apalachee Bay?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Flor., and leads into the Gulf of Mexico. (M. A.)

Through this bay is a passage 10 ft. deep, which is gradually reduced to

8 ft., by which St. Mark's is reached. It furnishes the best anchorage ground along the coast for the distance of 230 ms.

*Q.* Where is Pensacola Bay?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Flor., and leads into the Gulf of Mexico. (M. A.)

This bay sets up from the Gulf of Mexico about 11 ms. from the Gulf, and is divided into three parts. The W. arm, called Escambia Bay, is 11 ms. long and 4 broad, and receives Escambia R. from the N. The middle arm is called Yellow Water Bay, of about the size of Escambia, and receives Yellow Water R., through several mouths. Black Water Bay, 7 ms. long and 2 broad, is attached to the N.W. end of Yellow Water Bay, is full of islands, and receives Black Water R. and Cedar Creek. East Bay is 7 ms. long, where it tapers to a small r., near St. Rosa's Sound. This admits frigates of the largest class, and is entirely sheltered from all winds. Its entrance, between Fort Barancas and the W. end of St. Rosa Island, is about three-fourths of a mile wide, and is well defended. This harbour has 22 ft. water on the bar at low tide, is completely land-locked, and is the best on the Gulf of Mexico,

*Q.* Where is Mobile Bay?

*A.* It is on the coast of Ala., and leads into the Gulf of Mexico. (M. A.)

This bay sets up from the Gulf of Mexico, and is 30 ms. long, and, on an average, 12 ms. broad. It communicates with the gulf by two straits, one on each side of Dauphin Island. The strait on the W. side will not admit of vessels drawing more than 5 ft. water; that on the E. side, between the island and Mobile Point, has 18 ft. water, and the channel passes within a few yards of the point. There is a bar across the bay, near its upper end, which has only 11 ft. water.

*Q.* Where is Black Bay?

*A.* It is in the parish of Plaquemine, in the S. E. part of La., and leads into the Gulf of Mexico. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Barataria Bay?

*A.* It is on the S. coast of Louisiana, and leads into the Gulf of Mexico. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Galveston Bay?

*A.* It is in the S. E. part of Texas, lying N. of the island of Galveston, setting up from the Gulf of Mexico, and penetrating inland. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Matagorda Bay?

*A.* It is in the S. part of Texas, formed by the Gulf of Mexico. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Espiritu Santo Bay?

*A.* It is in the S. part of Texas, setting up from the Gulf of Mexico inland. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Nueces Bay?

*A.* It is in the S. part of Texas, and leads into the Gulf of Mexico. (M. A.)

*Q.* On the great lakes, where is Saginaw Bay ?

*A.* It is in the state of Michigan, and is a branch of Lake Huron, situated about the centre of the N.W. side. (M. A.)

This Bay is 60 ms. long, and 30 wide, containing a number of islands, the largest of which is Shawangunk Island, near the centre. It is navigable for vessels of any burden, and numerous coves, protected by islands, afford some of the best harbours on the lake. It receives Saginaw R.

*Q.* Where is Thunder Bay ?

*A.* It is in the state of Mich., on the N.W. side of Lake Huron, N. of Saginaw Bay. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Green Bay ?

*A.* It is partly in Wis. and partly in Mich., lies N.W. of Lake Michigan, and connected with it by a broad opening, and running parallel with it. (M. A.)

This bay is 100 ms. long, and from 15 to 30 broad. At its entrance is a string of islands, called Grand Traverse Islands, extending for 30 ms. It is navigable for vessels of 200 tons to its head, and receives Fox and Menomonic Rivers.

#### SOUNDS.

*Q.* Where is Long Island Sound ?

*A.* It extends the entire length of Long Island, and separates it from Conn. It communicates with the Atlantic on the E. by a rapid strait, and W. by East R. and New York Bay. (M. A.)

It is 120 ms. long, and from 2 to 20 ms. broad.

*Q.* Where is Albemarle Sound ?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of the U. S., on the coast of N. C., in the N.E. part of the state, and leads into the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, p. 74.*

*Q.* Where is Pamlico Sound ?

*A.* It is in the E. part of N. C., and communicates with the Atlantic Ocean by New, Ocracock, and Cedar Inlets, and is connected with Albemarle Sound in its N. part. (M. A.)

This is a shallow body of water 80 ms. long, and from 8 to 30 ms. wide. It is separated from the ocean by long sandy islands, scarcely one mile wide, covered with bushes, the outer point of one of which is Cape Hatteras. The principal entrance to it is Ocracock inlet. The land around it is low, and in some places marshy. It receives Tar and Neuse Rivers.

*Q.* How many miles long are each of these? (*See Map No. 11.*)

*A.* Long Island Sound is 120 ms.; Albemarle, 60; Pamlico, 80. (M. A.)

*Q.* How long is Chesapeake Bay ?

*A.* It is 190 ms. (*See Map No. 11.*) (M. A.)

#### RIVERS.

*Q.* Where is the Mississippi River ?

*A.* It extends through the middle of the U. S.



*Q.* Where does it rise?

*A.* In Itasca Lake. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where does it empty?

*A.* Into the Gulf of Mexico.

*Q.* How many miles long is it?

*A.* The Mississippi proper is 2800 ms., but from the source of the Missouri to the sea it is 4100 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* What are its chief tributaries and their length?

*A.* Missouri, 2900; Arkansas, 2000; Red, 1200; (these are its three great W. branches); Ohio, 1300; (this is its principal E. branch). (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, p. 90.*

*Q.* Where is the Missouri River?

*A.* It is in the N.W. part of the Mississippi valley,\* and is formed of three principal branches, denominated the Jefferson, Madison, and Gallatin, which take their rise from the Rocky Mts. Its course is northerly to the Great Falls; thence easterly to the White Earth R.; thence it runs first S., and then S. E., and enters the Mississippi R. 18 ms. above St. Louis, in about  $38^{\circ} 50'$  N. lat., and  $90^{\circ} 10'$  W. long. (M. A.)

The waters of this r. are remarkably turbid, from which circumstance, it is said, the name, signifying "mud river," is derived.

*Q.* Where is Yellow Stone River?

*A.* It is in Mo. Territory, rises from Sublettes Lake in the Rocky Mts., and, flowing in a general north-easterly course, falls into the Missouri, near  $48^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $104^{\circ}$  W. long. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Big Horn River?

*A.* It is in Mo. Territory, rises at the eastern base of Frémont's Peak, flows N. N. E., and empties into Yellow Stone R. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Platte or Nebraska River?

*A.* It is in Indian Territory, and is one of the large tributaries of the Missouri R.; rises by two branches called the North and South Forks, on the E. declivity of the Rocky Mts., which unite about 520 ms. from the source of the N. Fork. Flowing eastwardly it empties into the Missouri R., 700 ms. from the Mississippi, near  $41^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $95^{\circ} 40'$  W. long. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Kansas River?

*A.* It is in Indian Territory, rises between the Platte and the Arkansas rivers, near the Rocky Mts., flows E. across the Indian Territory, and enters Missouri R. at the W. boundary of the State of Missouri. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Arkansas River?

*A.* It is in the State of Ark. and the Indian Territory, and is, next to the Missouri, the largest affluent of the Mississippi. It rises in

---

\* The Mississippi Valley comprises all the country that is watered by the Mississippi river and its branches.



the Rocky Mts., near the sources of the Rio Grande, and near the boundary between the U. S. and Mexico, and for some distance forms the boundary in part between the Indian Territory and Texas. It flows in a general course, E. S. E., through the Indian Territory and the central part of Ark., and empties into the Mississippi, in lat  $33^{\circ} 54'$  N., long.  $91^{\circ} 10'$  W.\* (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Canadian River?

*A.* It is in the Indian Territory and Texas, and is the great south-western branch of Arkansas R., rises by two large branches in the Mts. of New Mexico, which unite at lat.  $35^{\circ}$  N., and long.  $18^{\circ}$  W. from Washington. It thence flows E. and empties into the Arkansas R. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Red River?

*A.* It is in La. and Ark., and is one of the large affluents of the Mississippi, and the first large r. which enters it above its mouth. It rises at the base of the range of the Rocky Mts., near Santa Fé in Mexico. The south bank of it forms, for a distance of about 350 ms., the boundary between the Indian Territory and Texas, and, flowing at first easterly and afterwards south-easterly, joins the "Great River" (Mississippi) in Louisiana, in about  $31^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $91^{\circ} 50'$  W. long. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Osage River?

*A.* It is principally in Mo., rises in the Indian Territory, and flows into the State of Mo., and after a winding easterly course, joins the Missouri R., 133 ms. above the Mississippi. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Des Moines River?

*A.* It is in Io., rises in the Coteau des Prairies, and flows in a S. E. direction through the S. part of the state, and, forming a part of the S. E. boundary, enters Mississippi R., at the foot of Des Moines rapids, on the boundary between Io. and Mo. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is St. Peter's River?

*A.* It is in Io., rises near the sources of Red R., flows first S. E., then N. E., and enters the Mississippi R. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Wisconsin River? (Formerly written Ouisconsin.)

*A.* It rises in and flows through Wis., first S., then W. S. W., and enters the Mississippi R. near  $43^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $91^{\circ}$  W. long. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Rock River?

*A.* It is in Wis. and Ill. Its principal head is in a region of lakes and swamps, towards Fox R. of Green Bay. Another head is Catfish R., a stream in Wisconsin, that connects the "Four lakes," the head waters of which commence in a swamp, a few miles S. of Fort Winnebago. Its course is first S. and then S. W. through the N. W. part of Ill., and falls into the Mississippi R., near  $41^{\circ} 30'$  N. lat., and  $90^{\circ} 30'$  W. long. (M. A.)

---

\* The source of this river has not yet been explored.

*Q.* Where is Illinois River?

*A.* It is in Ill., formed by the union of Kankakee and Des Plaines Rivers, and flowing in a general S. W. and S. direction, unites with the Mississippi R., in  $38^{\circ} 58' 23''$  N. lat.; and  $90^{\circ} 18'$  W. long., 20 ms. above the entrance of the Missouri. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Wabash River?

*A.* It is in Ia., rises in Darke county, Oo., and flowing into Ia., pursues a N. W. course to Huntington county, Ia., thence it crosses the state in a W. and S. W. direction, and a little below Terre Haute it becomes the boundary between Ia. and Ill., to its entrance into the Ohio R., 127 ms. above the Mississippi, and 68 ms. above the mouth of Cumberland R., near  $37^{\circ} 50'$  N. lat., and  $88^{\circ}$  W. long. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Maumee River?

*A.* It is in Oo., and first assumes this name in the N. E. part of Ia., and flowing through the N. W. part of Oo., in a N. E. direction, enters Lake Erie, through Maumee Bay. It is formed by the junction of Little St. Joseph's, St. Mary's, and Great and Little Auglaize Rivers. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Ohio River?

*A.* It is in the eastern part of the Mississippi Valley, and is formed by the confluence of the Alleghany from the N. and the Monongahela from the S. at Pittsburg, in the W. part of Pa., in lat.  $40^{\circ} 28'$  N., and long.  $80^{\circ} 8'$  W. It flows in a direction W. S. W., separating the states of Va. and Ky., on the S., from Oo., Ia., and Ill., on the N., and enters the Mississippi in  $37^{\circ}$  N. lat. and about  $89^{\circ} 10'$  W. long. (M. A.)

This river ("*La Belle Riviere*," of the French, the beautiful Ohio,) if we take into view its length, the richness and populousness, present and prospective, of the vast country which it drains, and the extent of its navigation, is second only to the Mississippi. The great valley drained by this river and its tributaries contains over 200,000 sq. ms., and has 5000 ms. of navigable rivers, with a population of over 3,000,000, which is rapidly increasing.

*Q.* Where is the Alleghany River?

*A.* It rises in McKean and Potter counties, Pa., and after the union of its head branches, passes N. W. into the state of N. Y., and thence, by a considerable bend, it returns again into Pa., and proceeds in a S. W. course until it unites with the Monongahela R. at Pittsburg, to form the Ohio. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Monongahela River?

*A.* It is in Va. and Pa., rises in Randolph co., Va., at the foot of the Laurel Mts., and after a course, in a N. direction, of 300 ms., unites with the Alleghany R. at Pittsburg, to form the Ohio R. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Kanawha River?

*A.* It is chiefly in Va., rises in the N. W. part of N. C., and,

flowing N. and N. W., falls into the Ohio R. 252 ms. below Pittsburg, in about  $38^{\circ} 50'$  N. lat. In the upper part of its course it is called New River. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cumberland River?

*A.* It is a large river of Ky. and Tenn., rises in Cumberland Mts., near the boundary between Va. and Ky., and pursuing a westerly and south-westerly course, enters the state of Tenn., and after an extensive sweep to the S. it turns north-westwardly and northerly, and flowing through the western part of Ky., enters the Ohio R.  $11\frac{1}{2}$  ms. above the mouth of the Tennessee R., and 59 ms. above the mouth of the Ohio. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Tennessee River?

*A.* It is a large river of Tenn., and is the largest tributary of the Ohio. Its most remote sources are Clinch R. and Holston R., which rise in the Alleghany Mts. in Va., and unite about 45 ms. S. of W. from Knoxville, forming the Tennessee proper, which then pursues a S. W. direction across the state, and enters the state of Ala., in which it pursues a westerly course for 200 ms., and then turns N. and crosses the state of Tenn., and the western part of Ky., and enters the Ohio R.  $11\frac{1}{2}$  ms. below the mouth of Cumberland R. and  $47\frac{1}{2}$  ms. above the entrance of the Ohio into the Mississippi, by the course of the R., near  $37^{\circ}$  N. lat. and  $88^{\circ} 35'$  W. long. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is White River?

*A.* It is in Ark., rises by the Buffalo fork in Washington county, Ark., and flows N. E. into Mo., and by a broad sweep to the N. and E. it turns southwardly and again enters Ark. Its course is thence S. E. to its junction with Big Black R., which proceeds from the N. in Mo. The junction takes place on the W. border of Jackson county. It then flows S. by E., and enters Mississippi R. about 20 ms. above the mouth of the Arkansas R. (M. A.)

Five miles from the mouth of White R. there is a bayou or branch which connects it with the Arkansas R., 25 ms. from its mouth, in which the current sets alternately from the one r. to the other, as the flood in either predominates.

*Q.* Where is Washita River?

*A.* It is in Ark. and La., rises in the W. part of the former, and flows nearly E. as far as Hot Springs, where it turns S. and flows S. by E. till it enters La. in lat.  $33^{\circ}$  N., and thence flows S. by E. to its junction with Tensas R. to form Black R., which flows into Red R. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Yazoo River?

*A.* It is in Miss., formed by the junction of Tallahatchie and Yalabusha Rivers in Carroll co., and flows S. S. W. into the Mississippi R., 12 ms. above Vicksburg. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Rio Grande?

*A.* Through a great part of its course, it forms the boundary between Texas and Mexico, rises in the Mexican Cordilleras, and, flowing in a general south-easterly direction, falls into the Gulf of Mexico, near  $26^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $97^{\circ} 20'$  W. long. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Nueces River?

*A.* It is in Texas, rises in Lake de las Yuntas, flows in a general course S. E., and empties into Nueces Bay. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Colorado River?

*A.* It is in the central part of Texas, rises by several branches in the Guadalupe Mts., and flows a S. E. course into Matagorda Bay, which connects with the Gulf of Mexico. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Brazos River?

*A.* It is in Texas, rises in about lat.  $33^{\circ}$  N., flows in a general course nearly S. E. and empties into the Gulf of Mexico, in about  $28^{\circ} 59'$  N. lat., and  $95^{\circ} 20'$  W. long. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Trinity River?

*A.* It is in, and rises in Texas, flows first S. E., then S., and empties into Galveston Bay. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Sabine River?

*A.* It rises in Texas, and, flowing at first south-easterly, then southerly, forms, from lat.  $32^{\circ}$  N. to the Gulf of Mexico, the boundary between Texas and La. It discharges its waters into Sabine Lake. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Pearl River?

*A.* It is in Miss. and La., rises, by several branches, in the N. E. central part of Miss., and, flowing S., it joins, by several mouths, the Rigolets, which form a communication between Lakes Pontchartrain and Borgne. From lat.  $31^{\circ}$  N., it forms the dividing line between the States of Miss. and La. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Tombigbee River?

*A.* It is in Miss. and Ala., rises in several sources in Tishomingo co., in the N. E. part of Miss., and flowing S., passes Columbus, Miss., in Lowndes co., and in the lower part of the co. it passes into Ala.; and proceeding in a winding course S., it joins the Alabama R. to form Mobile R., 45 ms. above the head of Mobile Bay, and about 70 ms. from the Gulf of Mexico. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Alabama River?

*A.* It is in Ala., formed by the junction of the Coosa and the Tallapoosa, and flowing S. S. W., it unites with the Tombigbee R., 45 ms. above Mobile Bay, and, after the junction, has the name of Mobile R. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Chattahoochee River?

*A.* It is in Ga. and Ala., rises in the Apalachian Mts., in Habersham co., Ga., and, flowing S. W., it reaches the border of Ala.



at Miller's bend, from which it flows nearly S., forming, for 200 ms., the boundary between Ga. and Ala., to its junction with Flint R., to form Apalachicola R. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is St. John's River?

*A.* This r. which is in Flor., rises in an immense marsh, and flows northwardly nearly parallel with the Atlantic, until it turns suddenly to the E. and flows into the Atlantic. (M. A.)

This river receives, in the upper part of its course, the Ocklawaha, a large branch, previous to which it passes through Lake George. Its whole course is about 250 ms. It often spreads from 3 to 5 ms. in width, though in other places it is not more than one-fourth of a mile wide. Vessels drawing 8 ft. water enter Lake George and Dunn's Lake, 150 ms. from its mouth. At its entrance there is 12 ft. water on the bar, and it is here only 1 m. wide. There is a light-house on the S. side of the r. at its entrance.

*Q.* Where is Alatomaha River?

*A.* It is in Ga., and is formed by the union of the Ocmulgee and the Oconee. After the junction, the Alatomaha becomes a large r., flowing S. E., with a gentle current, through forests and plains, upwards of 100 ms., and enters, by several outlets, into Altamaha Sound, through which it passes into the Atlantic, 60 ms. S. S. W. of Savannah. This river is sometimes called the Altamaha. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Savannah River?

*A.* It is in Ga., and forms the N. E. boundary of the State, separating it from S. C. It is formed by the union of Tugaloo and Seneca Rivers, near the S. E. corner of Franklin co., Ga., and flowing S. E., it enters the Atlantic through Tybee Sound, near 32° N. lat., and 81° W. long. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Santee River?

*A.* It is in S. C., is one of the largest rivers of the State, and is formed by the union of Congaree and Wateree Rivers, about 25 ms. S. E. of Columbia. Both these branches rise by different names, in N. C., where the main branch of the Wateree is called Catawba R., and of the Congaree,\* Broad R. It flows S. E., and enters the Atlantic by two mouths, about 20 ms. below Georgetown, in about 33° 6' N. lat., and 79° 20' W. long. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Great Pedee River?

*A.* It is in N. C. and S. C., rises chiefly in Wilkes co., in the N. W. part of N. C., where it bears, for a great distance, the name of Yadkin R. After it enters S. C., it is called the Great Pedee R., and it flows in a general south-easterly direction until, uniting with Waccamaw R., it enters and forms Winyaw Bay, a little below Georgetown, and communicates with the Atlantic 12 ms. below Georgetown, near 33° 10' N. lat. (M. A.)

---

\* The Congaree is formed by the Saluda and Broad.



**Q.** Where is Cape Fear River ?

**A.** It is N. C., and is the largest and most important r. in the State; it is formed by the union of Deep and Haw Rivers; the former rises in Guilford co., and the latter in Rockingham co. After their junction in the S. E. part of Chatham co., the united stream flows in a general south-easterly direction, and empties into the Atlantic through a broad estuary by two channels, one on each side of Smith's Island, in about  $33^{\circ} 55'$  N. lat., and  $78^{\circ} 5'$  W. long. (M. A.)

**Q.** Where is Neuse River ?

**A.** It is in N. C., rises in Person co., and flowing S. S. E., through Orange, Granville, Wake, and Johnson, enters Wayne co. Here it turns S. E. by E. through Wayne, Lenoir, and Craven counties, and opens by a wide estuary into Pamlico Sound. (M. A.)

**Q.** Where is Tar River ?

**A.** It is in N. C., rises in Granville co., and flowing in a general course, S. E. by E., below Washington it expands into a wide estuary, which is denominated Pamlico R., until it enters Pamlico Sound, near  $35^{\circ} 15'$  N. lat., and  $76^{\circ} 30'$  W. long. (M. A.)

**Q.** Where is Roanoke River ?

**A.** It is in Va. and N. C., formed by the junction of Staunton and Dan Rivers, near the S. boundary of Va., and flowing in a general south-easterly direction, passes into N. C., and falls into the head of Albemarle Sound, near  $36^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $76^{\circ} 40'$  W. long. (M. A.)

**Q.** Where is James River ?

**A.** It is in Va., formed by the union of Jackson's and Cowpasture Rivers, in the Alleghany Mts., and flowing in a general course easterly, enters Hampton Roads near the mouth of Chesapeake Bay, a little S. of the 37th parallel of N. lat. (M. A.)

**Q.** Where is the Potomac River ?

**A.** It is in Md. and Va., rises in two branches, the N. and the S., in and near the Alleghany Mts., and, flowing at first north-easterly, and afterwards in a general south-easterly direction, forms, in its whole course, the boundary between Md. and Va. It enters Chesapeake Bay between Point Lookout and Smith's Point, by a mouth 10 ms. wide, in about  $38^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $76^{\circ} 10'$  W. long. (M. A.)

**Q.** Where is the Susquehanna River ?

**A.** It is the largest R. in Pa., and among the largest of the Atlantic rivers of the U. S., and is formed by two main branches, the North Branch and the West Branch. The northern branch rises in Otsego co., in the S. E. central part of N. Y., and one of its sources constitutes the outlet of Otsego Lake. Proceeding W. and S. W., it crosses into Pa., and 7 ms. below the line it turns

and flows S. E. and then S. W., until, at Northumberland, it receives the W. branch, its largest tributary, which rises in Cambria co., Pa.: their united waters then flow S. to the junction of the Juniata R. from the W.; its direction is then S. E. until its entrance into the N. extremity of Chesapeake Bay, in the N. E. corner of Maryland. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Delaware River?

*A.* It rises by two principal branches on the W. side of the Catskill Mts., N. Y. The Oquago branch flows S. W. across Delaware Co., and turning S. E., it reaches the Pa. line in lat.  $42^{\circ}$  N., and proceeding 7 ms. on the line between that state and N. Y., it receives the Popachton branch, which also proceeds from the Catskill Mts., in a S. W. direction, to its junction. After the union of these streams, the river pursues a winding course to the S. E., till it touches the N. W. corner of N. J., and then turns to the S. W., till it passes through the Kittatinny or Blue Mts. Thence it flows, first S. E., then S. W., till near Delaware Bay, which it enters in a S. E. direction, forming the boundaries of the States of N. Y. and N. J. on one side, and Pa. and Del. on the other. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Hudson River?

*A.* It is in the State of N. Y., being one of the finest and most important rivers in the U. S. It rises by two main branches, in the mountainous regions of Hamilton and Essex Counties, W. of Lakes Champlain and George. The E. branch from the N. passes through Schroon Lake, and is sometimes called Schroon branch; and the W. branch rises farther W. in Hamilton co., by various branches, and is considered as the main branch or Hudson. About 40 ms. from the source of each, they unite in the S. part of Warren Co. It thence flows 15 ms. S., then E. of S. 15 ms. to Hadley's Falls, thence it flows 20 ms. N. by E. to Glen's Falls. It then flows S. 40 ms., and receives from the W. its principal tributary, Mohawk R. Thence running a little W. of S. 156 ms., it enters the Atlantic Ocean at Sandy-Hook, at the mouth of New York Bay. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Mohawk River?

*A.* It is in the State of N. Y., rises in Lewis co., and, after a course, first S. and then E. by S., it enters the Hudson R. by several mouths, at Waterford, 8 or 10 ms. above Albany. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the St. Lawrence River?\*

*A.* It issues from Lake Ontario, in about  $44^{\circ} 10'$  N. lat., and  $76^{\circ} 30'$  W. long., and flowing north-easterly, falls into the Gulf of St. Lawrence, in about  $49^{\circ} 30'$  N. lat., and  $64^{\circ}$  W. long. (M. A.)

---

\* Length of the St. Lawrence from Ontario to the sea, nearly 1000 ms.

St. Lawrence, the principal river of N. America, and when considered, as it should be, in connexion with the chain of lakes or inland seas, of which it is the outlet, is one of the largest rivers in the world, extending from W. to E., through about  $27^{\circ}$  of long., and about  $8^{\circ}$  of lat. Regarding then the St. Lawrence in this point of view, or as a general name for the connecting link of that great river, or water system, that unites with the Atlantic in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, its most remote source will probably be found to be the St. Louis, an affluent of Lake Superior, rising in the table-land of the Huron country, near the sources of the Mississippi, flowing S., and of the Red R., flowing N. It receives different names in different parts of its course, being, as already seen, at first the St. Louis; between Lake Superior and Lake Huron, the St. Mary; between Lakes Huron and Erie, the St. Clair and Detroit; between Lakes Erie and Ontario, the Niagara; and from Ontario to Montreal it is sometimes called the Cataraqui or Iroquois; and from Montreal to the sea, being the St. Lawrence, properly so called. But it is now usually called the St. Lawrence from Lake Ontario to the sea. Considered in this point of view, its entire course, from its source to its mouth in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, in about lat.  $49^{\circ} 30' N.$ , long.  $64^{\circ} W.$ , may be estimated at 2200 ms. Besides traversing Lakes Superior, Huron, Erie, and Ontario, the Lake St. Clair, and some similar sheets of water, are merely enlargements of its bed. Lake Michigan, also, is included within its basin; the whole is roughly estimated by Darby to comprise an area of about 18,000 sq. ms., including the largest collection of fresh water to be found on the surface of the globe.

The basin of the St. Lawrence is supposed by Darby to contain "more than half of all the fresh water on this planet!" Taking the area, mean depth of the lakes, &c., their solid contents will amount to 1,547,011,792,360,000 cubic feet of water, being sufficient to envelope the entire earth with a watery covering not less than three inches in depth.

*Q.* Where is Connecticut River?

*A.* It is the largest r. in New England, has its source in the highlands on the N. border of N. H., and its W. branch forms the boundary, by treaty, between the U. S. and Canada, to the  $45^{\circ}$  of N. lat. Its general course is S. by W.; and, dividing N. H. and Vt., it passes through the western part of Mass. and the central part of Conn.; and below Middletown, proceeding in a S. S. E. direction, it enters Long Island Sound, between Saybrooke and Lyme. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Merrimack River?

*A.* It is in N. H., and is one of the large rivers of New England. It is formed by the union of Pemigewasset R., which rises near the Notch in the White Mts., with Winnipiseogee R., which proceeds from Winnipiseogee Lake. The junction takes place near Sanbornton, 70 ms. below the source of the former, which is the main stream. Its general course is S. by E. until it enters the state of Mass., where it curves to a general course of nearly N. E. and E., until it falls into the Atlantic, a little below Newburyport. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Kennebec River?

*A.* It is in Me., and next to the Penobscot the most important r. in the state; has its principal source in the outlet of Moosehead Lake; but 20 ms. below it receives Dead R., which is a longer branch, and rises within 5 ms. of the Chaudiere, which flows into the St. Lawrence. Its general course is S. by E., with several considerable curves, until it empties into the Atlantic Ocean, about 25 ms. E. of Portland. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Penobscot River?

*A.* It is the largest r. of Me., and rises by two main branches. The larger or western branch rises in the highlands, in the western part of Me., and divides it from Canada. After flowing a considerable distance E. and N., it enters and passes through Chesuncook Lake, whence flowing S. E., and through Bamedumpkok and other Lakes, it unites with the eastern branch. This branch, called the Seboois, rises in some small lakes near the head waters of the Aroostook R., and flows nearly S. to the junction. After the junction the river proceeds in a S. E. direction until it receives the Mattawamkeag R. from the N. E. Its direction is then S. S. W., until the entrance of the Piscataquis, and thence S. by W. to its entrance into Penobscot Bay, at Owl's Head, in about  $44^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $69^{\circ}$  W. long. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is St. John's River?\*

*A.* It is in Me. and New Brunswick, and is the principal stream in the latter, and, after the St. Lawrence, perhaps the finest in British America. It rises by several branches, some of which are in Somerset co. Me., and others in Canada East; its head waters approach near to those of the Chaudiere in Canada, and the Penobscot in Me.; by a broad sweep it passes through the N. part of Me., and below the entrance of St. Francis R. it forms the N. boundary of Me. until it crosses the U. S. boundary into New Brunswick, in about lat.  $47^{\circ}$  N., where it pursues a S. and S. E. course until it enters the Bay of Fundy, in about  $45^{\circ} 10'$  N. lat., and  $66^{\circ} 3'$  W. long. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Columbia or Oregon River?

*A.* It is in Oregon Territory; its N. branch rises in the Rocky Mts. in  $50^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $116^{\circ}$  W. long., and thence pursues a northern route to near McGillivray's pass in the Rocky Mts. It then turns S. and proceeds to Fort Colville. To the S. of this it tends to the W. Thence it pursues a westerly course for 60 ms. It thence passes to the southward until it reaches Wallawalla in  $46^{\circ}$  N. lat. It now takes its last turn to the westward, and empties into the Pacific Ocean between Cape Disappointment and Point Adams. (M. A.)

---

\* Called by the Indians *Looshtook*, or the "long river."



*Q.* Where is Lewis or Snake River?

*A.* It is in Oregon Ter., has its source in the Rocky Mts., in the S. E. part, whence it flows in a general course first S. W., then N. W., and empties into Oregon or Columbia R. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Clarke's River?

*A.* It is in Oregon Ter., rises near the Rocky Mts., flows first S. E., then N., and afterwards N. W., passing through Kulluspelm Lake, and empties into Oregon or Columbia R. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Frazer's River?

*A.* It is in British America, rises in the Rocky Mts., flows first N. W., then S. and W., and empties into Howe's Sound, a tributary of the Gulf of Georgia, in  $49^{\circ} 7' N.$  lat. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Klamet River?

*A.* It is in Oregon Territory and Upper or New California; rises in Klamet Lake, in the S. W. part of Oregon, flows first S., then a little N. of W., and empties into the Pacific Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Tell how long each of these Rivers is.

*A.* Mississippi Proper is 2800 ms., with the Missouri, 4100 ms.; Missouri, 2900; Yellow Stone, 800; Big Horn, 600; Platte or Nebraska, 1000; Kansas, 700; Arkansas, 2000; Canadian, 900; Red, 1200; Osage, 450; Des Moines, 450; St. Peter's, 300; Wisconsin, 400; Rock, 300; Illinois, 500; Wabash, 500; Maumee, 300; Ohio, 1300; Alleghany, 350; Monongahela, 300; Kanawha, 400; Cumberland, 600; Tennessee, 900; White, 600; Washita, 500; Yazoo, 400; Rio Grande, 1800; Nueces, 350; Colorado, 700; Brazos, 650; Trinity, 450; Sabine, 350; Pearl, 350; Tombigbee, 500; Alabama, 600; Chattahoochee, 450; St. John's (Florida), 250; Alatomaha, 400; Savannah, 500; Santee, 450; Great Pedee, 450; Cape Fear, 350; Neuse, 300; Tar, 200; Roanoke, 500; James, 500; Potomac, 500; Susquehanna, 500; Delaware, 400; Hudson, 350; Mohawk, 200; St. Lawrence (including the lakes), 2200; \* Connecticut, 450; Merrimack, 200; Kennebec, 300; Penobscot, 350; St. John's (Maine), 450; Oregon or Columbia, 1200; Lewis, 800; Clarke's, 600; Frazer's, 750; Klamet, 250. (M. A.)

#### CAPES.

*Q.* Where is Cape Cod?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of the U. S., being a Peninsula of Mass., on the S. side of Mass. Bay. (M. A.)

The whole peninsula comprises Barnstable co., and projects from the S. shores of Mass., curving inward, something in the shape of the arm of a man, bent inward at the elbow and the wrist. It is 65 ms. long, and from 1 to 20 broad.

---

\* The St. Lawrence R., from Lake Ontario to the Atlantic, is nearly 1000 miles long.



*Q.* Where is Cape Malabar ?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of the U. S., lying S. of Cape Cod, on the S. shore of the peninsula of Barnstable co., Mass. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Charles ?

*A.* It is on the coast of Va., situated on the N. side of the entrance into Chesapeake Bay, 12 ms. N. of Cape Henry, opposite, in about  $37^{\circ} 12'$  N. lat., and  $75^{\circ} 58'$  W. long. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Henry ?

*A.* It is on the coast of Va., being the point on the S. side of the entrance of Chesapeake Bay, 12 ms. of Cape Charles, opposite. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Hatteras ?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of N. C., on the S. E. point of an island, composed of sand and rock, which encloses Pamlico Sound. (M. A.)

This Cape is the dread of Navigators, and has occasioned many shipwrecks. Lat.  $35^{\circ} 15'$  N. ; long.  $75^{\circ} 30'$  W.

*Q.* Where is Cape Fear ?

*A.* It is on the S. E. coast of N. C., on the S. point of Smith's Island, near the mouth of Cape Fear R. (M. A.)

This Cape has a dangerous shoal, called, from its form, the frying-pan. The Cape is in lat.  $33^{\circ} 48'$  N., and long.  $78^{\circ} 9'$  W.

*Q.* Where is Cape Lookout ?

*A.* It is on the S. E. coast of N. C., on the S. point of an Island which encloses Core Sound, in  $34^{\circ} 42'$  N. lat., and  $76^{\circ} 37'$  W. long. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Cannaveral ?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of Flor., N. lat.  $28^{\circ} 22'$ . (M. A.)

It was off this Cape, April 29th, 1814, that the British brig Epervier, of 22 guns, and 128 men, was captured by the U. S. sloop Peacock, Captain Warrington, after an action of 42 minutes.

*Q.* Where is Cape Sable ?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Flor. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Romans ?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Flor. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape St. Blas ?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Flor. (M. A.)

#### ISLANDS.

*Q.* Where is Mt. Desert Island ?

*A.* It is in Hancock co., on the coast of Me., situated between Frenchman's and Blue Hill Bays. (M. A.)

This Island is 15 ms. long, and 12 broad, and has a number of excellent harbors. It contains two townships, Eden, and Mount Desert.

*Q.* Where is Nantucket Island ?

*A.* It is an Island and co. of Mass., situated in the Atlantic

Ocean, 10 ms. E. of Martha's Vineyard, 30 ms. S. of Cape Cod. (M. A.)

This Island is 15 ms. long, with an average breadth of 4 ms., containing 50 sq. ms.

*Q.* Where is Martha's Vineyard?

*A.* It is an Island of Mass., lying in the Atlantic Ocean, off the S. coast; it is S. of Falmouth on the mainland, and W.N. W. of Nantucket Island. (M. A.)

This Island is 21 ms. long, and from 2 to 5 ms. broad. With several small Islands in the vicinity, it constitutes Duke's co., which contains 120 sq. ms.

*Q.* Where is Long Island?

*A.* It is situated in the S. E. part of the State of N. Y., lying between the Atlantic on the S., and Long Island Sound on the N., by which it is separated from the State of Conn. (M. A.)

This Island forms a part of the State of N. Y., situated between  $40^{\circ} 33'$  and  $41^{\circ} 6'$  N. lat., and  $72^{\circ}$  and  $74^{\circ} 2'$  W. long. Its length is about 120 ms.; its greatest breadth near 20 ms., and contains 1500 sq. ms., having 3 counties, King's, on the W. end, Queen's, in the middle, and Suffolk, on the E. end of the Island.

*Q.* Where are the Florida Reefs?

*A.* They are a cluster of low, sandy Islands, near the S. extremity of Flor., extending, in a curved form, 200 ms. inward to the Gulf of Mexico. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Tortugas Islands?

*A.* They are in the Gulf of Mexico, lying W. of Florida Reefs. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Manitouline Isles?

*A.* They extend along the N. part of Lake Huron, from E. to W. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Grand Island?

*A.* It is in the S. part of Lake Superior. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Island Royale?

*A.* It is in the N. W. part of Lake Superior. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Apostles?

*A.* They are in the W. part of Lake Superior. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Quadra and Vancouver's Island?

*A.* It is in the Pacific Ocean, on the W. coast of British America, separated from the mainland by the Gulf of Georgia, and from the U. S. by the Strait of Juan de Fuca. (M. A.)

*Q.* How long is it?

*A.* It is 300 ms. long. (M. A.)

*Page 106.—Lesson 79.—Map No. 5.*

## MOUNTAINS.

*Q.* Where is Mt. Rainier?

*A.* It is in the W. part of Oregon Ter. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Mt. St. Helens?

*A.* It is in the W. part of Oregon.

*Q.* Where is Mt. Hood?

*A.* It is in the W. part of Oregon Ter. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Mt. Jefferson?

*A.* It is in the W. part of Oregon Ter. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Mt. Olympus?

*A.* It is in the W. part of Oregon Ter. (M. A.)

*Q.* How high are the first two?

*A.* Mt. Rainier is 12,000 ft.; Mt. St. Helens, 13,300 ft. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Rocky Mts.?

*A.* They are in the W. part of N. America; they extend through Russian America, British America, and the U. S. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, pages 86–87.*

*Q.* How long are they?

*A.* They are 4000 ms. long. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Fremont's Peak?

*A.* It is on the boundary between Missouri and Oregon Territories. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Long's Peak?

*A.* It is in the W. part of Indian Ter. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Pike's Peak?

*A.* It is in the S.W. part of Indian Ter. (M. A.)

*Q.* How high are they?

*A.* Fremont's Peak is 13,570 ft.; Long's Peak, 12,500 ft.; Pike's, 12,000 ft. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Ozark Mts., and what is their height?

*A.* They extend from the lead-mine region of Mo., in a south-westerly direction across the State, the N.W. part of Ark., and the S.E. part of Indian Territory to Texas, and are 2000 ft. in height. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Cumberland Mts.?

*A.* They extend along the S.E. border of Ky., forming a part of the boundary between that State and Va., and afterwards running across Tenn. in a south-westerly direction, terminate in Northern Ala. They divide the State of Tenn. into two sections, called E. and W. Tenn. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Alleghany Mts.?

*A.* They are in the E. part of the U. S., extending from the N. parts of Ala. and Ga., in a N.E. direction, and passing through

Tenn., Va., and Pa., terminate in the Catskill Mts., E. of the Hudson R., in the S. E. part of N. Y. In their course they separate Tenn. and N. C. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, page 87.*

*Q.* What is their length and height?

*A.* They are 900 ms. long, and  $\frac{1}{2}$  m. high. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Blue Ridge?

*A.* It is in the E. part of the U. S., and runs in a north-easterly direction from the N. part of Ga., through N. C., Va., and Md., to the S. part of Pa., separating S. C., on the N. W., from Ga. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Blue Mts.?

*A.* They are a continuation of the Blue Ridge and the E. range of the Alleghanies. They commence at the termination of the Blue Ridge in Pa., and extending in a N. E. direction through Pa., and the N. W. part of N. J., they terminate in the S. E. part of N. Y. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Green Mts.?

*A.* They are in the W. part of New England, extending from Conn. through the W. part of Mass., and the middle of Vt., between Lake Champlain and Connecticut R. In Washington co., Vt., they throw off a branch of inferior height to the N. E., which extends to the borders of Canada, while the main branch continues N. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the White Mts.?

*A.* They are in the N. part of N. H. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Black Hills?

*A.* They commence in the S. part of Mo. Ter., through which they extend in a N. E. direction. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Black Mountain?

*A.* It is in the N. W. part of N. C. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the three Butes?

*A.* They are in the S. E. part of Oregon Ter. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the three Tetons?

*A.* They are in the S. E. part of Oregon Ter., E. of the three Paps. (M. A.)

The last are said by some to be the highest mountains in the U. S.; but this is uncertain. Frémont's Peak is the highest known. (M. G. p. 106.)

*Q.* Where is the South Pass?

*A.* It is situated between Wind River Mts. and Sweetwater Mts. (*see Map, No. 15*), in about  $42^{\circ} 30'$  N. lat., and near  $109^{\circ}$  W. long. (M. A.)

This remarkable Pass is a gap of about 20 ms. wide in the Rocky Mts. It forms a most convenient passage for travellers to and from Oregon. (M. G. p. 106.)



## POPULATION OF CITIES.

Q. What eight cities in the U. States number 30,000 inhabitants and upwards?

A. Boston, New York, Brooklyn,\* Albany, Philadelphia, Baltimore, Cincinnati, and New Orleans. (M. A.)

Q. What eight cities number from 20,000 to 30,000?

A. Lowell, Providence, Rochester, Washington, Louisville, Richmond, Pittsburg, and Charleston. (M. A.)

Q. What twelve cities have from 10,000 to 20,000?

A. Portland, Salem, New Haven, Troy, Utica, Buffalo, Norfolk, St. Louis, Newark, Petersburg, Savannah, and Mobile. (M. A.)

## DISTANCES, ETC.

Q. How far is it from New Jersey to Portugal?

A. 3400 ms. (M. A.)

Q. From New Jersey to the Azores?

A. 2500 ms. (M. A.)

Q. From Chesapeake Bay to Portugal?

A. 3700 ms. (M. A.)

Q. From Cape Hatteras to the Strait of Gibraltar?

A. 3900 ms. (M. A.)

Q. From Charleston to Madeira?

A. 3600 ms. (M. A.)

Q. From Savannah to Bermuda?

A. 900 ms. (M. A.)

Q. From Florida to Morocco?

A. 4200 ms. (M. A.)

Q. From Florida to the Canary Islands?

A. 3800 ms. (M. A.)

Q. How long and wide is the Atlantic Ocean?

A. It is 8500 ms. long, and from 2000 to 5000 ms. wide. (M. A.)

Q. How long and wide is the Gulf of Mexico?

A. It is 1000 ms. long, and 800 wide. (M. A.)

Q. How long and wide is the Pacific Ocean?

A. It is 11,000 ms. long, and 7000 wide. (M. A.)

For the last two, see Map No. 6.

## EASTERN, OR NEW ENGLAND STATES.

Page 109.—Lesson 81.—Map No. 8.

Q. Which are the New England States?

A. Vt., Me., N. H., Mass., R. I., and Conn.

Q. Which extends farthest north and east?

A. Me.

---

\* For the position of this city, see Map No. 11.



Q. Which farthest south and west?

A. Conn.

Q. Which is the largest State?

A. Me.

Q. The second in extent?

A. Vt.

Q. Third?

A. N. H.

Q. Fourth?

A. Mass.

Q. Fifth?

A. Conn.

Q. Smallest?

A. R. I.

These states extend from latitude  $41^{\circ}$  to  $48^{\circ}$ . (M. A.)

Q. How many degrees of latitude then do they include?

A. Seven.

They extend east and west from  $3\frac{1}{4}^{\circ}$  to  $10^{\circ}$  east longitude from Washington. (M. A.)

Q. How many degrees then of longitude do they include?

A.  $6\frac{3}{4}$ .

Q. Which is the largest river in New England?

A. Connecticut.

Q. The next?

A. Penobscot.

Q. What river is partly in Maine and partly in New Brunswick?

A. St. John's.

Q. How long are these rivers?

A. Connecticut, 450; Penobscot, 350; St. John's, 450. (M. A.)

Q. Which is the largest lake wholly in the Eastern States?

A. Moosehead.

Q. How long is it?

A. 35 ms. (M. A.)

Q. What lake is partly in New England, and partly in the state lying west of it?

A. Lake Champlain.

Q. How long is this lake?

A. 120 ms. (M. A.)

Lake Champlain is navigable for vessels of large burthen. During the war of the Revolution, and that of 1812, naval battles were fought upon it. Commodore M'Donough's victory, in which the whole British fleet was captured, took place September 11th, 1814. (M. G. p. 109.)

Q. Which is the highest mountain in New England?

A. Mt. Washington.

Q. Which is the next highest?

A. Mt. Katahdin

- Q. The next ?  
A. Mansfield Mt.  
Q. How high are each of these mountains ?  
A. Mt. Washington, 6234 ft. ; Mt. Katahdin, 5000 ; Mansfield Mt., 4280. (M. A.)  
Q. Which are the three principal Islands in New England ?  
A. Mount Desert, Nantucket, and Martha's Vineyard.  
Q. Which state has the greatest extent of sea-coast ?  
A. Me.  
Q. Which has the smallest ?  
A. N. H.  
Q. Which has no sea-coast ?  
A. Vt.  
Q. How many miles is it from Maine to Nova Scotia ?  
A. 250. (M. A.)  
Q. To Spain ?  
A. 3100. (M. A.)  
Q. To Circassia ?  
A. 5600. (M. A.)  
Q. From Massachusetts to Italy ?  
A. 4100. (M. A.)  
Q. To Turkey ?  
A. 4500. (M. A.)  
Q. From Long Island to Greece ?  
A. 4800. (M. A.)  
Q. In what year did the Pilgrims emigrate to New England ?  
A. In 1620. (M. A.)  
Q. What was the name of the vessel ?  
A. Mayflower.  
Q. How many miles is it from Boston to Halifax ?  
A. 450. (M. A.)  
Q. From Halifax to Liverpool ?  
A. 2100. (M. A.)  
Q. Total distance from Boston to Liverpool ?  
A. 2550. (M. A.)
- 

## MAINE.

*Page 111.—Lesson 82.—Map No. 8.*

- Q. What country bounds Maine on the east ?  
A. New Brunswick.  
Q. On the west ?  
A. Canada East and N. H.  
Q. What ocean on the south ?  
A. Atlantic ?

Q. Which are the five principal rivers that flow into the Atlantic Ocean ?

A. St. Croix, Penobscot, Kennebec, Androscoggin, and Saco.

Q. How long are they ?

A. St. Croix, 100; Penobscot, 350; Kennebec, 300; Androscoggin, 250; Saco, 100. (M. A.)

Q. What river rises in the centre of Maine, and flows into New Brunswick ?

A. St. John's.

Q. How long is it ?

A. 450 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Which are the three principal lakes ?

A. Moosehead, Chesuncook, and Grand.

Q. How long are the first two ?

A. Moosehead, 35 ms.; Chesuncook, 24 ms. (M. A.)

Q. The principal mountain, and its height ?

A. Mt. Katahdin, 5000 ft. high. (M. A.)

Q. The largest Island ?

A. Mount Desert.

Q. Which is the most eastern county ?

A. Washington.

Q. The most western ?

A. Oxford.

Q. The most southern ?

A. York.

Q. In what county, and on what river, is the capital situated ?

A. Augusta,\* the capital, is situated in Kennebec co., on the Kennebec River.

A. Which are the four largest towns, and their population ?

A. Portland, 15,000; Bangor, 8500; Augusta, 5250; Thomastown, 6250. (M. A.)

Q. How many miles is it from Maine to Nova Scotia ?

A. 250. (M. A.)

Q. To Spain ?

A. 3100. (M. A.)

Q. To Circassia ?

A. 5600. (M. A.)

Q. What boundary in the northern part of the state ?

A. St. John's River, and St. François.

Q. What in the middle ?

A. The boundary line claimed by Great Britain until 1842.

Q. What boundary formerly separated the state from Canada East ?

A. The boundary line according to the Treaty of 1783.

---

\* It is situated at the head of sloop navigation on the Kennebec R., 50 ms. from its mouth.

*Q.* What boundary extends from Lake Pohenagamook to the N. W. branch of the St. John's ?

*A.* The boundary line of 1842.

MAINE, the north-easternmost of the New England States, is bounded N. by Canada East, E. by New Brunswick, from which it is separated by the St. Croix River, and a line due N. from the monument, at the source of the St. Croix River, as designated and agreed to by the commissioners, under the 5th article in the treaty of 1794, between the governments of the U.S. and Great Britain; thence N., following the exploring line run and marked by the surveyors of the two governments, in the years 1817 and 1818, under the 5th article of the treaty of Ghent, to its intersection with the St. John's River, and to the middle of the channel thereof; thence up the middle of the main channel of said River St. John's, to the mouth of the River St. Francis, and through the lakes through which it flows to the outlet of the lake Pohenagamook; thence southwesterly, in a straight line to a point in the N. W. branch of the River St. John's, which point shall be 10 miles distant from the main branch of the St. John's, in a straight line, and in the nearest direction; but if the said point shall be found to be less than 7 miles from the nearest point or crest of the highlands, that divide the rivers which empty themselves into the River St. Lawrence from those which fall into the River St. John, to a point 7 miles in a straight line from the said summit or crest; thence in a straight line in a course about S.  $8^{\circ}$  W. to the point where the parallel of lat.  $46^{\circ} 25'$  N. intersects the S. W. branch of the St. John's; thence southerly by the said branch to the source thereof in the highlands at the Metiarmette portage; thence down along the said highlands which divide the waters which empty themselves into the St. Lawrence from those which fall into the Atlantic Ocean, to the head of Hall's stream; thence down the middle of said stream till the line thus run intersects the old line of boundary surveyed and marked by Valentine and Collins previously to the year 1774, as the  $45^{\circ}$  of N. lat., and which has been known and understood to be the line of actual division between the states of N. Y. and Vt. on the one side, and the British province of Canada East on the other; and from the said point of intersection W. along said dividing line, as heretofore known and understood, to the Iroquois, or St. Lawrence River. Such are the terms of the late treaty, now ratified by both governments, and which has happily settled a controversy of a quarter of a century. The line designated as the old line, run as the  $45^{\circ}$  of N. lat., is found to be about 1 mile N. of the true line of  $45^{\circ}$  N. lat. Maine is bounded S. by the Atlantic Ocean. This state lies between  $43^{\circ} 5'$  and  $47^{\circ} 20'$  N. lat., and between  $66^{\circ} 50'$  and  $70^{\circ} 55'$  W. long. It is computed to contain 35,000 sq. ms., or 22,400,000 acres. It was under the jurisdiction of Mass. until 1820, when it was made an independent state. The population in 1790, was 96,540; in 1800, 151,719; in 1810, 228,705; in 1820, 298,335; in 1830, 399,955; in 1840, 501,793. Of these 252,989 were free white males; 247,449 do. females; free coloured males, 720; do. females, 635. Employed in agriculture, 101,630; in commerce, 2921; manufactures, 21,879; navigating the ocean, 10,091; learned professions, 1889. Augusta, at the head of sloop navigation on the Kennebec river, 50 miles from its mouth, is the seat of government.

This state is divided into 13 counties, which, with their population and capitals, are as follows: YORK, 54,034, Alfred; CUMBERLAND, 68,658,

Portland; LINCOLN, 63,517, Wiscasset; HANCOCK, 28,605, Ellsworth; WASHINGTON, 28,327, Machias; KENNEBEC, 55,823, Augusta; OXFORD, 38,351, Paris; SOMERSET, 33,912, Norridgewock; PENOBSCOT, 45,705, Bangor; WALDO, 41,509, Belfast; PISCATAQUIS, 13,138, Dover; FRANKLIN, 20,801, Farmington; AROOSTOOK, 9,413, Houlton. These counties contain about 498 townships, or settlements, some of which have but few inhabitants.

---

## NEW HAMPSHIRE.

*Page 113.—Lesson 83.—Map No. 8.*

- Q. What river separates New Hampshire from Vermont?  
*A.* Connecticut.  
 Q. How long is it?  
*A.* 450 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. What river runs through the centre of the state?  
*A.* Merrimac.  
 Q. How long is it?  
*A.* 200 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. What lake flows into it?  
*A.* Winnipiseogee.  
 Q. How long is it?  
*A.* 22 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. What mountains are in Coos county?  
*A.* White.  
 Q. Which is the principal?  
*A.* Mt. Washington.  
 Q. How high is it?  
*A.* 6234 feet. (M. A.)  
 Q. Which is the principal town and its population?  
*A.* Portsmouth, 8000. (M. A.)  
 Q. The Capital and its population?  
*A.* Concord, 5000. (M. A.)  
 Q. On what river is Concord?\*
- A.* Merrimac.  
 Q. Which is the most northern county?  
*A.* Coos.  
 Q. The three most southern counties?  
*A.* Cheshire, Hillsborough, and Rockingham.  
 Q. In what county is the capital?  
*A.* Merrimac.

---

\* Concord, the cap. of Merrimac co., and of the state of N. H., lies on both sides of the Merrimac r., in  $43^{\circ} 12' 29''$  N. lat., and  $71^{\circ} 29'$  W. long., 65 ms. N. N. W. of Boston, Mass.; 146 ms. S. W. of Augusta, Me.; 97 ms. S. E. of Montpelier, Vt.; 153 ms. N. E. of Albany, N. Y.; and 481 ms. from W.



Q. What counties contain each two county towns?

A. Rockingham, Strafford, and Grafton.

County towns are distinguished by a ring with a dot in it. (M. G., p. 113.)

NEW HAMPSHIRE, one of the Northern or New England States, is bounded N. by Canada East; E. by Me.; S. E. by the Atlantic, S. by Mass.; and W. by Vt., from which it is separated by the western bank of Connecticut r. It is between  $42^{\circ} 41'$  and  $45^{\circ} 11'$  N. lat., and  $70^{\circ} 40'$  and  $72^{\circ} 28'$  W. long. It is 160 ms. long, and from 19 to 90 broad, containing 9491 sq. ms., or 6,074,240 acres. The pop. in 1790 was 141,885; in 1800, 138,858; in 1810, 214,460; in 1820, 244,161; in 1830, 269,328; in 1840, 284,574. Of these, 139,004 were free white males; 145,032, do. females; 248 free coloured males; 290 do. females. Engaged in agriculture, 77,949; in commerce, 1379; in manufactures and trades, 17,826; navigating the ocean, 455; do. lakes and rivers, 198; learned professions, 1640.

Concord is the seat of government, situated on the Merrimack r., 65 ms. N. N. W. from Boston, with which it has a boatable communication by means of the river and the Middlesex canal.

The state is divided into 10 counties, which, with their population and capitals, are as follows: ROCKINGHAM, 45,771, Portsmouth and Exeter; MERRIMAC, 36,253, Concord; HILLSBOROUGH, 42,494, Amherst; CHESHIRE, 26,429, Keene; SULLIVAN, 20,340, Newport; STRAFFORD, 23,166, Dover and Rochester; BELKNAP, 17,988, Guilford; CARROLL, 19,973, Ossipee; GRAFTON, 42,311, Haverhill and Plymouth; Coos, 9849, Lancaster. These contain about 323 townships.

---

## VERMONT.

*Page 114.—Lesson 84.—Map No. 8.*

Q. What river bounds Vermont on the east?

A. Connecticut.

Q. What state does it separate from Vermont?

A. N. H.

Q. What Lake bounds Vermont on the west?

A. Champlain.

Q. What state does it separate from Vermont?

A. N. Y.

Q. What country lies north of Vermont?

A. Canada.

Q. What state lies south?

A. Mass.

Q. What four streams flow into Lake Champlain?

A. Missisquoi, Lamoille, Onion, and Otter. (The first three are rivers,—the last is a creek.)

Q. What two Islands are in Lake Champlain?

A. North Hero, and South Hero.

These, with a small peninsula lying north of them, form the county of Grand Isle. (M. G. p. 114.)

*Q.* What Lake is partly in this state and partly in Canada?

*A.* Memphramagog.

*Q.* What mountains extend through the state?

*A.* Green.

*Q.* Which is the highest peak?

*A.* Mansfield Mt.

*Q.* How high is it?

*A.* 4280 ft. (M. A.)

*Q.* What other peaks?

*A.* Camel's Rump, and Killington.

*Q.* When was the battle of Bennington fought?

*A.* In 1777.

In August, 1777, 800 Americans under Gen. Stark, defeated a superior British force, on the W. border of this town.

*Q.* What rivers flow into the Connecticut?

*A.* The principal are, in New Hampshire, the Upper and Lower Ammonoosuc, Sugar, and Ashuelot rs.; in Vermont, Pasumpsic, Wells, White, Quechee, Black, Williams, and West rs.; in Massachusetts, Miller's, Deerfield, Chickopee and Westfield rs.; and in Connecticut, Farmington r.

VERMONT, one of the Northern or New England States, is bounded N. by Canada East; E. by N. H.; S. by Mass.; and W. by N. Y.; from which it is chiefly separated by Lake Champlain. It lies between  $42^{\circ} 44'$  and  $45^{\circ}$  N. lat., and between  $71^{\circ} 38'$  and  $73^{\circ} 26'$  W. long. It is 157 ms. long from N. to S., and 90 ms. broad on the N. boundary, and 40 on the southern, and contains 8000 sq. ms., or 5,120,000 acres. The pop. in 1790, was 85,589; in 1800, 154,465; in 1810, 217,895; in 1820, 235,764; in 1830, 280,679; in 1840, 291,948. Of these 146,378 were white males; 144,840 do. females; 364 coloured males; 366 do. females. Employed in agriculture, 73,150; in commerce, 1303; in manufactures and trades, 13,174; navigating the ocean, rivers, &c., 187; learned professions, &c., 1563.

The state is divided into 14 counties, which, with their population in 1840, and their capitals, were as follows: ADDISON, 23,583, Middlebury; BENNINGTON, 16,872, Bennington and Manchester; CALEDONIA, 21,891, Danville; CHITTENDEN, 22,977, Burlington; ESSEX, 4226, Guildhall; FRANKLIN, 24,531, St. Albans; GRAND ISLE, 3883, North Hero; LAMOILLE, 10,475, Hyde Park; ORANGE, 27,873, Chelsea; ORLEANS, 13,634, Irasburg; RUTLAND, 30,699, Rutland; WASHINGTON, 23,506, Montpelier; WINDHAM, 27,445, Newfane; WINDSOR, 40,356, Windsor and Woodstock. Montpelier, on Winooski or Onion River, 38 ms. E. S. E. from Burlington, is the capital.

---

## MASSACHUSETTS.

*Page 117.—Lesson 86.—Map No. 8.*

*Q.* What states bound Massachusetts on the north?

*A.* N. H. and Vt.

*Q.* On the south ?

*A.* R. I. and Conn.

*Q.* On the west ?

*A.* N. Y.

*Q.* What ocean on the east and south ?

*A.* Atlantic.

*Q.* What three mountains in Massachusetts ?

*A.* Wachusett Mt., Mt. Holyoke, and Mt. Tom.

The range west of the Connecticut River, is called the Housatonic Mts. ; it is a continuation of the Green Mts. (M. G. p. 117.)

*Q.* Which are the principal rivers ?

*A.* Connecticut, and Merrimac.

*Q.* How long are they ?

*A.* Connecticut, 450 ms. ; Merrimac, 200 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* The other rivers ?

*A.* Blackstone, Housatonic, Deerfield, Westfield, Miller's, Chickopee, Nashua, and Concord.

*Q.* What capes on the coast ?

*A.* Ann, Cod, and Malabar.

*Q.* What bays ?

*A.* Massachusetts, Cape Cod, and Buzzard's.

*Q.* What Islands ?

*A.* Nantucket and Martha's Vineyard.

*Q.* What counties do these Islands form ?

*A.* Nantucket, and Duke's.

*Q.* Which is the most northern county ?

*A.* Essex.

*Q.* The most southern ?

*A.* Nantucket.

*Q.* The most eastern ?

*A.* Barnstable.

*Q.* The most western ?

*A.* Berkshire.

*Q.* What is the capital ?

*A.* Boston.

*Q.* Its population ?

*A.* 93,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* In what county is it ?

*A.* Suffolk. (For the position of this county see Map No. 9.)

*Q.* What four places have each a population of upwards of 10,000 ?

*A.* Lowell, Salem, New Bedford, and Charlestown ?

*Q.* In what year was the battle of Lexington fought ?

*A.* In 1775.

Here the first blood was shed in the revolutionary war, April 19th, 1775. A monument, with an appropriate inscription, has been erected by the legis-

lature of Mass., on the spot near which 8 men were killed by the British. This event aroused the country to arms. Major Pitcairn, the British commander, who was engaged in the above transaction, was afterwards killed at the battle of Bunker Hill.

*Q.* Bunker's Hill?

*A.* In 1775. (The flag denoting this battle is near Charlestown.)

Breed's Hill, commonly called Bunker's Hill, is immediately in the rear of Charlestown, where a bloody battle was fought at the commencement of the revolution, June 17, 1775, in which the Americans lost, killed and wounded, 449, and the British 1005. To commemorate this important event, a granite obelisk has been erected on the spot, which is 30 feet square at the base, 220 feet high, and 15 feet square at the top, ascended within by a winding staircase, estimated to have cost about \$100,000.

*Q.* What rail-roads centre in Boston?

*A.* Eastern; Boston & Maine; Boston, Lowell, & Concord; Boston & Worcester, and Western; Boston & Providence, and Providence & Stonington; Boston & Fitchburg; Old Colony, Taunton & New Bedford; this is connected with Boston by the Boston & Providence Road. (See M. A., Table No. 5.)

*Q.* Tell by the scale what capital lies about 90 ms. from Boston.

*A.* Hartford. (M. A.)

*Q.* What county town in Maine lies a few miles farther?

*A.* Portland. (M. A.) (This is the most important place in the state, and was formerly the capital.) (M. G. p. 117.)

*Q.* What county towns in Connecticut are about the same distance from Boston as Portland?

*A.* Middletown, Haddam, and New London. (M. A.)

*Q.* What Island belonging to Rhode Island is not quite so far?

*A.* Block. (M. A.)

*Q.* What Island in Massachusetts is about the same distance?

*A.* Nantucket. (M. A.)

*Q.* What is the name of the county and county town?

*A.* Nantucket is the name of each.

*Q.* What does this island carry on to a great extent?

*A.* The whale-fishing.

*Q.* How far is Providence from Boston?

*A.* 42 miles, S. S. W.

*Q.* Worcester?

*A.* 42 miles, W. by S.

*Q.* Amherst?

*A.* 87 miles W.

*Q.* Exeter? (Rockingham co., N. H.)

*A.* 47 miles, N. by E.

*Q.* Augusta? (The cap. of Maine.)

*A.* 163 miles, N. N. E.

*Q.* Montpelier? (The cap. of Vermont.)

*A.* 160 miles N. N. W.

Q. In what states are the last two?

A. Augusta is in Maine;\* Montpelier, in Vermont.†

Q. What towns on Massachusetts Bay?

A. Salem, Marblehead, Charlestown, Boston, Hull, and Hingham.

MASSACHUSETTS, one of the Eastern States, is bounded N. by Vt. and N. H.; E. by the Atlantic; S. by the Atlantic, R. I., and Conn.; and W. by N. Y. It lies between  $41^{\circ} 23'$  and  $43^{\circ} 52'$  N. lat., and  $69^{\circ} 50'$  and  $73^{\circ} 10'$  W. long. It is 190 miles long and 90 broad, containing about 7800 sq. ms., or 4,992,000 acres. The population in 1790 was 388,727; in 1800, 422,845; in 1810, 472,040; in 1820, 523,287; in 1830, 610,408; in 1840, 737,699. Of these 360,679 were free white males; 368,351 do. females; 4654 free coloured males; 4015 do. females. Employed in mining, 499; in agriculture, 87,837; in commerce, 8063; in manufactures and trades, 85,176; navigating the ocean, 27,153; do. rivers, &c., 372; learned professions, 3804.

The capital, and the largest town in New England, is Boston, situated on a small peninsula in Boston bay.

This state is divided into 14 counties, which, with their population in 1840, and capitals, are as follows: SUFFOLK, 95,773, Boston; ESSEX, 94,987, Salem, Newburyport, and Ipswich; MIDDLESEX, 106,611, Cambridge, Concord, and Lowell; WORCESTER, 95,313, Worcester; HAMPSHIRE, 30,897, Northampton; HAMPDEN, 37,366, Springfield; FRANKLIN, 28,812, Greenfield; BERKSHIRE, 41,745, Lenox; BRISTOL, 60,164, New Bedford and Taunton; PLYMOUTH, 47,373, Plymouth; BARNSTABLE, 32,548, Barnstable; DUKES, 3958, Edgartown; NANTUCKET, 9012, Nantucket; NORFOLK, 53,140, Dedham.

## RHODE ISLAND.

### *Page 118.—Lesson 87.—Map No. 8.*

Q. What state bounds Rhode Island on the north and east?

A. Mass.

Q. On the west?

A. Conn.

Q. What ocean on the south?

A. Atlantic.

Q. What is the principal bay?

A. Narragansett.

Q. Which are the two principal islands?

A. Rhode Island, and Block.

Q. What county do they belong to?

A. Newport.

---

\* Augusta, the capital of Kennebec co., and of the state of Me., is situated on both sides of the Kennebec r., 43 ms. from the ocean, at the head of sloop navigation.

† Montpelier, the cap. of Washington co., and the state of Vt., is situated on an alluvial plain of moderate extent, at the junction of the N. and S. branches of Winooski or Onion r.



Q. Which are the capitals?

A. Providence and Newport.

Q. Their population?

A. Providence, 23,000; Newport, 8250. (M. A.)

Q. In what county is Providence?

A. Providence.

Q. In which is Newport?

A. Newport.

RHODE ISLAND, or, according to its original name, *Rhode Island and Providence Plantations*, one of the Northern or New England States, is situated between  $41^{\circ} 22'$  and  $42^{\circ} 3'$  N. lat., and between  $71^{\circ} 6'$  and  $71^{\circ} 38'$  W. long., and between  $5^{\circ} 7'$  and  $5^{\circ} 54'$  E. from Washington. It is about 49 ms. long and 29 broad, containing 1225 square miles, of which Narraganset bay includes 130, or, in the whole, 784,000 acres, and is the smallest state in the Union.

The population in 1790 was 58,825; in 1800, 69,122; in 1810, 76,931; in 1820, 83,059; in 1830, 97,212; in 1840, 108,830. Of these, 51,362 were white males; 54,225 do. females; coloured free males, 1413; do. females, 1825. Employed in agriculture, 16,617; in commerce, 1348; manufactures and trades, 21,271; navigating the ocean, 1717; learned professions, &c., 457.

It is divided into 5 counties, which, with their population in 1840, and their capitals, were as follows: PROVIDENCE, 58,073, Providence; NEWPORT, 16,874, Newport; BRISTOL, 6476, Bristol; KENT, 13,083, East Greenwich; WASHINGTON, 14,324, South Kingston.

Newport and Providence are the principal seats of government; but the legislature meets annually at the former in May, and of the latter, alternately with South Kingston, in October.

## CONNECTICUT.

Page 120.—Lesson 89.—Map No. 8.

Q. What state bounds Connecticut on the north?

A. Mass.

Q. On the east?

A. R. I.

Q. West?

A. N. Y.

Q. What bounds it on the south?

A. Long Island Sound.

Q. How long is Long Island Sound?

A. 120 ms. (M. A.)

Q. To what State does Long Island belong?

A. N. Y.

Q. What rivers flow into the Sound?

A. Connecticut, Thames, and Housatonic.

*Q.* The length of each?

*A.* Connecticut, 450 ms.; Thames, 100 ms; Housatonic, 150 ms.  
(M. A.)

*Q.* How far is the Connecticut navigable?

*A.* 60 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* For what kind of vessels?

*A.* Steam-boats.

*Q.* The Housatonic?

*A.* 12 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* Point out the other rivers.

*A.* Naugatuck, Farmington, Shetucket, and Quinebaugh.

*Q.* What is the population of New Haven?

*A.* 13,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Of Hartford?

*A.* 9500. (M. A.)

*Q.* Which are the four next largest towns and their population?

*A.* New London, 5500; Danbury, 1500; Norwich, 7250;  
and Litchfield, 4000. (M. A.)

*Q.* On what river is New London?\*

*A.* On the Thames.

*Q.* Norwich?†

*A.* On the Thames.

*Q.* Middletown?‡

*A.* On the Connecticut.

*Q.* Haddam?§

*A.* On the Connecticut.

*Q.* Hartford?||

*A.* On the Connecticut.

\* New London is a city, port of entry, and semi-capital of New London co., Conn. It is situated on the Thames, 3 ms. from its entrance into Long Island Sound, and is in  $41^{\circ} 24'$  N. lat., and  $72^{\circ} 30'$  W. long. from Greenwich, and  $4^{\circ} 0' 48''$  E. long. from W. It is 44 ms. S. E. from Hartford, 52 ms. E. from New Haven, 55 ms. S. W. from Providence, and 353 ms. from W.

† Norwich city, and semi-capital of New London co., Conn., is situated at the head of navigation on Thames r., in  $41^{\circ} 33'$  N. lat., and  $72^{\circ} 7'$  W. long., 13 ms. N. of New London, 39 ms. S. E. of Hartford, 38 ms. S. W. of Providence, R. I., 50 ms. N. E. of New Haven, and 357 from W.

‡ Middletown city, port of entry and semi-capital of Middlesex co., Conn., is pleasantly situated on the W. bank of Connecticut r., 34 ms. above its mouth, in  $44^{\circ} 33' 8''$  N. lat., and  $72^{\circ} 39'$  W. long., 14 ms. S. of Hartford, 24 ms. N. E. of New Haven, 35 ms. N. W. of New London, and 326 ms. from W.

§ Haddam, semi-capital of Middlesex co., Conn., is situated on both sides of Connecticut r., 23 ms. S. of Hartford, 334 ms. from W.

|| Hartford city, capital of Hartford co., Conn., and the semi-capital of the State, is situated on the W. side of Connecticut r., 50 ms. from its mouth,

*Q.* How many miles is it by the scale from New Haven to Hartford?

*A.* 34.—(Hartford is 34 ms. N. N. E. from New Haven.)

*Q.* What county town is about the same distance?

*A.* Litchfield.—(It is 32 ms. W. of Hartford.)

The city of New York, Northampton on the Connecticut river, and Block Island, are all about the same distance from New Haven.

*Q.* How many miles is it?

*A.* 76.

Hartford is nearly half-way between New-York and Boston.

*Q.* How many miles is it from each?

*A.* It is 123 N. E. from New-York; 100 W. S. W. from Boston. (100 from New York; 90 from Boston, by measurement on Mitchell's Atlas.)

New Haven is about the same distance from Newport, Providence, and Worcester.

*Q.* How many miles is it?

*A.* 85. (M. A.)

Hartford is situated very nearly half-way between the eastern and western extremities of the State.

*Q.* How many miles is it from each?

*A.* 40 from the eastern, and 42 from the western. (M. A.)

Hartford is about the same distance from Providence and Poughkeepsie.

*Q.* How many miles is it from each?

*A.* It is 70 W. from Providence; 72 E. from Poughkeepsie. (M. A.)

*Q.* How far is New Haven from the north line of the State?

*A.* 50 miles. (M. A.)

*Q.* From the north-east corner of the State?

*A.* 75 miles. (M. A.)

*Q.* From the north-west corner?

*A.* 57 miles. (M. A.)

CONNECTICUT, the southernmost of the Eastern States, is bounded N. by Mass., E. by R. I., S. by Long Island Sound, and W. by N. Y. It is between  $41^{\circ}$  and  $42^{\circ} 2'$  N. lat., and  $71^{\circ} 20'$  and  $73^{\circ} 15'$  W. long., and between  $3^{\circ} 16'$  and  $5^{\circ} 11'$  E. long. from Washington. It contains 4764 sq. ms., or 3,048,960 acres.

The population in 1790 was 237,946; in 1800, 251,002; in 1810, 261,942; in 1820, 275,248; in 1830, 297,711; in 1840, 300,015. Of these 148,300 were white males; 153,556 do. females; 3881 free coloured

---

at the head of sloop navigation; and is in  $41^{\circ} 45'$  N. lat., and  $70^{\circ} 50'$  W. long., from Greenwich, and  $4^{\circ} 15'$  E. long. from W. It is 34 ms. N. N. E. from New Haven; 44 ms. N. W. from New London; 70 ms. W. from Providence; 100 ms. W. S. W. from Boston; 97 ms. S. E. from Albany; 123 ms. N. E. from New York; and 336 ms. from W.

males; 4214 do. females. Employed in agriculture, 56,955; in commerce, 2743; manufactures and trades, 27,932; navigating the ocean, 2700; do. rivers, &c., 431; learned professions and engineers, 1697.

The capitals are Hartford, on the Connecticut r., at the head of sloop navigation, 50 miles from its mouth; and New Haven, on a bay which sets up 4 ms. from Long Island Sound.

The State is divided into 8 counties, which, with their population in 1840, and their capitals, were as follows: FAIRFIELD, 49,917, Fairfield and Danbury; HARTFORD, 55,629, Hartford; LITCHFIELD, 40,448, Litchfield; MIDDLESEX, 24,879, Middletown; NEW HAVEN, 48,619, New Haven; NEW LONDON, 44,463, New London and Norwich; TOLLAND, 17,955, Tolland; WINDHAM, 28,080, Brooklyn. These counties are divided into 144 cities and towns.

## MIDDLE STATES.

*Page 123.—Lesson 91.—Map No. 11.*

*Q.* Which is the largest of the Middle States?

*A.* N. Y.

*Q.* The second in extent?

*A.* Pa.

*Q.* Third?

*A.* N. J.

*Q.* Fourth?

*A.* Del.

*Q.* Which extends farthest north and east?

*A.* N. Y.

*Q.* South?

*A.* Del.

*Q.* West?

*A.* Pa.

*Q.* Which state has the greatest extent of sea-coast?

*A.* N. Y.

*Q.* Which has no sea-coast?

*A.* Pa.

The Middle States extend from latitude  $38\frac{1}{2}$  to 45 degrees.  
(M. A.)

*Q.* How many degrees of latitude, then, do they include?

*A.*  $6\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ .

They extend from longitude 5 degrees east of Washington, to about  $3\frac{1}{2}$  west. (M. A.)

*Q.* How many degrees of longitude do they include?

*A.*  $8\frac{1}{2}$ .

*Q.* Which is the largest Island belonging to the Middle States?

*A.* Long Island.

*Q.* What is its length?

*A.* 120 miles. (M. A.)

- Q. The next in size ?  
 A. Staten Island. (This Island forms Richmond county, in N. Y.)  
 Q. Which are the principal mountains ?  
 A. Alleghany, Blue, Catskill, and Mohegan.\*  
 Q. Which is the highest mountain ?  
 A. Mt. Marcy.  
 Q. How high is it ?  
 A. 5300 feet. (M. A.)  
 Q. Which are the chief rivers that flow into the Ocean ?  
 A. Hudson, Delaware, and Susquehanna.  
 Q. Which two form the Ohio ?  
 A. Alleghany, and Monongahela.  
 Q. How long are all these rivers ?  
 A. Hudson, 350 ; Delaware, 400 ; Susquehanna, 500 ; Alleghany, 350 ; Monongahela, 300. (M. A.)  
 Q. Which state has the greatest extent of lake-coast ?  
 A. N. Y.  
 Q. The next ?  
 A. Pa.  
 Q. How long is each of these lakes ?  
 A. Ontario, 190 ; Erie, 250. (M. A.)  
 Q. For what are they navigable ?  
 A. For the largest vessels. (M. A.)  
 Q. How far is it from New York to Bristol, England ?  
 A. 3200 miles. (M. A.)  
 Q. From New Jersey to Italy ?  
 A. 4700 miles. (M. A.)  
 Q. From Delaware to Turkey, in Asia ?  
 A. 5700 miles. (M. A.)  
 Q. From Philadelphia to Norfolk ? (Va.)  
 A. 320 miles. (M. A.)

## NEW YORK.

*Page 127.—Lesson 94.—Map No. 11.*

- Q. What provinces bound New York on the north ?  
 A. Canada West, and Canada East ?  
 Q. What states on the south ?  
 A. Pa. and N. J.  
 Q. On the east ?  
 A. Vt., Mass. and Conn.  
 Q. What are the three most northern counties ?  
 A. St. Lawrence, Franklin, and Clinton.

\* These are also called the Adondirack Mts.



*Q.* Most southern ?

*A.* Richmond.

*Q.* Most Eastern ?

*A.* Suffolk.

*Q.* Most western ?

*A.* Chautauque.

*Q.* What two great lakes separate New York from Canada West ?

*A.* Erie, and Ontario.

*Q.* How long are they ?

*A.* Erie, 270 ; Ontario, 190. (M. A.)

*Q.* What river forms part of the boundary between this state and Canada West ?

*A.* St. Lawrence.

*Q.* How long is it ?

*A.* 2200 miles,\*—including the lakes. (M. A.)

*Q.* How long is Lake Champlain ?

*A.* 120 miles. (M. A.)

*Q.* George ?

*A.* 33 miles. (M. A.)

*Q.* Oneida.

*A.* 21 miles. (M. A.)

*Q.* Skaneateles ?

*A.* 15 miles. (M. A.)

*Q.* Cayuga ?

*A.* 36 miles. (M. A.)

*Q.* Seneca ?

*A.* 35 miles. (M. A.)

*Q.* Canandaigua ?

*A.* 14 miles. (M. A.)

*Q.* Crooked and Black Lakes ?

*A.* 18 miles each. (M. A.)

*Q.* What three rivers flow into Lake Ontario ?

*A.* Genesee, Oswego, and Black.

*Q.* What four flow into the St. Lawrence River ?

*A.* St. Regis, Racket, Grass, and Oswegatchie.

*Q.* What river flows into the Atlantic Ocean ?

*A.* Hudson.

*Q.* Which is the largest branch of the Hudson River ?

*A.* Mohawk.

*Q.* Tell the lengths of all the foregoing rivers.

*A.* Genesee, 150 ; Oswego, 150 ; Black, 150 ; St. Regis, 150 ; Racket, 200 ; Grass, 150 ; Oswegatchie, 150 ; Hudson, 350 ; Mohawk, 200. (M. A.)

---

\* 1000 ms. long from lake Ontario to the sea.

Q. How many miles is the Hudson River navigable for steam-boats?

A. 160. (M. A.)

Q. For sloops?

A. 150. (M. A.)

Q. For ships?

A. 120. (M. A.)

Q. What river unites Lakes Erie and Ontario?

A. Niagara.

Q. How high is Mt. Marcy?

A. 5300 feet. (M. A.)

Q. The Catskill Mts.?

A. 3800 ft. (M. A.)

Q. What island is in Niagara River?

A. Grand.

Q. What celebrated falls on the Niagara River?

A. Niagara.

Q. What island forms one of the counties of the State?

A. Staten.

Q. What island contains three counties?

A. Long Island.

Q. What is the length of Long Island?

A. 120 miles. (M. A.)

Q. What Sound separates it from Connecticut?

A. Long Island Sound.

Q. Point out the different places at which battles were fought and their dates.

A. Flatbush, 1776; White Plains, 1776; Stillwater, 1777; Stony Point, 1779; Fort Schuyler, 1780; Sacketts Harbour, 1813; Plattsburg, 1814; Oswego, 1814. (M. A.)

NEW YORK, the most northern of the Middle States, and the most populous State in the Union, is bounded N. by Lake Ontario, the River St. Lawrence, and Canada East; E. by Vt., Mass., and Conn.; S. by the Atlantic, N. J., and Pa.; and W. by Pa., Lake Erie, and Niagara River. It lies between  $39^{\circ} 45'$  and  $45^{\circ}$  N. lat., and between  $73^{\circ}$  and  $79^{\circ} 55'$  W. long., and between  $2^{\circ} 51'$  W., and  $5^{\circ}$  E. long. from Washington. It is about 316 miles long, and 314 broad; containing 47,000 square miles, or 30,080,000 acres. The population in 1790, was 340,120; in 1800, 586,050; in 1810, 959,049; in 1820, 1,372,812; in 1830, 1,913,508; in 1840, 2,428,921. Of these, 853,929 were white males; 816,276 do. females; 6435 free coloured males; 6428 do. females. Employed in mining, 1898; in agriculture, 455,954; in commerce, 28,468; manufactures and trades, 173,193; navigating the ocean, 5511; do. lakes and canals, 10,167; learned professions, 14,111.

This State is divided into 58 counties, which, with their population in 1840, and their capitals, are as follows: ALBANY, 68,593, Albany; ALLEGHANY, 40,975, Angelica; BROOME, 22,338, Binghamton; CATTARAUGUS, 28,872, Ellicottsville; CAYUGA, 50,338, Auburn; CHAUTAUQUE, 47,975,

Mayville; CHEMUNG, 20,732, Elmira; CHENANGO, 40,785, Norwich; CLINTON, 28,157, Plattsburg; CORTLAND, 24,607, Cortlandville; DELAWARE, 35,396, Delhi; ERIE, 62,465, Buffalo; ESSEX, 23,634, Elizabethtown; FRANKLIN, 16,518, Malone; FULTON, 18,049, Johnstown; GENESEE, 59,587, Batavia; HAMILTON, 1907, Lake Pleasant; HERKIMER, 37,477, Herkimer; JEFFERSON, 60,984, Watertown; LEWIS, 17,830, Martinsburg; LIVINGSTON, 35,140, Geneseo; MADISON, 40,008, Morrisville; MONROE, 64,902, Rochester; MONTGOMERY, 35,818, Canajoharie; NIAGARA, 31,132, Lockport; ONEIDA, 85,310, Utica, Rome, Whitestown; ONONDAGA, 67,911, Syracuse; ONTARIO, 43,501, Canandaigua; ORLEANS, 25,127, Albion; OSWEGO, 43,619, Oswego, Pulaski; OTSEGO, 49,628, Cooperstown; RENSSELLAER, 60,259, Troy; SARATOGA, 40,553, Ballston; SCHENECTADY, 17,337, Schenectady; SCHOHARIE, 32,358, Schoharie; SENECA, 24,874, Ovid, Waterloo; ST. LAWRENCE, 56,706, Canton; STEUBEN, 46,138, Bath; TIOGA, 20,527, Owego; TOMPKINS, 37,948, Ithaca; WARREN, 13,422, Caldwell; WASHINGTON, 41,080, Salem, Sandyhill; WAYNE, 42,057, Lyons; YATES, 20,444, Penn Yan; COLUMBIA, 43,252, Hudson; DUTCHESS, 52,398, Poughkeepsie; GREENE, 30,446, Catskill; KINGS, 47,613, Brooklyn; NEW YORK, 312,710, New York; ORANGE, 50,739, Goshen, Newburg; PUTNAM, 12,825, Carmel; QUEENS, 30,324, North Hempstead; RICHMOND, 10,965, Richmond; ROCKLAND, 11,975, Clarkstown; SUFFOLK, 32,469, Riverhead; SULLIVAN, 15,629, Monticello; ULSTER, 45,822, Kingston; WESTCHESTER, 48,686, Bedford, White Plains. These counties are divided into 807 townships, including 9 cities and 125 incorporated villages.

The capital of the State is Albany, on the W. bank of the Hudson R., 145 ins. N. of New York.

## NEW JERSEY.

*Pages 128-9.—Lesson 95.—Map No. 11.*

Q. What bounds New Jersey on the north?

A. N. Y.

Q. What on the east?

A. Atlantic Ocean, and N. Y.

Q. West?

A. Pa., and Del.

Q. What river separates New Jersey from Pennsylvania and Delaware?

A. Delaware.

Q. What river separates it from New York?

A. Hudson.

Q. Which are the three principal rivers of New Jersey?

A. Passaic, Raritan, and Maurice.

Q. Which is the most northern county?

A. Sussex.

Q. The most southern?

A. Cape May.

Q. The most eastern?

A. Bergen.

Q. The most western?

A. Salem.

Q. What Cape at the southern extremity of New Jersey?

A. May.

Q. What Bay on the south-west?

A. Delaware.

Q. When were the battles of Trenton, Princeton, Monmouth, and Red Bank, fought?

A. Trenton, in 1776; Princeton, Monmouth, and Red Bank, in 1777. (M. A.)

Q. In which county is Trenton?

A. Mercer.

Q. Newark?

A. Essex.

Q. Paterson?

A. Passaic.

Q. New Brunswick?

A. Middlesex.

Q. What is the population of each of these towns?

A. Trenton, 4000; Newark, 17,000; Paterson, 7500; New Brunswick, 8500. (M. A.)

Q. On what river is Newark?\*

A. On the Passaic.

Q. Burlington?†

A. On the Delaware.

Q. Camden?‡

A. On the Delaware.

NEW JERSEY, one of the Middle States, is bounded N. by N. Y., E. by the Hudson r. and the Atlantic; S. by the Atlantic; and W. by Delaware bay and river, which separate it from the states of Del. and Pa. It is between  $39^{\circ}$  and  $41^{\circ} 24'$  N. lat., and between  $74^{\circ}$  and  $75^{\circ} 29'$  W. long., and between  $1^{\circ} 26'$  and  $3^{\circ} 9'$  E. long. from W. It is 163 ms. long and 52

---

\* Newark is a city, port of entry, and capital of Essex co., N. J., 9 ms. W. from N. York, 49 ms. N. E. from Trenton, and 215 ms. from W. It is situated on the W. side of Passaic r., 3 ms. from its entrance into New York bay, and is the most populous and flourishing place in the state.

† Burlington is a city, and port of entry, Burlington co., N. J., 12 ms. S. from Trenton, 17 ms. N. E. from Philadelphia, 156 ms. from W.,  $40^{\circ} 5' 10''$  N. lat. and  $72^{\circ} 52' 37''$  W. long. It is pleasantly located on the E. bank of the Delaware. Encircled on the S. and E. by a small stream, so as to form an island,  $1\frac{1}{4}$  m. long and  $\frac{3}{4}$  m. wide, connected with the main land by 4 bridges and causeways.

‡ Camden is a city, and port of entry, Camden co., N. J., 29 ms. S. S. W. from Trenton, 139 ms. from W. It is situated on the E. side of Delaware r., opposite to Philadelphia. The city consists of three parts, a central or principal part, and a northern and southern village or suburb, from each of which is a ferry to Philadelphia.

broad, containing 8320 sq. ms., or 5,324,800 acres. The population in 1790 was 184,189; in 1800, 211,149; in 1810, 245,592; in 1820, 277,575; in 1830, 320,779; in 1840, 373,306. Of these 177,055 were white males; 174,533 do. females; 10,780 were free colored males; 10,264 do. females; 303 male, and 371 female slaves. Employed in mining, 266; agriculture, 56,701; commerce, 2283; manufactures and trades, 27,004; navigating the ocean, 1143; do. canals, lakes, and rivers, 1625; learned professions, &c., 1627.

This state is divided into 18 counties, which, with their population in 1840, and their capitals, are as follows: ATLANTIC, 8726, May's Landing; BERGEN, 13,223, Hackensack; BURLINGTON, 32,831, Mount Holly; CAPE MAY, 5324, Cape May C. H.; CUMBERLAND, 14,374, Bridgetown; ESSEX, 44,621, Newark; GLOUCESTER, 25,438, Woodbury; HUDSON, 9483, North Bergen; HUNTERDON, 24,789, Flemington; MERCER, 21,502, Trenton; MIDDLESEX, 21,893, New Brunswick; MONMOUTH, 32,909, Freehold; MORRIS, 25,844, Morristown; PASSAIC, 16,734, Patterson; SALEM, 16,624, Salem; SOMERSET, 17,455, Somerville; SUSSEX, 21,770, Newton; WARREN, 20,366, Belvidere.

The seat of government is Trenton, at the head of sloop navigation on the Delaware, 30 miles above Philadelphia.

## PENNSYLVANIA.

*Page 132.—Lesson 98.—Map No. 11.*

Q. What bounds Pennsylvania on the north?

A. N. Y.

Q. On the south?

A. Del., Md., and Va.

Q. East?

A. N. Y., and N. J.

Q. West?

A. Oo., and Va.

Q. What river separates Pennsylvania from New Jersey?

A. Delaware.

Q. What river flows into Chesapeake Bay?

A. Susquehanna.

Q. Which are its two chief branches?

A. North Branch, and West Branch.

Q. What rivers unite at Pittsburg?

A. Alleghany, and Monongahela.

Q. What river do they form?

A. Ohio.

Q. What river flows into the Susquehanna above Harrisburg?

A. Juniata.

Q. Tell the lengths of the foregoing rivers.

A. Delaware, 400; Susquehanna, 500; North Branch of the Susquehanna, 350; West Branch, 200; Alleghany, 350; Monongahela, 300; Ohio, 1300; Juniata, 200. (M. A.)



- Q. What two rivers flow into the Delaware ?  
A. Lehigh, and Schuylkill.
- Q. What river flows into the Ohio below Pittsburg ?  
A. Beaver.
- Q. How many miles is the Delaware navigable for steamboats ?  
A. 150. (M. A.)
- Q. What mountains extend between Berks and Schuylkill counties ?  
A. Blue.
- Q. What mountains in the centre of the state ?  
A. Alleghany.
- Q. What two ridges in the western part ?  
A. Laurel, and Chesnut.
- Q. In which county is Philadelphia ?  
A. Philadelphia.
- Q. Harrisburg ?  
A. Dauphin.
- Q. Lancaster ?  
A. Lancaster.
- Q. Pittsburg ?  
A. Alleghany.
- Q. What is the population of Philadelphia ?  
A. 228,000. (M. A.)
- Q. Lancaster ?  
A. 8500. (M. A.)
- Q. Harrisburg ?  
A. 6000. (M. A.)
- Q. Reading ?  
A. 8250. (M. A.)
- Q. Easton ?  
A. 4750. (M. A.)
- Q. Erie ?  
A. 3250. (M. A.)
- Q. Beaver ?  
A. 551.
- Q. Pittsburg ?  
A. 21,000. (M. A.)
- Q. What lake forms the N. W. boundary of the state ?  
A. Erie.
- Q. What town on the lake ?  
A. Erie.
- Q. When was Braddock defeated ?  
A. In 1755. (M. A.)
- Q. When were the battles of Brandywine and Germantown fought ?  
A. In 1777. (M. A.)

Q. When did the massacre of Wyoming take place?

A. In 1778. (M. A.)

Q. On what river is Reading?\*

A. Schuylkill.

Q. Easton?†

A. Delaware.

Q. Pottsville?‡

A. Schuylkill.

Q. Wilkesbarre?§

A. On the N. branch of the Susquehanna.

Q. Beaver?||

A. On the Ohio.

PENNSYLVANIA, one of the Middle States, is bounded N. by N. Y. and Lake Erie; E. by N. J., from which it is separated by Delaware R.; S. by Del., Md., and Va.; and W. by Va. and Oo. It is between  $39^{\circ} 43'$  and  $42^{\circ}$  N. lat., and between  $74^{\circ}$  and  $80^{\circ} 40'$  W. long.; and between  $3^{\circ} 31'$  W. and  $2^{\circ} 18'$  E. from W. It is 307 ms. long, and 160 broad, containing 46,000 sq. ms., or 29,440,000 acres. The population in 1790, was 434,373; in 1800, 602,545; in 1810, 810,091; in 1820, 1,049,313; in 1830, 1,347,672; in 1840, 1,724,033. Of these 844,770 were white males; 831,345 do. females; 22,752 free coloured males; 25,102 do. females; employed in agriculture, 207,533; in commerce, 15,338; in manufactures and trades, 105,883; in mining, 4603; navigating the ocean, 1815; do. lakes, rivers, &c., 3951; learned professions, &c., 6706.

The state is divided into 54 counties, which, with their population in 1840, and their capitals, are as follows: *Eastern District.* — ADAMS, 23,044, Gettysburg; BERKS, 64,569, Reading; BUCKS, 48,107, Doylestown and Bristol; CHESTER, 57,515, West Chester; CUMBERLAND, 30,953, Carlisle; DAUPHIN, 30,118, Harrisburg; DELAWARE, 19,791, Chester; FRANKLIN, 37,793, Chambersburg; LANCASTER, 84,203, Lancaster; LEBANON, 21,872, Lebanon; LEHIGH, 25,787, Allentown; MONROE, 9879, Stroudsburg, MONTGOMERY, 47,241, Norristown; NORTHAMPTON, 40,996, Easton; PERRY,

---

\* Reading is the cap. of Berks co. Pa., 57 ms. N. W. from Philadelphia, 52 ms. E. from Harrisburg, and 145 ms. from W. It is situated on the E. bank of Schuylkill R., 1 m. below the mouth of Tulpehocken creek.

† Easton is the cap. of Northampton co. Pa. It is situated on the W. side of Delaware R., at the junction of the Lehigh, 58 ms. N. from Philadelphia, 106 ms. E. N. E. from Harrisburg, 199 ms. from W.

‡ Pottsville is in Schuylkill co. Pa., 98 ms. N. W. from Philadelphia, 62 ms. E. from Harrisburg, and 172 ms. from W. It is situated on one of the head branches of the Schuylkill R., at the termination of the Schuylkill Canal.

§ Wilkesbarre is the cap. of Luzerne co. Pa., 127 ms. N. E. from Harrisburg, 231 from W. It is situated on the E. side of the North Branch of the Susquehanna R.

|| Beaver is the cap. of Beaver co. Pa., on the N. bank of the Ohio R., a little below the mouth of Big Beaver R., 30 ms. below Pittsburg, by the course of the R., 227 ms. N. by W. from Harrisburg, and 253 ms. from W.

17,096, Bloomfield ; PHILADELPHIA, 258,037, Philadelphia ; PIKE, 3832, Milford ; SCHUYLKILL, 29,053, Orwigsburg ; WAYNE, 11,848, Honesdale ; YORK, 47,010, York. *Western District*.—ALLEGHANY, 81,235, Pittsburg ; ARMSTRONG, 28,365, Kittaning ; BEAVER, 29,368, Beaver ; BEDFORD, 29,335, Bedford ; BRADFORD, 32,769, Towanda ; BUTLER, 22,378, Butler ; CAMBRIA, 11,256, Edensburg ; CENTRE, 20,492, Bellefonte ; CLEARFIELD, 7834, Clearfield ; CLINTON, 8323, Lock Haven ; COLUMBIA, 24,267, Danville ; CRAWFORD, 31,724, Meadville ; ERIE, 31,344, Erie ; FAYETTE, 33,574, Union ; GREENE, 19,147, Waynesburg ; HUNTINGDON, 35,484, Huntingdon ; INDIANA, 20,782, Indiana ; JEFFERSON, 7253, Brookville ; JUNIATA, 11,080, Mifflintown ; LUZERNE, 44,006, Wilkesbarre ; LYCOMING, 22,649, Williamsport ; MCKEAN, 2975, Smithport ; MERCER, 32,783, Mercer ; MIFFLIN, 13,092, Lewistown ; NORTHUMBERLAND, 20,027, Sunbury ; POTTER, 3371, Cowdersport ; SOMERSET, 19,650, Somerset ; SUSQUEHANNA, 21,195, Montrose ; TIoga, 15,498, Wellsborough ; UNION, 22,787, New Berlin ; VENANGO, 17,900, Franklin ; WARREN, 9278, Warren ; WASHINGTON, 41,279, Washington ; WESTMORELAND, 42,699, Greensburg.

Harrisburg is the seat of government, on the E. bank of the Susquehanna River, 97 miles W. N. W. from Philadelphia.

---

## DELAWARE.

*Page 133.—Lesson 99.—Map No. 11.*

Q. What state bounds Delaware on the north ?

A. Pa.

Q. On the south and west ?

A. Md.

Q. On the east ?

A. N. J.

Q. What river and bay separate Delaware from New Jersey ?

A. Delaware River and Bay.

Q. What Cape in the south part of the state ?

A. Henlopen.

Q. Which is the most northern county ?

A. New Castle.

Q. What is the population of the principal town ?

A. Wilmington is the principal town, population, 8250.

(M. A.)

DELAWARE, one of the Middle States, and, next to R. I., the least in the Union, is bounded N. by Pa., E. by Delaware River and Bay ; S. and W. by Md. It is between  $38^{\circ} 29'$  and  $39^{\circ} 47'$  N. lat., and between  $74^{\circ} 56'$  and  $75^{\circ} 40'$  W. long., and between  $1^{\circ} 13'$  and  $1^{\circ} 57'$  E. from W. It is 92 miles long, and 23 broad, and contains 2100 sq. ms., or 1,344,000 acres. The population in 1790, was 59,094 ; in 1800, 64,272 ; in 1810, 72,674 ; in 1820, 72,749 ; in 1830, 76,739 ; in 1840, 78,085 : of which 2605 were slaves ; 29,259 were white males ; 29,302 do. females ; 8626 free coloured males ; 8239 do. females. Employed in agriculture, 16,015 ; in commerce,

467; in manufactures and trades, 4060; navigating the ocean, 401; do canals and rivers, 235; learned professions and engineers, 199.

This State is divided into three counties, which, with their population in 1840, and their capitals, are as follows: KENT, 19,872, Dover; NEW CASTLE, 33,120, Wilmington and New Castle; SUSSEX, 25,093, Georgetown. These counties are divided into 24 hundreds.

Dover, situated on Jones' Creek, 7 miles from its entrance into Delaware Bay, is the seat of government.

## SOUTHERN STATES.

*Pages 135-6.—Lesson 101.—Map No. 5.*

Q. Which is the largest division of the Southern States?

A. Texas.

Q. The smallest?

A. S. C.

Q. Which is the most northern?

A. Md.

Q. Southern?

A. Flor.

Q. Eastern?

A. N. C.

Q. Western?

A. Texas.

Q. Which divisions border on the Atlantic Ocean?

A. Va., N. C., S. C., Ga., and Flor.

Q. Which border on the Gulf of Mexico?

A. Flor., Ala., Miss., La., and Texas.

Q. What State is divided by Chesapeake Bay into two parts?

A. Md.

The Southern States extend from latitude 41 nearly to 24 degrees.  
(M. A.)

Q. How many degrees of latitude; then, do they comprise?

A. 17°.

They extend from longitude 1½ degrees east from Washington, to 30½ west. (M. A.)

Q. What amount of longitude do they include?

A. 29 degrees.

## MARYLAND.

*Page 137.—Lesson 102.—Map No. 11.*

Q. What bounds Maryland on the north?

A. Pa.

- Q. South and west ?  
 A. Va.  
 Q. East ?  
 A. Del., and the Atlantic Ocean.  
 Q. What bay and river divide Maryland into two separate parts ?  
 A. Chesapeake Bay and Susquehanna River.  
 Q. What river separates it from Virginia ?  
 A. Potomac.  
 Q. What rivers flow into Chesapeake Bay on the east side ?  
 A. Choptank, Nanticoke, and Poconoke.  
 Q. What rivers on the west side ?  
 A. Patuxent and Potomac.  
 Q. Which is the most eastern county ?  
 A. Worcester.  
 Q. The most western ?  
 A. Alleghany.  
 Q. On what river is Havre de Grace ? \*  
 A. On the Susquehanna.  
 Q. Cumberland ? †  
 A. On the Potomac.  
 Q. Upper Marlboro' ? ‡  
 A. It is situated a little W. of Patuxent River.  
 Q. What is the population of Baltimore ?  
 A. 102,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Of Frederick City ?  
 A. 5000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Of Hagerstown ?  
 A. 4000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Of Annapolis ?  
 A. 3000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Of Easton ?  
 A. 2000. (M. A.)

\* Havre de Grace is a sea-port, Harford co., Md., 64 ms. N. E. from Annapolis, 74 ms. from W. It is situated on the W. bank of Susquehanna R., at its entrance into Chesapeake Bay. The Wilmington and Baltimore Railroad passes through the place, and crosses the Susquehanna River by a steam-ferry. The Susquehanna Canal terminates here, and connects the Chesapeake with the canals of Pa.

† Cumberland is the cap. of Alleghany co., Md., 166 ms. W. N. W. from Annapolis, 134 ms. from W. It is situated on the N. bank of Potomac R., at the mouth of Will's Creek.

‡ Upper Marlboro' is the capital of Prince George's co., Md., 23 ms. S. W. from Annapolis, 17 ms. from W. It is situated a little W. of Patuxent R., and contains a court-house, jail, a church, and about 800 inhabitants.



*Q.* In what year was the battle of North Point fought?

*A.* In 1814. (M. A.)

*Q.* Of Bladensburg?

*A.* In 1814. (M. A.)

*Q.* Of Havre de Grace?

*A.* In 1814. (M. A.)

*Q.* What mountains extend through the western part of the State?

*A.* Alleghany.

MARYLAND, the most northern of the Southern States, is bounded N. by Pa.; E. by Del. and the Atlantic; and S. and W. by Va. It is between  $38^{\circ}$  and  $39^{\circ} 44'$  N. lat., and between  $75^{\circ} 10'$  and  $79^{\circ} 20'$  W. long., and between  $2^{\circ} 31'$  W. and  $1^{\circ} 58'$  E. from W. It is 196 ms. long, and 120 broad, containing, exclusive of the water surface, 9356 sq. ms., or 5,987,840 acres. Chesapeake Bay extends nearly through the State from S. to N., dividing it into two parts, one of which is called the *Eastern Shore*, and the other the *Western Shore*.

The population in 1790 was 319,728; in 1800, 345,824; in 1810, 380,546; in 1820, 407,350; in 1830, 446,913; in 1840, 469,232, of which 89,737 were slaves. Of the free population, 158,636 were white males; 159,081 do. females; 29,173 were coloured males; 32,847 do. females. Employed in agriculture, 69,851; in commerce, 3249; in manufactures and trades, 21,325; navigating the ocean, 721; do. canals, lakes, and rivers, 1519; learned professions, 1647.

This state is divided into 20 counties, which, with their population in 1840, and their capitals, are as follows: *Western Shore*.—ALLEGHANY, 15,690, Cumberland; ANNE ARUNDEL, 29,532, Annapolis; BALTIMORE, 134,379, Baltimore; CALVERT, 9229, Prince Frederick; CARROLL, 17,241, Westminster; CHARLES, 16,023, Port Tobacco; FREDERICK, 36,405, Frederick; HARFORD, 17,120, Belair; MONTGOMERY, 15,456, Rockville; PRINCE GEORGE'S, 19,539, Upper Marlboro'; ST. MARY'S, 13,224, Leonardtown; WASHINGTON, 28,850, Hagerstown. *Eastern Shore*.—CAROLINE, 7806, Denton; CECIL, 17,232, Elkton; DORCHESTER, 18,843, Cambridge; KENT, 10,842, Chestertown; QUEEN ANNE'S, 12,633, Centreville; SOMERSET, 19,508, Princess Anne; TALBOT, 12,090, Easton; WORCESTER, 18,377, Snowhill.

Annapolis, on the western shore of the Chesapeake, and on Severn river, is the seat of government.

## DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA.

*Page 139.—Lesson 103.—Map No. 11.*

*Q.* On what river is Washington?

*A.* Potomac.

*Q.* On which side is it?

*A.* East.

*Q.* On which side is Georgetown?

*A.* On the N. E. bank.

Q. Alexandria?

A. West.

Q. What is the population of each of these places?

A. Washington, 23,000; Georgetown, 7250; Alexandria, 8500. (M. A.)

THE DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA is a tract of country which, until the year 1846, was 10 miles square, on both sides of the Potomac river, and about 120 miles from its mouth. In 1790 it was ceded to the U. S. by Va. and Md., for the purpose of being made the seat of government. It included the cities of Washington, Alexandria and Georgetown, and is under the immediate government of Congress. In 1800 the population was 14,093; in 1810, 24,023; in 1820, 33,039; in 1830, 39,858; in 1840, 43,712, of which 30,557 were whites; 8361 were free coloured persons, and 4694 were slaves. Employed in agriculture, 384; in commerce, 240; in manufactures and trades, 2278; navigating the ocean, 126; do. canals and rivers, 80; learned professions and engineers, 203.

The District was divided into two counties; the county of Washington on the N. side of the Potomac, and the county of Alexandria on the S. side. In the former, the laws of Md. are continued in force; in the latter those of Va. The district, although under the legislation of Congress, was never represented in that body. Congress meets annually at Washington, on the first Monday of December, unless otherwise provided by law. The President of the U. S. and the other chief officers of the government, reside at Washington. The Supreme Court of the U. S. sits here annually, on the second Monday in January.

In the year 1846, the county and city of Alexandria, D. C., i. e. all that part of the District of Columbia which lay on the Virginia side of the Potomac river, was retroceded by act of Congress to the state of Virginia. By this act, the District is confined to the Maryland side of the Potomac, and is reduced from an area of 100 to 64 square miles. Its population, which amounted according to the 6th census to 46,712, is only 33,745.

Washington city, the capital of the U. S., is situated on the E. side of the Potomac, 295 ms. from the ocean, by the course of the river and bay, and is in  $38^{\circ} 32' 54''$  N. lat., and  $77^{\circ} 1' 48''$  W. long. from Greenwich. It is 38 miles S. W. from Baltimore; 136 from Philadelphia; 225 from New York; 440 from Boston; 808 from St. Louis; 540 from Charleston, S. C.; 662 from Savannah, Ga.; 1172 from New Orleans.

---

## VIRGINIA.

. Page 142.—Lesson 105.—Maps No. 5 and 11.

Map No. 5.—Q. What bounds Virginia on the North?

A. Pa. and Md.

Q. On the south?

A. N. C.

Q. East?

A. Atlantic Ocean.

Q. West?

A. Oo. and Ky.

*Q.* What river separates Virginia from Ohio ?

*A.* Ohio.

*Q.* Which from Maryland ?

*A.* Potomac.

*Q.* What river and mountains from Kentucky ?

*A.* Big Sandy river, and Cumberland Mts.

*Q.* What two ranges of mountains extend through Virginia ?

*A.* Alleghany, and Blue Ridge.

*Q.* How long and high are the Alleghany Mts. ?

*A.* 900 ms. long, and half a mile high. (M. A.)

*Map No. 11.—Q.* What Bay separates the two eastern counties from the rest of the state ?

*A.* Chesapeake.

*Q.* What two capes at the entrance of Chesapeake Bay ?

*A.* Charles and Henry.

*Q.* In what county is Richmond ?

*A.* Henrico.

*Q.* In which is Norfolk ?

*A.* Norfolk.

*Q.* Lynchburg ?

*A.* Campbell.

*Q.* Wheeling ?

*A.* Ohio.

*Q.* Petersburg ?

*A.* Dinwiddie.

*Q.* In which county is Washington's birth-place ?

*A.* Westmoreland.

*Q.* Mount Vernon ?

*A.* Fairfax.

*Q.* The University of Virginia ?

*A.* Albemarle.

*Q.* In what year did Cornwallis surrender ?

*A.* In 1781. (M. A.)

*Q.* What four rivers flow into Chesapeake Bay ?

*A.* Potomac, Rappahannock, York, and James.

*Q.* Tell the length of each.

*A.* Potomac, 500 ms.; Rappahannock, 200; York, 200; James, 500. (M. A.)

*Q.* On what river is Richmond ?\*

*A.* On James river.

---

\* Richmond city, port of entry, and capital of Henrico co., and of the State of Va., is situated on James R., at the lower falls, at the head of tide-water, and is in  $37^{\circ} 30'$  N. lat., and  $77^{\circ} 31'$  W. long. from Greenwich, and  $0^{\circ} 27'$  W. long. from W. It is 23 ms. N. from Petersburg; and 117 ms. S. by W. from W.

*Q.* Petersburg? \*

*A.* On the Appomattox.

*Q.* Lynchburg? †

*A.* On James R.

*Q.* Yorktown? ‡

*A.* On York R.

*Q.* Fredericksburg? §

*A.* On Rappahannock R.

*Q.* Wheeling? ||

*A.* On the Ohio.

*Q.* Charleston? ¶ (See Map No. 14.)

*A.* On the Great Kanawha R. — Salt is extensively manufactured at this place.

*Q.* What streams form James River?

*A.* It is formed by the union of Jackson's and Cowpasture rivers, which rise in the Alleghany Mts.

*Q.* Roanoke River?

*A.* It is formed by the junction of Staunton and Dan rivers, near the S. boundary of Va.

*Q.* York River?

*A.* It is formed by the junction of Pamunky and Mattapony rivers.

VIRGINIA, the largest of the original thirteen States, is bounded N. by Pa. and Md., from which it is separated by the Potomac R.; E. by the Atlantic; S. by N. C. and Tenn.; W. by Ky.; and N.W. by Oo. It lies between  $36^{\circ} 33'$  and  $40^{\circ} 43'$  N. lat., and between  $75^{\circ} 25'$  and  $83^{\circ} 40'$  W.

---

\* Petersburg is a port of entry, Dinwiddie co., Va., on the S. bank of Appomattox R., 12 ms. above its entrance into James R., at City Point, in  $37^{\circ} 13' 54''$  N. lat., and  $77^{\circ} 20'$  W. long., 23 ms. S. by E. from Richmond, 140 ms. from W.

† Lynchburg, Campbell co., Va., 116 ms. W. by S. from Richmond, 191 from W. Situated on the S. bank of James R., 20 ms. below its passage through the Blue Ridge.

‡ Yorktown is a port of entry and capital of York co., Va., 70 ms. E. S. E. from Richmond, 185 ms. from W. It is situated on the S. side of York R., opposite to Gloucester.

§ Fredericksburg city, Spottsylvania co., Va., is situated on the S.W. side of Rappahannock R., 110 ms. above the Chesapeake, in  $38^{\circ} 44'$  N. lat., and  $77^{\circ} 38'$  W. long. It lies 62 ms. E. of N. from Richmond, 56 ms. S.S.W. from W.

|| Wheeling is a city, port of entry, and cap. of Ohio co., Va., 351 ms. N.W. from Richmond, 266 ms. from W. It is situated on the E. bank of Ohio R.. at the mouth of Wheeling Creek.

¶ Charleston, or Kanawha C. H., cap. of Kanawha co., Va., is 313 ms. W. N.W. from Richmond, 350 ms. from W. It is situated on the N. bank of Great Kanawha R., 60 ms. above its mouth, in the Ohio, at the junction of Elk R.

long.; and between 6° 34' W., and 1° 20' E. long. from W. It is 370 ms. long, and 200 broad at its greatest width, containing 70,000 sq. ms., or 44,800,000 acres. The population in 1790, was 747,610; in 1800, 886,149; in 1810, 974,622; in 1820, 1,065,366; in 1830, 1,211,272; in 1840, 1,239,797; of which 448,987 were slaves. Of the free white population 371,223 were white males; 369,745 do. females; 23,814 were coloured males; 26,020 do. females. Employed in agriculture, 318,771; in commerce, 6361; in manufactures and trades, 54,147; navigating the ocean, 582; do. canals, rivers, and lakes, 2952; learned professions, &c., 3866.

This State is divided into 119 counties, and two districts, Eastern and Western. The following are the counties of the Eastern District, with their population in 1840, and their capitals. ACCOMAC, 17,096, Accomac C. H.; ALBEMARLE, 22,924, Charlottesville; AMELIA, 10,320, Amelia C. H.; AMHERST, 12,576, Amherst C. H.; BEDFORD, 20,203, Liberty; BRUNSWICK, 14,346, Lawrenceville; BUCKINGHAM, 18,786, Buckingham C. H.; CAMPBELL, 21,030, Campbell C. H.; CAROLINE, 17,813, Bowling Green; CHARLES CITY, 4774, Charles City C. H.; CHARLOTTE, 14,595, Charlotte C. H.; CHESTERFIELD, 17,148, Chesterfield C. H.; CULPEPPER, 11,393, Culpepper C. H.; CUMBERLAND, 10,399, Cumberland C. H.; DINWIDDIE, 22,558, Dinwiddie C. H.; ELIZABETH CITY, 3706, Hampton; ESSEX, 11,309, Tappahannock; FAIRFAX, 9370, Fairfax C. H.; FAUQUIER, 21,897, Warrenton; FLUVANNA, 8812, Palmyra; FRANKLIN, 15,832, Rocky Mount; GLOUCESTER, 10,715, Gloucester C. H.; GOOCHLAND, 9760, Goochland C. H.; GREENSVILLE, 6366, Hicksford; GREENE, 4232, Stannardsville; HALIFAX, 25,936, Halifax C. H.; HANOVER, 14,968, Hanover C. H.; HENRICO, 33,076, Richmond; HENRY, 7335, Martinsville; ISLE OF WIGHT, 9972, Smithfield; JAMES CITY, 3779, Williamsburg; KING GEORGE, 5927, King George C. H.; KING WILLIAM, 9258, King William C. H.; KING AND QUEEN, 10,862, King and Queen C. H.; LANCASTER, 4628, Lancaster C. H.; LOUDOUN, 20,431, Leesburg; LOUISA, 15,433, Louisa C. H.; LUNENBURG, 11,055, Lunenburg C. H.; MADISON, 8107, Madison; MATTHEWS, 7442, Matthews C. H.; MECKLENBURG, 20,724, Boydton; MIDDLESEX, 4392, Urbanna; NANSEMOND, 10,798, Suffolk; NELSON, 12,287, Livingston; NEW KENT, 6230, New Kent C. H.; NORFOLK, 21,092, Norfolk; NORTHAMPTON, 7715, Eastville; NORTHUMBERLAND, 7924, Northumberland C. H.; NOTTOWAY, 9719, Nottoway C. H.; ORANGE, 9125, Orange, C. H.; PATRICK, 8032, Patrick C. H.; PITTSYLVANIA, 26,398, Pittsylvania C. H.; POWHATAN, 7924, Scottsville; PRINCESS ANNE, 7285, Princess Anne C. H.; PRINCE EDWARD, 14,069, Prince Edward C. H.; PRINCE GEORGE, 7175, City Point; PRINCE WILLIAM, 8144, Brentsville; RAPPAHANNOCK, 9257, Washington; RICHMOND, 5965, Richmond C. H.; SOUTHAMPTON, 14,525, Jerusalem; SPOTTSYLVANIA, 15,161, Spottsylvania C. H.; STAFFORD, 8454, Falmouth; SURRY, 6480, Surry C. H.; SUSSEX, 11,229, Sussex C. H.; WARWICK, 1456, Warwick C. H.; WESTMORELAND, 8019, Westmoreland C. H.; YORK, 4720, Yorktown:—369,398 whites, 42,294 free coloured, 395,250 slaves; total, 806,942. *Western District*—ALLEGHANY, 2749, Covington; AUGUSTA, 19,628, Staunton; BATH, 4300, Bath; BERKLEY, 10,972, Martinsburg; BOTETOURT, 11,679, Fincastle; BRAXTON, 2575, Braxton C. H.; BROOKE, 7948, Wellsburg; CABELL, 8163, Cabell C. H.; CLARKE, 6353, Berryville; FAYETTE, 3924, Fayetteville; FLOYD, 4453, Floyd C. H.; FREDERICK, 14,242, Winchester; GILES, 5307,



Giles C. H.; GRAYSON, 9087, Greenville; GREENBRIER, 8695, Lewisburg; HAMPSHIRE, 12,295, Romney; HARDY, 7622, Moorfield; HARRISON, 17,669, Clarksburg; JACKSON, 4890, Ripley; JEFFERSON, 14,082, Charlestown; KANAWHA, 13,567, Charleston; LEE, 8441, Jonesville; LEWIS, 8151, Weston; LOGAN, 4309, Logan C. H.; MARSHALL, 6937, Elizabethtown; MASON, 6777, Point Pleasant; MERCER, 2233, Princeton; MONONGALIA, 17,368, Morgantown; MONROE, 8422, Union; MONTGOMERY, 7405, Christiansburg; MORGAN, 4253, Bath; NICHOLAS, 2515, Summersville; OHIO, 13,357, Wheeling; PAGE, 6194, Surry; PENDLETON, 6940, Franklin; POCAHONTAS, 2922, Huntersville; PRESTON, 6866, Kingwood; PULASKI, 3739, Newbern; RANDOLPH, 6208, Beverly; ROANOKE, 5499, Salem; ROCKBRIDGE, 14,284, Lexington; ROCKINGHAM, 17,344, Harrisonburg; RUSSELL, 7878, Lebanon; SCOTT, 7303, Estillville; SHENANDOAH, 11,618, Woodstock; SMYTH, 6522, Marion; TAZEWEEL, 6290, Jeffersonville; TYLER, 6954, Middlebourne; WARREN, 5627, Front Royal; WASHINGTON, 13,001, Abingdon; WOOD, 7923, Parkersburg; WYTHE, 9375, Wytheville. Western District, whites, 371,570; free coloured 7548; slaves 53,737; total, 432,855.

Richmond is the capital of the State, situated on the N. side of James R., at the head of tide-water, and just below its lower falls.

## NORTH CAROLINA.

*Pages 143-4.—Lesson 106.—Maps No. 5 and 11.*

*Map No. 5.—Q.* What bounds North Carolina on the north?

*A.* Va.

*Q.* On the south?

*A.* S. C., and Ga.

*Q.* East?

*A.* Atlantic Ocean.

*Q.* West?

*A.* Tenn.

*Q.* What mountains extend through the western part of North Carolina?

*A.* Alleghany, and Blue Ridge.

*Q.* Which is the highest mountain?

*A.* Black.

*Q.* How high is it?

*A.* 6476 feet. (M. A.)

*Q.* What three capes on the coast?

*A.* Hatteras, Lookout, and Fear.

*Map No. 11.—Q.* What two sounds in North Carolina?

*A.* Albemarle, and Pamlico.

*Q.* How long are they?

*A.* Albemarle, 60 ms. ; Pamlico, 80. (M. A.)

*Q.* What two rivers flow into Albemarle Sound?

*A.* Roanoke, and Chowan.

*Q.* Which two into Pamlico Sound ?

*A.* Tar, and Neuse.

*Q.* In what direction do the Cape Fear, Lumber, Yadkin, and Catawba Rivers flow ?

*A.* CAPE FEAR RIVER. Its N. W. branch is formed by the union of Deep and Haw Rs., the former rising in Guilford, the latter in Rockingham co., whence it pursues a S. S. E. course, until, 34 ms. below Wilmington, it enters the Atlantic by two channels, one on each side of Smith's Island. (M. A.)

LUMBER RIVER rises in Moore co., flows first S. E., then W. of S., and enters Little Pedee R. on the boundary between Marion and Horry districts, in S. C. (M. A.)

YADKIN RIVER rises in the Blue Ridge, on the E. side, and flows E. and S. E. into S. C., and in its lower part it takes the name of Great Pedee, until it falls into Winyaw Bay, near Georgetown. (M. A.)

CATAWBA RIVER, in N. and S. Carolina, rises by numerous branches in the Blue Ridge, in Burke co., N. C., and flowing E. and then curving to the S., it flows into S. C., and in its lower part is called the Wateree R., until it unites with Congaree R. to form Santee R. (M. A.)

*Q.* How long are they ?

*A.* Cape Fear, 350 ms.; Lumber, 110; Yadkin, 200; and Catawba, 250. (M. A.)

*Q.* How far are Chowan, Roanoke, Tar, and Cape Fear Rivers navigable, and for what kind of vessels ?

*A.* Chowan, 75 ms. for steamboats; Roanoke, 120 for sloops; Tar, 100. for steam boats; Cape Fear, 120 for steamboats. (M. A.)

*Q.* How many inhabitants have Wilmington, Newbern, Fayetteville, Raleigh, Charlotte, and Edenton ?

*A.* Wilmington, 4750; Newbern, 3500; Fayetteville, 4250; Raleigh, 2250; Charlotte, 2000; Edenton, 2000. (M. A.)

*Q.* On what river is Halifax ?\*

*A.* On the Roanoke R.

*Q.* Edenton ? †

*A.* On the Chowan R.

\* Halifax, port of entry, and capital of Halifax co., N. C., is pleasantly situated on the W. bank of Roanoke R., 7 ms. below the great falls, at the head of sloop navigation; 87 ms. N. E. from Raleigh, 211 ms. from W.

† Edenton, cap. of Chowan co., N. C., is situated near the mouth of Chowan R., at the head of Edenton Bay, which sets up from Albemarle Sound: 66 ms. S. from Norfolk, 182 ms. E. by N. from Raleigh, 274 ms. from W.

Q. Tarboro' ? \*

A. On the Tar R.

Q. Louisburg ? †

A. On the Tar R.

Q. In what county is the University of North Carolina ?

A. Orange.

Q. In what year was the battle of Guilford Court-House fought ?

A. In 1780. (M. A.)

NORTH CAROLINA, one of the Southern States, is bounded N. by Va., E. and S.E. by the Atlantic; S. by S.C. and Ga.; and W. by Tenn. It is between  $33^{\circ} 50'$  and  $36^{\circ} 30'$  N. lat., and between  $75^{\circ} 45'$  and  $84^{\circ}$  W. long.; and between  $6^{\circ} 20'$  W. and  $1^{\circ} 33'$  E. from W. It is 430 ms. long, and 180 broad, containing 50,000 sq. ms., or 32,000,000 acres.

The pop. in 1790, was 393,754; in 1800, 478,103; in 1810, 555,500; in 1820, 638,829; in 1830, 738,470; in 1840, 753,419; of which, 245,817 were slaves. Of the free pop., 240,047 were white males; 244,823 do. females; 11,226 were coloured males; 11,505 do. females. Employed in agriculture, there were 217,095; in commerce, 1734; in manufactures and trades, 14,322; navigating the ocean, 327; do. canals, rivers, &c., 379; learned professions, 1086.

This state is divided into 68 counties, which, with their population in 1840, and their capitals, were as follows: ANSON, 15,077, Wadesborough; ASHE, 7467, Jeffersonton; BEAUFORT, 12,225, Washington; BERTIE, 12,175, Windsor; BLADEN, 8022, Elizabeth; BRUNSWICK, 5265, Smithville; BUNCOMBE, 10,084, Ashville; BURKE, 15,799, Morganton; CABARRUS, 9259, Concord; CAMDEN, 5663, Jonesboro'; CARTERET, 6591, Beaufort; CASWELL, 14,693, Yanceyville; CHATHAM, 16,242, Pittsboro'; CHEROKEE, 3427, Murphy; CHOWAN, 6690, Edenton; COLUMBUS, 3941, Whitesville; CRAVEN, 13,438, Newbern; CUMBERLAND, 15,284, Fayetteville; CURRITUCK, 6703, Currituck C. H.; DAVIDSON, 14,606, Lexington; DAVIE, 7574, Mocksville; DUPLIN, 11,182, Kenansville; EDGECOMBE, 15,708, Tarboro'; FRANKLIN, 10,980, Louisburg; GATES, 8161, Gatesville; GRANVILLE, 18,817, Oxford; GREENE, 6595, Snow Hill; GUILFORD, 19,175, Greensboro'; HALIFAX, 16,865, Halifax; HAYWOOD, 4975, Waynesville; HENDERSON, 5129, Hendersonville; HERTFORD, 7484, Winton; HYDE, 6458, Lake Landing; IREDELL, 15,685, Statesville; JOHNSON, 10,599, Smithfield; JONES, 4945, Trenton; LENOIR, 7605, Kingston; LINCOLN, 25,160, Lincolnton; MACON, 4869, Franklin; MARTIN, 7637, Williamston; MECKLENBURG, 18,273, Charlotte; MONTGOMERY, 10,780, Lawrenceville; MOORE, 7988, Carthage; NASH, 9047, Nashville; NEW HANOVER, 13,312, Wilmington; NORTHAMPTON, 13,369, Jackson; ONSLOW, 7527, Onslow C. H.; ORANGE, 24,356, Hillsboro'; PASQUOTANK, 8514, Elizabeth City; PERQUIMANS, 7246, Hertford; PERSON, 9790, Roxboro'; PITT, 11,806, Greenville; RANDOLPH, 12,875, Ashboro'; RICHMOND, 8909,

---

\* Tarboro', cap. of Edgecombe co., N. C., is situated on the W. side of Tar R., at the head of steamboat navigation, 85 ms. above its mouth, in Pamlico Sound; 76 ms. E. by N. from Raleigh, 262 ms. from W.

† Louisburg, capital of Franklin co., N. C., is situated on the N. side of Tar R., 36 ms. N. E. from Raleigh, 262 ms. from W.

Rockingham; ROBESON, 10,370, Lumberton; ROCKINGHAM, 13,422, Wentworth; ROWAN, 12,109, Salisbury; RUTHERFORD, 19,202, Rutherfordton; SAMPSON, 12,157, Clinton; STOKES, 16,265, Germanton; SURRY, 15,079, Rockford; TYRREL, 4657, Columbia; WAKE, 21,118, Raleigh; WARREN, 12,919, Warrenton; WASHINGTON, 4525, Plymouth; WAYNE, 10,891, Waynesboro'; WILKES, 12,577, Wilkesboro'; YANCEY, 5962, Burnsville.

Raleigh, situated near the centre of the state, 6 miles, W. of the Neuse River, is the seat of government.

---

## SOUTH CAROLINA.

*Page 145.—Lesson 107.—Map No. 12.*

*Q.* What bounds South Carolina on the north?

*A.* N. C.

*Q.* On the west?

*A.* Ga.

*Q.* East?

*A.* Atlantic Ocean.

*Q.* What river separates it from Georgia?

*A.* Savannah.

*Q.* What rivers flow into Winyaw Bay?

*A.* Great Pedee, and Waccamaw.

*Q.* What river south of Winyaw Bay?

*A.* Santee.

*Q.* What rivers form the Santee?

*A.* Wateree and Congaree.

*Q.* The Congaree?

*A.* Saluda, and Broad.

*Q.* What rivers flow into St. Helena sound?

*A.* Edisto, and Combahee.

*Q.* What are the lengths of all the foregoing rivers?

*A.* Savannah, 500 ms.; Great Pedee, 450; Waccamaw, 150; Santee, 450; Wateree, 275; Congaree, 40; Saluda, 150; Broad, 200; Edisto, 200; Combahee, 100. (M. A.)

*Q.* How many miles, and for what kinds of vessels, are the Waccamaw, Great Pedee, Wateree, and Congaree rivers navigable?

*A.* Waccamaw is navigable 80 ms., for steamboats; Great Pedee, 200, for steamboats; Wateree, 200, for steamboats; Congaree, 200, for steamboats. (M. A.)

*Q.* What is the population of Charleston?

*A.* 29,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Of Columbia?

*A.* 4250. (M. A.)

*Q.* Camden and Georgetown?

*A.* 2000 each. (M. A.)

*Q.* In what year was the battle of Fort Moultrie fought?

*A.* In 1776. (M. A.)

- Q. Charleston ?  
 A. 1780. (M. A.)  
 Q. Monk's Corner ?  
 A. 1780. (M. A.)  
 Q. Gates defeated ?  
 A. 1780. (M. A.)  
 Q. King's Mountain ?  
 A. 1780. (M. A.)  
 Q. Cowpens ?  
 A. 1781. (M. A.)  
 Q. Hobkirk's Hill and Eutaw Springs ?  
 A. 1781. (M. A.)  
 Q. In what district is Charleston ?  
 A. Charleston.  
 Q. Columbia ?  
 A. Richland.  
 Q. Camden ?  
 A. Kershaw.  
 Q. Which is the most northern district ?  
 A. Spartanburg.  
 Q. Most southern ?  
 A. Beaufort.  
 Q. Eastern ?  
 A. Horry.  
 Q. Western ?  
 A. Pickens.  
 Q. Near the junction of what rivers is Columbia ?\*  
 A. Saluda and Broad.

SOUTH CAROLINA, one of the Southern States, is bounded N. by N. C.; S. E. by the Atlantic; and S. W. by Ga., from which it is separated by the Savannah R. It is between  $32^{\circ} 2'$  and  $35^{\circ} 10'$  N. lat., and between  $78^{\circ} 24'$  and  $83^{\circ} 30'$  W. long., and between  $1^{\circ} 45'$  and  $6^{\circ} 15'$  W. from W. It is 200 miles long and 125 broad, containing about 33,000 square miles, or 21,120,000 acres. The population in 1790 was 240,000; in 1800, 345,591; in 1810, 415,115; in 1820, 502,741; in 1830, 581,458; in 1840, 594,398, including 327,038 slaves. Of the free population, 130,496 were white males; 128,588 do. females; 3864 were coloured males; 4412 do. females. Employed in agriculture, 198,364; in commerce, 1958; manufactures and trades, 10,325; navigating the ocean, 381; canals, rivers, &c., 348; learned professions, &c., 1481.

This state is divided into 29 districts, which, with their population in 1840,

---

\* Columbia, capital of Richland district, S. C., and of the state, is situated in  $33^{\circ} 57'$  N. lat., and  $81^{\circ} 7'$  W. long., and  $4^{\circ}$  W. long. from W.; 35 ms. S. W. from Camden, 73 ms. N. E. from Augusta, 120 ms. N. N. W. from Charleston, 506 ms. from W. It is situated on the E. side of Congaree R., immediately below the junction of Broad and Saluda Rivers to form the Congaree.



and their capitals, were as follow : ABBEVILLE, 29,351, Abbeville ; ANDERSON, 18,493, Anderson C. H. ; BARNWELL, 21,471, Barnwell C. H. ; BEAUFORT, 35,794, Coosawhatchie ; CHARLESTON, 82,661, Charleston ; CHESTER, 17,747, Chester C. H. ; CHESTERFIELD, 8574, Chesterfieldville ; COLLETON, 25,548, Walterborough ; DARLINGTON, 14,822, Darlington C. H. ; EDGEFIELD, 32,852, Edgefield C. H. ; FAIRFIELD, 20,165, Winnsborough ; GEORGETOWN, 18,274, Georgetown ; GREENVILLE, 17,839, Greenville ; HORRY, 5755, Conwayborough ; KERSHAW, 12,281, Camden ; LANCASTER, 9907, Lancaster C. H. ; LAURENS, 21,584, Laurensville ; LEXINGTON, 12,111, Lexington ; MARION, 13,932, Marion ; MARLBOROUGH, 8408, Bennettsville ; NEWBERRY, 18,350, Newberry C. H. ; ORANGEBURG, 18,519, Orangeburg C. H. ; PICKENS, 14,356, Pickens C. H. ; RICHLAND, 16,397, Columbia ; SPARTANBURG, 23,699, Spartanburg ; SUMTER, 27,892, Sumterville ; UNION, 18,936, Unionville ; WILLIAMSBURG, 10,327, Kingstree ; YORK, 18,383, Yorkville.

Columbia, on the left bank of the Congaree, immediately below the confluence of Broad and Saluda Rivers, is the seat of government.

---

## GEORGIA.

### *Page 147.—Lesson 108.—Map No. 12.*

*Q.* What bounds Georgia on the north ?

*A.* N. C. and Tenn.

*Q.* On the south ?

*A.* Flor.

*Q.* East ?

*A.* S. C. and the Atlantic Ocean.

*Q.* West ?

*A.* Ala.

*Q.* What river separates Georgia from South Carolina ?

*A.* Savannah.

*Q.* What river separates it in part from Alabama ?

*A.* Chattahoochee.

*Q.* What river in part from Florida ?

*A.* St. Mary's.

*Q.* What five rivers flow into the Atlantic Ocean ?

*A.* Savannah, Ogeechee, Alatamaha, Satilla, and St. Mary's.

*Q.* What rivers form the Alatamaha ?

*A.* Ocmulgee, and Oconee.

*Q.* What rivers form the Apalachicola ?

*A.* Chattahoochee, and Flint.

*Q.* What is the population of Savannah ?

*A.* 11,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Augusta ?

*A.* 6000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Columbus ?

*A.* 3000. (M. A.)

- Q. Macon ?  
*A.* 4000. (M. A.)  
 Q. In what counties are these towns ?  
*A.* Savannah is in Chatham co. ; Augusta, in Richmond ; Columbus, in Muscogee ; Macon, in Bibb.  
 Q. In what county is Milledgeville ?  
*A.* Baldwin.  
 Q. To what town, and how far from the sea, do steamboats ascend the Savannah ?  
*A.* To Augusta, 200 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Oconee ?  
*A.* To Milledgeville, 200 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Ocmulgee ?  
*A.* To Macon, 220 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Chattahoochee ?  
*A.* To Columbus, 300 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Flint ?  
*A.* To Bainbridge, 130 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Which is the largest island ?  
*A.* Cumberland.  
 Q. What extensive swamp in Ware county ?  
*A.* Okefinokee.  
 Q. When was the battle of Savannah fought ?  
*A.* In 1778. (M. A.)

GEORGIA, one of the Southern States, is bounded N. by Tenn. and N. C.; N.E. by S. C.; E. by the Atlantic; S. by Flor.; and W. by Ala. It is between 30° 30' and 35° N. lat., and between 80° 50' and 85° 40' W. long., and between 3° 52' and 8° 47' W. from W. It is 300 miles long from N. to S., and 240 broad from E. to W., containing 68,000 sq. ms., or 43,520,000 acres. The population in 1790, was 82,584; in 1800, 162,686; in 1810, 252,433; in 1820, 348,989; in 1830, 516,567; in 1840, 691,392, of which 280,944 were slaves. Employed in agriculture, 209,383; in commerce, 2428; in manufactures and trades, 7984; mining, 574; navigating the ocean, 262; do. canals, rivers, &c., 352; learned professions, 1250.

This State is divided into 93 counties, which, with their population in 1840, and their capitals, were as follow: APPLING, 2052, Homesville; BAKER, 4226, Newton; BALDWIN, 7250, Milledgeville; BIBB, 9802, Macon; BRYAN, 3182, Bryan C.H.; BULLOCH, 3102, Statesborough; BURKE, 13,176, Waynesborough; BUTTS, 5308, Jackson; CAMDEN, 6075, Jeffersonton; CAMPBELL, 5370, Campbellton; CARROLL, 5252, Carrollton; CASS, 9390, Cassville; CHATHAM, 18,801, Savannah; CHATTOOGA, 3438, Summerville; CHEROKEE, 5895, Canton; CLARKE, 10,522, Athens; COBB, 7539, Marietta; COLUMBIA, 11,356, Applington; COWETA, 10,364, Newnan; CRAWFORD, 7981, Knoxville; DADE, 1364, Trenton; DECATUR, 5872, Bainbridge; DE KALB, 10,467, Decatur; DOOLY, 4427, Vienna; EARLY, 5444, Blakeley; EFFINGHAM, 3075, Springfield; ELBERT, 11,125, Elberton; EMANUEL, 3129, Swainsborough; FAYETTE, 6191, Fayetteville; FLOYD, 4441, Rome; FORSYTH, 5619, Cumming; FRANKLIN, 9886, Carnesville; GILMER, 2536,

Ellejay ; GLYNN, 5302, Brunswick ; GREENE, 11,690, Greensborough ; GWINNETT, 10,804, Lawrenceville ; HABERSHAM, 7961, Clarksville ; HALL, 7875, Gainesville ; HANCOCK, 9659, Sparta ; HARRIS, 13,933, Hamilton ; HEARD, 5329, Franklin ; HENRY, 11,756, McDonough ; HOUSTON, 9711, Perry ; IRWIN, 2038, Irwinville ; JACKSON, 8522, Jefferson ; JASPER, 11,111, Monticello ; JEFFERSON, 7254, Louisville ; JONES, 10,065, Clinton ; LAURENS, 5585, Dublin ; LEE, 4520, Starkeville ; LIBERTY, 7241, Hinesville ; LINCOLN, 5895, Lincolnton ; LOWNDES, 5574, Troupsville ; LUMPKIN, 5671, Dahlonega ; MACON, 5045, Lanier ; MADISON, 4510, Danielsville ; MARION, 4812, Tazewell ; MCINTOSH, 5360, Darien ; MERRIWETHER, 14,132, Greeneville ; MONROE, 16,275, Forsyth ; MONTGOMERY, 1616, Mount Vernon ; MORGAN, 9121, Madison ; MURRAY, 4695, Spring Place ; MUSCOGEE, 11,699, Columbus ; NEWTON, 11,628, Covington ; OGLETHORPE, 10,868, Lexington ; PAULDING, 2556, Van Wert ; PIKE, 9176, Zebulon ; PULASKI, 5389, Hawkinsville ; PUTNAM, 10,260, Eatonton ; RABUN, 1912, Clayton ; RANDOLPH, 8276, Cuthbert ; RICHMOND, 11,932, Augusta ; SCRIVEN, 4794, Jacksonboro' ; STEWART, 12,933, Lumpkin ; SUMPTER, 5759, Americus ; TALBOT, 15,627, Talbotton ; TALLIAFERRO, 5190, Crawfordsville ; TATNALL, 2724, Reidsville ; TELFAIR, 2763, Jacksonville ; THOMAS, 6766, Thomasville ; TROUP, 15,733, Lagrange ; TWIGGS, 8,422, Marion ; UNION, 3152, Blairsville ; UPSON, 9408, Thomaston ; WALKER, 6572, Lafayette ; WALTON, 10,209, Monroe ; WARE, 2323, Waresboro' ; WARREN, 9789, Warrenton ; WASHINGTON, 10,565, Sandersville ; WAYNE, 1258, Wayne C. H. ; WILKES, 10,148, Washington ; WILKINSON, 6842, Irwinton.

Milledgeville, situated on the W. bank of the Oconee R., at the head of steamboat navigation, and at the junction of Fishing Cr., is the seat of government.

## FLORIDA.

*Page 148.—Lesson 109.—Maps No. 5 and 12.*

*Map No. 5.—Q.* What bounds Florida on the north ?

*A.* Ga., and Ala.

*Q.* On the east ?

*A.* Atlantic Ocean.

*Q.* West and south ?

*A.* Gulf of Mexico.

*Q.* What Cape is on the east coast ?

*A.* Cannaveral.

*Q.* What Capes on the west ?

*A.* St. Blas, Romans, and Sable.

*Q.* What Bays on the west ?

*A.* Pensacola, Apalachee, Vacassar, Tampa, and Chatham.

*Q.* What are the two chief lakes ?

*A.* George, and Okee-cho-bee.

*Map No. 12.—Q.* What river separates Florida from Alabama ?

*A.* Perdido.

- Q. What from Georgia ?  
 A. St. Mary's.  
 Q. What rivers flow into Pensacola Bay ?  
 A. Escambia, Black Water, and Yellow Water.  
 Q. What into Choctawhatchie Bay ?  
 A. Choctawhatchie.  
 Q. Into Apalachee Bay ?  
 A. Ocklockony, and Oscilla.  
 Q. Into Vacassar Bay ?  
 A. Suwanee.  
 Q. What river flows into the Atlantic Ocean north of St. Augustine ?  
 A. St. John's.  
 Q. What into the Gulf of Mexico at Apalachicola ?  
 A. Apalachicola.  
 Q. Tell the lengths of the seven rivers that have figures attached to them.  
 A. Escambia, 250 ms.; Choctawhatchie, 200; Apalachicola, 550; Ocklockony, 200; Oscilla, 100; Suwanee, 300; St. John's, 250. (M. A.)  
 Q. What is the population of Tallahassee ?  
 A. 1500. (M. A.)  
 Q. St. Augustine ?  
 A. 2500. (M. A.)  
 Q. Pensacola ?  
 A. 3000. (M. A.)  
 Q. In what counties are these towns ?  
 A. Tallahassee is in Leon; St. Augustine, in St. John; Pensacola, in Escambia.

FLORIDA, the southernmost of the Southern States (having been recently admitted into the Union), is bounded N. by Ala. and Ga.; E. by the Atlantic; S. and W. by the Gulf of Mexico; and W. by a small part of Ala. It lies between  $25^{\circ}$  and  $31^{\circ}$  N. lat., and between  $80^{\circ}$  and  $87^{\circ} 44'$  W. long., and between  $3^{\circ}$  and  $10^{\circ} 44'$  W. from W. It is 385 ms. long, and from 50 to 200 wide, containing 55,000 sq. ms., or 35,200,000 acres. The population in 1830, was 34,723; in 1840, 54,477; of which 16,456 were white males, 11,487 females; free coloured persons, males 398, females 419; slaves, males 13,038, females 12,679. Employed in agriculture, 12,117; in commerce, 481; in manufactures and trades, 1177; navigating the ocean, 435; do. canals and rivers, 118; learned professions and engineers, 204.

This state is divided into 20 counties, which, with their population in 1840, and their capitals, were as follow: *West Florida*.—ESCAMBIA, 3993, Pensacola; WALTON, 1461, Euchee Anna. *Middle Florida*.—GADSDEN, 5992, Quincy; HAMILTON, 1464, Jasper; JEFFERSON, 5713, Monticello; LEON, 10,713, Tallahassee; MADISON, 2644, Madison. *East Florida*.—ALACHUA, 2282, Newnansville; COLUMBIA, 2102, Lancaster; DUVAL, 4156, Jacksonville; HILLSBOROUGH, 452, Fort Brooks; MOSQUITO, 73, New Smyrna; NASSAU, 1892, Nassau C. H.; ST. JOHN'S, 2694, St. Augus-

tine : *South Florida*.—DADE, 446, Key Biscayne ; MONROE, 688, Key West : *Apalachicola District*.—CALHOUN, 1142, St. Joseph ; FRANKLIN, 1030, Apalachicola ; JACKSON, 4681, Marianna ; WASHINGTON, 859, Roche's Bluff.

Tallahassee, in Leon county, 22 miles N. of St. Mark's, is the seat of government.

## ALABAMA.

*Page 150.—Lesson 110.—Map No. 12.*

Q. What bounds Alabama on the north ?

A. Tenn.

Q. The east ?

A. Ga.

Q. The west ?

A. Miss.

Q. What state and gulf on the south ?

A. Flor., and the Gulf of Mexico.

Q. What river separates Alabama from Florida ?

A. Perdido.

Q. What river flows into Mobile Bay ?

A. Mobile.

Q. What two rivers form Mobile River ?

A. Tombigbee and Alabama.

Q. What rivers form the Alabama ?

A. Coosa, and Tallapoosa.

Q. What river flows through the northern part of the state ?

A. Tennessee.

Q. On what river is Tuscaloosa ?\*

A. On the Black Warrior or Tuscaloosa.

Q. How long is the Tombigbee ?

A. 500 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Alabama ?

A. 600 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Coosa.

A. 300 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Tallapoosa ?

A. 200 ms. (M. A.)

Q. What is the population of Mobile ?

A. 12,500. (M. A.)

Q. Wetumpka ?

A. 3000. (M. A.)

---

\* Tuscaloosa, cap. of Tuscaloosa co., Ala., and of the state, is situated on the S. E. side of Black Warrior or Tuscaloosa R., at the lower falls, on an elevated plain, at the head of steamboat navigation on the R.; 160 ms. S. S. W. from Huntsville, 355 ms. N. from Mobile, by course of river, 256 ms. N. from Mobile by land, 818 ms. from W.



Q. Huntsville ?

A. 2500. (M. A.)

Q. Tuscaloosa ?

A. 2000. (M. A.)

Q. Florence ?

A. 2000. (M. A.)

Q. Montgomery ?

A. 2000. (M. A.)

Q. In what county is Mobile ?

A. Mobile.

Q. Tuscaloosa ?

A. Tuscaloosa.

Q. Florence ?

A. Lauderdale.

Q. Huntsville ?

A. Madison.

Q. Wetumpka ?

A. Coosa.

Q. How many miles are the following rivers navigable for steamboats from the sea : viz., Tennessee ?

A. 1500. (M. A.)

Q. Tombigbee ?

A. 460. (M. A.)

Q. Black Warrior ?

A. 400. (M. A.)

Q. Alabama ?

A. 460. (M. A.)

Q. In what year was the battle of Tohopeka fought ?

A. In 1814. (M. A.)

Q. On what river is Florence ? \*

A. On the Tennessee.

Q. Decatur ? †

A. On the Tennessee.

ALABAMA, one of the Southern States, is bounded on the N. by Tenn. ; E. by Ga. ; S. by Flor., and the Gulf of Mexico ; and W. by Miss. It is between  $30^{\circ} 10'$  and  $35^{\circ}$  N. lat., and between  $85^{\circ}$  and  $88^{\circ} 30'$  W. long., and between  $8^{\circ}$  and  $11^{\circ} 30'$  W. long. from W. It is 317 ms. long from N. to S., and 174 broad from E. to W. It contains 51,770 sq. ms., or 33,140,800 acres. The pop. in 1810 was less than 10,000 ; in 1816, 29,683 ; in 1818, 70,544 ; in 1820, 127,901 ; in 1727, 244,041 ; in 1830, 308,997 ; in 1840,

\* Florence, cap. of Lauderdale co., Ala., is situated on the N. side of Tennessee R., 1 m. above the mouth of Cypress Cr., and immediately below the Muscle Shoals ; 135 ms. N. by W. from Tuscaloosa, 780 ms. from W.

† Decatur, Morgan co., Ala., is situated on the S. side of Tennessee R., at the E. termination of the Tuscumbia and Decatur railroad : 139 ms. N. N. E. from Tuscaloosa, 739 ms. from W.

590,756, of whom 253,532 were slaves. Free white males, 176,692; do. females, 158,493; free coloured males, 1030; do. females, 1009. Employed in agriculture, 177,439; in commerce, 2212; in manufactures and trades, 7195; navigating the ocean, 256; do. canals, rivers, &c., 758; mining 96; learned professions, 1514. It is divided into 49 counties, which, with their population in 1840, and their capitals, were as follows: *Northern District.* — BENTON, 14,260, Jacksonville; BLOUNT, 5570, Blountsville; CHEROKEE, 8773, Jefferson; DE KALE, 5929, Lebanon; FAYETTE, 6942, Fayette C. H.; FRANKLIN, 14,270, Russellville; JACKSON, 15,715, Bellefonte; LAUDERDALE, 14,485, Florence; LAWRENCE, 13,313, Moulton; LIMESTONE, 14,374, Athens; MADISON, 25,706, Huntsville; MARION, 5847, Pikeville; MARSHALL, 7553, Warrenton; MORGAN, 9841, Somerville; RANDOLPH, 4973, McDonald; ST. CLAIR, 5638, Ashville; TALLADEGA, 12,587, Talladega. *Southern District.* — AUTAUGA, 14,342, Kingston; BALDWIN, 2951, Blakeley; BARBOUR, 12,024, Clayton; BIBB, 8284, Centreville; BUTLER, 8685, Greenville; CHAMBERS, 17,333, Lafayette; CLARKE, 8640, Macon; CONECUH, 8197, Sparta; COOSA, 6995, Rockford; COVINGTON, 2435, Montezuma; DALE, 7397, Daleville; DALLAS, 25,199, Cahawba; GREENE, 24,024, Erie; HENRY, 5787, Abbeville; JEFFERSON, 7131, Elyton; LOWNDES, 19,539, Haynesville; MACON, 11,247, Tuskegee; MARENGO, 17,264, Linden; MOBILE, 18,741, Mobile; MONROE, 10,680, Monroeville; MONTGOMERY, 24,574, Montgomery; PERRY, 19,086, Marion; PICKENS, 17,118, Carrolton; PIKE, 10,108, Troy; RUSSELL, 13,513, Crocketsville; SHELBY, 6112, Columbiana; SUMTER, 29,937, Livingston; TALLAPOOSA, 6444, Dadeville; TUSCALOOSA, 16,583, Tuscaloosa; WALKER, 4032, Jasper; WASHINGTON, 5300, Barryton; WILCOX, 15,278, Barbourville.

\* Tuscaloosa, the seat of government, is situated on the S. E. side of Black Warrior or Tuscaloosa r.: on an elevated plain, at the head of steamboat navigation on the r., it is 217 ms. N. of Mobile by land, and 818 miles S. W. from Washington City.

## MISSISSIPPI.

*Page 152.—Lesson 111.—Map No. 12.*

*Q.* What state bounds Mississippi on the north?

*A.* Tenn.

*Q.* On the south?

*A.* La., and the Gulf of Mexico.

*Q.* On the east?

*A.* Ala.

*Q.* On the west?

*A.* Ark., and La.

*Q.* What river separates it from Louisiana and Arkansas?

*A.* Mississippi.

*Q.* On what river is Natchez?\*

*A.* On the Mississippi.

---

\* Natchez, city, and cap. of Adams co., Miss., is situated on the E. bank of the Mississippi r., mostly on a bluff, elevated 150 ft. above the level of the

Q. Jackson?\*

A. On Pearl r.

Q. Grand Gulf?†

A. On the Mississippi.

Q. Vicksburg?‡

A. On the Mississippi r.

Q. Manchester, or Yazoo City?§

A. On Yazoo r.

Q. Grenada?||

A. On Yalabusha r.

Q. Columbus?¶

A. On the Tombigbee r.

Q. What is the population of each of these towns?

A. Natchez, 5000; Jackson, 1500; Grand Gulf, 1500; Vicksburg, 3000; Manchester, or Yazoo City, 1000; Grenada, 1000; Columbus, 3000. (M. A.)

Q. How many miles from the sea do steamboats ascend the Tombigbee?

A. 460 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Tallahatchie?

A. 900 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Yalabusha?

A. 800 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Big Black?

A. 550 ms. (M. A.)

river; 100 ms. S. W. from Jackson, 155 ms. from New Orleans by land, and 292 ms. by the course of the river; 1110 ms. from W.

\* Jackson is the cap. of Hinds co., and of the state of Miss., 1010 ms. S. W. from W. It is situated on the W. bank of Pearl r., which is navigable for boats to this place.

† Grand Gulf, Claiborne co., Miss., is situated on Grand Gulf, a remarkable bend in the Mississippi r., 65 ms. S. by W. from Jackson; 1075 ms. from W.; 50 ms. by road above Natchez, and 360 ms. by the river above New Orleans.

‡ Vicksburg, city, and cap. of Warren co., Miss., is 41 ms. W. by N. from Jackson, 1051 ms. from W. It is situated on the E. side of Mississippi r., 400 ms. above New Orleans, and though of recent origin, it has become a large and flourishing place.

§ Yazoo City, in Yazoo co., Miss., 60 ms. N. W. from Jackson, 1029 ms. from W. It is situated on the E. side of Yazoo r.

|| Grenada, in Yalabusha co., Miss., 113 ms. N. from Jackson, 958 ms. from W. Situated on the S. side of Yalabusha r. It contains a U. S. land office, and several stores and dwellings.

¶ Columbus, city, and cap. of Lowndes co., Miss., 141 ms. N. E. from Jackson, 885 ms. from W. Situated on the E. bank of Tombigbee r., 120 ft. above the r., and at the head of steamboat navigation.

Q. Pearl ?

A. 220 ms. (M. A.)

Q. How far is Vicksburg from the sea ?

A. 520 ms. (M. A.)

Q. What kind of vessels ascend to it ?

A. Ships.

Q. In what county is Natchez ?

A. Adams.

Q. Vicksburg ?

A. Warren.

Q. Jackson ?

A. Hinds.

Q. Columbus ?

A. Lowndes.

Q. Grand Gulf ?

A. Claiborne.

MISSISSIPPI, one of the Southern States, is bounded N. by Tenn., E. by Ala.; S. by the Gulf of Mexico and La.; and W. by Pearl and Mississippi rivers, which separate it from the states of La. and Ark. It is between  $30^{\circ} 10'$  and  $35^{\circ}$  N. lat., and between  $88^{\circ} 30'$  and  $91^{\circ} 35'$  W. long.; and between  $11^{\circ} 5'$  and  $14^{\circ} 26'$  W. long. from W. It is 339 ms. long from N. to S., and 150 broad from E. to W., containing 48,000 sq. ms., or 30,720,000 acres.

The population in 1816 was 45,929 ; in 1820, 75,448 ; in 1830, 136,806 ; in 1840, 375,651 ; of which, 195,211 were slaves. Of the free population 97,256 were white males ; 81,818 do. females ; 715 were coloured males ; 654 do. females. Employed in agriculture, 139,724 ; in commerce, 1303 ; in manufactures and trades, 4151 ; navigating the ocean, 33 ; do. rivers, canals, &c., 100 ; learned professions, 1506.

This state is divided into 56 counties, which, with their population in 1840, and their capitals, were as follow : *Northern District.*—ATTALA, 4303, Kosciusko ; BOLIVAR, 1356, Bolivar ; CARROLL, 10,481, Carrollton ; CHICKASAW, 2955, Houston ; CHOCTAW, 6010, Greensboro ; COAHOMA, 1290, Coahoma C. H. ; DE SOTO, 7002, Hernando ; ITAWAMBA, 5375, Fulton ; LAFAYETTE, 6531, Oxford ; LOWNDES, 14,513, Columbus ; MARSHALL, 17,526, Holly Springs ; MONROE, 9250, Athens ; NOXUBEE, 9975, Macon ; OKTIBBEHA, 4276, Starkville ; PONOLA, 4657, Ponola ; PONTOTOC, 4491, Pontotoc ; TALLAHATCHIE, 2985, Charleston ; TIPPAAH, 9444, Ripley ; TISHAMINGO, 6681, Jacinto ; TUNICA, 821, Peyton ; WINSTON, 4650, Louisville ; YALABUSHA, 12,248, Coffeeville. *Southern District.*—ADAMS, 19,434, Natchez ; AMITE, 9511, Liberty ; CLAIBORNE, 13,078, Port Gibson ; CLARKE, 2986, Quitman ; COPIAH, 8954, Gallatin ; COVINGTON, 2717, Williamsburg ; FRANKLIN, 4775, Meadville ; GREENE, 1636, Leakesville ; HANCOCK, 3367, Shieldsborough ; HINDS, 19,098, Raymond ; HOLMES, 9452, Lexington ; JACKSON, 1965, Jackson C. H. ; JASPER, 3958, Paulding ; JEFFERSON, 11,650, Fayette ; JONES, 1258, Ellisville ; KEMPER, 7663, De Kalb ; LAUDERDALE, 5358, Marion ; LAWRENCE, 5920, Monticello ; LEAKE, 2162, Carthage ; MADISON, 15,530, Canton ; NESHOMA, 2437, Philadelphia ; NEWTON, 2527, Decatur ; PERRY, 1899, Augusta ; PIKE, 6151, Holmesville ; RANKIN, 4631, Brandon ; SCOTT, 1653, Hillsborough ;

SIMPSON, 3380, Westville ; SMITH, 1961, Raleigh ; WARREN, 15,820, Vicksburg ; WASHINGTON, 7287, Princeton ; WAYNE, 2120, Winchester ; WILKINSON, 14,193, Woodville ; YAZOO, 10,480, Benton.

Jackson, situated on the W. bank of Pearl River, 1010 ms. S. W. from Washington City, is the seat of government.

---

LOUISIANA.

*Page 154.—Lesson 112.—Map No. 12.*

Q. By what is Louisiana bounded on the north ?

A. Ark. and Miss.

Q. On the east ?

A. Miss.

Q. South ?

A. Gulf of Mexico.

Q. West ?

A. Texas.

Q. What rivers separate Louisiana from Mississippi ?

A. Mississippi and Pearl.

Q. What river from Texas ?

A. Sabine.

Q. What two lakes are in the eastern part of the state ?

A. Pontchartrain, and Borgne.

Q. What two in the southern part ?

A. Calcasieu, and Mermentau.

Q. How long is the Mississippi ?

A. 4100 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Red River ?

A. 1200 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Washita ?

A. 500 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Sabine ?

A. 400 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Calcasieu ?

A. 250 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Bayou Macon ?

A. 200 ms. (M. A.)

Some rivers are termed Bayous in Louisiana. (M. G. p. 154.)

Q. What is the population of New Orleans ?

A. 102,000. (M. A.)

Q. Donaldsonville ?

A. 1000. (M. A.)

Q. Baton Rouge ?

A. 1500. (M. A.)



Q. Alexandria?

A. 1500. (M. A.)

Q. Natchitoches?

A. 2500. (M. A.)

Q. In what parishes are these situated?

A. New Orleans, in New Orleans; Donaldsonville, in Ascension; Baton Rouge, in East Baton Rouge; Alexandria, in Rapides; Natchitoches, in Natchitoches.

Q. When was the battle of New Orleans fought?

A. In 1815. (M. A.)

LOUISIANA, one of the Southern States, is bounded N. by Ark. and Miss.; E. by Miss., from which it is separated by the Mississippi River, to the 31° N. lat., thence E. on that parallel to Pearl River, and down that river to its mouth; E. and S. by the Gulf of Mexico; and W. by Texas, from which it is separated by the Sabine River to 32° N. lat., and thence due N. to lat. 33° N., the S. boundary of Arkansas. It is 240 miles long from N. to S., and 210 broad from E. to W., containing 48,320 sq. ms., or 30,934,800 acres. The population in 1810, was 76,556; in 1820, 153,407; in 1830, 215,575; in 1840, 352,411, of which 168,452 were slaves. Of the free population 89,747 were white males; 68,710 do. females; 11,526 coloured males; 13,976 do. females. Employed in agriculture, 79,289; in commerce, 8549; in manufactures and trades, 7565; navigating the ocean, 1322; canals, lakes, &c., 662; learned professions, 1018.

This State is divided into 38 parishes, which, with their population in 1840, and their capitals, were as follow. *Eastern District.*—ASCENSION, 6951, Donaldsonville; ASSUMPTION, 7141, Napoleonville; E. BATON ROUGE, 8138, Baton Rouge; W. BATON ROUGE, 4638, W. Baton Rouge C. H.; CARROLL, 4237, Providence; CONCORDIA, 9414, Vidalia; E. FELICIANA, 11,893, Clinton; W. FELICIANA, 10,910, St. Francisville; IBERVILLE, 8495, Plaquemine; JEFFERSON, 10,470, Lafayette; LAFOURCHE INTERIOR, 7303, Thibodeaux; LIVINGSTON, 2315, Springfield; MADISON, 5142, Richmond; ORLEANS, 102,193, New Orleans; PLAQUEMINE, 5060, Fort Jackson; POINT COUPEE, 7898, Point Coupée; ST. BERNARD, 3237, St. Bernard C. H.; ST. CHARLES, 4700, St. Charles C. H.; ST. HELENA, 3525, Greensburg; ST. JAMES, 8548, Bringiers; ST. JOHN BAPTIST, 5776, Bonnet Carré; ST. TAMMANY, 4598, Covington; TERRE BONNE, 4410, Houma; WASHINGTON, 2649, Franklinton. *Western District.*—A VOYELLES, 6616, Marksville; CADDO, 5282, Shreveport; CALCASTEU, 2057, Lisbon; CALDWELL, 2017, Columbia; CATAHOOLA, 4955, Harrisonburg; CLAIBORNE, 6185, Overton; LA FAYETTE, 7841, Vermilionville; NATCHITOCHES, 14,350, Natchitoches; RAPIDES, 14,132, Alexandria; ST. LANDRY, 15,233, Opelousas; ST. MARTIN'S, 8676, St. Martinsville; ST. MARY'S, 8950, Franklin; UNION, 1838, Farmersville; WASHITA, 4640, Monroe.

New Orleans, the capital, is on the N. bank of the Mississippi R., 105 ms. from its mouth, and 1172 S. W. from Washington City.

In the year 1699, the settlement of Louisiana was commenced by the French; in 1762 they ceded the whole region to Spain, which power, in the year 1800, reconveyed it to France; three years afterwards it was purchased from the latter by the United States, for \$15,000,000. This purchase included all the territory belonging to the U. S. which lies between the Mississippi River and the Rocky Mts., with the exception of Texas.

## TEXAS.

*Page 155.—Lesson 113.—Map No. 13.*

- Q. What bounds Texas on the north?  
 A. Indian Ter.  
 Q. South?  
 A. Gulf of Mexico.  
 Q. East?  
 A. La., and Indian Ter.  
 Q. West?  
 A. Mexico.  
 Q. What river forms the north boundary?  
 A. Red.  
 Q. East?  
 A. Sabine.  
 Q. West?  
 A. Rio Grande.  
 Q. Which are the other chief rivers of Texas?  
 A. Colorado, Brazos, Trinity, and Neuces.  
 Q. How long are they?  
 A. Colorado is 700 ms. long; Brazos, 650; Trinity, 450; Neuces, 350. (M. A.)  
 Q. From what lake does the Brazos River flow?  
 A. Saline Lake.  
 Q. On what river is Austin?  
 A. Colorado.  
 Q. Into what bay does it flow?  
 A. Matagorda.  
 Q. How far do steamboats ascend the Brazos River?  
 A. To the Falls.  
 Q. When, and where, was the battle of San Jacinto fought?  
 A. In 1836, near the river San Jacinto. (M. A.)  
 Q. Point out the Cross Timbers. This is a remarkable forest in the midst of the prairies: it extends northward from the Brazos River, for a distance of a hundred miles. (M. G. p. 155.)  
 Q. What Indian tribes are there in Texas?  
 A. Apaches, Comanches, Lipans, and Kioways. (M. A.)  
 Texas is bounded N. by the Indian Ter.; E. by Ark. and La.; S. E. by the Gulf of Mexico; and S. W. and W. by Mexico, from which it is separated by the Rio Grande. (M. A.)  
 Austin, the capital, is on the left bank of the Colorado River, 1681 miles S. W. from Washington City.  
 This state lies between 26° and 40° N. lat., and 93° 40' and 107° W. long. It is separated from Mexico on the W. and S. W. by the Rio Grande; on the N., the Red River, and the Arkansas chiefly separate it from the Indian Ter.; on the E. the River Sabine divides it from La.; and S. E. it borders the Gulf of Mexico. Length, from its S. to its N. W. extremity,

about 1000 ms.; greatest breadth, from E. to W., near 750 ms. Area estimated at 320,000 sq. ms. Pop. at 250,000, of whom about 25,000 are slaves.

## WESTERN STATES.

*Pages 158-9.—Lesson 115.—Map No. 5.*

Q. Which is the largest Western State?

A. Mo.

Q. The smallest?

A. Ia.

Q. Which is the most northern?

A. Mich.

Q. Southern?

A. Ark.

Q. Eastern?

A. Oo.

Q. Western?

A. Mo.

Q. Which is the largest western territory?

A. Oregon.

Q. The most northern and western?

A. Oregon.

Q. The most eastern?

A. Wis.

Q. Most southern?

A. Indian.

The western states and territories extend from N. latitude 33 degrees to 49. (M. A.)

Q. How much latitude then do they include?

A. 16°.

They extend from about 4 degrees of longitude to 56 degrees west from Washington. (M. A.)

Q. How much longitude do they include?

A. 52°.

Q. What states have the Mississippi River for their western boundary?

A. Tenn., Ky., Ill., and Wis.

Q. Which have the Mississippi for their eastern boundary?

A. Ark., Mo., and Io.

Q. Which states have the Ohio for their southern boundary?

A. Oo., Ia., and Ill.

Q. What state has the Ohio for its northern boundary?

A. Ky.

Q. Which has the Ohio for its western boundary?

A. Va.

*Q.* How many miles is it by the scale from the mouth of Columbia River eastward to the Rocky Mts.?

*A.* About 560. (M. A.)

*Q.* How many miles is it from the Rocky Mts. to Lake Michigan, measured on the parallel of 44 degrees?

*A.* About 1120. (M. A.)

*Q.* How many miles is it from the head of the Arkansas to the head of the Alleghany river?

*A.* About 1550. (M. A.)

This is about the greatest extent that can be measured through the centre of the Mississippi valley E. and W. (M. G., p. 159.)

*Q.* How far is it from the head to the mouth of the Mississippi river in a straight line?

*A.* About 1320 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* How far is it from the mouth of the Ohio R. to the northern boundary of Illinois?

*A.* About 370 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* How far is it from the same point to the east boundary of Kentucky?

*A.* About 373 ms. (M. A.)

The states of Missouri and Indiana are about the same extent from north to south.

*Q.* What is the number of miles?

*A.* About 287. (M. A.)

---

## O H I O.

### *Page 161.—Lesson 116.—Map No. 14.*

*Q.* What bounds Ohio on the north?

*A.* Mich., and Lake Erie.

*Q.* South?

*A.* Ky., and Va.

*Q.* East?

*A.* Va., and Pa.

*Q.* West?

*A.* Ia.

*Q.* What river forms its south boundary?

*A.* Ohio.

*Q.* What rivers flow into Lake Erie?

*A.* Maumee, Sandusky, Huron, and Cuyahoga.

*Q.* Which flow into the Ohio River?

*A.* Miami, Little Miami, Scioto, and Muskingum.

*Q.* What is the population of Cincinnati?

*A.* 46,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Zanesville?

*A.* 5000. (M. A.)

Q. Cleveland ?

A. 6000. (M. A.)

Q. Steubenville ?

A. 5000. (M. A.)

Q. Columbus ?

A. 6000. (M. A.)

Q. Chillicothe ?

A. 4000. (M. A.)

Q. Dayton ?

A. 6000. (M. A.)

Q. Portsmouth ?

A. 1500. (M. A.)

Q. In what counties are these places ?

A. Cincinnati is in Hamilton; Zanesville, in Muskingum; Cleveland, in Cuyahoga; Steubenville, in Jefferson; Columbus, in Franklin; Chillicothe, in Ross; Dayton, in Montgomery; Portsmouth, in Scioto.

Q. How long is the Ohio River ?

A. 1300 miles. (M. A.)

Q. Maumee ?

A. 300. (M. A.)

Q. Miami ?

A. 100. (M. A.)

Q. Scioto ?

A. 250. (M. A.)

Q. Muskingum ?

A. 250. (M. A.)

Q. What road extends through the state from east to west ?

A. National.

Q. On what rivers are Zanesville, Dayton, and the other chief towns ?

A. Zanesville is on the Muskingum;\* Dayton, on the Great Miami;† Cincinnati, on the Ohio;‡ Cleveland, on the Cuyahoga,

\* Zanesville, capital of Muskingum co., Oo., 54 ms. E. from Columbus, 339 ms. from W. The village is situated on the E. side of Muskingum R., opposite to the mouth of Licking R., on the national road.

† Dayton, city, and cap. of Montgomery co., Oo., 68 ms. W. by S. from Columbus, 52 ms. N. from Cincinnati, 461 ms. from W. It is in  $39^{\circ} 46'$  N. lat., and  $84^{\circ} 3'$  W. long., beautifully situated on the E. bank of Great Miami R., immediately below the confluence of Mad R., its main eastern branch, and 1 m. below the mouth of Stillwater, its principal western tributary.

‡ Cincinnati, city, port of entry, and capital of Hamilton co., Oo., is situated in the S. W. part of the state, 116 ms. S. W. from Columbus; 120 ms. S. E. from Indianapolis, Ia.; 90 ms. N. N. W. from Lexington, Ky.; 270 ms. N. N. E. from Nashville, Tenn.; 455 ms. below Pittsburg, Pa., by the course



at its mouth;\* Steubenville, on the Ohio;† Columbus, on the Scioto;‡ Chillicothe, on the Scioto;§ Portsmouth, on the Scioto;|| Marietta, on the Muskingum;¶ Gallipolis, on the Ohio;\*\* Huron, on the Huron, at its mouth;†† Toledo, on the Maumee.‡‡

of the river; 132 ms. above Louisville, Ky.; 494 ms. above the mouth of Ohio R.; and 1447 ms. above New Orleans, La., by the Mississippi and Ohio rivers; 518 ms., by post route, W. from Baltimore; 617 ms. W. by S. from Philadelphia; 650 ms. from New York, by lake Erie, the Erie canal, and Hudson River; and 492 ms. from Washington city. It is in  $39^{\circ} 6' 30''$  N. lat., and  $7^{\circ} 24' 25''$  W. long. It is the largest city of the West N. of New Orleans, and the sixth in pop. in the U. S. Situated on the N. bank of Ohio R., opposite to the mouth of Licking R., which enters the Ohio between Newport and Covington, Ky.

\* Cleveland, city, port of entry, and the capital of Cuyahoga co., Oo., 146 ms. N. E. by N. from Columbus, 395 ms. from W. Cleveland, the emporium of northern Ohio, and, next to Cincinnati, the most important town in the state, possesses a commanding situation on Lake Erie, at the mouth of the Cuyahoga R., and the northern termination of the Ohio canal, by which it is connected with Ohio R., and is in  $41^{\circ} 31'$  N. lat., and  $81^{\circ} 46'$  W. long. from Greenwich, or  $4^{\circ} 44'$  W. long. from W. It is 130 ms. N.W. from Pittsburg, 146 ms. N. E. from Columbus, 200 by water from Buffalo, 130 ms. from Detroit, 359 ms. from W.

† Steubenville, cap. of Jefferson co., Oo., 141 ms. E. N. E. from Columbus, 264 ms. from W. Situated on the W. bank of Ohio R.

‡ Columbus, city, and cap. of Franklin co., Oo., and of the state, 139 ms. S. W. by S. from Cleveland, 110 ms. N. E. from Cincinnati, 175 ms. S. from Detroit, Mich.; 184 ms. S.W. from Pittsburg, Pa.; 393 ms. from W. It is in  $39^{\circ} 47'$  N. lat., and  $83^{\circ} 3'$  W. long., and  $6^{\circ}$  W. long. from W. It is situated on the E. bank of Scioto R., immediately below the confluence of Whetstone R. When this place was fixed on as the seat of the legislature, in 1812, it was an entire wilderness.

§ Chillicothe, city, cap. of Ross co., Oo., 45 ms. S. from Columbus, 400 ms. from W. It is handsomely situated on the W. bank of Scioto R., in Scioto township. Its plan has been thought to resemble that of Philadelphia.

|| Portsmouth, cap. of Scioto co., Oo., 90 ms. S. from Columbus, 424 ms. from W. Situated on the E. bank of the Scioto R., at its entrance into Ohio R., and at the termination of the Ohio canal.

¶ Marietta, cap. of Washington co., Oo., 104 ms. E. S. E. from Columbus, 300 ms. from W. Situated on both sides of Muskingum R., at its entrance into the Ohio R.

\*\* Gallipolis, cap. of Gallia co., Oo., 100 ms. S. S. E. from Columbus, 358 ms. from W. It is pleasantly situated on the W. bank of Ohio R.

†† Huron is in Erie co., Oo., 113 ms. N. by E. from Columbus, 399 ms. from W. The village is situated at the mouth of Huron R., on Lake Erie, where is a good harbor.

‡‡ Toledo, cap. of Lucas co., Oo., 134 ms. N. N. W. from Columbus, 464 ms. from W. Situated on the W. bank of Maumee R. near its entrance into Maumee Bay.

OHIO, the northeastern of the Western States, is bounded N. by Mich. and Lake Erie; E. by Pa. and Va.; S. by the Ohio R., which separates it from Va. and Ky.; and W. by Ia. It is between  $38^{\circ} 30'$  and  $42^{\circ}$  N. lat., and between  $80^{\circ} 35'$  and  $84^{\circ} 47'$  W. long., and between  $3^{\circ} 31'$  and  $7^{\circ} 41'$  W. long from W. It is 210 ms. long from N. to S., and 200 ms. broad from E. to W., containing 44,000 sq. ms., or 28,160,000 acres. The population in 1790, was 3000; in 1800, 45,365; in 1810, 230,760; in 1820, 581,434; in 1830, 937,637; in 1840, 1,519,467; being the third in population in the U. S. Of these, 775,360 were white males; 726,762 do. females; 8740 were free coloured males; 8602 do. females. Employed in agriculture, 272,579; in commerce, 9201; in manufactures and trades, 66,265; in mining, 704; navigating the ocean, 212; do. rivers, canals, and lakes, 3323; learned professions, 5663.

This state is divided into 79 counties, which, with their population in 1840, and their capitals, are as follow: ADAMS, 13,183, West Union; ALLEN, 9079, Lima; ASHTABULA, 23,724, Jefferson; ATHENS, 19,109, Athens; BELMONT, 30,901, St. Clairsville; BROWN, 22,715, Georgetown; BUTLER, 28,173, Hamilton; CARROLL, 18,108, Carrollton; CHAMPAIGN, 16,721, Urbanna; CLARK, 16,882, Springfield; CLERMONT, 23,106, Batavia; CLINTON, 15,719, Wilmington; COLUMBIANA, 40,378, New Lisbon; COSHOCTON, 21,590, Coshocton; CRAWFORD, 13,152, Bucyrus; CUYAHOGA, 26,506, Cleveland; DARKE, 13,282, Greenville; DELAWARE, 22,060, Delaware; WAYNE, 12,599, Sandusky City; FAIRFIELD, 31,924, Lancaster; FAYETTE, 10,984, Washington; FRANKLIN, 25,049, Columbus; GALLIA, 13,444, Gallipolis; GEauga, 16,297, Chardon; GREENE, 17,528, Xenia; GUERNSEY, 27,748, Cambridge; HAMILTON, 80,148, Cincinnati; HANCOCK, 9986, Findlay; HARDIN, 4598, Kenton; HARRISON, 20,099, Cadiz; HENRY, 2503, Napoleon; HIGHLAND, 22,269, Hillsboro'; HOCKING, 9741, Logan; HOLMES, 18,088, Millersburg; HURON, 23,933, Norwalk; JACKSON, 9744, Jackson; JEFFERSON, 25,030, Steubenville; KNOX, 29,579, Mount Vernon; LAKE, 13,719, Painesville; LAWRENCE, 9738, Burlington; LICKING, 35,096, Newark; LOGAN, 14,015, Belle Fontaine; LORAIN, 18,467, Elyria; LUCAS, 9382, Toledo; MADISON, 9025, London; MARION, 14,765, Marion; MEDINA, 18,352, Medina; MEIGS, 11,452, Chester; MERCER, 8277, Celina; MIAMI, 19,688, Troy; MONROE, 18,521, Woodfield; MONTGOMERY, 31,938, Dayton; MORGAN, 20,852, McConnelsville; MUSKINGUM, 38,749, Zanesville; OTTAWA, 2148, Port Clinton; PAULDING, 1034, Charloe; PERRY, 19,344, Somerset; PICKAWAY, 19,725, Circleville; PIKE, 7626, Piketon; PREBLE, 19,482, Eaton; PORTAGE, 22,965, Ravenna; PUTNAM, 5189, Putnam; RICHLAND, 44,532, Mansfield; ROSS, 27,460, Chillicothe; SANDUSKY, 10,182, Lower Sandusky; SCIOTO, 11,192, Portsmouth; SENECA, 18,128, Tiffin; SHELBY, 12,154, Sidney; STARK, 34,603, Canton; SUMMIT, 22,560, Akron; TRUMBULL, 38,107, Warren; TUSCARAWAS, 25,631, New Philadelphia; UNION, 8422, Marysville; VAN WERT, 1577, Van Wert; WARREN, 23,141, Lebanon; WASHINGTON, 20,823, Marietta; WAYNE, 35,808, Wooster; WILLIAMS, 4465, Bryan; WOOD, 5357, Perrysburg.

Columbus, on the Scioto, just below the confluence of the Whetstone, is the seat of government. This city is in  $39^{\circ} 47'$  N. lat., and  $83^{\circ} 3'$  W. long., and  $6^{\circ}$  W. long. from Washington; 110 ms. N. E. of Cincinnati, 139 S. W. of Cleveland, 393 W. by N. from Washington city.

## KENTUCKY.

*Page 162.—Lesson 117.—Map No. 14.**Q.* What states bound Kentucky on the north?*A.* Ill., Ia., and Oo.*Q.* South?*A.* Tenn.*Q.* East?*A.* Va.*Q.* West?*A.* Mo., and Ark.*Q.* What river forms its northern boundary?*A.* Ohio.*Q.* Its western?*A.* Mississippi.*Q.* What river and mountains are its eastern boundary?*A.* Big Sandy River, and Cumberland Mts.*Q.* Which are the principal rivers in the state?*A.* Tennessee, Cumberland, Green, Kentucky, and Licking.*Q.* Tell the lengths of all these.*A.* Tennessee is 900 ms.; Cumberland, 600; Greene, 300; Kentucky, 350; Licking, 300. (M. A.)*Q.* On what river is Frankfort?\**A.* On Kentucky R.*Q.* Louisville?†*A.* On the Ohio R.*Q.* Maysville?‡*A.* On the Ohio R.*Q.* Covington?§*A.* On the Ohio R.

\* Frankfort, capital of Franklin co., Ky., and also of the state, is 22 ms. W. N. W. of Lexington, 54 ms. E. of Louisville, 102 ms. S. S. W. of Cincinnati, 542 ms. W. by S. from W. In  $38^{\circ} 14' N.$  lat., and  $84^{\circ} 40' W.$  long. Situated on the E. side of Kentucky R., 60 ms. above its entrance into Ohio R., on a semicircular alluvial plain, from 150 to 200 ft. lower than the table-land in the rear.

† Louisville city, port of entry, and cap. of Jefferson co., Ky., 54 ms. W. of Frankfort, 596 ms. from W. Situated on the S. side of Ohio R., at the head of the rapids, in  $38^{\circ} 8' N.$  lat., and  $85^{\circ} 26' W.$  long., 120 ms. below Cincinnati.

‡ Maysville city, Mason co., Ky., 81 ms. N. E. of Frankfort, 461 ms. from W. It is situated on the S. side of Ohio R., on a narrow bottom between the R. and the high hills which rise in its rear.

§ Covington city, Kenton co., Ky., 85 ms. N. by E. of Frankfort, 493 ms. from W. It is situated on the Ohio R., at the mouth of Licking cr., on its

Q. What is the population of each of these towns?

A. Frankfort, 2000; Louisville, 21,000; Maysville, 2750; Covington, 2000. (M. A.)

Q. Of Lexington?

A. 7000. (M. A.)

Q. Which is the most northern county?

A. Boone.

Q. Eastern?

A. Floyd.

Q. Western?

A. Hickman.

KENTUCKY, one of the Western States, is bounded N. by Oo., Ia., and Ill., from which it is separated by the Ohio River; E. by Va.; S. by Tenn.; and W. by the Mississippi R. which separates it from Mo. It is between  $36^{\circ} 30'$  and  $39^{\circ} 10'$  N. lat., and between  $81^{\circ} 50'$  and  $89^{\circ} 20'$  W. long., and between  $5^{\circ}$  and  $10^{\circ}$  W. long. from W. Its greatest length is about 400 ms., and breadth 170 ms., containing 40,000 sq. ms., or 25,600,000 acres. The population in 1790, was 73,677; in 1800, 220,959; in 1810, 406,511; in 1820, 564,317; in 1830, 688,844; in 1840, 779,828, of which 182,258 were slaves. Of the free population, 305,323 were white males; 284,930 do. females; 3761 were coloured males; 3556 do. females. Employed in agriculture, 197,738; in commerce, 3448; in manufactures and trades, 23,217; navigating the ocean, 44; canals, lakes, and rivers, 968; in mining, 331; learned professions, 2487.

There are 90 counties in this state, which, with their pop. in 1840, and their caps., were as follow: ADAIR, 8466, Columbia; ALLEN, 7329, Scottsville; ANDERSON, 5452, Lawrenceburg; BARREN, 17,288, Glasgow; BATH, 9763, Owingsville; BOONE, 10,034, Burlington; BOURBON, 14,478, Paris; BREATHITT, 2195, Breathitt; BRACKEN, 7053, Augusta; BRECKENRIDGE, 8944, Hardinsburg; BULLITT, 6334, Shepherdsville; BUTLER, 3898, Morgantown; CALDWELL, 10,365, Princeton; CALLOWAY, 9794, Wadesborough; CAMPBELL, 5214, Newport; CARROLL, 3966, Carrollton; CARTER, 2905, Grayson; CASEY, 4939, Liberty; CHRISTIAN, 15,587, Hopkinsville; CLARKE, 10,802, Winchester; CLAY, 4607, Manchester; CLINTON, 3863, Albany; CUMBERLAND, 6090, Burkesville; DAVIESS, 8331, Owensborough; EDMONSON, 2914, Brownsville; ESTILL, 5535, Irvine; FAYETTE, 22,194, Lexington; FLEMING, 13,268, Flemingsburg; FLOYD, 6302, Prestonburg; FRANKLIN, 9420, Frankfort; GALLATIN, 4003, Warsaw; GARRARD, 10,480, Lancaster; GRANT, 4192, Williamstown; GRAVES, 7465, Mayfield; GRAYSON, 4461, Litchfield; GREENE, 14,212, Greensburg; GREENUP, 6297, Greenupsburg; HANCOCK, 2581, Hawesville; HARDIN, 16,357, Elizabethtown; HARLAN, 3015, Mt. Pleasant; HARRISON, 12,472, Cynthiana; HART, 7031, Mumfordsville; HENDERSON, 9548, Henderson; HENRY, 10,115, New Castle; HICKMAN, 8968, Clinton; HOPKINS, 9170, Madisonville; JEFFERSON, 36,346, Louisville; JESSAMINE, 9391, Nicholasville; KENTON, 7816,

---

W. side, directly opposite to Cincinnati, of which, from the arrangement of the streets, it appears like a continuation. Newport lies on the opposite side of the Licking.



Independence ; KNOX, 5722, Barbourville ; LAUREL, 3079, London ; LAWRENCE, 4730, Louisa ; LEWIS, 6306, Clarksburg ; LINCOLN, 10,187, Stanford ; LIVINGSTON, 9025, Smithland ; LOGAN, 13,615, Russellville ; MADISON, 16,355, Richmond ; MARION, 11,032, Lebanon ; MASON, 15,719, Maysville ; McCracken, 4745, Paducah ; MEADE, 5786, Brandenburg ; MERCER, 18,720, Harrodsburg ; MONROE, 6526, Tompkinsville ; MONTGOMERY, 9332, Mount Sterling ; MORGAN, 4603, West Liberty ; MUHLENBURG, 6964, Greenville ; NELSON, 13,637, Bardstown ; NICHOLAS, 8745, Carlisle ; OHIO, 6592, Hartford ; OLDDHAM, 7380, La Grange ; OWEN, 8232, Owenton ; PENDLETON, 4455, Falmouth ; PERRY, 3089, Hazard ; PIKE, 3567, Pikeville ; PULASKI, 9620, Somerset ; ROCKCASTLE, 3409, Mount Vernon ; RUSSELL, 4238, Jamestown ; SCOTT, 13,668, Georgetown ; SHELBY, 17,768, Shelbyville ; SIMPSON, 6537, Franklin ; SPENCER, 6581, Taylorsville ; TODD, 9991, Elkton ; TRIGG, 7716, Cadiz ; TRIMBLE, 4480, Bedford ; UNION, 6673, Morganfield ; WARREN, 15,446, Bowling Green ; WASHINGTON, 10,596, Springfield ; WAYNE, 7399, Monticello ; WHITLEY, 4673, Williamsburg ; WOODFORD, 11,740, Versailles.

Frankfort, on the E. bank of the Kentucky R., 60 ms. above its entrance into the Ohio, is the seat of government.

## TENNESSEE.

### *Page 164.—Lesson 118.—Map No. 12.*

Q. What state bounds Tennessee on the north ?

A. Ky.

Q. On the south ?

A. Miss., Ala., and Ga.

Q. East ?

A. N. C.

Q. West ?

A. Ark.

Q. What river separates this state from Arkansas ?

A. Mississippi.

Q. Which are the two principal rivers ?

A. Tennessee and Cumberland.

Q. Name the head branches of the Tennessee.

A. Powell's, Clinch, Holston, and French Broad.

Q. Tell how long all these rivers are.

A. Mississippi is 4100 ms. ; Tennessee, 900 ; Cumberland, 600 ; Powell's, 150 ; Clinch, 250 ; Holston, 300 ; French Broad, 176. (M. A.)

Q. How many miles from the sea do steamboats navigate the Hatchee, Cumberland, and Holston Rivers ?

A. Hatchee, 1050 ; Cumberland, 1500 ; Holston, 2000. (M. A.)

Q. To what towns do they ascend ?

A. They ascend the Hatchee R. to Bolivar ; the Cumberland to Carthage ; and the Holston to Knoxville. (M. A.)



*Q.* What mountains separate Tennessee from North Carolina?

*A.* Alleghany.

The Alleghany mountains in this part, are distinguished by the local names of Stone Mt., Smoky Mt., &c. (M. G. p. 164.)

*Q.* What mountains between the Tennessee and Cumberland Rivers?

*A.* Cumberland.

*Q.* How high are they?

*A.* 2000 ft. (M. A.)

*Q.* What is the population of Nashville?

*A.* 7000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Memphis?

*A.* 5000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Knoxville?

*A.* 2000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Columbia?

*A.* 1500. (M. A.)

*Q.* In what counties are each of these towns?

*A.* Nashville is in Davidson; Memphis in Shelby; Knoxville in Knox; Columbia in Maury.

TENNESSEE, one of the Western States, is bounded N. by Ky.; E. by N. C.; S. by Ga., Ala., and Miss.; and W. by the Mississippi River, which separates it from Ark. and Mo. It lies between  $35^{\circ}$  and  $36^{\circ} 30'$  N. lat., and between  $81^{\circ} 30'$  and  $90^{\circ} 10'$  W. long., and between  $4^{\circ} 39'$  and  $13^{\circ} 14'$  W. from W. It is at its mean length 400 miles, and its mean breadth 114 miles, containing 45,000 sq. ms., or 28,800,000 acres. The population in 1790, was 35,691; in 1800, 105,602; in 1810, 261,727; in 1820, 422,813; in 1830, 681,904; in 1840, 829,210; of which 183,059 were slaves. Of the free population, 325,434 were white males; 315,193 do. females; 2796 free coloured males; 2728 do. females. Employed in agriculture, 227,739; in commerce, 2217; in manufactures and trades, 17,815; navigating the ocean, rivers, &c., 302; learned professions, 2042.

This state is divided into 72 counties, which, with their population in 1840, and their capitals, were as follow: *Eastern District.*—ANDERSON, 5688, Clinton; BLEDSOE, 5676, Pikeville; BLOUNT, 11,745, Marysville; BRADLEY, 7385, Cleveland; CAMPBELL, 6149, Jacksborough; CARTER, 5372, Elizabethtown; CLAIBORNE, 9474, Tazewell; COCKE, 6992, Newport; GRAINGER, 10,572, Rutledge; GREENE, 16,076, Greenville; HAMILTON, 8175, Dallas; HAWKINS, 15,038, Rogersville; JEFFERSON, 12,076, Dandridge; JOHNSON, 2658, Taylorsville; KNOX, 15,485, Knoxville; MARION, 6070, Jasper; McMINN, 12,719, Athens; MEIGS, 4794, Decatur; MONROE, 12,056, Madisonville; MORGAN, 2660, Montgomery; POLK, 3570, Bentonville; RHEA, 3985, Washington; ROANE, 10,948, Kingston; SEVIER, 6442, Sevierville; SULLIVAN, 10,736, Blountville; WASHINGTON, 11,751, Jonesborough. *Middle District.*—BEDFORD, 20,546, Shelbyville; CANNON, 7193, Woodbury; COFFEE, 8184, Manchester; DAVIDSON, 30,509, Nashville; DE KALB, 5868, Smithville; DICKSON, 7074, Charlotte; FENTRESS, 3550, Jamestown; FRANKLIN, 12,033, Winchester; GILES, 21,494, Pulaski; HICKMAN, 8618, Centreville; HUMPHREYS, 5195, Reynoldsburg;

JACKSON, 12,872, Gamesborough; LAWRENCE, 7121, Lawrenceburg; LINCOLN, 21,493, Fayetteville; MARSHALL, 14,555, Lewisburg; MAURY, 28,186, Columbia; MONTGOMERY, 16,927, Clarksville; OVERTON, 9279, Monroe; ROBERTSON, 13,801, Springfield; RUTHERFORD, 24,280, Murfreesborough; SMITH, 21,179, Carthage; SUMNER, 22,445, Gallatin; STEWART, 8587, Dover; WARREN, 10,803, McMinnville; WAYNE, 7705, Waynesborough; WHITE, 10,747, Sparta; WILLIAMSON, 27,006, Franklin; WILSON, 24,460, Lebanon. *Western District*.—BENTON, 4772, Camden; CARROLL, 12,362, Huntingdon; DYER, 4484, Dyersburg; FAYETTE, 21,501, Somerville; GIBSON, 13,689, Trenton; HARDIMAN, 14,563, Bolivar; HARDIN, 8245, Savannah; HAYWOOD, 13,870, Brownsville; HENDERSON, 11,875, Lexington; HENRY, 14,906, Paris; LAUDERDALE, 3435, Ripley; MADISON, 16,530, Jackson; MCNAIRY, 9385, Purdy; OBION, 4814, Troy; PERRY, 7419, Perryville; SHELBY, 14,721, Raleigh; TIPTON, 6800, Covington; WEAKLEY, 9870, Dresden.

Nashville, on the S. bank of Cumberland River, 200 ms. from its mouth, and 684 S. W. by W. from Washington city, is the seat of government.

---

## MICHIGAN.

*Pages 165-6.—Lesson 119.—Maps No. 5 and 14.*

*Map No. 5.—Q.* What lake bounds Michigan on the north?

*A.* Superior.

*Q.* On the east?

*A.* Huron.

*Q.* West?

*A.* Michigan.

*Q.* What states on the south?

*A.* Ia. and Oo.

*Q.* What rivers separate Michigan from Wisconsin?

*A.* Montreal and Menomonic.

*Q.* What country east of Michigan?

*A.* Canada West.

*Q.* What territory on the west?

*A.* Wisconsin.

*Q.* Where is Mackinaw?

*A.* It is on the S. E. extremity of an island at the entrance to Lake Michigan, in the Straits of Michillimackinac, or Mackinaw, 300 ms. N. N. W. of Detroit; 821 from W.

*Q.* Fort Brady?

*A.* It is situated on the S. side of the rapids of St. Mary's Strait, a little below Lake Superior, 400 ms. N. of Detroit; 921 ms. from W.

*Map No. 14.—Q.* What lake lies between Lakes Huron and Erie?

*A.* St. Clair.

Q. What river unites it to Lake Huron?

A. St. Clair.

Q. Which to Lake Erie?

A. Detroit.

Q. What is the population of Detroit?

A. 9000. (M. A.)

Q. Monroe?

A. 1750. (M. A.)

Q. Niles?

A. 1500. (M. A.)

Q. To what place on the St. Joseph's River do steamboats ascend?

A. To Niles. (M. A.)

Q. How far from the sea is it?

A. 2000 ms. (M. A.)

Q. On what river is Grand Haven?\*

A. On the Grand.

Q. Palmer?†

A. On St. Clair.

Q. Saginaw?‡

A. On the Saginaw. (*Called Shiawassee in its upper course.* M. A.)

MICHIGAN, one of the Western States, consists of two peninsulas; the principal of which, or Mich. proper, is bounded N. by the Straits of Michilimackinac, which connect Lake Michigan to Lake Huron; E. by Lake Huron, St. Clair River, Lake St. Clair, Detroit River, and Lake Erie, which separate it from Canada West; S. by Oo. and Ia.; and W. by Lake Michigan. This main portion of the state is 288 miles long, and, at a medium, 190 miles broad, containing 36,000 sq. ms., or 23,040,000 acres. The northern or upper peninsula lies N. W. of the former: it is bounded N. by Lake Superior; E. by St. Mary's River; S. by Lake Michigan, Green Bay, and Menomonee River; and W. by Montreal River, which enters Lake Superior. This portion of the state is about 320 miles long, and from 30 to 160 broad, containing about 24,000 sq. ms.; making the whole territory of the state about 60,000 sq. ms. To this should be added 36,324 sq. ms. of water surface. It lies between 41° 30' and 47° 20' N. lat., and between 82° 25' and 90° 30' W. long., and between 5° 23' and 13° 32' W. long.

---

\* Grand Haven, cap. of Ottawa co., Mich., 213 ms. W. by N. from Detroit, 694 ms. from W. It is situated on the S. bank of Grand R., one-fourth of a mile from its entrance into Lake Michigan, between which and the lake are sand-hills.

† Palmer, cap. of St. Clair co., Mich., 48 ms. N. E. from Detroit, 572 ms. from W. It is bounded E. by St. Clair Strait, or R., and is more generally called St. Clair.

‡ Saginaw, cap. of Saginaw co., Mich., 97 ms. N. by W. from Detroit, 621 ms. from W. The village is situated on the W. bank of Saginaw R., 23 ms. from its mouth.

from W. In 1810, the population was 4528 ; in 1820, 9048 ; in 1830, 31,639 ; in 1840, 212,267. Of these, 113,395 were white males ; 98,165 do. females ; 393 coloured males ; 314 do. females. Employed in agriculture, 56,521 ; in commerce, 728 ; in manufactures and trades, 6890 ; navigating the ocean, 24 ; do. canals, lakes, and rivers, 166 ; mining, 40 ; learned professions, 904.

There were in 1840, 32 organized counties, which, with their population and capitals, were as follow: ALLEGAN, 1783, Allegan ; BARRY, 1078, Hastings ; BERRIEN, 5011, St. Joseph ; BRANCH, 5715, Branch ; CALHOUN, 10,599, Marshall ; CASS, 5710, Cassopolis ; CHIPPEWA, 534, Sault St. Mary ; CLINTON, 1614, De Witt ; EATON, 2379, Charlotte ; GENESEE, 4268, Flint ; HILLSDALE, 7240, Jonesville ; INGHAM, 2498, Vevay ; IONIA, 1923, Ionia ; JACKSON, 13,130, Jackson ; KALAMAZOO, 7380, Kalamazoo ; KENT, 2587, Grand Rapids ; LAPEER, 4265, Lapeer ; LENAWEE, 17,889, Adrian ; LIVINGSTON, 7430, Howell ; MACOMB, 9716, Mt. Clemens ; MICHILIMACKINAC, 923, Mackinac ; MONROE, 9922, Monroe ; OAKLAND, 23,646, Pontiac ; OCEANA, 496, Oceana C. H. ; OTTAWA, 208, Grand Haven ; SAGINAW, 892, Saginaw ; ST. CLAIR, 4606, St. Clair ; ST. JOSEPH, 7068, Centreville ; SHIAWASSEE, 2103, Corunna ; VAN BUREN, 1910, Pawpaw ; WASHTENAW, 23,571, Ann Arbor ; WAYNE, 24,173, Detroit.

There are a number of new counties unorganized. Detroit, situated on the W. side of the Detroit R., and 524 ms. N. W. from Washington city, is the seat of government.

## INDIANA.

*Page 167.—Lesson 120.—Map No. 14.*

Q. What state on the north ?

A. Mich.

Q. On the south ?

A. Ky.

Q. East ?

A. Oo.

Q. West ?

A. Il.

Q. Which river on the south ?

A. Ohio.

Q. On the west ?

A. Wabash.

Q. What river flows into Lake Erie ?

A. Maumee.

Q. What rivers flow into the Wabash ?

A. Eel, Salamanie, Mississineway, Tippecanoe, and White.

Q. How long are the foregoing rivers ?

A. Eel is 88 ms. ; Salamanie, 100 ; Mississineway, 100 ; Tippecanoe, 150 ; White, 300. (M. A.)

Q. How far from the sea do steamboats navigate the Wabash ?

A. 1620 ms. (M. A.)

Q. East fork of White River?

A. 1580 ms. (M. A.)

Q. What is the population of New Albany?

A. 4250. (M. A.)

Q. Madison?

A. 3750. (M. A.)

Q. Rushville?

A. 2000. (M. A.)

Q. Indianapolis?

A. 2500. (M. A.)

Q. Vincennes?

A. 2000. (M. A.)

Q. Terre Haute?

A. 2000 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Lafayette?

A. 1500. (M. A.)

Q. Logansport?

A. 1500. (M. A.)

Q. In what counties are all these towns?

A. New Albany is in Floyd; Madison, in Jefferson; Rushville, in Rush; Indianapolis, in Marion; Vincennes, in Knox; Terre Haute, in Vigo; Lafayette, in Tippecanoe; Logansport, in Cass.

Q. When was the battle of Tippecanoe fought?

A. In 1811. (M. A.)

Q. On what rivers are the chief towns?

A. Indianapolis is on White R.; \* Lawrenceburg, on the Ohio; † Madison, on the Ohio; ‡ Jeffersonville, on the Ohio; § New Albany,

\* Indianapolis, near the centre of Indiana, is the cap. of Marion co., and also of the state. Lat.  $39^{\circ} 55'$  N., long.  $85^{\circ} 5'$  W., 571 miles W. by N. from Washington City. It is situated in Centre township, on the E. side of White R., which is navigable to this place for small steamboats in time of high water. The national road passes through the town; and the most important roads in the state centre in it.

† Lawrenceburg, cap. of Dearborn co., Ia., 86 ms. S. from Indianapolis, 514 ms. from W. Situated on the N. bank of the Ohio R., 1 m. below the entrance of the Great Miami R., and at the entrance of the Whitewater canal into the Ohio R.

‡ Madison, city, and cap. of Jefferson co., Ia., 88 ms. S. S. E. from Indianapolis, 560 ms. from W. Situated on the N. shore of the Ohio R., at an elevation which secures it from the highest floods.

§ Jeffersonville, Clark co., Ia., 117 ms. S. by E. from Indianapolis, 597 ms. from W. It is situated on a high bank, on N. side of the Ohio R., opposite Louisville, Ky., and just above the rapids of the Ohio.



on the Ohio;\* New Harmony, on the Wabash;† Vincennes, on the Wabash;‡ Terre Haute, on the Wabash;§ Lafayette, on the Wabash;|| Logansport, on the Wabash.¶

INDIANA, one of the Western States, is bounded N. by Michigan Lake and state; E. by Oo.; S. by Ky., from which it is separated by the Ohio R.; and W. by Ill. It is between  $37^{\circ} 45'$  and  $41^{\circ} 52'$  N. lat., and between  $84^{\circ} 42'$  and  $87^{\circ} 49'$  W. long., and between  $7^{\circ} 45'$  and  $11^{\circ}$  W. long. from W. It has a mean length of 260 ms., and a mean breadth of 140 ms., containing 36,000 sq. ms., or 23,040,000 acres. The pop. in 1800 was 5641; in 1810, 24,520; in 1820, 147,178; in 1830, 341,582; in 1840, 685,866. White males, 352,773; do. females, 325,925; coloured males, 3731; do. females, 3434. Employed in agriculture, 148,806; in commerce, 3076; in manufactures and trades, 20,590; in mining, 233; navigating the ocean, 89; do. canals, rivers, and lakes, 677; learned professions, 2257.

There are in this state 87 counties, which, with their population in 1840, and their capitals, were as follow: ADAMS, 2264, Decatur; ALLEN, 5942, Fort Wayne; BLACKFORD, 1226, Hartford; BARTHOLOMEW, 10,042, Columbus; BOONE, 8121, Lebanon; BROWN, 2364, Nashville; CARROLL, 7819, Delphi; CASS, 5480, Logansport; CLARK, 14,595, Charlestown; CLAY, 5567, Bowling Green; CLINTON, 7508, Frankfort; CRAWFORD,

\* New Albany, city, and cap. of Floyd co., Ia., 121 ms. S. by E. from Indianapolis, 600 ms. from W. Situated on the N. bank of the Ohio R., 2 ms. below the foot of the falls, where the Ohio descends 32 ft. in one mile.

† New Harmony, Posey co., Ia., is situated on the E. bank of Wabash R., 172 ms. S. W. from Indianapolis, 742 ms. from W. It was founded in 1814, by a society of Germans, from Swabia, called "Harmonists," who removed from Butler co., Pa., under their minister George Rapp. Their society was founded on the principle of a community of goods; but the climate proving unfavourable, they returned to Pa., and settled at Economy, Ohio township, Beaver co., 18 ms. below Pittsburg, on the Ohio R.

‡ Vincennes, cap. of Knox co., Ia., 118 ms. S. W. from Indianapolis, 688 ms. from W. Situated on the E. bank of Wabash R., 100 ms. above its entrance into the Ohio, with a fine prairie of several thousand acres, on the N. E. and S. It is the oldest town in the state, having been established by the French in 1730 as a trading post.

§ Terre Haute, cap. of Vigo co., Ia., 73 ms. W. from Indianapolis, 644 ms. from W. Pleasantly situated on elevated ground, on the E. bank of Wabash R. The national road crosses the river here on a fine bridge.

|| Lafayette, cap. of Tippecanoe co., Ia., 70 ms. N. W. from Indianapolis, 628 ms. from W. It is situated on the E. side of Wabash R., 10 ms. below the mouth of the Tippecanoe R., at the head of steamboat navigation of the Wabash.

¶ Logansport, capital of Cass co., Ia., 72 ms. N. from Indianapolis, 610 ms. from W. It is situated on Wabash R., at the junction of Eel R., at the head of steamboat navigation on the Wabash, and at the junction of the Wabash and Erie canal. There are two fine bridges here, one crossing the Wabash, and the other across Eel R.

5282, Fredonia ; DAVIESS, 6720, Washington ; DEARBORN, 19,327, Lawrenceburg ; DECATUR, 12,171, Greensburg ; DE KALB, 1968, Auburn ; DELAWARE, 8843, Muncytown ; DUBOIS, 3632, Jasper ; ELKHART, 6660, Goshen ; FAYETTE, 9837, Connersville ; FLOYD, 9454, New Albany ; FOUNTAIN, 11,218, Covington ; FRANKLIN, 13,349, Brookville ; FULTON, 1993, Rochester ; GIBSON, 8977, Princeton ; GRANT, 4875, Marion ; GREENE, 8321, Bloomfield ; HAMILTON, 9855, Noblesville ; HANCOCK, 7535, Greenfield ; HARRISON, 12,459, Corydon ; HENDRICKS, 11,264, Danville ; HENRY, 15,128, New Castle ; HUNTINGTON, 1579, Huntington ; JACKSON, 8961, Brownston ; JASPER, 1267, Rensselaer ; JAY, 3863, Portland ; JEFFERSON, 16,614, Madison ; JENNINGS, 8829, Vernon ; JOHNSON, 9352, Franklin ; KNOX, 10,657, Vincennes ; KOSCIUSKO, 4170, Warsaw ; LA GRANGE, 3664, Lima ; LAKE, 1468, Crown Point ; LA PORTE, 8184, La Porte ; LAWRENCE, 11,782, Bedford ; MADISON, 8874, Andersonstown ; MARSHALL, 1651, Plymouth ; MARION, 16,080, Indianapolis ; MARTIN, 3875, Mt. Pleasant ; MIAMI, 3048, Peru ; MONROE, 10,143, Bloomington ; MONTGOMERY, 14,438, Crawfordsville ; MORGAN, 10,741, Martinsville ; NOBLE, 2702, Augusta ; ORANGE, 9602, Paoli ; OWEN, 8359, Spencer ; PARKE, 13,499, Rockville ; PERRY, 4655, Rome ; PIKE, 4769, Petersburg ; PORTER, 2162, Valparaiso ; POSEY, 9683, Mt. Vernon ; PULASKI, 561, Winnimac ; PUTNAM, 16,843, Green Castle ; RANDOLPH, 10,684, Winchester ; RIPLEY, 10,392, Versailles ; RUSH, 16,456, Rushville ; SCOTT, 4242, Lexington ; SHELBY, 12,005, Shelbyville ; SPENCER, 6305, Rockport ; ST. JOSEPH, 6425, South Bend ; STARK, 149, Stark C. H. ; STEUBEN, 2578, Angola ; SULLIVAN, 8315, Benton ; SWITZERLAND, 9920, Vevay ; TIPPECANOE, 13,724, Lafayette ; UNION, 8117, Liberty ; VANDERBURG, 6250, Evansville ; VERMILION, 8274, Newport ; VIGO, 12,076, Terre Haute ; WABASH, 2756, Wabash ; WARREN, 5656, Williamsport ; WARWICK, 6321, Booneville ; WASHINGTON, 15,269, Salem ; WAYNE, 23,290, Centreville ; WELLS, 1822, Bluffton ; WHITE, 1832, Monticello ; WHITLEY, 1237, Columbia.

Indianapolis, near the centre of the state, on the E. side of White R., is the seat of government.

## ILLINOIS.

*Pages 168-9.—Lesson 121.—Map No. 14.*

Q. What bounds Illinois on the north ?

A. Wis.

Q. On the south ?

A. Ky.

Q. East ?

A. Ia.

Q. West ?

A. Mo. and Io.

Q. What river on the west ?

A. Mississippi.

Q. On the south ?

A. Ohio.

Q. On the east?

A. Wabash.

Q. What rivers flow into the Mississippi?

A. Rock, Illinois, and Kaskaskia.

Q. What rivers into the Illinois?

A. Kankakee, Des Plaines, Fox, Vermillion, Mackinaw, Spoon, and Sangamon.

Q. What rivers flow into the Wabash?

A. Big Vermillion, Embarras, and Little Wabash.

Q. How long is each of the foregoing rivers?

A. Mississippi, 4100; Ohio, 1300; Wabash, 500; Rock, 300; Illinois, 500; Kaskaskia, 300; Kankakee, 150; Des Plaines, 125; Fox, 200; Vermillion, 75; Mackinaw, 100; Spoon, 150; Sangamon, 200; Big Vermillion, 75; Embarras, 200; Little Wabash, 150. (M. A.)

Q. What lake on the north-east?

A. Michigan.

Q. How many inhabitants has Chicago?

A. 4500. (M. A.)

Q. Galena?

A. 1750. (M. A.)

Q. Peoria?

A. 1500. (M. A.)

Q. Quincy?

A. 2250. (M. A.)

Q. Springfield?

A. 2500. (M. A.)

Q. Jacksonville?

A. 2000. (M. A.)

Q. Alton?

A. 2250. (M. A.)

Q. In what counties are these towns?

A. Chicago is in Cook; Galena, in Jo Daviess; Peoria, in Peoria; Quincy, in Adams; Springfield, in Sangamon; Jacksonville, in Morgan; Alton, in Madison.

Q. How far from the sea do steamboats ascend the Illinois?

A. 1600 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Rock?

A. 1800 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Sangamon?

A. 1456 ms. (M. A.)

Q. On what lake is Chicago?

A. Michigan.

ILLINOIS, one of the Western States, is bounded N. by Wis.; E. by Lake Michigan and Ia.; S. by the Ohio River, which separates it from Ky.; and W. by Mo. and Io., from which it is separated by the Mississippi River. It

is between  $37^{\circ}$  and  $42^{\circ} 30'$  N. lat., and between  $87^{\circ} 17'$  and  $91^{\circ} 50'$  W. long., and between  $10^{\circ} 20'$  and  $14^{\circ} 21'$  W. long. from W. It is 350 ms. long by 180 broad, containing 50,000 sq. ms., or 32,000,000 acres. The population in 1810, was 12,282; in 1820, 55,211; in 1830, 157,575; in 1840, 476,183; of which, 255,235 were white males; 217,019 do. females; 1876 were coloured males; 1722 do. females. Employed in agriculture, 105,337; in commerce, 2506; in manufactures and trades, 13,185; in mining, 782; navigating the ocean, 63; do. lakes, rivers, and canals, 310; learned professions, 2021.

This state is divided into 87 counties, which, with their population in 1840, and their capitals, were as follow: ADAMS, 14,476, Quincy; ALEXANDER, 3313, Unity; BOND, 5060, Greenville; BOONE, 1705, Belvidere; BROWN, 4183, Mount Sterling; BUREAU, 3067, Princeton; CALHOUN, 1741, Gilead; CARROLL, 1023, Savannah; CASS, 2981, Virginia; CHAMPAIGN, 1457, Urbana; CHRISTIAN, 1878, Edinburg; CLARKE, 7453, Marshall; CLAY, 3228, Lewisville; CLINTON, 3718, Carlyle; COLES, 9616, Charleston; COOK, 10,201, Chicago; CRAWFORD, 4422, Palestine; DE KALB, 1697, Sycamore; DE WITT, 3247, Clinton; DU PAGE, 3535, Napierville; EDGAR, 8225, Paris; EDWARDS, 3070, Albion; EFFINGHAM, 1675, Ewington; FAYETTE, 6328, Vandalia; FRANKLIN, 3682, Benton; FULTON, 13,142, Lewiston; GALLATIN, 10,760, Equality; GREENE, 11,951, Carrollton; HAMILTON, 3945, McLeansboro'; HANCOCK, 9946, Carthage; HARDIN, 1378, Elizabethtown; HENRY, 1260, Morristown; IROQUOIS, 1695, Montgomery; JACKSON, 3566, Brownsville; JASPER, 1472, Newton; JEFFERSON, 5762, Mt. Vernon; JERSEY, 4535, Jerseyville; JO DAVIESS, 6180, Galena; JOHNSON, 3626, Vienna; KANE, 6501, Geneva; KNOX, 7060, Knoxville; LAKE, 2634, Little Fort; LA SALLE, 9348, Ottawa; LAWRENCE, 7092, Lawrenceville; LEE, 2035, Dixon; LIVINGSTON, 759, Pontiac; LOGAN, 2333, Postville; MACON, 3039, Decatur; MACOUPIN, 7826, Carlinville; MADISON, 14,433, Edwardsville; MARION, 4742, Salem; MARSHALL, 1849, Lacon; McDONOUGH, 5308, Macomb; MCHENRY, 2578, McHenry; McLEAN, 6565, Bloomington; MENARD, 4431, Petersburg; MERCER, 2352, Millersburg; MONROE, 4481, Waterloo; MONTGOMERY, 4490, Hillsboro'; MORGAN, 19,547, Jacksonville; OGLE, 3479, Oregon City; PEORIA, 6153, Peoria; PERRY, 3222, Pinckneyville; PIKE, 11,728, Pittsfield; POPE, 4094, Golconda; PUTNAM, 2131, Hennepin; RANDOLPH, 7944, Kaskaskia; ROCK ISLAND, 2610, Rock Island; SANGAMON, 14,716, Springfield; SCHUYLER, 6972, Rushville; SCOTT, 6215, Winchester; SHELBY, 6659, Shelbyville; STARK, 1573, Toulon; STEPHENSON, 2800, Freeport; ST. CLAIR, 13,631, Belleville; TAZEVELL, 7221, Tremont; UNION, 5524, Jonesboro'; VERMILLION, 9303, Danville; WABASH, 4240, Mt. Carmel; WARREN, 6739, Monmouth; WASHINGTON, 4810, Nashville; WAYNE, 5133, Fairfield; WHITE, 7919, Carmi; WHITESIDE, 2514, Sterling; WILL, 10,167, Juliet; WILLIAMSON, 4457, Bainbridge; WINNEBAGO, 4609, Rockford.

Springfield, near the centre of the state, is the seat of government.

In the year 1778, the legislature of Virginia organized the county of Illinois, which was afterwards ceded to the U.S. In 1800, what is now the state of Illinois, contained about 3000 inhabitants; 12 years afterwards it was formed into a territory, and was for the first time represented in the U. S. Congress. In 1818, a state constitution was adopted, and Illinois was admitted into the Union, as the 22d state.



## MISSOURI.

*Page 170.—Lesson 122.—Map No. 14.*

- Q. What territory on the north ?  
 A. Io.  
 Q. On the west ?  
 A. Indian Ter.  
 Q. What states on the east ?  
 A. Ill. and Ky.  
 Q. South ?  
 A. Ark.  
 Q. What river on the east ?  
 A. Mississippi.  
 Q. On the west, and in the centre ?  
 A. Missouri.  
 Q. What rivers flow into the Missouri ?  
 A. Little Platte, Grand, Chariton, Osage, and Gasconade.  
 Q. Into the Mississippi ?  
 A. Salt, Missouri, and Maramec.  
 Q. What rivers flow into Arkansas ?  
 A. Whitewater, Big Black, Current, and White.  
 Q. What mountains in the south-west ?  
 A. Ozark.  
 Q. How high are they ?  
 A. 2000 ft. (M. A.)  
 Q. What mines in Washington county ?  
 A. Lead.  
 Q. What mountains ?  
 A. Iron Mt., and Pilot Knob.  
 Q. How many inhabitants has St. Louis ?  
 A. 16,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. St. Charles ?  
 A. 2750. (M. A.)  
 Q. Palmyra ?  
 A. 2000.  
 Q. In what counties are these towns ?  
 A. St. Louis is in St. Louis ; St. Charles, in St. Charles ; Palmyra, in Marion.  
 Q. In which county is Jefferson City ?  
 A. Cole.  
 Q. Boonville ?  
 A. Cooper.  
 Q. Lexington ?  
 A. La Fayette.  
 Q. Liberty ?  
 A. Clay.



**Q.** On what rivers are the other principal towns ?

**A.** St. Louis is on the Mississippi ;\* St. Charles, on the Missouri ;† Jefferson City, on the Missouri ;‡ Franklin, on the Missouri ;§ Boonville, on the Missouri.||

MISSOURI, one of the Western States, is bounded N. by Io. ; E. by Ill., Ky., and Tenn., from which it is separated by the Mississippi River ; S. by Arkansas ; and W. by the Indian Territory. It is between  $36^{\circ}$  and  $40^{\circ}$   $36'$  N. lat., and between  $89^{\circ}$  and  $95^{\circ}$   $30'$  W. long., and between  $12^{\circ}$   $17'$  and  $17^{\circ}$   $28'$  W. long. from W. It is 287 ms. long, and 230 ms. broad, containing 64,000 sq. ms., or 40,960,000 acres. The pop. in 1810, was 19,833 ; in 1820, 66,586 ; in 1830, 140,074 ; in 1840, 383,702, of which 58,240 were slaves. Of the free pop., 173,470 were white males ; 150,418 do. females ; 883 were coloured males ; 691 do. females. Employed in agriculture, 92,408 ; in commerce, 2522 ; in manufactures and trades, 11,100 ; in mining, 742 ; navigating the ocean, 39 ; do. canals, rivers, &c., 1885 ; learned professions, 1469.

This State is divided into 62 counties, which, with their population in 1840, and their capitals, were as follow : AUDRAIN, 1949, Mexico ; BARRY, 4795, McDonald ; BENTON, 4205, Warsaw ; BOONE, 13,561, Columbia ; BUCHANAN, 6237, Sparta ; CALDWELL, 1458, Far West ; CALLAWAY, 11,765, Fulton ; CAPE GIRARDEAU, 9359, Jacks n ; CARROLL, 2433, Carrollton ; CHARITON, 4746, Keytesville ; CLARK, 2846, Waterloo ; CLAY, 8282, Liberty ; CLINTON, 2724, Plattsburg ; COLE, 9286, Jefferson City ; COOPER, 10,484, Booneville ; CRAWFORD, 3561, Steelville ; DAVIESS, 2736, Gallatin ; FRANKLIN, 7515, Union ; GASCONADE, 5330, Herman ; GREENE, 5372, Springfield ; HOWARD, 13,108, Fayette ; JACKSON, 7612, Independence ; JEFFERSON, 4296, Hillsboro' ; JOHNSON, 4471, Warrensburg ; LA FAYETTE, 6815, Lexington ; LEWIS, 6040, Monticello ; LINCOLN, 7449, Troy ; LINN, 2245, Linneus ; LIVINGSTON, 4325, Chillicothe ; MACON,

---

\* St. Louis, city, and cap. of St. Louis co., Mo., is the largest place in the state, and is situated on the W. bank of the Mississippi, 18 ms. by water below the junction of the Missouri. It is in  $38^{\circ}$   $36'$  N. lat., and  $89^{\circ}$   $53'$  W. long. from Greenwich, and  $13^{\circ}$   $14'$  W. long. from W. ; 30 ms. below the junction of the Illinois ; 200 ms. above that of the Ohio ; 1132 ms. by the course of the river, above New Orleans ; 1100 ms. below the Falls of St. Anthony ; 120 ms. E. from Jefferson City ; 808 ms. from W.

† St. Charles, cap. of St. Charles co., Mo., 20 ms. N. W. from St. Louis, 110 ms. E. from Jefferson City ; 828 ms. from W. It has an elevated and handsome situation, on the N. bank of the Missouri R., and is the first elevated land on the river above its mouth.

‡ Jefferson City, cap. of Cole co., and of the state of Mo., 936 ms. W. from Washington City. Situated on the S. bank of the Missouri R., on elevated and uneven ground.

§ Franklin, Howard co., Mo., 53 ms. N. W. from Jefferson City, 967 ms. from W. The village is pleasantly situated on the N. side of the Missouri R., at the mouth of Bonne Femme R.

|| Booneville, city, and cap. of Cooper co., Mo., 50 ms. N. W. from Jefferson City, 964 ms. from W. It is situated on the S. bank of Missouri R. Its foundation is limestone rock.

6034, Bloomington; MADISON, 3395, Fredericktown; MARION, 9623, Palmyra; MILLER, 2282, Tuscumbia; MONROE, 9505, Paris; MORGAN, 4407, Versailles; MONTGOMERY, 4371, Danville; NEW MADRID, 4554, New Madrid; NEWTON, 3790, Neosho; PERRY, 5760, Perryville; PETTIS, 2930, Georgetown; PLATTE, 8913, Platte City; PIKE, 10,646, Bowling Green; POLK, 8449, Bolivar; PULASKI, 6529, Waynesville; RALLS, 5670, New London; RANDOLPH, 7198, Huntsville; RAY, 6553, Richmond; RIPLEY, 2856, Van Buren; RIVES, (name changed to HENRY,) 4726, Clinton; ST. CHARLES, 7911, St. Charles; ST. FRANCIS, 3211, Farmington; ST. GENEVIEVE, 3148, St. Genevieve; ST. LOUIS, 35,979, St. Louis; SALINE, 5258, Marshall; SCOTT, 5974, Benton; SHELBY, 3056, Shelbyville; STODDARD, 3153, Bloomfield; TANEX, 3264, Forsyth; VAN BUREN, 4693, Harrisonville; WARREN, 4253, Warrenton; WASHINGTON, 7213, Potosi; WAYNE, 3403, Greenville. There have been several new counties erected since 1840.

Jefferson City, on the S. bank of the Missouri River, 15 ms. above the mouth of the Osage R., is the seat of government.

## ARKANSAS.

### *Page 171.—Lesson 123.—Map No. 12.*

- Q. What bounds Arkansas on the north?  
 A. Mo.  
 Q. On the south?  
 A. La.  
 Q. East?  
 A. Tenn. and Miss.  
 Q. West?  
 A. Indian Ter.  
 Q. What river separates Arkansas from Tenn. and Miss.?  
 A. Mississippi.  
 Q. What three rivers flow into the Mississippi?  
 A. Arkansas, White, and St. Francis.  
 Q. What are the two principal rivers that flow into Louisiana?  
 A. Red, and Washita.  
 Q. Tell the lengths of the foregoing rivers.  
 A. Mississippi, 4100; Arkansas, 2000; White, 600; St. Francis, 400; Red, 1200; Washita, 500. (M. A.)  
 Q. How far are the Arkansas, White, Washita, and Red rivers, navigable for steamboats from the sea?  
 A. Arkansas, 1400 ms.; White, 900; Washita, 700; Red, 800. (M. A.)  
 Q. Name the places where the navigation ends.  
 A. Fort Gibson, on the Arkansas; Batesville, on White; Camden, on Washita; Jonesboro', on Red. (M. A.)  
 Q. In what county is Little Rock?  
 A. Pulaski.

Q. Fort Smith?

A. Crawford.

Q. Fulton?

A. Hempstead.

Q. Fayetteville?

A. Washington.

Q. Batesville?

A. Independence.

Q. On what rivers are the chief towns?

A. Little Rock is on Arkansas R.; \* Lewisburg, on Arkansas; † Ozark, on Arkansas; ‡ Batesville, on White; § Greenock, on Mississippi; || Helena, on Mississippi; ¶ Columbia, on Mississippi,\*\* Fulton, on Red. †† These are the most important towns, but they are as yet mere villages.

ARKANSAS, one of the Western States, is bounded N. by Mo.; E. by the Mississippi R., which separates it from Tenn. and Miss.; S. by La.; and W. by the Indian Ter. It is between  $33^{\circ}$  and  $36^{\circ} 30'$  N. lat., and between  $89^{\circ} 30'$  and  $94^{\circ} 30'$  W. long., and between  $12^{\circ} 30'$  and  $17^{\circ} 30'$  W. long. from W. It is 240 ms. long, and 228 ms. wide, containing 55,000 sq. ms.; or 35,200,000 acres. The pop. in 1830 was 30,388; in 1840, 97,574, of which 19,935 were slaves. Of the free population, 42,211 were white males; 34,963 do. females; 248 were coloured males; 217 do. females. Employed in agriculture, 26,355; in commerce, 215; in manufactures and trades, 1173; navigating the ocean, 3; do. rivers, canals, &c., 39; learned professions, 301.

This state is divided into 40 counties, which, with their population in 1840, and their capitals, were as follow: ARKANSAS, 1346, Arkansas Post; BENTON, 2228, Bentonville; CARROLL, 2844, Carrollton; CHICOT, 3806, Columbia; CLARKE, 2309, Greenville; CONWAY, 2892, Lewisburg; CRAW-

\* Little Rock, city, and cap. of Pulaski co., and of the state of Ark., 1065 ms. from Washington city. Situated on the S. bank of Arkansas R., 300 ms. above its mouth by the course of the river.

† Lewisburg, cap. of Conway co., Ark., 45 ms. N. W. from Little Rock, 1110 ms. from W. Situated on the N. side of Arkansas R.

‡ Ozark, cap. of Franklin co., Ark., 121 ms. N. W. from Little Rock, 1186 ms. from W. Situated on the N. side of Arkansas R.

§ Batesville, post village, and cap. of Independence co., Ark., is situated on the N. side of White R., 90 ms. N. N. E. from Little Rock, 1036 ms. from W.

|| Greenock, post village, Crittenden co., Ark., 148 ms. N. E. from Little Rock, 933 ms. from W. It is situated on the W. bank of the Mississippi R.

¶ Helena, cap. of Philips co., Ark., 122 ms. E. from Little Rock, 1011 ms. from W. Situated on the W. bank of the Mississippi R.

\*\* Columbia, capital of Chicot co., Ark., 142 ms. S. E. from Little Rock, 1152 ms. from W. Situated on the W. side of the Mississippi R.

†† Fulton, Hempstead co., Ark., 126 ms. S. W. from Little Rock, 1191 ms. from W. Situated on the N. side of Red R.

FORD, 4266, Van Buren; CRITTENDEN, 1561, Marion; DESHA, 1598, Belleville; FRANKLIN, 2665, Ozark; GREENE, 1586, Gainesville; HEMPSTEAD, 4921, Washington; HOT SPRINGS, 1907, Hot Springs; INDEPENDENCE, 3669, Batesville; IZARD, 2244, Athens; JACKSON, 1540, Elizabeth; JEFFERSON, 2566, Pine Bluff; JOHNSON, 3433, Clarkesville; LAFAYETTE, 2200, Lewisville; LAWRENCE, 2835, Smithville; MADISON, 2775, Huntsville; MARION, 1325, Yellville; MISSISSIPPI, 1410, Osceola; MONROE, 936, Lawrenceville; PHILLIPS, 3547, Helena; PIKE, 969, Murfreesboro'; POINSETT, 1320, Bolivar; POPE, 2850, Dover; PULASKI, 5350, Little Rock; RANDOLPH, 2196, Pocahontas; ST. FRANCIS, 2499, Mount Vernon; SALINE, 2061, Benton; SCOTT, 1694, Booneville; SEARCY, 936, Lebanon; SEVIER, 2810, Paraclifta; UNION, 2889, Union C. H.; VAN BUREN, 1518, Clinton; WASHINGTON, 7148, Fayetteville; WHITE, 929, Searcy; several new counties have been organized since the year 1840.

Little Rock, on the S. bank of the Arkansas River, and not far from the centre of the state, is the seat of government.

---

## WISCONSIN.

*Page 172.—Lesson 124.—Maps No. 5 and 14.*

*Map No. 5.—Q.* What bounds Wisconsin on the north?

*A.* British America.

*Q.* South?

*A.* Ill.

*Q.* East?

*A.* Mich.

*Q.* West?

*A.* Io.

*Q.* What river forms nearly the whole of the western boundary?

*A.* Mississippi.

*Q.* What rivers flow into Lake Superior?

*A.* St. Louis, and Montreal.

*Q.* Into Green Bay?

*A.* Mennomonie.

*Q.* Into the Mississippi River?

*A.* Wisconsin, and Rum.

*Q.* What lakes in Wisconsin?

*A.* Red, Spirit, Pepin, and Winnebago.

*Q.* What lakes on the east?

*A.* Superior, and Michigan.

*Q.* What lakes form part of the north and eastern boundary?

*A.* Woods, Rainy, Superior, and Michigan.

*Q.* How far from the sea can steamboats ascend the Mississippi River?

*A.* 2200 ms. (M. A.)

*Map No. 14.—Q.* In what county is the capital?

*A.* Dane.



Q. Milwaukie?

A. Milwaukie.

Q. Cassville?

A. Grant.

Q. Prairie du Chien?

A. Crawford.

Q. How far from the sea do steamboats ascend the Wisconsin?

A. 1900 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Rock River?

A. 1800 ms. (M. A.)

WISCONSIN \* is bounded N. by the British possessions; N. E. by Montreal and Mennomonie Rivers, and a line connecting their sources, separating it from northern Mich.; E. by Lake Michigan, separating it from Mich. proper; S. by Ill.; and W. by Mississippi River, and a line due N. from its source, to the British possessions, separating it from Io. It is between 42° 30' and 49° 30' N. lat., and between 87° and 95° 54' W. long.; being 600 miles long and 150 broad. It contains probably 100,000 sq. ms., or 64,000,000 acres. It contained in 1840, 30,945 inhabitants: of these 18,757 were white males; 11,992 do. females; 101 were coloured males; 84 do. females. Employed in agriculture, 7047; in commerce, 479; in manufactures and trades, 1814; in mining, 794; navigating the ocean, rivers, lakes, &c., 223; learned professions, &c., 259.

It is divided into 22 counties, which, with their population in 1840, and their capitals, were as follow: BROWN, 2107, Green Bay; CALUMET, 275, Calumet; CRAWFORD, 1502, Prairie du Chien; DANE, 314, Madison; DODGE, 67, Dodge C. H.; FOND DU LAC, 139, Fond du Lac; GRANT, 3926, Lancaster; GREENE, 933, Monroe; IOWA, 3978, Mineral Point; JEFFERSON, 914, Jefferson; MANITOUWOC, 235, Manitouwoc; MARQUETTE, 18, Marquette; MILWAUKIE, 5605, Milwaukie; PORTAGE, 1623, Fort Winnebago; RACINE, 3475, Racine; ROCK, 1701, Rockport; ST. CROIX, 809, St. Croix C. H.; SAUK, 102, Prairie du Sac; SHEBOYGAN, 133, Sheboygan; WALWORTH, 2611, Elkhorn; WASHINGTON, 343, Washington; WINNEBAGO, 135, Oshkosh.

Madison, the seat of government, is in Dane co.: it is situated between the 3d and 4th lake of the chain called the Four Lakes, which discharge their waters into Rock R. It is 847 ms. N. W. by W. from Washington city, 90 W. of Milwaukie, on lake Michigan, and about the same distance N. E. of Galena.

\* In 1846, Congress passed an act providing for the admission of Wisconsin into the Union as a State, stipulating at the same time that, until another census is taken, it shall have two representatives in the National Legislature. It includes  $\frac{2}{3}$  the area of the late territory, and comprises about 62,000 sq. ms. The remainder is unorganized: it has an area of 35,000 sq. ms. The line which separates it from the State of Wisconsin, commences at the mouth of the St. Louis r. of L. Superior, extends thence up the channel of said stream to the first fall thereof, thence by a due S. line to the main branch of the St. Croix r., and thence down the channel of that river to the Mississippi. The country N. W. of this line is not much known: it is usually described as a cold, rugged region, and ill suited for settlement. Its most valuable product, at present, is white pine lumber, great quantities of which are annually rafted down the Mississippi river.



## I O W A .

*Page 174.—Lesson 125.—Maps No. 5 and 14.*

*Map No. 5.—Q.* What bounds Iowa on the north ?

*A.* British America.

*Q.* South ?

*A.* Mo.

*Q.* East ?

*A.* Wis., and Ill.

*Q.* West ?

*A.* Mo. Ter., and Indian Ter.

*Q.* What river forms the east boundary ?

*A.* Mississippi.

*Q.* The west ?

*A.* Missouri.

*Q.* What rivers flow north ?

*A.* Red, and Moose.

*Q.* Into the Missouri River ?

*A.* James, and Sioux.

*Q.* Which flows into the Mississippi ?

*A.* St. Peter's, Iowa, and Des Moines.

*Q.* How long are the Missouri, Mississippi, Red, St. Peter's, Iowa, and Des Moines Rivers ?

*A.* Missouri, 2900 ms.; Mississippi, 4100; Red, 500; St. Peter's, 300; Iowa, 350; Des Moines, 450. (M. A.)

*Q.* From what lake does the Mississippi River flow ?

*A.* Itasca.

*Q.* What Indian tribes in Iowa ?

*A.* Assiniboines, Sioux, Winnebagoes, Pottawatomies, Sacs, and Foxes.

*Map No. 9.—Q.* On what river is Iowa city ?

*A.* On Iowa R.

*Q.* The other chief towns ?

*A.* Burlington is on the Mississippi;\* Dubuque, on the Mississippi;† Peru, on Little Makoqueta;‡ Davenport, on Mis-

\* Burlington, cap. of Des Moines co., Io., 871 ms. from W. It is handsomely situated on the W. bank of the Mississippi, 1429 ms. above New Orleans, and 248 ms. above St. Louis.

† Dubuque co., Io., is situated on the W. bank of the Mississippi R., 1605 ms. above New Orleans, 424 ms. above St. Louis, 324 ms. below the Falls of St. Anthony, 900 ms. from W.

‡ Peru, Dubuque co., Io., 5 ms. N. of Dubuque. Situated on the S. side of Little Makoqueta R., a short distance above its entrance into Mississippi R.

Mississippi;\* Bloomington, on Mississippi;† Fort Madison, on Mississippi.‡

Q. To what distance from the sea do steamboats ascend the Des Moines River?

A. 1550 ms. (M. A.)

Iowa§ is bounded on the N. by the British Ter. of the Hudson Bay Company; E. by Wis. and Ill., from which it is separated by the Mississippi R., and a line due N. from its source in Itasca Lake to the British possessions; S. by the state of Mo.; and W. by the Missouri R. to the entrance of White-earth R., and following this N. to the British possessions. It lies between 40° 30' and 49° N. lat., and between 90° and 102° W. long., and between 14° and 26° W. long. from W. It is about 600 ms. long, and, at a medium, 250 ms. broad, containing about 150,000 sq. ms., or 96,000,000 acres. To a considerable portion of this territory the Indian title has not yet been extinguished. The pop. in 1840, was 43,112. Employed in agriculture, 10,469; in commerce, 355; in manufactures and trades, 1629; in mining, 217; navigating the ocean, rivers, and canals, 91; learned professions, 365.

This territory is divided into 18 counties, which, with their population in 1840, and their capitals, were as follow: CEDAR, 1253, Tipton; CLAYTON, 1101, Prairie la Porte; CLINTON, 821, Comanche; DELAWARE, 168, Delaware C. H.; DESMOINES, 5577, Burlington; DUBUQUE, 3059, Dubuque; HENRY, 3772, Mt. Pleasant; JACKSON, 1411, Bellevue; JEFFERSON, 2773, Fairfield; JOHNSON, 1491, Iowa city; JONES, 471, Edinburgh; LEE, 6093, Ft. Madison; LINN, 1373, Marion; LOUISA, 1927, Wappello; MUSCATINE, 1942, Bloomington; SCOTT, 2140, Davenport; VAN BUREN, 6146, Keosagua; WASHINGTON, 1594, Washington.

Iowa city, on Iowa R., 33 ms. W. N. W. of Bloomington, and 943 ms. N. N. W. of Washington city, is the cap. of Johnson co., and also of the state.

---

\* Davenport, cap. of Scott co., Io., 350 ms. above St. Louis, by water, 80 ms. above Burlington. This place is pleasantly situated on the N. side of the Mississippi R.

† Bloomington, cap. of Muscatine co., Io., 320 ms. above St. Louis, 910 ms. from W. It is pleasantly situated on the W. bank of the Mississippi. Established in 1836.

‡ Fort Madison, cap. of Lee co., Io., is situated on the W. bank of the Mississippi R. A fort was established here in 1808, as a defence against the Indians, who obliged the garrison in 1813 to abandon, and to burn it; only a few remains are now to be seen. It has become the site of a beautiful village, founded in 1835.

§ Iowa was admitted into the Union as an independent State, by act of Congress, passed during the session of 1845-6, subject to the approval or disapproval of the people at the next ensuing election: this was held immediately, when it was found that a majority of about 600 were in favour of the acceptance of the act. The State of Iowa comprises the southern part of the territory, and about one-third of its surface; the area is probably not far from 52,000 sq. ms. The parallel of 43° 30' N. lat., extending from the Mississippi to the Big Sioux river, is the N. boundary of the state. The region north of that line is but little known, being still occupied by tribes of Indians, chiefly Sioux. It is remarkable for the number of its lakes and ponds, some of which are salt.

## INDIAN TERRITORY.

*Page 175.—Lesson 126.—Map No. 5.*

- Q. How is the Indian Territory bounded on the north ?  
*A.* By Mo. Ter.  
 Q. South ?  
*A.* By Texas, and New Mexico.  
 Q. East ?  
*A.* By Io., Mo., and Ark.  
 Q. West ?  
*A.* By Mexico.  
 Q. What are the principal rivers that flow through it ?  
*A.* Platte, Kansas, Arkansas, Canadian, and Red.  
 Q. How long are these rivers ?  
*A.* Platte, 1000 ; Kansas, 700 ; Arkansas, 2000 ; Canadian, 900 ; Red, 1200. (M. A.)  
 Q. What United States' forts are in this territory ?  
*A.* Leavenworth, Gibson, and Towson.  
 Q. On what river is the Council Bluffs ?  
*A.* Missouri.  
 Q. What desert in the western part of the territory ?  
*A.* Great American.  
 Q. What mountains form part of its western boundary ?  
*A.* Rocky.  
 Q. Where is Long's Peak ?  
*A.* In the western part of Indian Territory.  
 Q. Pike's Peak ?  
*A.* In the western part of Indian Territory.  
 Q. How high are they ?  
*A.* Long's Peak, 12,500 ft. high ; Pike's, 12,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Name the Indian tribes wholly resident in the Indian Territory.  
*A.* Omahas, Otoes, Kickapoos, Delawares, Shawnees, Kansas, Osages, Cherokees, Creeks, and Choctaws.  
 Q. Name those that are partly so. Of the latter there are three tribes.  
*A.* Pawnees, Kioways, and Pawnee Picts.

The INDIAN or WESTERN TERRITORY is a tract of country west of the settled portions of the U. S., which has been set apart by the general government, for the permanent residence of those Indian tribes that have been removed, chiefly from the southwestern states of the Union. Here they are to be secured in governments of their own choice, subject to no other control from the United States, than such as may be necessary to preserve peace on the frontier, and between the several tribes. It is about 600 miles long from N. to S., and from 300 to 600 miles in breadth, from E. to W. It has the Platte River on the N., the states of Missouri and Arkansas on the E., the

Red river on the S., and a desert country on the W. This country contains, within the habitable district, an area of 120,000 sq. ms., or 76,800,000 acres. The number of the different tribes now occupying this territory, is about 70,000, exclusive of the wild tribes of the prairies. The whole number of Indians E. of the Rocky Mountains is nearly 300,000. The principal tribes in the Indian Ter. are the Chickasaws, Choctaws, Creeks, Seminoles, and Cherokees, besides some indigenous tribes. These tribes are advancing in civilization, improvement, and the enjoyment of the comforts of settled life; and promise yet to redeem the Indian character from the opprobrium which has been cast upon it, by demonstrating that they are capable of civilization. Their condition, in the opinion of their best friends, and of themselves, has been improved by their removal; and it is to be hoped that they will never be disturbed in their present possessions. They receive considerable annuities from the Federal government, in compensation for the country which they left, and have ceded to the U. S.

---

## MISSOURI TERRITORY.

*Page 177.—Lesson 127.—Map No. 5.*

- Q. What bounds this territory on the north?  
 A. British America.  
 Q. South?  
 A. Indian Ter.  
 Q. East?  
 A. Io.  
 Q. West?  
 A. Oregon Ter.  
 Q. What mountains separate it from Oregon?  
 A. Rocky.  
 Q. What river from Iowa?  
 A. Missouri.  
 Q. From the Indian territory?  
 A. Platte, or Nebraska.  
 Q. How long are the Missouri, Platte, Yellow Stone, Big Horn, Tongue, and Running-Water rivers?  
 A. Missouri, 2900; Platte, 1000; Yellow Stone, 800; Big Horn, 600; Tongue, 400; Running-Water, 400. (M. A.)  
 Q. What hills west of the Missouri River?  
 A. Black.  
 Q. Where is Frémont's Peak?  
 A. On the boundary between Missouri and Oregon territories.  
 Q. Its height?  
 A. 13,570 ft.  
 Q. What tribes inhabit this territory?  
 A. Blackfeet, Crows, Minnetarees, Riccarees, Sioux, Staetans, or Kites, Shiennes, Puncahs, and Pawnees.

MISSOURI, or, as it has been proposed to call it, Nebraska Territory, is a portion of the U. S. included between the British Possessions on the N., Io. on the E., the Indian Ter. on the S., of which the N. fork of Platte or Nebraska R. may be considered the boundary, and the Rocky Mts., separating it from Oregon Ter. on the W. It contains about 300,000 sq. ms., being about 520 ms. from N. to S., and 600 from E. to W. This extensive region has been but imperfectly explored. Its most important natural feature is the Missouri R., which, with its branches, drains the whole region. This great river rises in the Rocky Mountains, by many branches: the remotest head is in about N. lat.  $45^{\circ}$ , 2900 ms. from where it joins the Mississippi, and not more than a mile from the source of some of the tributaries of Lewis' River, the chief branch of the Columbia. At a distance of about 520 ms. from its source, the Great Falls of the Missouri occur; the river descends 357 feet in 18 ms., by a succession of falls and rapids: the greatest fall is 87 feet perpendicular; the next is 47: the breadth of the river is about 350 yards. These falls, next to Niagara, rank among the grandest in the world. The Yellow Stone River enters the Missouri from the S., 1880 ms. from its entrance into the Mississippi: it rises in Sublette's Lake, not far from the eastern base of Frémont's Peak, and has a course of about 800 ms. The Platte or Nebraska River, the next large tributary of the Missouri, enters the latter more than 1200 ms. below the Yellow Stone: it is about 1000 ms. long, and is so shallow that except in time of floods it can be forded in almost any part of its course. The Platte rises in the Rocky Mts. by two forks, the N. and S., which unite several hundred ms. from their source. Among the smaller rivers are the Big Horn, Little Missouri, Teton, Running Water, &c. The Black Hills extend through the centre of the territory from the upper waters of the Platte River, in a nearly N. W. direction to the Missouri River. That name is derived from their being covered to their summits with cedar trees, which give these hills, at a distance, a black and sombre appearance.

## OREGON TERRITORY.

*Pages 178-9.—Lesson 128.—Map No. 15.*

Q. What bounds Oregon on the north?

A. British America.

Q. South?

A. Upper or New California.

Q. East?

A. British America, and Mo. Ter.

Q. What bounds it on the west?

A. Pacific Ocean.

Q. What forms the eastern boundary?

A. Rocky Mts.

Q. Its highest summits?

A. Mt. Brown, Mt. Hooker, and Frémont's Peak.

Q. Their heights?

A. Brown, 16,000 ft.; Hooker, 15,700; Frémont's, 13,570.

(M. A.)



*Q.* What mountains west of Lewis' River?

*A.* Blue.

*Q.* Near the coast?

*A.* Cascade Range.

*Q.* Its chief summits?

*A.* Mt. Baker, Mt. Rainier, Mt. St. Helen's, Mt. Hood, and Mt. Jefferson.

*Q.* Volcanoes?

*A.* Rainier, and St. Helen's.

*Q.* Point out the South Pass. This is a gap in the Rocky Mts. 15 or 20 ms. wide, through which emigrants travel to Oregon. (M. G., p. 178.)

*Q.* The chief rivers?

*A.* Columbia, and Frazer's.

*Q.* Chief branches of the Columbia?

*A.* Lewis', and Clarke's.

*Q.* Lengths of the rivers?

*A.* Columbia, 1200 ms.; Frazer's, 750; Lewis', 800; Clarke's, 600. (M. A.)

*Q.* Principal forts?

*A.* Vancouver, Wallawalla, and Colville.

*Q.* Capes?

*A.* Point Flattery, Foulweather, Perpetua, Gregory, and Blanco or Orford.

*Q.* Bays, Gulfs, &c.?

*A.* Straits of Juan de Fuca, Admiralty Inlet, Puget's Sound, Bulfinch's or Gray's Harbour.

*Q.* Lakes?

*A.* Kulluspelm, Flathead, Cœur d'Alene, Klamet, Summer, Abert, Christmas, Pitt's, Salt, and Sylanilles. (M. A.)

*Q.* Indian tribes?

*A.* Flatheads, Clalams, Chickeeles, Wallawallas, Nezperces, Chinooks, Shoshones, Cayuses, Moleles, Callapuyas, Umpquas, and Boonacks. (M. A.)

*Map No. 16.—Q.* Where is Oregon city?

*A.* It is situated in a fine fertile valley at the falls of the Willamette River.

*Q.* On what river?

*A.* Willamette.

*Q.* Into what stream does the latter flow?

*A.* Into the Columbia R.

*Q.* Where is Astoria?

*A.* It is near the mouth of the Columbia.

*Q.* Fort Vancouver?

*A.* On the N. bank of the Columbia.

*Q.* Cascades?

*A.* At the point where the Columbia flows through the Cas-

cade Range. The Columbia R. is navigable to this place, 120 ms. (M. G., p. 179.)

Q. Which is the northern cape of Columbia R. ?

A. Cape Disappointment.

Q. Southern ?

A. Point Adams.

THE OREGON TERRITORY consists of a large extent of country lying between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific Ocean, and drained chiefly by the Columbia River, its tributaries, and Frazer's River. Its boundaries are: on the E., the Rocky Mountain range, along its whole extent; on the S., the parallel of  $42^{\circ}$  N. lat., dividing it from Upper or New California; on the W., the Pacific Ocean; and on the N., the parallel of  $54^{\circ} 40'$  N. lat.; within these limits, nearly all the rivers that flow through the territory take their rise. The region thus described contains about 420,000 sq. ms. The U. S. claimed the country from N. lat.  $42^{\circ}$  to  $54^{\circ} 40'$ ; while Great Britain claimed from the northern boundary *south* to the Columbia River.\*

The whole territory may be estimated as containing 20,000 Indians, and about 8000 whites, of whom 7000 are Americans; the rest are the officers and servants of the Hudson Bay Company, comprising British, Canadians, and some half-breeds. The Indians are rapidly decreasing in all parts of the country; the causes are supposed to be their rude treatment of diseases, and the dissipated lives they lead.

## UPPER OR NEW CALIFORNIA.†

Page 180.—Lesson 129.—Map No. 15.

Q. What bounds Upper California on the north ?

A. Oregon.

\* Oregon Territory, as claimed by the United States, extended from N. lat.  $42^{\circ}$  to  $54^{\circ} 40'$ , and from the Pacific Ocean to the Rocky Mountains, a region almost ten times the extent of Pennsylvania. By the treaty ratified in London, July 17th, 1846, the 49th parallel of latitude, prolonged from the Rocky Mountains to the Pacific Ocean, was adopted as the northern boundary of the American claim. By this treaty it is agreed that the navigation of the Columbia River, from the sea to that point where its course is intersected by the parallel of  $49^{\circ}$ , shall be free and open to the Hudson's Bay Company, and to all British subjects trading with the same, as well as to citizens of the United States; and further, it is agreed, that all British subjects residing south of the 49th degree of latitude, shall be protected in the possession of such landed and other property as they may own. That part of the Oregon Territory now in possession of the United States, extends from the 42d to the 49th parallel of N. lat.: it comprises from 280,000 to 290,000 square miles, or about  $\frac{2}{3}$  of the former claim.

† Upper or New California is an extensive region, being nearly equal in area to Oregon. It extends from the Rocky and Anahuac Mts., to the Pacific Ocean, and from the parallel of  $42^{\circ}$  to  $32^{\circ}$  N. lat. It lies south of Oregon Territory, north of Old California and the Mexican states of Sonora and Sinaloa, west of Texas and New Mexico, and east of the Pacific Ocean.

- Q. South ?  
A. Old or Lower California, and Sonora.  
Q. East ?  
A. U. States, and Mexico.  
Q. West ?  
A. Pacific Ocean.  
Q. What mountains near the coast ?  
A. Coast Range.  
Q. East of the Sacramento River ?  
A. Sierra Nevada, or Snowy Range.  
Q. East of the Great Salt Lake ?  
A. Bear River Mts.  
Q. South ?  
A. Wahsatch Mts.  
Q. What Mts. form the eastern boundary ?  
A. Rocky, and Anahuac Mts.  
Q. What islands on the coast ?  
A. Santa Barbara Islands.  
Q. What bays ?  
A. San Francisco, Monterey, and Trinidad.  
Q. Which is the westernmost cape ?  
A. Mendocino.  
Q. The largest river ?  
A. Colorado.  
Q. Its chief branches ?  
A. Rio Gila, Green, Grand, and Sevier.  
Q. What rivers join near to San Francisco Bay ?  
A. Rio Sacramento, and Rio San Joaquin.  
Q. Which flows north ?  
A. Rio San Joaquin.  
Q. South ?  
A. Rio Sacramento.  
Q. What lakes west of the Sierra Nevada ?  
A. Tule Lakes, and Mountain Lake.

---

Extent from N. to S., about 700 miles, and from E. to W. from 600 to 800 miles. Area about 400,000 sq. ms. It has long formed the north-westernmost division of the Mexican Republic; but it may now be regarded as attached to the United States. On the 6th of July, 1846, Commodore Sloat, commander of the U. S. naval forces in the Pacific Ocean, took possession of Monterey, the capital of Upper California; annexed the territory by proclamation to the Union, and extended the U. S. revenue laws over it. At the same time he invited the people to form a state government for themselves, and to select their own civil officers and magistrates; he also guarantied that private property of every description, as well as that belonging to the church, should be strictly respected.

- Q. East ?  
 A. Pyramid, and Mud.  
 Q. Which is the largest lake ?  
 A. Great Salt Lake.  
 Q. What river flows into it ?  
 A. Bear R.  
 Q. What lake ?  
 A. Utah.  
 Q. Which are the chief Indian tribes ?  
 A. Utah Indians, Tabeguaches, Moquis, Pah-Utah Indians, Mohahves, Jeniguiehs, Jumas, and Apaches.

---

## MEXICO.

*Page 183.—Lesson 131.—Maps No. 4 and 6.*

*Map No. 4.—Q.* What bounds Mexico on the north ?

A. U. S. and Upper California.

Q. On the south and west ?

A. Pacific Ocean.

Q. What Republic on the east ?

A. U. S.

Q. What sea and gulf on the east ?

A. Caribbean Sea, and Gulf of Mexico.

Q. What peninsula ?

A. Yucatan.

Q. What gulf on the west ?

A. California.

Q. What peninsula ?

A. California.

Q. What bay west of Yucatan ?

A. Campeche.

Q. East ?

A. Honduras.

*Map No. 6.—Q.* What rivers flow into the Gulf of Mexico ?

A. Rio Grande del Norte, and Tula.

Q. The Gulf of California ?

A. Colorado, and Yaqui.

Q. The Pacific Ocean ?

A. Grande.

Q. What lakes are in Mexico ?

A. Chapala, and Cayman.

Q. What mountains ?

A. Mexican Cordilleras.

Q. What states border on the Gulf of Mexico ?

A. Tamaulipas, Vera Cruz, Tabasco, and Yucatan.

Q. On the Pacific Ocean ?

A. Old California, Jalisco, Michoacan, Mexico, La Puebla, and Oaxaca.

Q. How many miles from California to Birmah ?

A. 9300. (M. A.)

Q. From Mexico to the Sandwich Islands ?

A. 3100. (M. A.)

Q. To Cochín China ?

A. 9900. (M. A.)

Q. What is the population of the city of Mexico ?

A. 140,000. (M. A.)

Q. What cities have a population of 30,000 and upwards ?

A. Zacatecas, San Luis Potosi, Queretaro, Guanajuato, Guadalupe, La Puebla, and Oaxaca. (M. A.)

Q. How many between 12,000 and 30,000 ?

A. Chihuahua, Monterey, Durango, Valladolid, and Jalapa. (M. A.)

Q. What bay bounds the Balize settlement on the east ?

A. Honduras.

Q. What state on the west ?

A. Yucatan.

Q. What is the population of the settlement ?

A. 4000. (M. A.)

*For a further description of Mexico, see Key, page 69.*

## GUATIMALA, OR CENTRAL AMERICA.

*Page 185.—Lesson 132.—Maps No. 4 and 6.*

*Map No. 4.—Q.* What bounds Guatimala on the north ?

A. Mexico, and Balize.

Q. East ?

A. Caribbean Sea.

Q. West and south !

A. Pacific Ocean.

Q. What bay on the north ?

A. Honduras.

Q. On the east ?

A. Guatimala.

Q. What lake in the south ?

A. Nicaragua.

Q. How long is it ?

A. 120 ms. (M. A.)

Q. What river connects it with the sea ?

A. San Juan.

Q. Which is the most populous city ?

A. New Guatimala. (M. A.)



Q. The four next in population ?

A. Leon, Cartago, San Salvador, and Old Guatemala. (M. A.)

Q. What is the population of these places ?

A. Leon, 38,000 ; Cartago, 20,000 ; San Salvador, 15,000 ; Old Guatemala, 18,000. (M. A.)

Map No. 6.—Guatemala comprises five states.

Q. Point them out.

A. Guatemala, Honduras, San Salvador, Nicaragua, and Costa Rica.

Q. What is the capital of each ?

A. *Guatemala*, New Guatemala ; *Honduras*, Comyagua ; *San Salvador*, San Salvador ; *Nicaragua*, Leon ; *Costa Rica*, Cartago.

Q. In what State is the water volcano situated ?

A. Guatemala.

Q. Volcano of Consiguina ?

A. Nicaragua.

Q. Lake Nicaragua ?

A. Nicaragua.

For a further description, see *Key*, page 69.

## WEST INDIES.

Page 189.—Lesson 135.—Map No. 4.

Q. Which is the largest of the West India Islands ?

A. Cuba.

Q. The second in size ?

A. Hayti.

Q. Third ?

A. Jamaica.

Q. Fourth ?

A. Porto Rico.

Q. How long is Cuba ?

A. 760 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Hayti ?

A. 400 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Jamaica ?

A. 150 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Porto Rico ?

A. 100 ms. (M. A.) These are the Great Antilles.

Q. What sea between the Great Antilles and South America ?

A. Caribbean.

Q. What islands lie north of Cuba ?

A. Bahamas.

Q. Which are the principal of the Bahamas ?

A. New Providence, Abaco, Inagua, Turks Island, Long, and Guanahani or Cat Island.

Q. Who discovered Guanahani?

A. Columbus.

Q. In what year?

A. In 1492. (M. A.)

Q. What is the name of the eastern range of the West India Islands?

A. Caribbee Islands.

Q. What six islands on the coast of South America?

A. Oruba, Curaçoa, Buen Ayre, Orchilla, Tortuga, and Margarita. These are the Little Antilles.

The Bermudas Islands are about the same distance from Charleston, from Halifax, and from St. John's, Porto Rico.

Q. How many miles is it by the scale?

A. 900. (M. A.)

Q. How far are the Bermudas from Madeira?

A. 2800 ms. (M. A.)

Q. What is the population of Havana?

A. 140,000.

Q. Kingston?

A. 30,000.

Q. Port au Prince?

A. 15,000.

Q. St. Domingo?

A. 12,000.

*For a further description, see Key, page 84.*

## SOUTH AMERICA.\*

*Pages 193-4.—Lesson 137.—Map No. 17.*

Q. What ocean bounds South America on the east?

A. Atlantic.

Q. On the west?

A. Pacific.

Q. What sea on the north?

A. Caribbean.

### DIVISIONS.

Q. How is New Grenada† bounded?

A. It is bounded N. by the Caribbean Sea; E. by Venezuela; S. by Brazil and Ecuador; and W. by the Pacific and Central America. (M. A.)

---

\* For a further description, see Key, page 70.

† This name is written indifferently, New Grenada and New Granada: the former is perhaps the most common: the U.S. government uses it in its official papers.

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Bogota.

NEW GRENADA, is one of the three Republics of South America, into which, in 1831, Colombia was divided. The boundary line between New Grenada and Ecuador, lies between  $1^{\circ}$  and  $2^{\circ}$  N. lat.: towards the N. this Republic extends to  $12^{\circ} 30'$  N. lat.: it is situated between  $69^{\circ}$  and  $80^{\circ}$  W. long. The greatest length, from N. to S., is near 800 ms.; greatest breadth, from E. to W., about 650 ms. Area estimated at 450,000 sq. ms. Pop. 1,687,000.

*Q.* How is Venezuela bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the Caribbean Sea; N. E. by the Atlantic; E. by Guiana; S. by Brazil; and W. by New Grenada. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Caraccas.

VENEZUELA is a Republic of S. America, which formerly constituted a part of Colombia, between  $1^{\circ}$  and  $12^{\circ} 30'$  N. Lat., and  $60^{\circ}$  and  $73^{\circ} 20'$  W. long. Length from E. to W. near 950 ms.; greatest breadth, from N. to S., about 660 ms. Area estimated at 420,000 sq. ms. Pop. 900,000.

*Q.* How is Ecuador bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by New Grenada; E. by Brazil; S. by Peru; and W. by the Pacific. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Quito.

ECUADOR, (i. e. "*Equator*," so named from its situation, being intersected through its whole length by the equinoctial line;) is one of the three Republics which, previously to 1831, constituted the Republic of Colombia. It is situated between  $1^{\circ} 36'$  and  $4^{\circ} 55'$  S. lat., and  $70^{\circ} 20'$  and  $81^{\circ}$  W. long. The area is calculated at 280,000 sq. ms. Pop. 600,000.

*Q.* How is Guiana bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the Atlantic; E. and S. by Brazil; and W. by Venezuela. (M. A.)

GUIANA, GUYANA, or GUAYANA, is a name applied to the N. E. portion of S. America, extending along the coast from Point Barima, to the river Oyapok, between lat.  $0^{\circ} 40'$  and  $8^{\circ} 40'$  N., and long.  $57^{\circ} 30'$  and  $60^{\circ}$  W., divided among the English, Dutch, and French. The area is variously estimated at from 150,000 to 190,000 sq. ms.

BRITISH GUIANA is the largest and most westerly portion of the above territory, including more than half its area. It extends between lat.  $0^{\circ} 40'$  and  $8^{\circ} 40'$  N., and between the 57th and 61st deg. of W. long., having E. Dutch Guiana, from which it is separated by the R. Corantyn; S. Brazil; W. Venezuela; and N. and N. E. the Atlantic. This territory is supposed to comprise about 94,000 sq. ms.; but of this a disputed portion, claimed by Brazil and Venezuela, amounts to not less than 64,000 sq. ms., leaving about 30,000 sq. ms. for the area of the undisputed British territory. Pop. in 1834, 96,581; in 1846, about 102,000. Capital, Georgetown.

DUTCH GUIANA. This territory is intermediate, both in size and position, between British and French Guiana. It extends between the 2d and 6th

deg. of N. lat., and the 53d and 57th deg. of W. long., having E. French Guiana, from which it is separated by the Maroni, S. Brazil, W. the R. Corantyn, which divides it from British Guiana, and N. the Atlantic. Length from N. to S. 250 ms.; average breadth, about 155 ms. Area about 38,500 sq. ms. Pop., exclusive of Indians and Maroons, probably 65,000, of whom 6000 are whites or free coloured people, chiefly Dutch, French, and Jews, and the remainder negro slaves. Capital, Paramaribo.

**FRENCH GUIANA.** This, which is the most E. and smallest division of Guiana, lies between the 2d and 6th deg. N. lat., and  $51\frac{1}{2}$  and  $54\frac{1}{2}$  deg. W. long., having E. and S. Brazil, W. Dutch Guiana, and N. and N.E. the Atlantic. Length, N. to S., 250 ms.; breadth varying from 100 to 190 ms. Area, 27,560 sq. ms. Pop. in 1837, free, 5056; slaves, 16,592; total, 21,648, exclusive of garrison and colonial functionaries. Capital, Cayenne.

*Q.* How is Peru bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by Ecuador; N.E. by Brazil; S.E. and S. by Bolivia; and W. by the Pacific Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Lima.

**PERU** is a celebrated country of S. America, formerly one of the most valuable possessions of the Spanish crown. It included the modern Republic of Bolivia (then called Upper Peru); but at present the term is restricted to the republic of Peru, lying chiefly between lat.  $3^{\circ} 20'$  and  $22^{\circ}$  S., and long.  $65^{\circ}$  and  $81^{\circ}$  W., having on the N. the Republic of Ecuador, E. Brazil, S.E. and S. Bolivia, and S.W. and W. the Pacific. Extreme length, S.S.E. to N.N.W., about 1500 ms. Area estimated at 430,000 sq. ms. Pop. 1,500,000.

*Q.* How is Bolivia bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N.E. and E. by Brazil and Paraguay; S. by Buenos Ayres and Chili; W. and N.W. by the Pacific and by Peru. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Chuquisaca, formerly called La Plata.

**BOLIVIA** is a republican state of S. America, situated between about  $10^{\circ}$  and  $25^{\circ} 40'$  S. lat., and  $57^{\circ}$  and  $70^{\circ} 44'$  W. long. Length about 1100 ms.; greatest breadth, 800 ms. Area estimated at about 450,000 sq. ms. The pop. is variously estimated from 630,000 to 1,400,000. This republic dates from the battle of Ayacucho, in 1824, in which the patriots, under General Sucre, completely defeated the royalists. The new republic was named Bolivia, in honour of General Bolivar. The sea-coast of Bolivia is of limited extent: its only sea-port, Cobija, is a small and unimportant village.

*Q.* How is Brazil bounded?

*A.* It is bounded on the N.W. and N. by Ecuador, Venezuela, and French, Dutch, and British Guiana; N.E., E., and S.E., by the Atlantic; and S.W. and W. by Uruguay, Paraguay, Bolivia, and Peru. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Rio Janeiro.

**BRAZIL**, a vast empire in the E. part of S. America, second only in

extent to the giant empires of China and Russia, stretches along about two thirds of the E. coast of that continent, while its superficial area occupies nearly half its whole extent. It lies between  $5^{\circ}$  N., and  $33^{\circ}$  S. lat.; and between  $35^{\circ}$  and  $73^{\circ}$  W. long. The length, from N. to S., is between 2600 and 2700 ms., and its breadth, from E. to W., between 2300 and 2400 ms. Its extent of coast along the Atlantic Ocean exceeds 4000 ms.; its area is estimated at from 2,600,000 to upwards of 3,000,000 sq. ms. Pop. from 5,000,000 to 6,500,000.

*Q.* How is Chili bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the southern extremity of Bolivia, E. by Buenos Ayres, S. E. and S. by Patagonia and the Gulf of Guaiteca (which separates it from the Chonos Archipelago), and W. by the Pacific. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Santiago.

CHILI is an independent state of S. America, in the S. W. part of that continent, consisting of a long and comparatively narrow strip of country between the Andes and the Pacific Ocean, extending from lat.  $25^{\circ} 20'$  to  $42^{\circ}$  S., and between long.  $70^{\circ}$  and  $74^{\circ}$  W. Length, N. to S., 1150 ms.; average breadth between 110 and 120 ms. Area, with Chiloë, estimated at 170,000 sq. ms. Pop. has at different times been variously estimated from about 900,000 to 1,500,000.

*Q.* How is Buenos Ayres bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by Bolivia; E. by Paraguay, Brazil, Uruguay, and the Atlantic; S. by the Atlantic and Patagonia; and W. by Chili and Bolivia.

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Buenos Ayres.

BUENOS AYRES,\* or LA PLATA, called also the ARGENTINE REPUBLIC, is an independent state, or rather confederation of states, in S. America, extending between the 22d and 41st degs. of S. lat., and the 52d and 72d of W. long.; separated from Paraguay, Brazil, and Uruguay, by the Paraguay, Parana, and Uruguay rivers. Area estimated at above 750,000 sq. ms. Pop., 1,500,000. Greatest length, from N. to S., about 1300 ms.; mean breadth, from E. to W., near 700 ms.

*Q.* How is Paraguay bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. and E. by Brazil; S. E. and S. by the territory of Buenos Ayres, or La Plata; and W. by the latter republic and Bolivia. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Assumption.

PARAGUAY is an independent state of S. America, principally between the 21st and 27th degs. of S. lat., and the 54th and 58th of W. long. Length, N. to S., about 460 ms.; greatest breadth, about 210 ms. Estimated area, 88,000 sq. ms. Estimated population, 300,000. Paraguay is an inland

---

\* Which signifies "good air."



peninsula, inclosed, E. and S., by the Parana, W. by the river Paraguay, and N. by Brazil.

*Q.* How is Uruguay bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. and E. by Brazil; S. E. and S. by the Atlantic, and the estuary of the Rio de la Plata; and W. by the R. Uruguay, by which it is separated from Buenos Ayres, or La Plata.

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Montevideo.

URUGUAY, or BANDA ORIENTAL, is a republic of S. America, between lat.  $30^{\circ}$  and  $35^{\circ}$  S., and long.  $53^{\circ}$  and  $59^{\circ}$  W. Length, about 380 ms.; greatest breadth near 300 ms. It is of nearly circular form, and is supposed to embrace an area of about 50,000 sq. ms.: its population does not probably, Indians included, exceed 150,000. It is but very little known.

*Q.* How is Patagonia bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the territories of Buenos Ayres, or La Plata, and Chili; E. by the Atlantic; S. by the Strait of Magellan, separating it from Terra del Fuego; and W. by the Pacific. (M. A.)

PATAGONIA is an extensive country of S. America, occupying the S. extremity of the continent, and extending from  $39^{\circ}$  to near  $54^{\circ}$  S. lat., and from  $63^{\circ}$  to  $75^{\circ} 40'$  W. long.; separated on the N. from Buenos Ayres, or La Plata, by the R. Negro; the line which divides it from Chili is not accurately determined. Length, from N. to S., about 1060 ms.; greatest breadth, from E. to W., 600 ms. The area is probably about 270,000 sq. ms. Little is known of this region beyond its coast outline.

*Q.* On what side of South America are the Andes?

*A.* West.

*Q.* What number of miles do they extend?

*A.* 4800 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* Between what two states do they form the entire boundary?

*A.* Chili, and Buenos Ayres.

*Q.* Between what two do they form the boundary in part?

*A.* Bolivia, and Peru.

*Q.* What is the next greatest range of mountains?

*A.* Brazilian.

*Q.* What number of miles do they extend?

*A.* 2100. (M. A.)

*Q.* In what state are they almost wholly?

*A.* Brazil.

#### RIVERS.

*Q.* What are the three largest rivers?

*A.* Amazon, Rio de la Plata, and Orinoco.

*Q.* How long is each of these?

*A.* Amazon is 3600 ms.; Rio de la Plata, 2250; Orinoco, 1500. (M. A.)

*Q.* How wide are the mouths of the two largest?

*A.* Mouth of the Amazon, 150; Rio de la Plata, 150. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Magdalena?

*A.* It is the principal r. of New Grenada, rises in the little lake Papas, among the Andes, in about  $1^{\circ} 50'$  N. lat., and  $76^{\circ} 30'$  W. long., and, flowing northerly, empties itself into the sea, in about  $11^{\circ} 10'$  N. lat., and  $74^{\circ} 45'$  W. long. (M. A.)

*Q.* Into what sea does it empty?

*A.* Caribbean.

*Q.* Which are the four principal branches of the Amazon on the north side?

*A.* Tunguragua, Putumayo, Caquetà, and Negro.

*Q.* What are the chief branches of the Amazon on the south side?

*A.* Ucayle, Jurua, Puras, Madeira, Tapajos, and Xingu.

*Q.* How long are each of the foregoing rivers?

*A.* Tunguragua is 900 ms.; Putumayo, 800; Caqueta, 1100; Negro, 1200; Ucayle, 1200; Jurua, 800; Puras, 900; Madeira, 2200; Tapajos, 1100; Xingu, 1300. (M. A.)

*Q.* Which two rivers form the Amazon?

*A.* Ucayle, and Tunguragua.

*Q.* Which two form the Rio de la Plata?

*A.* Parana, and Uruguay.

*Q.* Into what ocean do the Orinoco, Amazon, St. Francisco, and the Rio de la Plata, flow?

*A.* Atlantic Ocean.

*Q.* What rivers are south of the Rio de la Plata?

*A.* Colorado, Rio Negro, Camarones, and Port Desire.

#### GULFS.

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Darien?

*A.* It is in New Grenada, on the N.W., being the most southern portion of the Caribbean Sea. (M. A.)

It is between  $7^{\circ} 56'$  and  $10^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $76^{\circ}$  and  $78^{\circ}$  W. long.

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Venezuela?

*A.* It is on the coast of Venezuela, on the N.W., and communicates with Lake Maracaybo by a narrow strait. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Guayaquil?

*A.* It is in Ecuador, on the W., and leads into the Pacific Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Penas?

*A.* It is in Patagonia on the W., and leads into the Pacific Ocean. (M. A.)

#### BAYS.

*Q.* Where is the Bay of Panama?

*A.* It is on the S. coast of the Isthmus of Panama, or Darien,

W. N. W. of New Grenada, and leads into the Pacific Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Talcahuana Bay?

*A.* It is in Chili on the W., and leads into the Pacific Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Bay of St. George?

*A.* It is in Patagonia on the E., and leads into the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is St. Mathias Bay?

*A.* It is in Patagonia on the E., and leads into the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Bay of All Saints?

*A.* It is in Brazil, on the E. coast. (M. A.)

#### ISLANDS.

*Q.* Where is Puno Island?

*A.* It is in the Gulf of Guayaquil, W. of Ecuador. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Islands of St. Felix?

*A.* They are in the Pacific Ocean, W. of Chili. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Islands of Juan Fernandez?

*A.* They are a group of Islands in the Pacific Ocean, situated about 400 ms. W. of the coast of Chili, near  $33^{\circ} 40'$  S. lat., and  $79^{\circ}$  W. long. (M. A.)

The largest one, called Juan Fernandez, from the name of the discoverer, is 10 or 12 ms. in length, and perhaps 6 in breadth. It is chiefly remarkable for having been, in the early part of the 18th century, the solitary residence of Alexander Selkirk, a Scottish sailor, during a period of more than four years. The well-known story of Robinson Crusoe is supposed to be founded on Selkirk's narrative. The island has been lately taken on lease from the Chilian government, by an enterprising American, who has brought thither 150 families of Tahitians, with the intention of cultivating the land, rearing cattle, &c., for the purpose of supplying whalers and other vessels in those seas with refreshments.

*Q.* Where is Chiloe Island?

*A.* It is a large Island in the Pacific Ocean, near the S. coast of Chili and the N.W. coast of Patagonia. (M. A.)

This island lies between lat.  $41^{\circ} 48'$  and  $43^{\circ} 50'$  S., and long.  $73^{\circ} 20'$  and  $74^{\circ} 30'$  W., and having on its E. side sixty-three small islands, thirty-six of which are inhabited; the whole, including the town of Maulin on the main land of the continent, forms the most southern province of Chili. Shape of Chiloe, oblong; length, N. to S., 140 ms.; average breadth, 40 ms. Area 4800 sq. ms. Pop. (1832), with its accompanying islands, 43,830.

*Q.* Where is Wellington Island?

*A.* It is in the Pacific Ocean, W. of Patagonia, having N. the Gulf of Penas, S. the Archipelago of Madre de Dios, and E. the Channel of Mesier, 160 ms. long, separating it from Patagonia. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Island of Terra del Fuego?

*A.* Terra del Fuego is a large island, or rather group of islands,

lying off the southern extremity of S. America, from which it is separated by the Strait of Magellan.

The group, which extends between the 53d and 56th degs. of S. lat., and the 64th and 75th of W. long., is about 450 ms. in length : it consists of King Charles, South Land, Navarin, Hoste, Clarence, and some other islands ; Cape Horn, on Hermit island, forming the most southerly point of America, and facing directly the wastes of the ocean which surround the Antarctic pole. The name of Terra del Fuego, or, "*land of fire*," is supposed to have been given to this insular group by its discoverer, Magellan, or Magalhaens, from its apparent volcanoes.

*Q.* Where are the Falkland Islands ?

*A.* They are in the Atlantic Ocean, E. of Patagonia. (M. A.)

The FALKLAND ISLANDS (Fr. *Malouines*, Span. *Malvinas*) are a group in the S. Atlantic, belonging to Great Britain, consisting of about 90, or, according to some authorities, as many as 200 islands, between lat.  $51^{\circ} 10'$  and  $52^{\circ} 25'$  S., and long.  $57^{\circ} 40'$  and  $61^{\circ} 20'$  W., about 1000 ms. S. S.W. from the estuary of the La Plata, and 240 ms. N. E. of Terra del Fuego ; with the exception of the two principal islands, however, they are for the most part mere rocks. The two largest islands are called the E. and W. Falklands. The greatest length of the former, from N. E. to S. W., is nearly 130 ms. ; greatest breadth about 80ms. The latter is about 110 ms. in length, by 50 ms. in its greatest breadth, in the same directions. Their united area is estimated at 13,000 sq. ms. Between the two main islands is Falkland Sound, whence the whole Archipelago has derived its name : this channel is from seven to twelve miles in breadth. On the eastern side of the E. Falkland, at Port St. Louis, a small British colony is established.

*Q.* Where is the Island of St. Catharina ?

*A.* It is in the Atlantic Ocean, lying off the S. E. coast of Brazil, separated from the main land by a narrow strait. (M. A.)

It is about 35 ms. in length, from N. to S., and from 4 to 8 ms. in width. Its most N. extremity, Point Rupa, is in lat.  $27^{\circ} 22' 31''$  N., long.  $48^{\circ} 32' 7''$  W.

*Q.* Where is Itamaraca Island ?

*A.* It is in the Atlantic Ocean, lying off the E. coast of Brazil, separated from the main land by a narrow strait. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Joannes Island ?

*A.* It is in the N. E. part of Brazil, S. of the mouth of the Amazon river. (M. A.)

*Q.* Between what two rivers is the latter situated ?

*A.* Amazon, and Para.

#### STRAITS.

*Q.* Where is the Strait of Magellan ?\*

*A.* It is at the S. extremity of S. America, and unites the waters of the Atlantic with the Pacific. (M. A.)

---

\* It was discovered in 1520, by the Portuguese navigator, Magalhaens, then in the service of Spain, and called, in honour of him, the Strait of Magalhaens. The Spaniards changed the name to Magellan.

*Q.* What regions does it separate ?

*A.* It separates Patagonia from Terra del Fuego, Clarence Island, and the Isle of Desolation.

It extends from Cape Virgins, on the Atlantic, to Cape Pillar, on the Pacific Ocean, a distance of about 300 ms., having a breadth varying from  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 40 ms. It has an additional communication with the Pacific by Cockburn Channel and Magdalen Sound.

*Q.* Where is the Strait of Le Maire ?

*A.* It is at the E. extremity of Terra del Fuego. (M. A.)

*Q.* What does it separate ?

*A.* Terra del Fuego, and Staten Land. (M. A.)

#### CITIES.

*Q.* Which is the largest city of South America ?

*A.* Rio Janeiro.

*Q.* The next largest ?

*A.* Bahia or St. Salvador.

*Q.* What three cities number respectively 100,000, 70,000, and 55,000 inhabitants ?

*A.* Buenos Ayres, Quito, and Lima.

#### CAPIES.

*Q.* Which are the most northerly and the most southerly capes ?

*A.* Cape Gallinas is the most northerly, and Cape Horn the most southerly.

*Q.* The most easterly and the most westerly ?

*A.* St. Roque is the most easterly, and Blanco the most westerly ?

*Q.* What proportion of South America lies north of the Tropic of Capricorn ? The largest or smallest ?

*A.* Largest.

*Q.* In what zone, then, is it mostly ?

*A.* Torrid.

*Q.* In what zone is the remainder ?

*A.* South Temperate.

*Q.* In what hemisphere is South America wholly ?

*A.* Western.

*Q.* In what hemisphere is it partly ?

*A.* Southern.

South America contains about  $12^{\circ}$  of north, and  $55^{\circ}$  of south latitude.

*Q.* In what latitude is it then ?

*A.* South.

It extends from  $35^{\circ}$  to  $81^{\circ}$  of longitude, west from Greenwich ?

*Q.* In what longitude then is it reckoned ?

*A.* West.



## DISTANCES.

- Q. How many miles is it from Guiana to Newfoundland ?  
 A. 2870 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Brazil to Greenland ?  
 A. 4200 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Guiana to Liberia ?  
 A. 2850 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. New Grenada to Borneo ?  
 A. 11,400 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Ecuador to the Gallapagos Islands ?  
 A. 650 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Peru to Otaheite ?  
 A. 5000 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Chili to New South Wales ?  
 A. 8000 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Chili to New Zealand ?  
 A. 5800 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Brazil to the west coast of Africa ?  
 A. 3400 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Uruguay to the Cape of Good Hope ?  
 A. 4100 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Patagonia to Van Diemen's Land ?  
 A. 11,400 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Patagonia to Kerguelen's Land ?  
 A. 6100 ms. (M. A.)
- 

## NEW GRENADA.

*Page 196.—Lesson 138.—Map No. 17.*

- Q. What bounds New Grenada on the north ?  
 A. Caribbean Sea.  
 Q. South ?  
 A. Ecuador.  
 Q. East ?  
 A. Venezuela.  
 Q. West ?  
 A. Pacific Ocean.  
 Q. What Isthmus connects it with North America ?  
 A. Darien.  
 Q. Which are the principal rivers ?  
 A. Magdalena, Cauca, Caqueta, Uaupes, Negro, Guaviare, and Meta.  
 Q. What is the length of each ?  
 A. Magdalena is 900 ms. long ; Cauca, 600 ; Caqueta, 1100 ; Uaupes, 800 ; Negro, 1200 ; Guaviare, 600 ; Meta, 600. (M. A.)

- Q. How far do sloops navigate the Magdalena?  
 A. 580 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Meta?  
 A. 1060 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. What is the population of Bogota?  
 A. 35,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Popayan?  
 A. 20,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Carthagena?  
 A. 18,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Mompox?  
 A. 10,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Honda?  
 A. 10,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. What mountains extend along the west coast?  
 A. Andes.  
 Q. What mountains east of the Magdalena?  
 A. The N. E. range of the Andes.  
 For a further description, see *Key*, pages 204-5.

## VENEZUELA.\*

*Pages 197-8.—Lesson 139.—Map No. 17.*

- Q. What bounds Venezuela on the north?  
 A. Caribbean Sea.  
 Q. South?  
 A. Brazil.  
 Q. East?  
 A. Guiana?  
 Q. West?  
 A. New Grenada.  
 Q. Which is the chief river?  
 A. Orinoco?  
 Q. How long is it?  
 A. 1500 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. How far is it navigable for ships?  
 A. 500 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. For sloops?  
 A. 780 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. What river connects the Orinoco and the Rio Negro?  
 A. Casiquiare.  
 Q. What lake in the north-west part of Venezuela?  
 A. Maracaybo.

\* It will be seen that Ecuador is included in this lesson.

- Q. How long is it ?  
 A. 150 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. From what lake does the Orinoco flow ?  
 A. Ipava.  
 Q. What Indians in Venezuela ?  
 A. Guarones, Caribs, and Ottomacs.  
 Q. How many inhabitants has Caraccas ?  
 A. 23,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Coro ?  
 A. 10,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Valencia ?  
 A. 15,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Cumana ?  
 A. 10,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. What Island belongs to Venezuela ?  
 A. Margarita.

*For a further description, see Key, page 205.*

---

## ECUADOR.

- Q. What bounds Ecuador on the north ?  
 A. New Grenada.  
 Q. South ?  
 A. North Peru.  
 Q. East ?  
 A. Brazil.  
 Q. West ?  
 A. Pacific Ocean.  
 Q. What range of mountains is in the western part ?  
 A. Andes.  
 Q. What two large rivers in the south ?  
 A. Tunguragua, and Ucayale.  
 These form the Amazon River.  
 Q. How far is the Amazon navigable for ships ?  
 A. 2400 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. For sloops ?  
 A. 3000 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. How many inhabitants has Quito ?  
 A. 70,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. What three cities number 20,000 each ?  
 A. Riobamba, Guayaquil, and Cuenca.  
 Q. What mountain south of Quito ?  
 A. Chimborazo. This was formerly considered the highest in South America.  
*For a further description, see Key, page 205.*

## GUIANA.

*Page 200.—Lesson 140.—Map No. 17.*

- Q. What bounds Guiana on the north ?  
*A.* Atlantic Ocean.  
 Q. The west ?  
*A.* Venezuela.  
 Q. The south and east ?  
*A.* Brazil.  
 Q. The principal rivers ?  
*A.* Essequibo, Surinam, Maroni, and Oyapock.  
 Q. How long are the first three ?  
*A.* Essequibo, 450 ms. ; Surinam, 300 ; Maroni, 350. (M. A.)  
 Q. How many inhabitants has Georgetown ?  
*A.* 20,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Paramaribo ?  
*A.* 20,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. New Amsterdam ?  
*A.* 4000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Cayenne ?  
*A.* 3000. (M. A.)  
 Q. What Indians inhabit the south-east part of Guiana ?  
*A.* Arowauks.  
*For a further description, see Key, pages 205–6.*

---

 PERU.

*Page 201.—Lesson 141.—Map No. 17.*

- Q. What bounds Peru on the north ?  
*A.* Ecuador.  
 Q. South ?  
*A.* Bolivia.  
 Q. East ?  
*A.* Brazil, and Bolivia.  
 Q. West ?  
*A.* Pacific Ocean.  
 Q. What mountains extend along the coast ?  
*A.* Andes.  
 Q. What desert in the south ?  
*A.* Atacama.  
 Q. What lake forms part of the eastern boundary ?  
*A.* Titicaca.  
 Q. Which is the head branch of the Amazon ?  
*A.* Ucayale.

- Q. In what lake does it rise ?  
 A. Reyes.  
 Q. How far does sloop navigation extend on it from the sea ?  
 A. 2600 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. What is the population of Lima ?  
 A. 55,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Cuzco ?  
 A. 40,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Arequipa ?  
 A. 35,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Guamanga ?  
 A. 24,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Punó ?  
 A. 18,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Cerro Pasco ?  
 A. 12,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Truxillo ?  
 A. 12,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Tacna ?  
 A. 10,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. What are the ports from Ocono to Iquique called ?  
 A. The Intermedios.  
 Q. When was the battle of Ayacucho fought ?  
 A. In 1824. (M. A.)  
 Q. Of Yungay ?  
 A. In 1839. (M. A.)  
*For a further description, see Key, page 206.*

---

 BOLIVIA.

*Page 203.—Lesson 142.—Map No. 17.*

- Q. What bounds Bolivia on the north ?  
 A. North Peru, and Brazil.  
 Q. South ?  
 A. Buenos Ayres.  
 Q. East ?  
 A. Brazil, and Paraguay.  
 Q. West ?  
 A. South Peru.  
 Q. On what ocean is the south-west part situated ?  
 A. Pacific.  
 Q. Which are the principal rivers ?  
 A. Mamore, Branco, Guapore, Paraguay, Pilcomayo, and Vermejo.



Q. How long is each of these?

A. Mamore, 1200 ms.; Branco, 1000; Guapore, 500; Paraguay, 1200; Pilcomayo, 1100; Vermejo, 1000. (M. A.)

Q. The largest lake?

A. Titicaca.

Q. How long is it?

A. 180 ms. (M. A.)

Q. What two mountains east of Lake Titicaca?

A. Sorata, and Illimani. These are the highest in South America.

Q. How many inhabitants has Chuquisaca, the capital?

A. 18,000. (M. A.)

Q. La Paz?

A. 40,000. (M. A.)

Q. Cochabamba?

A. 30,000. (M. A.)

Q. Potosi?

A. 9000. (M. A.)

Q. Oruro?

A. 4000. (M. A.)

Q. What desert occupies the coast of Bolivia?

A. Atacama.

Q. What tribes of Indians are in Bolivia?

A. Moxos, Chiquitos, and Abipones.

*For a further description, see Key, page 206.*

## CHILI.

*Page 205.—Lesson 143.—Map No. 17.*

Q. What bounds Chili on the north?

A. Bolivia.

Q. South?

A. Patagonia.

Q. East?

A. Buenos Ayres.

Q. West?

A. Pacific Ocean.

Q. What mountains separate Chili from Buenos Ayres?

A. Andes.

Q. What Island lies south of Chili?

A. Chiloë.

Q. How long is it?

A. 140 ms. (M. A.)

Q. What Islands lie west of Valparaiso?

A. Juan Fernandez.

Q. What Island was the residence of Alexander Selkirk?

A. Mas-a-Tierra.

Q. What Islands lie north of Juan Fernandez?

A. Islands of St. Felix.

Q. What is the population of Santiago?

A. 65,000. (M. A.)

Q. Valparaiso?

A. 26,000. (M. A.)

Q. Concepcion?

A. 10,000. (M. A.)

Q. Quillota?

A. 8000. (M. A.)

Q. Santa Rosa?

A. 5000. (M. A.)

Q. S. Felipe?

A. 5000. (M. A.)

Q. Valdivia?

A. 7000. (M. A.)

Q. Copiapo?

A. 2000. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, page 207.*

---

## B R A Z I L .

*Page 207.—Lesson 144.—Map No. 17.*

Q. What bounds Brazil on the north?

A. Venezuela, Guiana, and the Atlantic Ocean.

Q. East?

A. Atlantic Ocean.

Q. West?

A. Venezuela, Ecuador, Peru, Bolivia, Paraguay, and Uruguay.

Q. Which are the principal rivers that flow into the Atlantic Ocean?

A. Amazon, Para, Parnaiba, and St. Francisco.

Q. How long are they?

A. Amazon, 3600 ms.; Para, 1200; Parnaiba, 800; St. Francisco, 1300. (M. A.)

Q. How wide is the Amazon River at its mouth?

A. 150 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Which are the chief branches of the Amazon?

A. Xingu, Tapajos, Madeira, Negro, and Caqueta.

Q. How long are they?

A. Xingu, 1300 ms.; Tapajos, 1100; Madeira, 2200; Negro, 1200; Caqueta, 1100. (M. A.)

*Q.* How far is the Amazon navigable for ships ?

*A.* 2400 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* For sloops ?

*A.* 2600 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* How far can sloops ascend the Madeira from the sea ?

*A.* 1800 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* What mountains extend along the coast ?

*A.* Brazilian.

*Q.* How long are they ?

*A.* 2100 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* What are the chief Indian tribes that inhabit Brazil ?

*A.* Tapajos, Mauhes, Boticudos, Guapindayes, Camecrans, Xerentes, Cayapos, and Bororos.

*Q.* What Island at the mouth of the Amazon ?

*A.* Joannes.

*Q.* How long is it ?

*A.* 150 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* What land was first seen by Cabral, the discoverer of Brazil, in the year 1500 ?

*A.* Old Porto Seguro.

*Q.* What is the population of Rio Janeiro ?

*A.* 200,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Bahia ?

*A.* 120,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Pernambuco ?

*A.* 65,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Cuyaba ?

*A.* 30,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Sergippe del Rey ?

*A.* 30,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* What towns have 20,000 inhabitants each ?

*A.* Para, Maranham, Aracati, San Paul, and Villa Bella

*Q.* What district east of the St. Francisco River ?

*A.* Diamond.

*For a further description, see Key, pages 206-7.*

## BUENOS AYRES.

*Page 209.—Lesson 145.—Map No. 17.*

*Q.* What country lies north of Buenos Ayres ?

*A.* Bolivia.

*Q.* East ?

*A.* Paraguay, and Uruguay.

*Q.* West ?

*A.* Chili.

- Q. South ?  
 A. Patagonia.  
 Q. What mountains separate Buenos Ayres from Chili ?  
 A. Andes.  
 Q. What river from Patagonia ?  
 A. Rio Negro.  
 Q. From Uruguay ?  
 A. Rio de la Plata, and Uruguay.  
 Q. From Paraguay ?  
 A. Paraguay, and Parana.  
 Q. What is the length of the Rio de la Plata ?  
 A. 2250 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Parana ?  
 A. 1900 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Paraguay ?  
 A. 1200 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Colorado ?  
 A. 1000 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Rio Negro ?  
 A. 700 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Saladillo ?  
 A. 400 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Salado ?  
 A. 800 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. Vermejo ?  
 A. 1000 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. How wide is the Rio de la Plata at its mouth ?  
 A. 150 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. How far is it navigable for ships ?  
 A. 180 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. How far is the Paraguay navigable for sloops ?  
 A. 1000 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. What is the population of Buenos Ayres ?  
 A. 100,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Of Cordova ?  
 A. 13,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. San Juan ?  
 A. 10,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Mendoza ?  
 A. 20,000. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, page 207.*

## PARAGUAY.\*

*Page 211.—Lesson 146.—Map No. 17.*

*Q.* What river forms the east and south boundary of Paraguay?

*A.* Parana.

*Q.* The west boundary?

*A.* Paraguay.

*Q.* What tropic extends nearly through the middle of Paraguay?

*A.* Tropic of Capricorn.

*Q.* How many inhabitants has Assumption, the capital?

*A.* 10,000.

*Q.* The other towns?

*A.* Curuguaty, 3000; Villa Rica, 3000; Itapua, 2000. (M. A.)

*Q.* How far is the Paraguay navigable for sloops from the sea?

*A.* 1000 ms. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, page 207.*

## URUGUAY.

*Q.* What bounds Uruguay on the north?

*A.* Brazil.

*Q.* On the south?

*A.* The Rio de la Plata.

*Q.* West?

*A.* Uruguay River.

*Q.* East?

*A.* Brazil.

*Q.* How long is the Uruguay River?

*A.* 800 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* Negro?

*A.* 400 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* What is the population of Montevideo, the capital?

*A.* 15,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Of Maldonado?

*A.* 1000. (M. A.)

*Q.* How far is it from Uruguay to the Cape of Good Hope?

*A.* 4100 ms. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, page 208.*

---

\*It will be seen that Uruguay is included in this lesson.



## PATAGONIA.

*Page 212.—Lesson 147.—Map No. 17.*

*Q.* How is Patagonia bounded ?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the territories of Buenos Ayres, or La Plata, and Chili ; E. by the Atlantic ; S. by the Strait of Magellan, separating it from Terra del Fuego ; and W. by the Pacific.

*Q.* Which are its chief rivers ?

*A.* Camarones, and Port Desire.

*Q.* What tribes inhabit it ?

*A.* Puelches, and Moluches.

*Q.* What islands lie to the eastward ?

*A.* Falkland.

*Q.* What straits separate this region from Terra del Fuego ?

*A.* Magellan.

*Q.* What island on the west coast ?

*A.* Wellington.

*Q.* What island east of Terra del Fuego ?

*A.* Staten Land.

*Q.* What celebrated Cape south of Terra del Fuego ?

*A.* Horn.—This Cape is the southern extremity of Hermit's Island.

*For a further description, see Key, page 208.*

*Map No. 1.—WESTERN HEMISPHERE.*

*Q.* Which is the most northern, Graham's Land, or the Falkland Isles ?

*A.* Falkland Isles.

*Q.* The most southern ?

*A.* Graham's Land.

*Q.* Which are the most eastern Islands ?

*A.* Sandwich Land.

*Q.* Which is the most distant from Patagonia ?

*A.* Sandwich Land.

## EUROPE.

*Pages 216-17.—Lesson 150.—Map No. 18.*

*Q.* How is Europe bounded ?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the Arctic Ocean ; E. by Asiatic Russia ; S. by the Mediterranean Sea, (which separates it from Africa,) the Sea of Marmora, the Black Sea, and the Sea of Azov ; and W. by the N. Atlantic Ocean, which separates it from N. America. (M. A.)

EUROPE is the smallest of the great divisions of the globe, being only about a fifth part of the size of Asia or America, and a third part of that of Africa. But, though thus inferior in point of size, Europe is greatly superior to the other divisions of the Old World in the enterprise, intelligence, and civilization of her inhabitants, and perhaps also in her physical advantages.

Europe forms the N. W. portion of the old or E. continent, of which it occupies a little more than two-seventh parts. Its most northern point is Cape North, in  $71^{\circ} 10'$  N. lat., on the Island Mageröe. The most southern is the Point of Tarifa in Spain, lat.  $36^{\circ} 2'$  N. ; the most eastern is on the Uralian Mts., W. of Ekatarinburg, long.  $60^{\circ} 20'$  E. ; and the most western is Cape Roca, in Portugal, long.  $9^{\circ} 30'$  W. Its extreme length, from Cape St. Vincent, in Spain, N. E., to the mouth of the R. Kara, does not much exceed 3000 ms. A line drawn from Cape Matapan, in Greece, to Cape North, would measure upwards of 2400 ms. The area is computed at 3,500,000 sq. ms. ; the pop. at 238,781,000.

*Q.* Which is its largest city and river ?

*A.* London is the largest city, and the Volga the largest river.

## DIVISIONS.

*Q.* How is Norway bounded ?

*A.* It is bounded E. by Russian Lapland and Sweden ; S. by the Skager Rack, separating it from Denmark, and W. and N. by the North Sea, and the Atlantic and Arctic Oceans. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital ?

*A.* Bergen.

NORWAY (Norw. *Norgé*, Germ. *Norwegen*) is a country of N. Europe, forming the W. portion of the great Scandinavian peninsula, and at present united to the crown of Sweden. It extends, including Norwegian Lapland, between the 58th and 71st degs. of N. lat., and the 5th and 31st of E. long. Its entire length from the Naze, its most S. promontory, to the N. Cape, is upwards of 1100 ms. Its breadth varies greatly ; in Norrland, near its N. extremity, it may average about 50 ms. ; but towards the S. it is as much as 250 ms. The area is estimated at about 121,000 sq. ms. Pop. 1,100,000. Norway is divided into 18 provinces.

*Q.* How is Sweden bounded ?

*A.* It is bounded N. E. by Russian Lapland, from which it is separated by the R. Tornea and one of its affluents ; E. and S. by the Gulf of Bothnia and the Baltic ; S. W. by the Sound, Cattegat, and Skager Rack ; and W. and N. by Norway, from which it is for the most part separated by the Dofrafields, the great mountain chain of Scandinavia. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital ?

*A.* Stockholm.

SWEDEN (in Swedish, *Sverige*) is a monarchy in the N. W. part of Europe, comprising the E. part of the Scandinavian peninsula, situated between  $55^{\circ} 20'$  and  $69^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $11^{\circ} 10'$  and  $24^{\circ} 20'$  E. long. Length above 950 ms. ; greatest breadth, about 260 ms. Area estimated at 176,000 sq. ms. Pop. 3,100,000. Sweden and Norway form at present but one kingdom, which comprehends the whole of the Scandinavian peninsula. Sweden is divided into 24 lans, or governments.

*Q.* How is Russia bounded ?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the Arctic Ocean ; E. by Asiatic Russia ; S. by the territories of Austria and Turkey, by the Black Sea, and the Caucasian territories of Russia, which are comprised within the limits of Asia ; and W. by Sweden, the Gulf of Bothnia, the Baltic Sea, and Prussia. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital ?

*A.* St. Petersburg. (Capital of the Empire.)

EUROPEAN RUSSIA, though not comprising the greatest extent of territory, surpasses the other divisions of the empire vastly in population and importance. It is situated between  $40^{\circ} 40'$  and  $70^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $17^{\circ} 40'$  and  $66^{\circ}$  E. long. Its greatest length from N. to S. is about 1900 ms. ; its greatest breadth from E. to W. is above 1600 ms. Area, 1,755,000 sq. ms. Pop. 51,000,000.

Russia is the most extensive empire, and one of the most powerful on the globe, comprehending the N. E. part of Europe, all the N. part of Asia, and a portion of N. America, situated between  $38^{\circ}$  and  $78^{\circ}$  N. lat., and between  $17^{\circ} 40'$  E., and  $130^{\circ}$  W. long. The length of its territory, on the Eastern continent, is near 6000 ms. ; the greatest breadth is above 2000 ms. The area of the whole is more than 7,000,000 sq. ms. The pop. is estimated at about 61,000,000. This vast empire is divided into three great parts, viz. European, Asiatic, and American Russia. The established religion is the Greek Orthodox, identical with that of the Greeks of the Ottoman empire. The government is an absolute despotism.

*Q.* How is Denmark bounded ?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the Skager Rack, N. E. by the Cattegat, S. E. by the Baltic Sea, S. by Lübeck, Hamburg, Mecklenburg, and Hanover, and W. by the North Sea. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital ?

*A.* Copenhagen.

DENMARK (Dan. *Dan-e-mark*) is a kingdom of Europe, between  $53^{\circ} 20'$  and  $57^{\circ} 45'$  N. lat., and  $8^{\circ} 5'$  and  $12^{\circ} 46'$  E. long. It comprises con-

tinental Denmark, which may be termed the north-western peninsula of Germany, and the large islands of Zealand and Fünen, besides several smaller ones lying near them. The length of the continental portion is about 304 ms.; greatest breadth about 106 ms. The entire area of the kingdom is computed at 22,000 sq. ms. Pop. 2,100,000.

*Q.* How is Holland bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. and W. by the North Sea, E. by Hanover and Rhenish Prussia, and S. by Belgium. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Hague.

HOLLAND, or THE NETHERLANDS, comprises the territories formerly called the Seven United Provinces; it is now a secondary European kingdom, but was, in the 17th century, and part of the 18th, an independent republic, raised by the industry and enterprise of its inhabitants, to the first rank as a commercial power. The kingdom of Holland lies in N.W. Europe, between lat.  $51^{\circ} 12'$  and  $53^{\circ} 30' N.$ , and long.  $3^{\circ} 22'$  and  $7^{\circ} 12' E.$  Length, N.E. to S.W., about 200 ms.; average breadth about 65 ms. The eastern part of the Grand Duchy of Luxemburg belongs to Holland; it is situated between lat.  $49^{\circ} 28'$  and  $50^{\circ} 13' N.$ , and long.  $5^{\circ} 45'$  and  $6^{\circ} 30' E.$ ; it is detached from the rest of the Dutch dominions, and surrounded by those of Prussia, Belgium, and France. Area about 11,000 sq. ms. Pop. 3,000,000. Holland is divided into 12 provinces.

*Q.* How is Belgium bounded?

*A.* On the N. by Holland; E. by Prussia; S. by France; and W. by the North Sea. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Brussels.

The kingdom of BELGIUM is situated between France and Holland, and has been established since the separation of its provinces from those of Holland by the revolution of 1830. Its territory is small as compared with the great European states, being only about one-eighth of that of Great Britain, while its population but little exceeds four millions. The important position, however, which this country has occupied in the political, military, commercial, and agricultural history of Europe—its former celebrity in manufactures and the fine arts—and its present rapid progress in every industrious pursuit and social improvement, give it a peculiar interest.

Belgium extends from  $49^{\circ} 27'$  to  $51^{\circ} 31' N.$  lat., and from  $2^{\circ} 37'$  to  $6^{\circ} E.$  long. The general outline of the territory is that of a triangular figure, of which the longest side stretches along the frontier of France. Belgium extends from N.W. to S.E. 193 English ms.; its greatest breadth, from N.E. to S.W., is about 127 ms. The area is estimated at 13,000 sq. ms., and the population at 4,200,000. Belgium is a limited monarchy, and is divided into 9 provinces. It possesses the western part of the Duchy of Luxemburg. The division of Limburg, a small duchy lying on the River Meuse, is still a matter of diplomatic arrangement between Belgium and Holland.

*Q.* How is England bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. and N.W. by Scotland; N.E. and E. by the North Sea; S. by the English Channel; and W. by St. George's Channel, Wales, and the Irish Sea. (M. A.)

Q. Capital?

A. London.

ENGLAND, (originally, *Engla-land*, i. e. the land of the Angles, or Engles). This most populous, wealthy, and important portion of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, comprises the most southerly, largest, and most fertile part of the Island of Great Britain. It lies W. from and opposite to France, Belgium, Holland, and the S. parts of Denmark, between  $49^{\circ} 57' 30''$ , and  $55^{\circ} 47'$  N. lat., and  $1^{\circ} 46'$  E. and  $5^{\circ} 41'$  W. long. Its S.E. extremity, at Dover, approaches to within 21 ms. of the opposite coast of France. Its shape approaches nearest to that of a triangle, of which Berwick may be considered the apex, and a line from the Land's End to the N. Foreland (342 ms.) the base; a line from the former along the W. side (426 ms.), and from the latter along the E. side (334 ms.), complete the figure. The sea-coast, if measured from one headland to another, is about 1200 ms. in extent; but if its principal indentations are followed, it will be found to be fully 2000 ms. The area amounts to 51,500 sq. ms. The pop., according to the census of 1841, was 15,119,178. England is divided into 40 counties.

Q. How is Wales bounded?

A. On the N. by the Irish Sea; S. by the Bristol Channel and the Severn River; E. by England; and W. by the Irish Sea, and St. George's Channel.

WALES is a principality, and one of the divisions of Great Britain. It lies between  $51^{\circ} 22'$  and  $53^{\circ} 26'$  N. lat., and between  $2^{\circ} 51'$  and  $5^{\circ} 20'$  W. long. It is about 135 miles in length from N. to S., and 95 from E. to W. in its greatest breadth. Area about 8500 sq. ms. Pop. in 1841, 911,603. Wales comprises two divisions, viz.: North Wales and South Wales, which are divided into 12 counties. The eldest son of the British sovereign derives his title of Prince of Wales from this country.

Q. How is Scotland bounded?

A. It is bounded N. and W. by the Atlantic Ocean; E. by the North Sea; S.E. by England, from which it is separated by the Solway Frith, the Cheviot Hills, and the R. Tweed; and S. by the Irish Sea. (M. A.)

Q. Capital?

A. Edinburgh.

SCOTLAND is one of the secondary European kingdoms, comprising the northern and smaller portion of the island of Great Britain, and forming one of the three great divisions of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, between lat.  $54^{\circ} 38'$  and  $58^{\circ} 40' 30''$  N., and long.  $1^{\circ} 46' 30''$ , and  $6^{\circ} 3' 30''$  W., or, including the Hebrides,  $7^{\circ} 44'$  W. Its greatest length, N. to S., from Dunnet Head to the Mull of Galloway, is about 280 ms.: its breadth is very unequal, varying from 32 ms., between Alloa on the Frith of Forth and Dumbarton on the Clyde, to 170 ms. between Ardnamuchan Point on the west coast, to Buchan Ness on the east. Area, including the islands, 30,000 sq. ms. Pop. in 1831, 2,365,114; in 1841, 2,620,184.

The kingdom, with its dependencies, is divided into 32 counties. Before the accession of James VI. (afterwards James I. of England) to the Eng-



lish throne, in 1603, Scotland was an independent kingdom. Till the Union, which took place in the reign of Queen Anne, though under the same sovereign with England, it still had its own parliament. According to the Articles of Union, ratified Jan. 16th, 1707, the peerage of Scotland is represented in the house of Lords by 16 peers, chosen by the whole body of Scottish peers at the commencement of each parliament. The counties were to be represented by 30 members in the house of Commons, and the boroughs by 15. This arrangement continued till 1832, when the borough representation received an addition of 8 members, making in all 53. Edinburgh is the capital of Scotland, and was formerly the residence of the Scottish kings.

*Q.* How is Ireland bounded?

*A.* It is bounded on the N. and W. by the Atlantic Ocean; N. E. by the North Channel; E. and S. by the Irish Sea, and St. George's Channel. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Dublin.

IRELAND is a large and important island of Europe, in the N. Atlantic Ocean. It is situated to the W. of Great Britain, being separated from the latter by St. George's Channel on the S., the Irish Sea in the middle, and the North Channel on the N.; the distance from St. David's Head in S. Wales, across St. George's Channel, to Carnsore Point, in Ireland, is about 50 ms.; the distance from Holyhead, in N. Wales, across the S. border of the Irish Sea, to Dublin, about 55 ms.; and the distance from the Mull of Cantire, across the North Channel, to the opposite coast of Ireland, about  $12\frac{1}{2}$  ms. Besides its proximity to England, Ireland has been long politically connected with that country; and since 1800, when its separate legislature was merged into the imperial parliament, it has formed a principal portion of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland.

This Island was called by Aristotle and Strabo *Ierne* (*Ἰέρνη*); by Cæsar, Tacitus, and Pliny, *Hibernia*; and by Mela and others, *Juvena*; these names being obviously derived from its native or aboriginal name of *Ir*, *Eri*, or *Erin*, whence also the modern name has been deduced.

Ireland is situated between the parallels of  $51^{\circ} 25'$  and  $55^{\circ} 23'$  N. lat. and of  $5^{\circ} 27'$  and  $10^{\circ} 30'$  W. long. It is of a rhomboidal figure; and, though more compact than Great Britain, is deeply indented, particularly on its S.W. and N. coasts, with bays and arms of the sea. Its greatest length from N. to S. is about 306 ms.; and its greatest breadth, from W. to E. is 182 ms.; but in many places the breadth is much less, and there is no part of Ireland above 50 or 55 ms. from the sea. Its area is estimated at about 31,000 sq. ms. The pop., by the census of 1831, was 7,767,401; and by that of 1841, 8,175,273. Ireland is divided into four provinces, viz.: Ulster in the N., Leinster in the E., Munster in the S., and Connaught in the W. These are subdivided into counties, of which Ulster contains 9, Leinster 12, Munster 6, and Connaught 5; total, 32. The administration of government is vested chiefly in the lord-lieutenant and privy council, who are appointed by the crown.

*Q.* How is France bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. W. and N. by the English Channel (*La Manche*), the Straits of Dover (*Pas de Calais*), and the North

Sea; N. E. by Belgium, Luxemburg, and the Rhenish provinces of Prussia and Bavaria; E. by the territories of Baden, Switzerland and the Sardinian States; S. by the Mediterranean and the Pyrenees, which separate it from Spain; and W. by the Bay of Biscay and the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

Q. Capital?

A. Paris.

FRANCE (Anc. *Gallia* or *Gaul*, Fr. *La France*,) is one of the richest, most important, and powerful of the states of Europe, in the W. part of which it is advantageously situated, between lat.  $42^{\circ} 20'$  and  $51^{\circ} 5' N.$ , and long.  $4^{\circ} 49' W.$  and  $8^{\circ} 16' E.$  Except on its N. E. frontier, its actual are identical with its natural boundaries; being on the E. the Rhine from the influx of the Lauter to Basle, the Jura Mts., and the Alps to the Mediterranean; the latter and the Pyrenees on the S.; and N.W. and W. the English Channel and the ocean. The shape of France is somewhat hexagonal. Its greatest length N.W. to S.E. (from the mouth of the Bidassoa R., on the Bay of Biscay, to its easternmost boundary on the Mediterranean Sea) is 664 ms.; its greatest breadth (a line crossing the former nearly at right angles) is 620 ms. Length, N. to S., Dunkirk to the eastern end of the Pyrenees, over 600 ms.; greatest breadth E. to W. (a line passing from the coast westward of Brest, through Paris) about the same; least breadth E. to W. about its centre, 335 ms. Inclusive of Corsica, which, though belonging naturally to Italy, forms a dep. of France, the total area is estimated at 205,000 sq. ms. Pop., in 1801, 27,349,000; in 1821, 30,461,875; in 1831, 32,569,223; in 1836, 33,540,910; in 1846, estimated at 34,200,000. The government of France is a limited monarchy.

Q. How is Spain bounded?

A. It is bounded N. by the Bay of Biscay and by France, being separated from the latter by the Pyrenees; S. and E. by the Strait of Gibraltar and the Mediterranean; and W. by Portugal and the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

Q. Capital?

A. Madrid.

SPAIN (Anc. *España*, Span. *Hispania*, Fr. *Espagne*,) an extensive and once powerful kingdom of S. Europe, occupying the E. and largest portion of its S. W. peninsula; between lat.  $36^{\circ} 5'$  and  $43^{\circ} 30' N.$ , and long.  $3^{\circ} 20' E.$ , and  $9^{\circ} 10' W.$  Greatest length E. to W., about 650 ms.; greatest breadth, 550 ms. Area 183,000 sq. ms. Pop. estimated at 12,000,000. Spain comprises 12 great divisions, or Captain-generalships, and these are divided into 48 provinces; nearly all the large divisions correspond in name and location with the kingdoms into which this country was so long divided during the middle ages. The région occupied by Spain and Portugal is often called, by way of distinction, the "Peninsula;" no other part of Europe is so designated.

Q. How is Portugal bounded?

A. It is bounded N. and E. by Spain, and S. and W. by the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

Q. Capital?

A. Lisbon.

PORTUGAL (Anc. *Lusitania*) is the most western kingdom of Europe. It occupies the greater part of the W. portion of the Spanish peninsula, situated between the 37th and 42d degs. N. lat., and the 6th and 10th W long. Length N. to S., 350 ms.; average breadth, about 110 ms. Area, 39,000 sq. ms. Pop. 3,700,000.

Geographically considered, Portugal is properly a dependency on, or portion of Spain; and, in fact, all the mountain chains and great rivers by which she is traversed originate in the eastern and more extensive portion of the peninsula.

Q. How is Austria bounded?

A. It is bounded N. by Saxony, Prussia, the free city of Cracow, and Russian Poland; E. by Russia and Turkey; S. by Turkey, the Gulf of Venice, the territories of the Pope, Modena, and Parma; and W. by Sardinia, Switzerland, and Bavaria. (M. A.)

Q. Capital?

A. Vienna.

The EMPIRE OF AUSTRIA, (Ger. *Oestreich*, which signifies "eastern Empire") is one of the largest and most important European states. It is situated in central and southern Europe; and, with the exception of a narrow strip at its S. extremity, projecting along the coast of the Gulf of Venice, its territory forms a very compact mass. It extends from about 42° to 51° N. lat., and from about 8° 30' to 26° 30' E. long. Its length, from Lake Maggiore, in Italy, to the E. frontier of Transylvania, is about 860 ms.; and its breadth (exclusive of Dalmatia), from the S. frontier of Croatia to the most N. point of Bohemia, about 492 ms. The total area is estimated at 277,534 sq. Eng. ms. The extensive frontier of the empire, upwards of 4250 ms. in length, has the rare advantage of being well defined by natural boundaries; such as mountains, large rivers, lakes, and the sea, offering favourable military positions for defence, with the exception of a portion of the frontier of Galicia, towards the Russian provinces, which is open.

The Austrian empire is composed of many states, differing widely in extent and population. As the far greater part of the provinces were united under the imperial sceptre by peaceable means—that is, by inheritance or by treaty—the boundaries of all remain as they existed while they formed independent states, with the exception of the Italian provinces, whose frontiers and divisions date only from 1815. The population, exclusive of Lombardy and Venice, is estimated at 32,500,000; including that kingdom, 36,950,000.

Q. How is Prussia bounded?

A. It consists chiefly of two parts; the larger of which, or Eastern Prussia, is bounded N. by the Baltic Sea; E. by Russia, Russian Poland, and Cracow; S. by the Austrian States of Galicia, Moravia, and Bohemia, with Saxony and other German States; and W. by Hesse-Cassel, Brunswick, Hanover, and Mecklenburg. West Prussia, or the provinces on the Rhine, are bounded N. by Hanover; S. and S. E. by the territories of Bavaria, Nassau, and several of the smaller German States; N. W. and W. by Holland and Belgium; and S. W. by France. (M. A.)

Q. Capital?

A. Berlin.

PRUSSIA (Ger. *Preussen*,) is an important European kingdom, situated between  $49^{\circ} 50'$  and  $55^{\circ} 52'$  N. lat., and  $5^{\circ} 50'$  and  $22^{\circ} 54'$  E. long. The principal part of the Prussian dominions lies continuously along the S. shore of the Baltic, between Russia and Mecklenburg, comprising the N. part of what was formerly Poland, and most of the N. of Germany. The inland frontier of this part of the monarchy on the E. and S. is sufficiently connected; but on the W. side it is very ragged, some small independent states being almost entirely surrounded by the Prussian dominions. But exclusive of this principal portion, there is an extensive Prussian territory on both sides the Rhine, divided into the provinces of Westphalia and Rhine. This portion is separated from the rest of the monarchy by Hesse-Cassel, part of Hanover, Brunswick, &c. The Canton of Neufchatel, in Switzerland, and some detached territories in Saxony, also belong to Prussia. Length of Eastern Prussia, from N. N. E. to S. S. W., 600 ms.; greatest breadth about 340 ms. Area about 88,000 sq. ms. Area of West Prussia, or the Provinces on the Rhine, about 17,000 sq. ms. Area of the whole Prussian Monarchy, including, besides the above, the Canton of Neufchatel, in Switzerland, and several other small detached pieces of territory, about 107,000 sq. ms. Total pop., in 1816, 10,402,631; in 1825, 12,308,948; in 1846, 14,000,000. Prussia is an absolute monarchy, but the government is administered with so much mildness and liberality, that the people enjoy, perhaps, as great a share of practical liberty as is permitted in any constitutional kingdom in Europe.

Q. How is Bavaria bounded?

A. On the N. and N. W. by the principalities of Reuss and the Saxon Duchies; N. E. by the kingdom of Saxony; E. by Bohemia and Upper Austria; S. by the Tyrol; W. by Wirtemberg, Baden, Hesse Darmstadt, and Hesse Cassel.

Q. Capital?

A. Munich.

BAVARIA, (Ger. *Baiern*), a kingdom in the interior of Germany, consisting of two distinct portions. The one situated to the E. of the Rhine, containing above seven-eighths of the whole kingdom, and commonly called the Territory of the Danube and the Mayne, extends from  $47^{\circ} 18'$  to  $50^{\circ} 41'$  N. lat., and from about  $9^{\circ}$  to  $13^{\circ} 46'$  E. long. The other portion of the Bavarian dominions, the territory of the Rhine, or Rhenish Bavaria, is situated on the W. bank of that river, and is completely disjoined from the preceding by the territories of Baden and Hesse Darmstadt. It extends from  $48^{\circ} 57'$  to  $49^{\circ} 50'$  N. lat., and from  $7^{\circ} 6'$  to  $8^{\circ} 31'$  E. long. The total area of Bavaria is 31,997 sq. ms., or about equal to that of Ireland. The pop. is estimated at 4,370,000.

Q. How is Hanover bounded?

A. On the N. W. by the North Sea; N. and N. E. by the Elbe (which separates it from the territories of Hamburg, Denmark and Mecklenburg) and by Mecklenburg; E. and S. E. by Prussia and Brunswick; S. W. by Hesse Cassel, Lippe Schauenburg and the Prussian province of Westphalia; and W. by Holland.

Q. Capital?

A. Hanover.



HANOVER (German *Hannover*), a kingdom in the N.W. part of Germany, situated between  $51^{\circ} 18'$  and  $53^{\circ} 52'$  N. lat., and  $6^{\circ} 48'$  and  $11^{\circ} 40'$  E. long. It may be regarded as consisting principally of three portions, the two larger of which lie within nearly the same latitudes, and are almost, though not quite, divided from each other by the grand duchy of Oldenburg. The third is much smaller, and is separated from the more northerly of the other two by the territory of Brunswick. Hanover encloses the grand duchy of Oldenburg within its territories on all sides except the N., where the latter is bounded by the North Sea. The whole contains an area of 14,720 sq. ms. The pop. is estimated at 1,755,000.

*Q.* How is Saxony bounded?

*A.* On the N. by Prussian Saxony, and Brandenburg; S. by Bohemia; and W. by the Saxon Duchies and Prussian Saxony.

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Dresden.

The kingdom of Saxony is in the interior of Germany, the centre of the kingdom being about 260 ms. distant from the nearest part of the Baltic, and 300 ms. from the North Sea. It lies between  $50^{\circ} 10'$  and  $51^{\circ} 28'$  N. lat., and  $11^{\circ} 55'$  and  $15^{\circ} 3'$  E. long. Length about 140 ms., greatest breadth 75 ms. Area 7200 sq. ms. Pop. 1,706,000. This kingdom is, for its extent, the most populous in Germany.

*Q.* How is Wirtemberg bounded?

*A.* On the N., the W. and the S.W. by the territory of Baden; E. and S. E. by Bavaria; and S. by the Lake of Constance and the Hohenzollern Principalities.

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Stuttgart.

WIRTEMBERG, or, as it is often written, Wurtemberg, is an interior kingdom of Germany, on the head waters of the Danube river. The centre of the kingdom is nearly equi-distant from the North Sea and the Gulf of Venice, being about 330 miles S.E. of the nearest coasts of the former, and 280 from that of the latter. Wirtemberg lies between  $47^{\circ} 35'$  and  $49^{\circ} 35'$  N. lat., and  $8^{\circ} 15'$  and  $10^{\circ} 30'$  E. long. Length 140 ms., greatest breadth 96 ms. Area 7770 sq. ms. Pop. estimated at 1,713,000.

*Q.* How is Baden bounded?

*A.* On the N. by Bavaria and Hesse Darmstadt; E. by Wirtemberg; S. by Switzerland and the lake of Constance; and W. by the Bavarian territory of the Rhine and the eastern part of France, from which it is separated by the river Rhine.

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Carlsruhe.

BADEN is the largest and most populous of the German grand duchies. It lies along the E. bank of the Rhine, and is situated between  $47^{\circ} 30'$  and  $49^{\circ} 50'$  N. lat., and  $7^{\circ} 30'$  and  $9^{\circ} 50'$  E. long. Length near 190 ms., greatest breadth about 100 ms. The area is estimated at 5800 sq. ms. Pop. 1,200,000.

*Q.* What do the Hessian States comprise?

*A.* The electorate of Hesse Cassel, the Grand Duchy of Hesse Darmstadt, and the landgraviate of Hesse Homburg.



*Q.* How is Hesse Cassel bounded ?

*A.* N. by Prussia and Hanover ; S. by Hesse Darmstadt ; E. by Prussia, the Saxon Duchies, and Hesse Darmstadt ; and W. by Prussia, and the territories of Frankfort, Waldeck, and Nassau.

HESSE CASSEL (Ger. *Hessen Cassel*), is an interior state, and is called an electorate. It lies chiefly on the R. Fulda, one of the head branches of the Weser, and comprises one large and two smaller and detached portions of territory, the last, however, being so unimportant as to be of but little account in the general estimate. The chief division of the state is situated between  $50^{\circ} 6'$  and  $51^{\circ} 39'$  N. lat., and  $8^{\circ} 25'$  and  $10^{\circ} 15'$  E. long. The largest of the detached territories, the county of Schaumberg, lies about 60 ms. N. of the capital : it is surrounded by the territories of Prussia, Hanover, and Lippe. The smallest detached territory, the lordship of Schmalkalden, lies about 60 ms. S. E. of the capital. It is enclosed on all sides by the territories of the Saxon Duchies, except on the S. E., where it adjoins a small detached Prussian territory. The area of the electorate is about 4352 sq. ms. Pop. 650,000.

*Q.* How is Hesse Darmstadt bounded ?

*A.* On the N. by Hesse Cassel ; S. by Baden and the Rhenish territory of Bavaria ; E. by Bavaria and Hesse Cassel ; and W. by Hesse Homburg, Prussia, and Nassau.

*Q.* Capital ?

*A.* Darmstadt.

HESSE DARMSTADT is a Grand Duchy, and the most populous of the Hessian states : it consists principally of two detached portions, one of which lies N. of the R. Mayne, and the other S. of that stream. These territories are separated from each other by the republic of Frankfort, and a part of Hesse Cassel : a smaller detached portion lies on the N. W. frontier of Hesse Cassel. The chief portions of this state are situated between  $49^{\circ} 23'$  and  $50^{\circ} 50'$  N. lat., and  $7^{\circ} 50'$  and  $9^{\circ} 36'$  E. long. Area of the whole, 3600 sq. ms. Pop. 740,000.

*Q.* How is Hesse Homburg bounded ?

*A.* The largest district is bounded S. by the Republic of Frankfort, E. by Hesse Darmstadt, and W. by Nassau. The smaller district is bounded N. by Rhenish Prussia, S. by Rhenish Bavaria and part of Saxe Coburg, and W. by a district belonging to Oldenburg.

*Q.* Capital ?

*A.* Homburg.

HESSE HOMBURG is a Landgraviate in the W. part of Germany ; it consists of two distinct portions, which lie on opposite sides of the Rhine, 50 miles apart. The largest of these districts, the Lordship of Homburg, contains the capital, and is situated N. of the territory of Frankfort on the Mayne. The smaller district constitutes the Lordship of Meisenheim. It lies about 50 ms. S. W. of the former. United area, 138 sq. ms. Pop. 24,000.

The Saxon Duchies comprise four small states, situated in the interior of Germany. They are intermingled with the Schwartzburg and Reuss principalities, and are bounded on the N. by Prus-

sia; S. by Bavaria; E. by Saxony; and W. by Bavaria and Hesse Cassel. These states comprise *Saxe Weimar*, *Saxe Coburg Gotha*, *Saxe Meiningen Hilburghausen*, and *Saxe Altenburg*.

**SAXE WEIMAR**, or **SAXE WEIMAR EISENACH**, (Ger. *Sachsen Weimar*.) is a Grand Duchy, consisting of the two principalities of Weimar and Eisenach, composed of several detached portions, lying between  $50^{\circ} 25'$  and  $51^{\circ} 30'$  N. lat., and  $9^{\circ} 50'$  and  $12^{\circ} 15'$  E. long. Area about 1438 sq. ms. Pop. 232,000. Weimar is the capital.

**SAXE COBURG GOTHA** (Ger. *Sachsen Coburg Gotha*) is a Duchy, consisting chiefly of two distinct portions, viz., the principalities of Coburg and Gotha. The first is situated between  $50^{\circ} 9'$  and  $50^{\circ} 24'$  N. lat., and  $10^{\circ} 40'$  and  $11^{\circ} 15'$  E. long. The other is situated between  $50^{\circ} 35'$  and  $51^{\circ} 6'$  N. lat., and  $10^{\circ} 20'$  and  $11^{\circ}$  E. long. Area of the duchy, 1024 sq. ms. Pop. 156,000. Gotha is the capital.

The princes of this house are particularly fortunate in their matrimonial alliances. The king of Belgium, the queen consort of Great Britain, the queen consort of Portugal, the Grand Duchess of the heir presumptive of all the Russias, besides other individuals less splendidly connected, are all members of the reigning family of this latter state.

**SAXE MEININGEN HILBURGHAUSEN**, is a Duchy composed of the ancient Duchy of Meiningen, the principalities of Hilburghausen and Saalfeld, and some smaller districts. It lies chiefly between  $50^{\circ} 12'$  and  $50^{\circ} 53'$  N. lat., and  $10^{\circ} 7'$  and  $11^{\circ} 40'$  E. long. Area about 875 sq. ms. Pop. 130,000. Meiningen is the capital.

**SAXE ALTENBURG** (Ger. *Sachsen Altenburg*) is the smallest of the Saxon Duchies. It consists of two nearly equal portions, separated from each other by the territory of Reuss, and is situated between  $50^{\circ} 44'$  and  $51^{\circ} 6'$  N. lat., and  $11^{\circ} 20'$  and  $12^{\circ} 40'$  E. long. Area about 491 sq. ms. Pop. 114,000.

**MECKLENBURG** is a maritime state of Germany, lying on the southern coast of the Baltic Sea, and extending thence to the river Elbe, which separates it from Hanover. It consists of two distinct states, Mecklenburg Schwerin, and Mecklenburg Strelitz, and comprises a territory nearly equal in extent to that of Baden.

It is one of the least improved states of Germany, and is remarkable for the circumstance that nearly one-half the population consists of nobility, a large portion of whom, however, being destitute of property, are reduced to the condition of peasants, and are obliged to work for their support, at the most common occupations.

The Grand Duchy of **MECKLENBURG SCHWERIN** is the largest and most westerly part of Mecklenburg; it lies between  $53^{\circ}$  and  $54^{\circ} 20'$  N. lat., and  $10^{\circ} 35'$  and  $13^{\circ} 57'$  E. long. On the N. it is bounded by the Baltic Sea; W. by Lubeck and Lauenburg; S. by Hanover and the Prussian province of Brandenburg; E. by Mecklenburg Strelitz, and Prussian Pomerania. Length from E. to W., about 110 ms., average breadth nearly 45 ms. Area 4755 ms. Pop. 450,000. Schwerin is the capital.

The Grand Duchy of **MECKLENBURG STRELITZ**, the smallest of the Mecklenburg states, extends from  $53^{\circ} 9'$  to  $53^{\circ} 47'$  N. lat., and from  $12^{\circ} 40'$  to

13° 57' E. long., being about 50 ms. in length, and 28 in its greatest breadth. Bounded N. by Pomerania; S. and E. by Prussian Brandenburg; and W. by Mecklenburg Schwerin. Area estimated at 768 sq. ms. Pop. 84,000. Capital, Strelitz.

The Grand Duchy of OLDENBURG is a maritime state, in the N. of Germany. It is enclosed on all sides by the territory of Hanover, except on the N. where it is bounded by the North Sea. A part of its E. boundary is formed by the R. Weser, which separates it from the eastern division of Hanover.

OLDENBURG consists, exclusive of some detached portions of territory, enclosed by the Duchy of Holstein, and a small district in the southern part of Rhenish Prussia, of an oblong territory, between 52° 29' and 53° 43' N. lat., and 7° 35' and 8° 46' E. long.: greatest length from N. to S., 120 ms.; with a breadth varying from 20 to 50 ms. Area estimated at 2752 sq. ms. Pop. 252,000. The capital is Oldenburg.

The Duchy of BRUNSWICK (Ger. *Braunschweig*) lies in the interior of Germany. Its race of princes is one of the most ancient in Europe: the reigning families of Great Britain and Hanover are of the House of Brunswick; and nearly every European sovereign is either directly or collaterally related to it.

BRUNSWICK consists of five separated portions of territory, which are intermingled with the provinces of Prussia and Hanover: three are of some extent, and, with one of the smaller divisions, are nearly contiguous to one another: the remaining district lies at some distance from the others, and is nearly in contact with the territory of Bremen. The area of the whole is estimated at 1514 sq. ms. Pop. 250,000. The capital is Brunswick.

The Duchy of NASSAU is an interior state of W. Germany: part of its territory lies on the river Rhine, and part on the Mayne. The princes of Nassau trace their origin as far back as the 10th century. From the younger line, is descended the reigning family of Holland, or of Orange Nassau.

NASSAU is situated between 49° 55' and 50° 50' N. lat., and 7° 31' and 8° 35' E. long.: it is bounded N. and W. by Rhenish Prussia; S. by Hesse Darmstadt; and E. by the territories of Frankfort, Prussia, and Hesse Darmstadt. The area is estimated at 2164 sq. ms. Pop. 356,000. Capital, Wisbaden.

ANHALT is an ancient principality of Germany, situated chiefly on the river Elbe: it is enclosed on every side by the Prussian province of Saxony, except on the west, where it is partly bounded by Brunswick.

The territory of ANHALT is divided into the Duchies of Anhalt Dessau, Anhalt Bernburg, and Anhalt Cothen. It lies between 51° 35' and 52° 6' N. lat., and 10° 55' and 12° 36' E. long.\* Area of the whole, 1034 sq. ms. Pop. 136,000. Capitals of the three Duchies, respectively, Dessau, Bernburg, and Cothen.

---

\* For the area and pop. of each Duchy, see M. A., Table No. 1.

SCHWARTZBURG is a principality, in the central part of Germany, consisting chiefly of two distinct portions, the more northern of which is called the Lower County, and the southern the Upper County. The former is entirely enclosed within Prussian Saxony, and the other within the Saxon Duchies.

The territory of SCHWARTZBURG is divided into two principalities, viz. Schwartzburg Rudolstadt, and Schwartzburg Sondershausen, each of which has a part both of the Upper and the Lower Country. The first named state has an area of 448 sq. ms., and 60,000 inhabitants; its capital is Rudolstadt. The other has an area of 386 sq. ms., and 52,000 inhabitants; its capital is Sondershausen.

REUSS is a territory in the centre of Germany, consisting of two distinct principalities, viz. Reuss Greitz, and Reuss Schleitz. It also comprises two distinct sections, the smaller of which lies a few miles N. of the larger.

This territory lies between  $50^{\circ} 20'$  and  $51^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $11^{\circ} 30'$  and  $12^{\circ} 20'$  E. long. Reuss Greitz has an area of about 153 sq. ms., and 25,000 inhabitants. Reuss Schleitz has an area estimated at 453 sq. ms., and 59,000 inhabitants. Greitz is the capital of the first named state, and Lobenstein of the other.

LIPPE DETMOLD, and LIPPE SCHAUBURG, are two principalities of N. W. Germany, comprising territories separated a few miles from each other, by part of the Prussian province of Westphalia.

LIPPE DETMOLD consists of the counties of Lippe and Sternberg, being situated between  $51^{\circ} 48'$  and  $52^{\circ} 12'$  N. lat., and  $8^{\circ} 35'$  and  $9^{\circ} 10'$  E. long. Bounded on the N., S. and W. by Westphalia; and on the E. by Brunswick, and part of Waldeck, and Hesse Cassel. Area estimated at 436 sq. ms., and 78,000 inhabitants; capital, Detmold.

LIPPE SCHAUBURG lies N. N. E. of Lippe Detmold, and is less than half its extent. It is intersected by the parallel of  $52^{\circ} 20'$  N. lat., and the 9th meridian of E. long. Area estimated at 213 sq. ms. Pop. 26,000. Buckeburg is the capital.

HOHENZOLLERN is a territory of S. W. Germany, situated on both sides of the river Danube: it is surrounded by the provinces of Baden and Wirtemberg, and is intersected by the 48th parallel of N. lat., and the 9th meridian of E. long.

This territory is divided into two distinct states, viz. the principality of Hohenzollern Hechingen, and the principality of Hohenzollern Sigmaringen, which belong to two different branches of the house of Hohenzollern. The first-named state has an area estimated at 117 sq. ms., and 16,000 inhabitants; the other has an area of 426 sq. ms., and 39,000 inhabitants. Hechingen is the capital of the one, and Sigmaringen of the other.

WALDECK, or WALDECK PYRMONT, is a principality in N. Germany, consisting of two separate parts, Waldeck Proper and the county of Pyrmont. The first is bounded N. and W. by Westphalia and Hesse Cassel; the other is surrounded by the territories of Brunswick, Lippe, and Hanover.



**WALDECK PROPER** is situated between  $51^{\circ} 2'$  and  $51^{\circ} 31'$  N. lat., and  $8^{\circ} 31'$  and  $9^{\circ} 13'$  E. long. Area 459 sq. ms. The county of Pyrmont, with an area hardly 1-20th part as great as that of Waldeck Proper, lies about 30 miles further N., being intersected by the 52d parallel of N. lat., and the meridian of  $9^{\circ} 15'$  E. long. Total area 459 sq. ms. Pop. 56,000. Arolsen is the capital.

**LICHTENSTEIN**, the smallest of the German Principalities, is situated in S. Germany on the river Rhine, which separates it from the Swiss Canton of St. Gall.

This little territory is intersected by the parallel of  $47^{\circ} 10'$  N. lat., and the meridian of  $9^{\circ} 32'$  E. lon. It is bounded on the E. by the territories of Austria, and on the S. and W. by those of Switzerland. Area 53 sq. ms. Pop. 6000. Vadutz is the capital.

The Lordship of **KNIPHAUSEN**, the smallest state in Europe, is enclosed within the territories of the Duke of Oldenburg. It was recognised as an independent state by the Germanic Diet, in 1826. The area is 17 sq. ms. Pop. about 3000. Capital the Castle of Kniphausen.

The **FREE CITIES OF GERMANY**, or the Hanse towns, comprise Hamburg, Lubeck, Bremen and Frankfort. These cities are the remains of a powerful league or alliance, that was formed during the middle ages by certain cities and towns, for the mutual support of their commerce against the ravages of the pirates and robbers, who then infested nearly all parts of Europe, as well as against the rapacity and encroachments of the neighbouring nobles and kings.

This extensive confederacy, when at the height of its power, comprised 85 of the most commercial cities and towns of Europe. Its alliance was courted, and its power was dreaded by the most potent states; it made war with and defeated several monarchs, and in one instance deposed a king of Sweden. The increased security and improved condition of modern times rendered this association no longer necessary, and it was at length dissolved in 1630, after an existence of about 400 years.

Hamburg, Lubeck, Bremen and Frankfort, are Republics or Free Cities, and have each a small adjacent territory attached to them. On the formation of the Germanic Confederation in 1815, they were recognised as independent states and members of the Diet.

The Republic of **HAMBURG** comprises the territory on the right bank of the Elbe, in which the city is situated, together with some smaller districts, the chief of which is the bailiwick of Ritzebuttel, at the mouth and on the left bank of the river, and in which the town of Cuxhaven is situated. Area of the Republic, 134 sq. ms. Pop. 153,500. It is bounded on the N., the E., and the W. by the Danish territories of Holstein and Lauenburg, and on the S. by the river Elbe, which separates it from Hanover.

**HAMBURG**, the chief commercial emporium of Germany, and the third city in population, is situated on the north bank of the river Elbe, 75 miles from the sea, in  $55^{\circ} 33'$  N. lat., and  $9^{\circ} 59'$  E. long. It is supposed to have been



founded by Charlemagne, and had attained considerable importance so early as the beginning of the 12th century. In the 13th it concurred in the formation of the Hanseatic league. It suffered greatly during its occupation by the French in the time of Napoleon, but has since recovered its trade and importance, and has more than doubled the number of its inhabitants. Pop. in 1814, 60,000; in 1846, 128,000.

The Republic of **LUBECK** is situated chiefly on the west side of and near the mouth of the Trave, a small river which flows into the Baltic Sea. There are also several very small detached portions of territory lying S. of the city. It is bounded N. and W. by Holstein; S. by Lauenburg; and E. by Mecklenburg. Area of the Republic, 122 sq. ms. Pop. 67,200.

The city of **LUBECK** is situated on the W. side of the R. Trave, 8 ms. from the Baltic Sea, in  $53^{\circ} 51'$  N. lat.,  $10^{\circ} 41'$  E. long. It is the capital of the Hanse towns, and though not so prosperous as formerly, is still a place of considerable commercial importance. Pop. 26,000.

The Republic of **BREMEN** is the smallest of the German Free States. Its territory lies on both sides of the river Weser, about 40 ms. from the sea, the chief part being on the right bank of the river. Area 72 sq. ms. Pop. 57,800.

The city of **BREMEN** is, after Hamburg, the most commercial in Germany. It is built on both sides of the Weser. The old town is on the right and the new town on the left bank of the river, the two divisions being connected by a bridge. Bremen was founded in the 8th century, and has long been an important commercial town. Lat.  $53^{\circ} 4'$  N., long.  $8^{\circ} 49'$  E. Pop. 42,000.

The Republic of **FRANKFORT** lies on both sides of the river Mayne, one of the chief tributaries of the Rhine, and a few miles above where the former flows into the latter. The larger part of its territory is on the S. side of the river. Area 113 sq. ms. Pop. 64,570.

**FRANKFORT** stands on the right bank of the Mayne, across which there is a bridge connecting it with Sachsenhausen, one of its suburbs. It is an important city, and may be regarded as the capital of the whole Germanic Confederation. It is very ancient, and has been long noted for its fairs and the importance of its commercial transactions. Lat.  $50^{\circ} 7'$  N., long.  $8^{\circ} 36'$  E. Pop. 54,000.

The Grand Duchy of **LUXEMBURG**, the westernmost part of Germany, lies between the rivers Meuse and Moselle. It was apportioned by the treaty of April 19th, 1839, between Holland and Belgium. The title of Grand Duke of Luxemburg, with the right of suffrage in the Germanic Diet, is enjoyed by the king of Holland.

**LUXEMBURG** is bounded N. by Belgium; E. by the Prussian province of the Rhine; and S. and S.W. by France. It lies between  $49^{\circ} 25'$  and  $50^{\circ} 28'$  N. lat., and  $5^{\circ}$  and  $6^{\circ} 30'$  E. Greatest length 120 ms. Breadth 75 ms. Area of the whole, 2347 sq. ms. Pop. 305,000. Of the foregoing, Belgium has the largest share both of the territory and the population. The capital,

Luxemburg, is in Dutch Luxemburg, and belongs to Holland. It is one of the strongest fortresses in Europe.

HOLSTEIN and LAUENBURG are duchies in the N. W. part of Germany, belonging to Denmark. They form the S. part of that kingdom, and its sovereign, as Duke of Holstein and Lauenburg, has a seat in, and is entitled to vote in the Germanic Diet.

The territories of HOLSTEIN and LAUENBURG, considered as one district, is bounded N. by Sleswick, the central province of Denmark; N. and N.W. by the Baltic Sea; S. by Hanover, from which it is separated by the river Elbe; E. by Mecklenburg; and W. by the North Sea. It lies between  $53^{\circ} 30'$  and  $54^{\circ} 26'$  N. lat., and  $8^{\circ} 46'$  and  $11^{\circ} 7'$  E. long. Greatest length about 100 ms., breadth 70 ms. Area 3691 sq. ms. Pop. 410,000. Gluckstadt, on the Elbe, is the capital, although Altona, situated a few miles above it, on the same stream, is much superior in population and importance.

*Q.* How is Switzerland bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. and E. by Germany; S. by Italy; and W. and N.W. by France. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capitals?

*A.* Zurich, Berne, and Lucerne.

SWITZERLAND (Anc. *Helvetia*, including part of *Rhætia*; Ger., *Schweitz*; Fr. *La Suisse*) is a mountainous country of central Europe, between  $45^{\circ} 48'$  and  $47^{\circ} 48'$  N. lat., and  $5^{\circ} 57'$  and  $10^{\circ} 30'$  E. long. Length, near 230 ms.; greatest breadth, above 140 ms. Area, about 15,000 sq. ms. Pop. 2,100,000. Switzerland is a republic consisting of 22 confederated states, called *cantons*. All the cantons of Switzerland are under a republican form of government, excepting Neuchâtel, in which the king of Prussia exercises the right of sovereignty. The Swiss confederation has no permanent capital; by a federal enactment of 1815, Zurich, Berne, and Lucerne, are alternately the seat of the general government for two years at a time.

*Q.* How is Italy bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by Germany and Switzerland; E. by part of Austria and the Gulf of Venice; S. and S. W. by the Mediterranean Sea; and W., in the northern parts, by France. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Rome.

ITALY (Lat. *Italia*, Fr. *Italie*), one of the most celebrated and fertile countries of Europe, the seat of the greatest empire of antiquity,\* and of art, science, and civilization when the surrounding countries were immersed in barbarism. It is finely situated, comprising the whole of the central peninsula of S. Europe, with the extensive and rich country to the N. of the peninsula, and included between the Alps and the Mediterranean. It extends between lat.  $37^{\circ} 46'$  and  $46^{\circ} 30'$  N., and long.  $6^{\circ} 30'$  and  $18^{\circ} 30'$  E. In antiquity it was known by the names of *Hesperia*, *Ausonia*, *Saturnia*, *Ænotria*, &c.; but these names, though loosely applied to the whole country, were strictly applicable only to particular portions of its surface. Various derivations have been assigned to the term Italy. (See *Faccioliati*, *Lexicon*, voce *Italia*.) In the first instance, it is said to have designated only its more

\* The ancient Roman Empire.

S. portion, or what is now the peninsula of Calabria Ultra; but in the course of time it superseded every other name, and was gradually extended to the whole country, from the Alps southward. In shape, Italy has been familiarly likened to a boot, the heel formed by the Terra d'Otranto, and the foot by Calabria, both in the Neapolitan dominions. The general direction of the Italian peninsula is S. E. and N. W.; its length, from Mount St. Gothard to Cape Spartivento, is 750 Eng. ms.; its breadth varies from about 380 ms. in N. Italy, to less than 80 ms. near its centre; and in one part of Calabria it is only 18 ms. from sea to sea. The area of the whole, including its larger Islands, Sicily, Sardinia, and Corsica, and the smaller, as Elba, the Lipari group, &c., is estimated at 122,000 sq. ms. Pop. 22,000,000.

This country, once the most important commercial and manufacturing region in Europe, is now dependent upon other nations for the superb fabrics with which she once supplied them; her ships no longer cover the Mediterranean; her merchants, who were once her nobles and her princes, retain only the shadow of mighty names. In the middle ages, Venice, Genoa, Florence, and Pisa, were the chief marts of the European commerce with the East Indies; and Italians were scattered all over Europe for the purposes of trade. The discovery of a passage by sea deprived them of the commerce with India, and the prosperity of these republics declined.

Before Rome had (2100 years ago) absorbed all the vital powers of Italy, this country was thickly inhabited, and, for the most part, by civilized nations. In the north of Italy alone, which offered the longest resistance to the Romans, dwelt a barbarous people, the Gauls. Farther south, on the Arno and the Tiber, a number of small tribes, such as the Etruscans, the Samnites, and Latins, endeavoured to find safety by forming confederacies. Less closely united, and often hostile to each other, were the Greek colonies of Lower Italy, called Magna Græcia.

Italy, in the middle ages, was divided into Upper, Middle, and Lower Italy. The first division comprehended all the states situated in the basin of the Po; the second extended between the former and the kingdom of Naples, which formed the third.

Modern Italy, with its dependent Islands, comprises 12 political divisions; viz., Austrian Italy, the kingdom of Sardinia, the principality of Monaco, the duchies of Parma, Modena, and Lucca, the grand-duchy of Tuscany, the republic of San Marino, the Papal States, the kingdom of Naples, French Italy (the Island of Corsica), and British Italy (the Island of Malta, &c.)

*Q.* How is Greece bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by Turkey, E. by the Archipelago,\* and S. and W. by the Mediterranean Sea.† (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Athens.

Greece (Anc. Gr., Ἑλλάς, *Hellas*; Lat., *Græcia*) is a country in the S. E. part of Europe, once distinguished above all others as the seat of civilization, learning, and the arts. Passing over that period of Grecian history, which was so brilliant, and is so well known, we will merely observe that, after undergoing various vicissitudes, during the decline of the Roman power, Greece became at last permanently incorporated with the Ottoman

\* That part of the Mediterranean denominated the *Ægean Sea*.

† Denominated, on the W. of Greece, the *Ionian Sea*.

empire, on the fall of Constantinople, 1453, and remained in this condition till 1821, when the last successful struggle for Grecian freedom commenced. After a long and sanguinary contest, the independence of Greece, through the interference of England, France, and Russia, was at length recognised by the Turkish sultan, in 1829. The present kingdom of Greece is situated between  $36^{\circ} 23'$  and  $39^{\circ} 14'$  N. lat., and  $20^{\circ} 43'$  and  $24^{\circ} 35'$  E. long., including the island of Negropont. All the principal islands of the *Ægean Sea* (*Archipelago*) lying W. of the 26th meridian of E. long., with the exception of Candia (Anc. *Crete*), belong also to the kingdom of Greece. Area estimated at 21,000 sq. ms. Pop. 797,000. The government is a limited hereditary monarchy, under the protection of England, France, and Russia.

*Q.* How is Turkey bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by Austria; E. by the Black Sea and Russia; S. by the Sea of Marmora, the Archipelago, and the kingdom of Greece; and W. by the Mediterranean Sea, the Gulf of Venice, and Austria. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Constantinople.

**TURKEY**, or the **OTTOMAN EMPIRE**,\* is an extensive country, partly in S. E. Europe, and partly in W. Asia, comprising some of the most celebrated, best situated, and naturally finest provinces of the continents to which they belong. Its limits are not easily defined, being usually represented as including several extensive countries, that are nominally independent. Moldavia, Wallachia, and Servia, in European Turkey, are now connected with the Porte by rather slender ties; though, as some of their fortresses are garrisoned by Ottoman troops, and as they continue to pay tribute to the Sultan, they may still, perhaps, be properly included within the wide range of the Turkish dominions. Egypt, however, and the other African territories that formerly belonged to the Porte, may now be considered as virtually separated from it, yielding only such an acknowledgment of sovereignty as is dictated by respect and courtesy to the head of the Mohammedan faith and the vicegerent of the prophet; and, but for the interference of England and other European powers, Syria and Palestine would have remained annexed to the dominions of the pacha of Egypt.

**EUROPEAN TURKEY**, including Wallachia, Moldavia, and Servia, comprises, with the exception of the new kingdom of Greece, nearly the whole

---

\* The religion of Turkey is Mohammedanism; the Grand Seignior is regarded as the vicegerent of the prophet, and the protector of the Moslem faith. The government is an absolute despotism, the sultan being under no other restraint than what the laws of the Koran impose. The moral condition of the Turkish empire is deplorable; gross ignorance pervades all classes; and the apathy and indifference evinced by the people to improvement of any kind, are such as are to be found only in Mohammedan or pagan countries. The late sultan made some efforts to produce a beneficial change, but nothing of any moment has been effected. The present sovereign seems also anxious to introduce improvements: amongst those contemplated, are the establishment of 20,000 schools, and the formation of rail-roads throughout the empire; the culture of cotton likewise, on a large scale, is to be encouraged by the government, in those parts of the empire suited to its growth.



of the most easterly of the three great peninsulas of S. Europe, extending from  $39^{\circ}$  to  $48\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  N. lat., and from  $15\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  to  $29\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  E. long. It is bounded on the N. by the Austrian empire, from which it is separated by the Save, the Danube, and the E. Carpathian Mts.; on the N. E. it is separated from the Russian province of Bessarabia by the Pruth; on the E. it has the Black Sea, the Channel of Constantinople (*Bosphorus*), the Sea of Marmora, and the Strait of the Dardanelles (*Hellespont*); on the S., the Archipelago and Greece; and on the W., the Mediterranean, the Gulf of Venice (*Adriatic*), and the Austrian province of Dalmatia.

Very different estimates have been formed of the extent and population of this country, and neither is known with anything approaching to precision. The area is usually stated at about 207,000 sq. ms., being rather larger than that of France, and the pop. at about 10,000,000.

## SEAS.

*Q.* Where is the White Sea?

*A.* It is in the N. part of Russia, and leads into the Arctic Ocean. (M. A.)

The White Sea is a large gulf of the Arctic Ocean, between  $63^{\circ} 40'$  and  $68^{\circ} 40'$  N. lat., and  $32^{\circ}$  and  $45^{\circ}$  E. long. The length is about 400 ms.; the breadth varies from 30 ms. to above 100 ms.

*Q.* Where is the Baltic Sea?

*A.* It is in the N. of Europe, and separates Sweden and the Danish islands from Germany, Prussia, and Russia, and is connected with the North Sea by the Cattegat and Skager Rack. (M. A.)

It extends from  $54^{\circ}$  to  $66^{\circ}$  N. lat., and from  $10^{\circ}$  to  $30^{\circ}$  E. long. It is about 800 ms. long. The superficial extent is estimated at above 160,000 sq. ms. Towards the northern extremity it forms two large branches, the Gulf of Bothnia, which runs nearly N., and the Gulf of Finland, extending in an easterly direction.

*Q.* Where is the North Sea?

*A.* It is between Great Britain on the W., and the Netherlands,\* Germany, Denmark, and Norway on the S. E. and E. (M. A.)

It is considered to extend from the Strait of Dover to the northernmost of the Shetland Islands. Length, 650 ms.; greatest breadth, about 450 ms.

*Q.* Where is the Irish Sea?

*A.* It is between England and Ireland, and leads into St. George's Channel. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Mediterranean Sea?

*A.* It is bounded N. by Europe, E. by Asia, and S. by Africa, communicating at its W. extremity, by the Strait of Gibraltar, with the N. Atlantic Ocean, and at its N. E. extremity, by the Dardanelles, with the Sea of Marmora, and by the Channel of Constantinople with the Black or Euxine Sea. (M. A.)

The Mediterranean Sea (the *Mare Internum* of the ancients, and, more recently, the *Mare Mediterraneum*) is a large and very important inland sea,

\* Holland and Belgium.



extending, in a general sense, from lat.  $30^{\circ}$  to nearly  $46^{\circ}$  N., and from long.  $5^{\circ} 54'$  W. to  $36^{\circ} 8'$  E. Greatest length, 2250 ms.; do. breadth, from Venice to the Gulf of Sidra, 1200 ms.; estimated area about 690,000 sq. ms. It is of an oblong, but very irregular shape, especially on its N. side, into which project, southward, the two large peninsulas of Italy and Greece, which thus divide the Mediterranean into three basins, the most westerly of which is included between the Strait of Gibraltar and the passage, only 72 ms. broad, between Cape Sorella in Sicily and Cape Bon in Africa; the central part extending eastward from the last-mentioned points to the meridian of Cape Matapan, in the Morea; while the E. basin, called the Levant, comprises the Grecian Archipelago and the sea that washes the coasts of Asia Minor, Syria, and Egypt. The principal inlets of the W. basin are the Bays or Gulfs of Lyons, Genoa, and Naples: it contains, also, the three large islands of Corsica, Sardinia, and Sicily; the Lipari, and other islands on the W. side of Italy; and the Balearic group, off the coast of Spain. The central basin has a large arm projecting N. under the name of the Adriatic Sea, or Gulf of Venice; its smaller inlets being the gulfs of Taranto, in Italy, Lepanto, in Greece, and Cebes and Sidra (Anc., the two *Syrtes*), in Africa: Malta, the Ionian Isles, and the numerous rocky islets skirting the shores of Dalmatia, are its chief islands. The portion of the E. basin or Levant, which stretches N. from the isle of Candia to the coast of Macedonia, is called the Archipelago, and is remarkable, not only for the extreme irregularity of its coast-line, but for the numerous clusters of volcanic islands and rocks that stud its surface; its chief gulfs are those of Egina, Salonica, Contessa, and Smyrna; and its largest islands are Lemnos, Metelin, Thasos, Scio, and Naxio. The great island of Cyprus lies in the angle between the coasts of Asia Minor and Syria.

It is a curious fact, that, though the Mediterranean generally be so deep, that soundings, even where possible, are of no practical utility, except in some of its bays and harbours, the depth of the channel between Sicily and Tunis, according to Sonnini and Smythe, nowhere exceeds 30 fathoms, the average not being greater than the depths of the Strait of Dover between England and France.

The chief feeders of the Mediterranean are the Ebro, Rhone, Po, and Nile, with the various waters brought from the Black Sea by the strong current that sets S.W. through the Dardanelles. But, notwithstanding this vast supply, the evaporation is so rapid, that water constantly passes in through the Straits of Gibraltar, to restore the equilibrium. The Mediterranean has long been considered a tideless sea; but this is not strictly true: for, in the Adriatic, as well as between that Sea and the Coast of Africa, tides rise from 5 to 7 feet, and their influence is felt, more or less, along the shores of Sicily, and on the W. side of the Morea. The existence of this tide, indeed, may suggest an explanation of the loss of so many vessels in that region of mist and terror, the Gulf of Sidra, where there is always a lofty swell and accumulation of waters during the prevalence of N. W. winds. A tide of 8 or 9 ft. also ebbs and flows at pretty regular intervals in the smaller Gulf of Cebes, on the same coast. In the Straits of Messina and Bonifacio, at Naples, in the narrow channel of the Euripus, and on both shores of the Strait of Gibraltar, there is an ebb and flow amounting to 3 ft. and upward; but whether these movements are to be attributed to lunar influence, or to other causes, has not been determined.

*Q.* Where is the Black Sea?

*A.* It lies between Russia in Europe on the N.; Circassia and Georgia on the N. E. and E.; Turkey in Asia on the S.; and Turkey in Europe on the W. It communicates with the Mediterranean by the channel of Constantinople, the sea of Marmora, and the strait of the Dardanelles; and with the sea of Azov by the strait of Enikale. (M. A.)

The Black Sea, called also the Euxine (Anc. *Pontus Euxinus*; Turk. *Ka-ra Deng-is*), is a large internal sea lying between the S. part of Russia in Europe and the northern part of Asia Minor, extending from  $40^{\circ} 50'$  to  $46^{\circ} 45'$  N. lat., and from  $27^{\circ} 25'$  to  $40^{\circ} 48'$  E. long. It is bounded on the N. and N.W. by the Crimea and Southern Russia; on the N. E. and E. by the Caucasian countries, Circassia, Mingrelia, and Imeritia; on the S. E. and S. by Armenia and Asia Minor; and on the W. by the Turkish governments of Rumelia and Bulgaria. Its extreme length from E. to W. is 760 ms.: its greatest width, on the 31st meridian, 400 ms.; E. from this it narrows by the projection of the Crimea, and the advance of the opposite shore of Asia Minor, to 154 ms.; again it widens to 265 ms. between the Strait of Enikale and the Gulf of Samsun, but from the last point it constantly and rapidly diminishes, till its E. coast (running due N. and S.) does not exceed 60 ms. in width. Its surface is estimated at about 160,000 sq. ms., and its coast line, including its sinuosities, considerably exceeds 2000 ms.

The Black Sea is connected with the Sea of Azov by the Strait of Enikale (Anc. *Bosphorus Cimmerius*), and with the Sea of Marmora by the Channel of Constantinople (Anc. *Bosphorus Thracius*). With these exceptions, it is wholly isolated. It is also much more compact in form than most other large bodies of water; giving off no great limbs, like the Baltic, Mediterranean, &c., and having very few, even moderately sized gulfs. The most important, that of Kirkinits (the *Carcinitus Sinus* of the ancients), lies between the N. W. shore of the Crimea and the opposite shore of S. Russia, extending as far E. as the isthmus of Perekop.

*Q.* Where is the Sea of Azov?

*A.* It is in the S. E. quarter of Europe. It communicates by the narrow Strait of Enikale (Anc. *Bosphorus Cimmerius*) with the N. E. angle of the Black Sea, and is everywhere else surrounded by the Russian territories. (M. A.)

The Sea of Azov, or Azoff, (the *Palus Mæotis* of the ancients), forms a part of the boundary between Europe and Asia. Its name is derived from the town of Azov, near its N. W. extremity. It is of a very irregular shape; its greatest length, from the long, narrow sand-bank facing the E. coast of the Crimea, to the mouths of the Don, being 200 ms.; and its greatest breadth about 110 ms. From the strait of Enikale to Taganrog is about 160 ms. It is generally shallow and encumbered with sand-banks, having, where deepest, not more than 7 fathoms water, and in some places much less.

*Q.* Where is the Sea of Marmora?

*A.* It is between Europe and Asia, communicating with the Grecian Archipelago by the Strait of the Dardanelles, and with the Black Sea by the Channel of Constantinople. (M. A.)

The Sea of Marmora or Marmara (Anc. *Propontis*) is about 150 ms. in length, and its greatest breadth is near 50 ms. This sea receives its appellation from Marmora (Anc. *Proconnesus*), a small island towards its W. extremity, which has long been celebrated for its marble quarries, whence it is supposed to derive its name, *marmor* (in the plural *marmöra*) being the Latin word for "marble."

*Q.* How long is each of these seas?

*A.* White Sea is 400 ms. long; Baltic Sea, 800; North Sea, 650; Irish Sea, 130; Mediterranean Sea, 2250; Black Sea, 760; Sea of Azov, 200; Sea of Marmora, 150. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Archipelago?

*A.* It is that part of the Mediterranean Sea lying between Asia Minor and Greece. (M. A.)

## GULFS.

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Bothnia?

*A.* It is the N. arm of the Baltic Sea, extending a little E. of N., between Russian Finland on the E., and Sweden on the W. (M. A.)

This gulf extends from  $60^{\circ}$  to near  $66^{\circ}$  N. lat. It is about 430 ms. long, and 120 ms. in average width, but at its narrowest part, the Quarken, opposite Umea, it does not much exceed 40 ms.

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Finland?

*A.* It is in the W. part of Russia, being an arm of the Baltic, which extends in an easterly direction between the Russian territories of Finland and Revel. (M. A.)

It is about 280 ms. long; its greatest breadth is about 75 ms.

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Venice?

*A.* It is that great arm of the Mediterranean extending S. E. and N. W. between the coasts of Italy on the W., and those of Austria and Turkey on the E. (M. A.)

The Adriatic Sea, or Gulf of Venice (*Mare Adriaticum* or *Superum*), extends between  $39^{\circ} 40'$  and  $45^{\circ} 50'$  N. lat., and  $12^{\circ} 10'$  and  $19^{\circ} 40'$  E. long. Length about 500 ms.; greatest breadth 130 ms. It derived its ancient name from the once flourishing sea-port town of Adria, in Northern Italy, now 18 ms. from the shore, and its modern name from Venice.

*Q.* How long are each of these?

*A.* Gulf of Bothnia is 430 ms. long; Gulf of Finland, 280; Gulf of Venice, 500. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Dantzick?

*A.* It is in the N. part of Prussia, and leads into the Baltic Sea. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Lyons?

*A.* It is in the S. part of France, and leads into the Mediterranean Sea. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Genoa?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Italy, and leads into the Mediterranean Sea. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Taranto?

*A.* It is in the S. E. part of Italy (between Apulia and Calabria,) and leads into the Mediterranean Sea. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Bay of Biscay?

*A.* It is that portion of the Atlantic Ocean which washes the N. coasts of Spain, and divides them from the W. coasts of France. (M. A.)

#### CHANNELS.

*Q.* Where is the channel called the Cattegat?\*

*A.* It is a portion of the Baltic Sea, separating the peninsula of Jutland from Sweden. (M. A.)

The Cattegat, from the Skaw (the N. E. point of Jutland), has a direction almost due S. between Jutland and Sweden for about 120 ms. The average width is near 70 ms. This gulf is narrowest at its N. end, between the Skaw and Gottenburg, and widening considerably towards the S. From Laholm Bay to the opposite Danish coast is full 100 ms. The two Belts and the Sound are the three Straits which connect the Cattegat with the Baltic, properly so called; and their direction is the same as that of the Gulf in which they terminate, namely, S. For the position of the Belts, &c., see M. A., Map No. 20.

*Q.* Where is the Skager Rack?

*A.* It separates the peninsula of Jutland from Norway, and connects the Cattegat with the North Sea. (M. A.)

The Skager Rack, the first great gulf of the North Sea, runs N. E. between the shores of Jutland and Norway for rather more than 150 ms., to the W. coast of Sweden. The average width is near 70 ms.

*Q.* Where is St. George's Channel?

*A.* It separates Wales from Ireland, and connects the Irish Sea with the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the English Channel?

*A.* It separates England from France, and connects the Strait of Dover with the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

This channel is a narrow sea above 300 ms. long; at its narrowest part, in the Strait of Dover, it is only 21 ms. wide: its greatest breadth is near 140 ms.

*Q.* Where is the North Channel?

*A.* It is between Ireland and Scotland, and connects the Irish Sea with the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Channel of Constantinople?

*A.* It is between Turkey and Asia Minor, and connects the Sea of Marmora with the Black or Euxine Sea. (M. A.)

Bosporus, commonly but incorrectly written Bosphorus, is the strait between the Euxine and the Sea of Marmora, called also the Channel of Constantinople. It is about 1 m. or  $1\frac{1}{2}$  ms. wide, and 20 ms. long.

---

\* This name is of Dutch origin, and signifies "cat's hole."



## STRAITS.

*Q.* Where is the Strait of Dover?

*A.* It separates France from England, and connects the North Sea with the English Channel. (M. A.) It is 21 ms. wide.

*Q.* Where is the Strait of Otranto?

*A.* It separates Italy from Turkey, and connects the Gulf of Venice with the Mediterranean Sea. (M. A.)

This Strait is about 45 ms. wide.

*Q.* Where is the Strait of the Dardanelles?

*A.* It separates Turkey from Asia Minor, and connects the Sea of Marmora with the Archipelago. (M. A.)

The Strait of the Dardanelles or Hellespont, which connects the Sea of Marmora with the Ægean Sea (Archipelago), is above 50 ms. in length, and from 2 to 10 ms. in breadth.

*Q.* Where is the Strait of Enikale?

*A.* It separates the Peninsula of Crimea from Circassia, and connects the Sea of Azov with the Black or Euxine Sea. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Strait of Gibraltar?

*A.* It separates Europe from Africa, and connects the Mediterranean Sea with the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

In the narrowest place the breadth of this strait is about 15 ms. Its length, from Cape Trafalgar to Europa Point, is near 40 ms.

## RIVERS.

*Q.* Where is the Petchora River?

*A.* It is in the N. E. part of Russia, rises in the Ural Mts., flows N., S. W., and N., and empties into the Arctic Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Dwina River?

*A.* It is in the N. part of Russia, and is formed by the junction of the Soukhona from the S. W., and the Vitchevda from the N. E.; and from the point of confluence, flows N. W. and empties into the White Sea by several mouths. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Onega River?

*A.* It is in the N. part of Russia, rises S. E. of Lake Onega, flows first N., then N. E., then N. W., and empties into the White Sea. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Tornea River?

*A.* It rises in the Dovrefield Mts., flows a little E. of S., separating for the most part Russian Lapland from Sweden, and empties into the Gulf of Bothnia. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Dal, or Dahl River?

*A.* It is the finest River of Sweden, rises in the Dovrefield Mts., flows first S. E., then N. E., and empties into the Gulf of Bothnia, in lat. about  $60^{\circ} 40'$  N. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Duna River?

*A.* It is in the W. part of Russia, rises near the interior, flows



S. of W. to Witepsk, thence W. of N. W. until its entrance into the Gulf of Riga.

*Q.* Where is the Niemen River?

*A.* It rises in the S. W. part of Russia, near the town of Minsk, and after a very winding course first W., then N., then W., enters the Prussian Territories, where it takes the name of Memel, and finally falls into the Kurische Haff, which communicates with the Baltic Sea, in about  $55^{\circ} 20'$  N. lat., and  $21^{\circ} 20'$  E. long.

The Niemen is remarkable among the rivers of Europe for its great and destructive inundations. At the melting of the snows, in spring, its waters are said sometimes to rise, in the short space of 10 or 14 days, 30 ft. above the ordinary level.

*Q.* Where is the Vistula River?

*A.* It is one of the great rivers of central Europe, flowing from S. to N. through Poland. It rises in Austrian Silesia, in a branch of the Carpathians, close on the frontier of Galicia, in about  $49^{\circ} 35'$  N. lat., and  $19^{\circ}$  E. long., and flowing, at first north-easterly, then northerly, afterwards westerly, and again north-easterly, divides itself into several branches, discharging a part of its waters into the Frische Haff, and a part into the Gulf of Dantzick. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Oder River?

*A.* It is a large and important river of Germany, traversing the centre of the Prussian dominion. It rises on the N. side of the Carpathian range, near its W. termination, and after flowing in a general north-westerly course, empties itself into the Stettiner Haff, near Stettin, by several mouths.

*Q.* Where is the Elbe River?

*A.* The Elbe (Anc. *Albis*) is a large and important r. of Europe, through the central part of which it flows. It rises in the Riesengebirge or Giant Mts. of Bohemia, and takes a meandering course generally in a N.W. direction, and after passing through Bohemia, Saxony, and Prussia, it separates Mecklenburg, Lauenburg, and Holstein from Hanover, and falls into the North Sea, in about lat.  $54^{\circ}$  N., and long.  $8^{\circ} 40'$  E. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Weser River?

*A.* The Weser (Anc. *Visurgis*) is a r. of N. W. Germany, and is formed by the junction, near the southern extremity of the Hanoverian dominion, of the Werra and Fulda, which rise in the *Rhön-gebirge*: its course is N. by W. till the junction of the Aller, at which point it turns N. W. and falls into the North Sea by a wide estuary, near  $53^{\circ} 30'$  N. lat., and  $8^{\circ} 30'$  E. long. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Rhine River?

*A.* It is a large river of W. Europe, rising on the N. side of the Alps, flowing through Switzerland and Germany, and falling into the North Sea or German Ocean. The principal branch, called

by the Germans Vorder-Rhein (i. e. fore Rhine,) rises a little N. E. of Mount St. Gothard, in about  $46^{\circ} 38' N.$  lat., and  $8^{\circ} 39' E.$  long. The main stream takes at first a N. E. direction through the magnificent and stupendous valley of the Rheinwald as far as Chur. Here the river deflects N., maintaining that general direction as far as the Lake of Constance, into which it pours its waters. The river leaving this beautiful lake at its W. end, near the town of Constance, enters a smaller expanse of water, called the Unter or Zetter-See, and thence, narrowing its channel, flows W. to Schaffhausen; 3 ms. below which the stream falls over a ledge of rocks 60 ft. in height, forming one of the most celebrated European cataracts. The river maintains its W. direction as far as Basle, where it assumes a pretty constant N. course, becoming the boundary between France and the grand duchy of Baden, and afterward between Baden and Rhenish Bavaria. At the junction of the Mayne, the stream takes a sudden turn W. to Bingen, on the W. bank, from which point the course of the river is pretty uniformly N.W., to the borders of the Netherlands (*Holland and Belgium*), whence it takes a westerly direction, and divides into two principal branches; the larger of these, called the Waal, joins the Meuse; the other, which retains the name of the Rhine, falls into the North Sea, in  $52^{\circ} 12' N.$  lat. (M. A.)

Rhine (Anc. *Rhenus*; Fr. *Rhin*; Ger. *Rhein*; Dutch *Rhyn*). All that portion of the r. which lies within or along the boundary of Switzerland, is called the Upper Rhine; from Bâle to Cologne it is denominated the Middle Rhine; and the remainder of the course to its mouths, the Lower Rhine. With respect to length, the Rhine is the fourth r. of Europe, but it is one of the first rank as a channel of commerce. The lower Rhine may be navigated by sea-vessels of 300 or 400 tons, though flat river-barges are generally used, on account of the numerous sand-banks. Area of basin, including tributaries, 83,298 sq. ms., or about 1-42d part of Europe.

Q. Where is the Thames River?

A. It is in the S. part of England, rises in Gloucestershire, near Cirencester, by several branches. The principal one, called the Isis, joins the Churn near Cricklade, where the united stream first takes the name of Thames; though, after the example of the literati of Oxford, it is generally called the Isis till after it passes that city. The general course of the river is easterly: it falls into the North Sea or German Ocean in about  $51^{\circ} 30' N.$  lat., and  $0^{\circ} 50' E.$  long.

The Thames (Anc. *Tamesis*) is the largest and most important river of England. It is about 233 ms. in length, and is navigable for ships of any burden to Deptford (about 4 ms. S. E. of London), for vessels of 800 tons to Catharine Docks, near the tower of London, and for barges to the confines of Gloucestershire. The greatest breadth of the Thames at London, is rather more than a quarter of a mile; the mean breadth may be 700 or 800 ft.

*Q.* Where is the Shannon River ?

*A.* It is the largest and most important river in Ireland: it rises in the N. W. part of the co. of Cavan, and, flowing at first southerly, and afterwards south-westerly, falls into the Atlantic Ocean, near  $52^{\circ} 30'$  N. lat., and  $10^{\circ}$  W. long. (M. A.)

This river in its course traverses several lakes, the principal of which are Lough Allen, Lough Ree, and Lough Deirgart. Towards its termination, the river widens into an estuary from 1 or 2 to 10 ms. broad. It is navigable for nearly 190 ms., or to within 6 or 7 ms. of its source.

*Q.* Where is the Seine River ?

*A.* It is in the N. part of France, rises in the dep. and mountain-chain of the Côte d'Or (by which it is separated from the basin of the Loire), about lat.  $47^{\circ} 30'$  N., long.  $5^{\circ}$  E., 20 ms. N. W. of Dijon. It flows generally in a N. W. direction, between the basins of the Loire on the S. W., and of the Meuse and Somme on the N. E., and falls into the English Channel (*La Manche*), which it enters by a wide estuary at Havre, about lat.  $49^{\circ} 30'$  N., and long.  $0^{\circ} 10'$  E. (M. A.)

Seine (Anc. *Sequana*), a river of France, and though by no means the largest, yet one of the most important in the kingdom, being that on which the capital is built. It flows through the deps. of Aube, Seine-et-Marne, Seine-et-Oise, Seine, Eure, and Seine-Inferieure, to the English Channel. Its entire course, in consequence of its numerous windings, is estimated at 450 ms., for nearly 300 of which it is navigable. Its source is about 1420 ft. above the level of the sea. But more than three-fourths of its descent takes place within the first 100 ms. of its course, for at Troyes it is not more than 440 ft. above the sea; and at Paris its mean elevation above the latter is only 51 ft.; and at Rouen, 26 ft. The Seine and its tributaries are connected by the canals of Briare, Orleans, and Nivernois, with the Loire; by that of St. Quentin with the Somme and Scheldt; by that of Ardennes with the Meuse; and by that of Burgundy with the Loire. The canal of Ourcq also communicates with it.

*Q.* Where is the Loire River ?

*A.* It is the principal R. of France, through the central part of which it flows in a W. direction to its *embouchure* in the Bay of Biscay. It rises in mount Gerbier de Joncs, on the W. declivity of the Cevennes, in the department of Ardèche, about lat.  $44^{\circ} 38'$  N., long  $4^{\circ} 30'$  E., at an elevation of 4593 ft. above the level of the sea. Its general direction is N. N. W. to near Orleans, after which it flows mostly W. S. W. to its mouth in the Bay of Biscay, in about lat.  $47^{\circ} 15'$  N., long.  $2^{\circ} 15'$  W. (M. A.)

The basin of the Loire (Anc. *Liger*), which comprises nearly one-fourth part of the kingdom, has the basin of the Seine on the N. E., that of the Garonne on the S. W., and that of the Rhone on the E. The entire course of the Loire is estimated at 600 ms., of which 450 are navigable. Before losing itself in the ocean, it spreads out into a considerable estuary; below Nantes it is between 2 and 3 ms. in width; but its navigation in the lower part of its course is rendered difficult by shallows and numerous islands.

Ships of 900 tons, though built at Nantes, are loaded at Paimbœuf or St. Nazaire; and all ships of considerable burden unload nearly 30 ms. below Nantes, their cargoes being conveyed to that city by lighters.

*Q.* Where is the Garonne River?

*A.* The Garonne r. (the *Garumna* of the Romans) is in the S.W. part of France: it rises in the Pyrenees, and, flowing in a north-westerly direction, unites with the Dordogne r., about 15 ms. below Bordeaux, and forms the Gironde.\* (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Douro River?

*A.* The Douro (Span. *Duero*, Anc. *Durius*) is in the N. part of Spain and Portugal; it is one of the principal rivers of that part of Europe. It rises in the Sierra de Olbion, prov. Soria, Old Castile, about lat.  $42^{\circ}$  N., and long.  $2^{\circ} 50'$  W. This river takes a generally W. course, as far as Miranda, where, turning almost due S.W., it forms a portion of the boundary of Portugal, through which it flows westward to its mouth in the Atlantic Ocean, in lat.  $41^{\circ} 8'$  N., long.  $8^{\circ} 38'$  W., 2 ms. W. of Oporto. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Tagus River?

*A.* The Tagus (Span. *Tajo*, Portug. *Tejo*), is in Spain and Portugal; it is the principal and most celebrated r. of the Spanish peninsula, through the centre of which it flows from E. to W., between the basins of the Ebro and Douro on the N. and the Guadiana on the S. It has its source in the Sierra Albaracin, on the borders of Aragon and New Castile, about lat.  $40^{\circ} 25'$  N., long.  $1^{\circ} 35'$  W., 30 ms. W. Teruel, and only 90 ms. from the Mediterranean. The Tagus flows W. S. W. to the confines of Portugal: it then turns S. S. W., and after expanding into a fine estuary, enters the Atlantic Ocean a little below Lisbon, built on its N. bank, in  $38^{\circ} 38'$  N. lat., and  $9^{\circ} 20'$  W. long. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Guadiana River?

*A.* The Guadiana (Anc. *Anas*, Arab. *Wady-Ana*) is in Spain and Portugal; it rises in the Mts. of La Mancha, about lat.  $38^{\circ} 55'$  N., long.  $2^{\circ} 48'$  W., and flowing westerly as far as Badajoz, it enters Portugal, where it curves southward, and after a very tortuous course enters the Atlantic by two mouths, in about lat.  $37^{\circ} 10'$  N., and long.  $7^{\circ} 14'$  W. It forms a part of the boundary between Spain and Portugal. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Guadalquivir River?

*A.* It is in the S. of Spain, having its sources in the departments of Murcia and La Mancha, and flowing S. W. through Andalusia. The source called the Guadalquivir, is in the Sierra de Cazorla, lat.  $37^{\circ} 51'$  N., and long.  $2^{\circ} 58'$  W.; but the true source, and that most distant from the mouth, the Gaudarmena, rises in the Sierra de Alcaraz, not far from the town so called; lat.  $38^{\circ}$

---

\* The estuary of the Garonne R., below the Dordogne, bears the name of the Gironde. It is about 25 ms. in length.



48' N., long. 2° 30' W. The general direction is S. W. by W. as far as Seville, where it takes a turn nearly S., and, after forming two islands, Isla Major and Isla Minor, flows through a marshy and most unhealthy flat into the Atlantic at San Lucar, in about 36° 44' N. lat., and 6° 20' W. long. (M. A.)

The ancient name of this river was *Bætis*; the present appellation is Arabic, *Wady-al-kebir*, the "great river." It is navigable for vessels of 100 tons as far as Seville, and for boats as high as Cordova, 774 ft. above the sea.

Q. Where is the Ebro River?

A. The Ebro (Anc. *Iberus*) is in Spain, through the N. E. part of which it flows, uniformly almost in a S. E. direction, being the only great peninsular r. that has its embouchure in the Mediterranean. It rises at Fontibre, province of Santander, on the S. declivity of the Sierra Sejos, about lat. 43° N. and long. 4° W., near the sources of the Pisuerga, an affluent of the Douro. It flows in a south-easterly direction, and falls into the Mediterranean, in about lat. 40° 40' N., long. 0° 55' E. (M. A.)

The Ebro separates the provinces of Biscay and Navarre from Old Castile, intersects Aragon in its centre, and disembogues near the southern extremity of Catalonia. It runs mostly through a succession of narrow valleys till it reaches Mequinenza; after which it enters Catalonia and flows through a more level country. At Amposta, 13 ms. W. from its mouth, it is about 300 yards wide. It immediately afterward forms a kind of delta; a navigable canal having been cut from the port of Alfaquez, or San Carlos, at its S. mouth, to Amposta. The Ebro, is navigable for boats as high as Tudela, but its current is very rapid, and its bed in many parts encumbered with rocks and shoals. To avoid these obstacles and the numerous windings of the r., the Aragon canal has been cut along the right bank from near Tudela to Sastago. An ancient Moorish canal, now dry, formerly connected the town of Alcanez, on the Guadalupe, with the Ebro. This r., before the second Punic war, formed the boundary of the Roman and Carthaginian territories; and, in the time of Charlemagne, between the Moorish and Christian dominions.

Q. Where is the Rhone River?

A. The Rhone (Anc. *Rhodanus*) is in the S. part of France; it rises in the Pennine Alps, and, traversing portions of Switzerland and France, falls into the Mediterranean Sea, between lat. 43° 15' and 48° 15' N., and long. 4° and 8° 20' E. The highest source of this river is on the W. side of the great mass of St. Gothard, but it scarcely assumes the form of a r. till its junction with three or four other streams at the foot of the glacier of its own name, a beautiful fan-shaped cluster of ice, the lower edge of which is 5470 ft. above the sea. Its course is W. S. W. as far as Martigny. Here the stream assumes a N. N. W. direction for about 24 ms., and enters the Lake of Geneva. On leaving this lake it flows first S. W., then S., till not far from Chambery it enters France S. of the Jura Mts. Here, however, it takes a sudden turn to the W. N. W., which direction it maintains with few



exceptions to its junction with the Saone at Lyons. From Lyons its direction is nearly due S. to Arles, where its delta commences; and it falls into the Mediterranean by a double set of mouths, near  $43^{\circ} 25' \text{ N. lat.}$ , and  $4^{\circ} 30' \text{ E. long.}$  Estimated area of basin, 37,300 sq. ms. (M. A.)

The Rhone enters the Mediterranean by four mouths: the first separation occurs at Arles, where two branches are formed; one called the great Rhone, running S. E., the other known as the little Rhone, pursuing a S. W. course, and both together enclosing the alluvial island of Camargue, which has an area of about 1900 sq. ms. Each of these again bifurcates a short distance above the mouth; but the east channels are those only which admit of safe navigation. The basin of the Rhone is connected by canals with the other principal rivers of France. The canal of the Rhone and Rhine connects the Doubs with the Ill, an affluent of the Rhine; the *canal du Centre* unites the Saone to the Loire, and the canal of Burgundy connects the Saone with the Yonne, a navigable branch of the Seine; so that in this way the four principal rivers of France are all united. The navigation of the mouth of the Rhone is considerably improved by the canal of Arles, which runs close to the Great Rhone, and by the canal of Beaucaire, which leaves the r. near the town of that name, and not only runs into the Mediterranean, but is joined by branch canals with the *canal du Midi*, connecting the Garonne and the Bay of Biscay with the Mediterranean. The Rhone is also connected with the Loire by a railway, which passes through the important manufacturing town of St. Etienne.

Q. Where is the Po River?

A. The Po (Anc. *Eridanus* or *Padus*) is in the N. of Italy, and is the principal r. of that part of Europe; it issues from the Alps, on the confines of France, in about  $44^{\circ} 40' \text{ N. lat.}$ , and  $7^{\circ} \text{ E. long.}$  It flows at first easterly, then northerly, till it reaches the point of about  $45^{\circ} 13' \text{ N. lat.}$ , and  $7^{\circ} 50' \text{ E. long.}$ , when its general course becomes and continues almost due E. After dividing Austrian Italy from the states of Parma, Modena, and the "States of the Church," it empties itself into the Gulf of Venice by numerous mouths, near  $45^{\circ} \text{ N. lat.}$ , and  $12^{\circ} 30' \text{ E. long.}$  (M. A.)

The principal channel or mouth, which joins the sea almost under the 45th parallel, is called the Maestra, and is always navigable for merchant vessels. Boats of 60 tons can, in all seasons, ascend the r. as high as Cremona, and, except in times of great drought, as far as Casale, in Piedmont, in long.  $8^{\circ} 27' \text{ E.}$

Q. Where is the Danube River?

A. The Danube (Anc. *Danubius*, and in the lower part of its course *Ister*, Germ. *Donau*, Hung. *Duna*) is in the central and S. E. part of Europe, and, though inferior in point of size to the Volga, in every other respect the first among European rivers. Its general course is from W. to E.: it extends between long.  $8^{\circ} 10'$  and  $29^{\circ} 40' \text{ E.}$ : its extreme N. point of lat. being  $49^{\circ} 2'$ ; and its extreme S. point  $43^{\circ} 33' \text{ N.}$  Its total course from its source to its mouths on the W. shore of the Black Sea, is about

1600 ms. ; during which it passes through the territories of Baden, Wirtemberg, Bavaria, the Austrian Empire, and Turkey.

The Danube originates in two streams, the Bregach and the Bregé, which have their sources on the E. declivity of the Black Forest, in the grand duchy of Baden, in about  $48^{\circ} 6'$  N. lat., and  $8^{\circ} 9'$  E. long. These streams having united at Donaueschingen, where they are augmented by a spring sometimes regarded as the head of the r., the united stream takes the name of the Danube. It thence proceeds at first S. E., but afterwards in a N. E. direction as far as Ratisbon, near which city it attains its extreme N. lat. It then flows in a S. E. direction to about long.  $15^{\circ}$ , and from that point mostly E. to Presburg ; thence S. E. to its confluence with the Raab, and then E. to Waitzen. At this point it turns S. and runs parallel with the Theiss to its junction with the Drave. Here it turns S. E., in which general direction it continues to Orsova, where it leaves the Austrian dominions. From this point it flows at first S. by E. to Widin ; thence its course is mostly E. by S. to near Sistow, where it attains to its most S. lat. ; and from this point E. N. E. to Rassova. It then turns N. to Galacz, and finally runs from this town generally E. to its efflux in the Black Sea, by several mouths, about lat.  $45^{\circ}$  N. (M. A.)

The basin of the Danube and its tributaries has been estimated to comprise about 1-13th part of the entire surface of Europe. It is bounded S. by the Alps and the Balkan ; and on the N. at first by the Black Forest and some minor alpine ranges, and afterwards by the Bohemian Forest, or Bohmer Wald, and Carpathian Mountains. It includes the plains of Bavaria, Hungary, and Turkey in Europe ; and the course of the Danube has been generally considered under three grand divisions, each embracing one of these plains. The Danube is navigable for large ships as far as Silistria, but there are rapids near Orsova, where it leaves the Austrian dominions, which it is impossible for any vessel to ascend, although those drawing not more than  $2\frac{1}{2}$  ft. water may sometimes descend. The navigation is also impeded in the upper part of its course, by a great number of rocks, and, lower down, by sand-banks. This r. is remarkable for its winding course, and for the multitude of its islands.

Q. Where is the Dneister River ?

A. The Dneister (the *Tyras* or *Danaster* of the ancients) is in the S. E. part of Europe. It rises on the N. side of the Carpathian Mts., in Austrian Galicia, in about  $49^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $23^{\circ}$  E. long., and, flowing in a south-easterly direction, through Galicia and the S.W. part of Russia, enters the Black Sea by a broad *liman* or swampy lake, about 19 ms. long and 5 ms. wide. (M. A.)

Q. Where is the Bog River ?

A. The Bog (Anc. *Hypanis*) is in, and rises in the S. part of European Russia, flows S. E. and enters the r. Dnieper, not far from the Black Sea. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Dnieper River ?

*A.* The Dnieper (Anc. *Borysthenes*) is in the S. part of European Russia ; it rises near the village of Dnieproosk, in the government of Smolensk, in about lat.  $56^{\circ} 20' N.$ , and flows in a general southerly direction to Kiev, thence S. E. to Ekatherinoslav, and afterwards S. W. till it unites with the Bog R., and forms a large *liman* or swampy lake at the N. N. W. extremity of the Black Sea, nearly 50 ms. long, and from 1 to 6 broad. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Don River ?

*A.* The Don (Anc. *Tanaïs*) is in the S. E. part of European Russia. It rises in the government of Tula, in  $55^{\circ} N.$  lat., nearly, and, passing by the city of Tula, flows S. to the intersection of the parallel of  $50^{\circ} N.$  lat., and the meridian of  $40^{\circ} E.$  long. ; it then turns to the E., till, at Katchalinsk, it approaches within about 36 ms. of the Volga ; here it takes a W. S. W. direction, which it pursues till it falls into the N. E. corner of the Sea of Azov, a little below the town of the same name. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Volga River ?

*A.* The Volga, or Wolga (Anc. *Rha*), is in the central and E. part of European Russia, and is the largest r. of Europe. It has its source in a small lake at the W. extremity of the gov. Tver, in lat.  $57^{\circ} 10' N.$ , long.  $32^{\circ} 20' E.$ , 220 ms. S. S. E. of Petersburg ; on the E. declivity of the Valdai plateau, near the source of the Duna, the Dnieper, and other large rivers, at an elevation of 895 ft. above the level of the sea.

It flows at first S. E., and afterward N. E. through the gov. of Tver and Jaroslavl ; at a point about 70 ms. N. W. of the town of Jaroslavl it turns to the E. S. E., which direction it generally pursues through Jaroslavl, Kostroma, Niznei, Novgoròd, and Kazan, to the confluence of the Kama, about lat.  $55^{\circ} 8' N.$ , and long.  $49^{\circ} 30' E.$  Thenceforward it flows generally S. S. W. through the governments of Sinbirsk and Saratof to Tzaritzin, where it approaches within 36 ms. of the main stream of the Don, their confluence being prevented by an intervening chain of hills. It then turns again to the S. E. through the gov. of Astrachan, and pours itself into the Caspian Sea, on its N. W. side, through an extensive delta, by more than 70 mouths, the W. and largest of these being in lat.  $46^{\circ} N.$ , and long.  $48^{\circ} E.$  (M. A.)

The basin of the Volga, comprising the central part of European Russia, has the basin of the Dwina to the N., of the Don and Dnieper to the S., and of the Oural or Ural to the E. The Volga was formerly considered as constituting a part of the boundary line between Europe and Asia ; but since the limits of these continents have been removed to the Caucasus and the Caspian, its basin, with those of its tributaries, lie wholly within Europe. From its source to its mouth its length is estimated at about 2000 ms., being about 400 ms. longer than the Danube. The area of its basin has been supposed to include upwards of 636,000 sq. ms., or considerably more than twice as

much as the basin of the Danube, and eight times as much as that of the Rhine.

It will be frequently seen that in giving the sources of the above named rivers, the names of mountains, &c., are sometimes mentioned which are not defined on the maps, and could not well be given without crowding them too much for practical purposes; but as the lat. and long. are always stated, the teacher will find no difficulty in locating them. And so, in describing their different courses, the names of cities, towns, &c., frequently occur, which are not all given on the maps.

*Q.* How long is each of these rivers?

*A.* The Petchora is 600 ms. long; Dwina, 700; Onega, 300; Tornea, 250; Dal, 300; Duna, 350; Niemen, 350; Vistula, 550; Oder, 450; Elbe, 600; Weser, 300; Rhine, 950; Thames, 233; Shannon, 200; Seine, 300; Loire, 500; Garonne, 300; Douro, 450; Tagus, 550; Guadiana, 500; Guadalquivir, 400; Ebro, 350; Rhone, 450; Po, 450; Danube, 1600; Dniester, 500; Bog, 400; Dnieper, 1000; Don, 1000; Volga, 2000. (M. A.)

#### LAKES.

*Q.* Where is Lake Onega?

*A.* It is in the northern part of European Russia, being, next to that of Ladoga, the largest lake in Europe; situated in the centre of the government of Olonetz, being intersected by the 61st and 62d parallels of N. lat., and by the 35th and 36th meridians of E. long. The river Svir forms its outlet. (M. A.)

The length of this lake from N. W. to S. E., is 130 ms.; breadth varying from 30 to 45 ms. Area variously estimated at from 3300 to 4300 sq. ms. It receives numerous rivers, and at its S. W. extremity discharges itself into the lake Ladoga by the Svir.

*Q.* Where is lake Ladoga?

*A.* It is in Russia in Europe, surrounded by the governments of Petersburg, Olonetz, and Vyborg in Finland, and extending from lat.  $59^{\circ} 58'$  to  $61^{\circ} 46' N.$ , and from long.  $29^{\circ} 50'$  to  $32^{\circ} 55' E.$  It discharges its surplus waters by the Neva r. into the gulf of Finland. (M. A.)

Though this lake contains the largest collection of fresh water in Europe, there is but little accessible information respecting it. Its length N. W. to S. E. is about 130 ms.; greatest breadth about 70 ms. Area estimated at from 6200 to 6300 sq. ms. Its depth is very unequal. It receives a number of rivers, mostly small, the chief of which are the Voux, connecting it with the Saima, the Purus, the Kalla, and other lakes in Finland; the Svir, by which the surplus waters of the lake Onega are poured into it; and the Volkhov, by which it communicates with lake Ilmen. It has several islands, chiefly toward its N. extremity; and is so full of rocks and quicksands, and so subject to storms, that, to avoid it, Peter the Great began, in 1718, the Ladoga Canal, from New Ladoga, on the Volkhov, to Schlus-



burg, on the Neva, along the S. shore of the lake, a distance of about 70 ms. This work was finished under the empress Anne, in 1732 : it is 74 ft. broad, and, according to the season, from 4 to 8 or 9 ft. deep, and has 20 large, besides many smaller sluices. It is annually navigated by an immense number of boats, chiefly with merchandise from Petersburg.

*Q.* Where is lake Peipus ?

*A.* It is in the W. part of European Russia, lying S. of the gulf of Finland, between  $57^{\circ} 48'$  and  $59^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $26^{\circ} 56'$  and  $28^{\circ} 10'$  E. long. It communicates with the above gulf by the river Narova or Narva. (M. A.)

The extreme length of this lake is about 90 ms. ; greatest breadth, 30 ms. The southern portion, which is joined to the rest by a narrow strait, is called the lake of Pskof, being situated principally within that government.

*Q.* Where is lake Wener ?

*A.* It is in the S. part of Sweden, being the largest lake in Europe, after that of Onega. This lake is intersected by the 59th parallel of N. lat., and the 13th and 14th meridians of E. long. The r. Gotha forms its outlet. (M. A.)

This lake is about 80 ms. in length, by 50 ms. in its greatest breadth, 147 ft. above the level of the sea. It receives many streams, the only outlet for its waters being a channel about 200 yards in width, immediately below which is the celebrated cataract of Trolhoetta. Though in parts very deep, a great portion of the lake is so shallow as to render its navigation difficult and dangerous.

*Q.* Where is lake Wetter ?

*A.* It is in the S. part of Sweden, about 25 ms. S. E. of Lake Wener, intersected by the 58th parallel of N. lat., and the meridian of  $14^{\circ} 30'$  E. long. Its only outlet is the r. Motala, which flows E. into the Baltic Sea. (M. A.)

Length, 70 ms. ; greatest breadth, 17 ms.

*Q.* Where is the lake of Geneva ?

*A.* The lake of Geneva, or lake Lemán (Germ. *Genfersee*, Anc. *Lacus Lemanus*), is in the S. W. extremity of Switzerland, and is the largest lake in that part of Europe. It has N. E. and S. E., the canton of Vaud or Lemán ; S. W. that of Geneva ; and S. Savoy. The r. Rhone forms its outlet. (M. A.)

This lake fills up the lower portion of a somewhat extensive valley enclosed between the Alps and the Jura. It is crescent-shaped, the convexity being directed N. N. W., and the horns facing S. S. E. Its greatest length, a curved line passing through its centre from Geneva at its W. extremity, to Villeneuve at its E., is about 47 ms. ; but along the N. shore, the distance from end to end is about 55 ms. ; while along its S. it is no more than about 40 ms. Its breadth varies considerably ; where greatest, it is about 9 ms. wide. The area is estimated at about 240 sq. ms. It is divided in common parlance, into the Great and Little Lake ; the latter is more exclusively called the lake of Geneva, and extends from that city for a



distance of 14 ms., but with a breadth never more than  $3\frac{1}{2}$  ms., to Point d'Yvoire; beyond which, lake Lemman widens considerably. The Rhone enters it near its E. extremity, and emerges from it at its S. W. extremity, where its waters, like those of the lake itself, are extremely clear, and of a deep blue colour, circumstances which have been often adverted to by Byron.

*Q.* How long is each of these lakes?

*A.* Onega is 150 ms. long; Ladoga, 130; Peipus, 90; Wener, 80; Wetter, 70; Geneva, 47. (M. A.)

#### PENINSULAS.

*Q.* Where is the peninsula of Jutland?

*A.* It is in the western part of Denmark, of which country it forms one of the largest provinces, having N. the Skager Rack, E. the Little Belt and the Cattegat, and W. the North Sea. (M. A.)

Jutland, so called from the Jutes, the ancient inhabitants, formerly comprised the whole continental portion of the Danish dominions, but it is now restricted to the part of the peninsula belonging to Denmark to the N. of Sleswick, extending from about  $55\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  to nearly  $58^{\circ}$  N. lat., being about 170 ms. in length, and from 60 to 80 ms. in breadth, comprising an area of 9950 sq. ms. Pop. in 1834, 525,952, having increased at the rate of about one per cent. per annum during the present century. It is of an oblong form, with the addition of a triangle towards the N. Surface generally flat.

*Q.* Where is the peninsula of the Morea?

*A.* It is in the southern part of Greece, and forms an important division of that kingdom; it is also the most S. portion of continental Europe; having E. the Grecian Archipelago, and S. and W. the Mediterranean Sea. (M. A.)

MOREA (Anc. *Peloponnesus*) consists of a peninsula attached to S. Greece by the isthmus of Corinth, between lat.  $36^{\circ} 15'$  and  $38^{\circ} 20'$  N., and long.  $21^{\circ} 9'$  and  $23^{\circ} 30'$  E. Its length is near 160 ms.; its breadth about 100 ms. Area estimated at 8800 sq. ms. Pop., in 1835, about 380,000. The name *Morea* was given to this peninsula by the Italians, from the quantity of mulberries (in their language "more") which it produces.

*Q.* Where is the peninsula of the Crimea?

*A.* It is in the S. part of European Russia, and may be called a four-sided peninsula, having on its E. side the *Sivache*, or Putrid Sea, the Sea of Azov, and the Strait of Enikale; everywhere else, except where it is connected with the main land, it is surrounded by the Black Sea. (M. A.)

CRIMEA (Russ. *Krim*; Anc. *Chersonesus Taurica*), is united on the N. to the main land by the isthmus of Perekop, 5 ms. in width, and lies between  $44^{\circ} 22'$  and  $46^{\circ} 10'$  N. lat., and  $32^{\circ} 36'$  and  $36^{\circ} 30'$  E. long. Its extreme length is above 190 ms.; its greatest breadth about 130 ms. The area is estimated at 8600 sq. ms. Pop. estimated at near 300,000.

*Q.* What large peninsula lies south of the Bay of Biscay?

*A.* Spain and Portugal.

*Q.* What peninsula lies west of the Gulf of Venice?

*A.* Italy.

## CAPES.

*Q.* Where is Cape Sviatoi?

*A.* It is on the N. coast of European Russia.

*Q.* Where is Cape North?

*A.* It is on the N. coast of Norway?

Cape North, in  $71^{\circ} 10'$  N. lat., commonly regarded as the northern extremity of Europe, is on the Island Magerøe. The most northern point of continental Europe is Cape Nord Kyn, in lat.  $71^{\circ} 6'$  N.

*Q.* Where is the Naze?

*A.* It is the most southern point of Norway?

*Q.* Where is Cape Clear?

*A.* It is the S. point of Clare Island, which lies off the S. extremity of Ireland, in lat.  $51^{\circ} 19'$  N., and long.  $9^{\circ} 37'$  W. (M. A.)

This Cape generally forms the point of departure, or commencement of the reckoning of vessels sailing out of St. George's Channel to the westward.

*Q.* Where is Land's End?

*A.* It is the most westerly point of England. (M. A.)

Land's End is a headland at the W. extremity of the co. of Cornwall, celebrated as being the most westerly land in England; lat.  $50^{\circ} 4' 8''$  N., long.  $5^{\circ} 41' 31''$  W. It is formed of granite cliffs, which rise about 60 ft. above the level of the sea. These assume, in some places, the appearance of shafts, and are as regular as if they had been cut by the chisel.

*Q.* Where is Cape Finisterre?\*

*A.* It forms the W. extremity of Spain. Lat.  $42^{\circ} 54'$  N., long.  $9^{\circ} 26'$  W. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape St. Vincent?†

*A.* It forms the S. W. extremity of Portugal. Lat.  $37^{\circ} 3'$  N., long.  $9^{\circ}$  W. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape de Gatt?

*A.* It is on the S. coast of Spain.

*Q.* Where is Cape Teulada?

*A.* It is the most S. point of the Island of Sardinia. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Passaro?

*A.* It is the most S. point of the Island of Sicily. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Matapan?‡

*A.* It is the most southerly point of Greece. Lat.  $36^{\circ} 23' 20''$  N., long.  $22^{\circ} 30'$  E. (M. A.)

## ISLANDS.

*Q.* Where is Iceland?

*A.* It is in the N. Atlantic Ocean, on the confines of the Arctic circle, and W. of Norway. (M. A.)

\* The name is from the Latin *finis terræ*, which is equivalent to the English "Land's End."

† The *Sacrum Promontorium* of the ancients.

‡ Anciently, *Tenarium Promontorium*.

This is a large Island under the dominion of Denmark, generally considered as belonging to Europe, but which should rather, perhaps, be reckoned in America; between lat.  $63^{\circ} 30'$  and  $66^{\circ} 40'$  N., and long.  $16^{\circ}$  and  $24^{\circ} 30'$  W. Its length is about 230 ms.; its greatest breadth about 220 ms. It is of a very irregular triangular shape, and is estimated to contain about 30,000 sq. ms. Pop. (1834) 56,000, supposed to be spread over about two-thirds of the Island, the central portion being totally uninhabited, and imperfectly explored. Reikiavig, a little town on the W. coast, is regarded as the capital of the Island.

*Q.* Where are the Loffoden Islands.

*A.* They are a group of Islands in the Atlantic Ocean, on the coast of Norway, between lat.  $67^{\circ} 40'$  and  $69^{\circ} 30'$  N., and long.  $11^{\circ} 40'$  and  $16^{\circ} 20'$  E. (M. A.)

There are five larger and seven smaller Islands, having in all from 3,000 to 4000 inhabitants. The principal are (taking a S. W. direction) Andöen, Langöen, and Hindöen, which is the largest of the whole group, and, with six others, forms, on the side of the Norwegian continent, the great gulf of West Fiord.

*Q.* Where are the Faröe Isles?

*A.* Faröe, or Feroe Islands, are a group of 22 Islands belonging to Denmark, in the Atlantic Ocean, between lat.  $61^{\circ} 15'$  and  $62^{\circ} 21'$  N., and long.  $6^{\circ}$  and  $8^{\circ}$  W., about 185 ms. N. W. of the Shetland Isles, and 320 ms. S. E. of Iceland.

The principal Island, Stromoe, in the centre, is 27 ms. long by about 7 ms. broad; the other chief Islands are Osteroe, Vaagoe, Bordoe, Sandoe, and Suderoe. Total area 495 sq. ms. Pop. about 6800. Only 17 Islands of the group are inhabited.

The Faröe isles are supposed to have been discovered by the Norwegians in the ninth century; since the union of Norway with Denmark, in the fourteenth century, they have belonged to the latter country.

*Q.* Where are the Shetland Isles?

*A.* They are a group of Islands, in the Atlantic Ocean, about 120 ms. N. E. of the N. extremity of Scotland. (M. A.)

The Shetland, or Zetland Isles, (perhaps the *Ultima Thule* of the ancients,) are separated from the Orkneys by a channel 48 ms. across, and lie principally between the parallels of  $59^{\circ} 52'$  and  $60^{\circ} 50'$  N. lat., and  $30'$  and  $1^{\circ} 40'$  W. long. Including islets, they are supposed to exceed 100 in number: but the mainland or principal Island is a good deal more extensive than all the others put together. Between 30 and 40 are inhabited. They are about twice as extensive as the Orkneys; their total area being estimated at 563,200 acres. In 1841, they had a pop. of about 30,000.

*Q.* Where are the Orkney Isles?

*A.* They are a group of Islands in the Atlantic Ocean, situated near the N. N. E. extremity of Scotland. (M. A.)

The Orkneys (Lat. *Orcadès*) are separated from the mainland of Scotland by the Pentland Frith, about 4 ms. in breadth. They are comprised between the parallels of  $58^{\circ} 44'$  and  $59^{\circ} 24'$  N. lat., and  $2^{\circ} 25'$  and  $3^{\circ} 20'$  W. long. There are about a dozen principal Islands; Pomona, or Main-

land, being decidedly the largest. But including the smaller Islands (provincially *holms*) and islets, the total number is estimated at 67, of which about 40 are uninhabited. They are supposed to comprise an area of nearly 281,600 acres, and had, in 1841, a pop. of 30,000. They belong to Great Britain. The Orkney and Shetland Islands, which are most probably the *Thule* of the ancients, form the county of Orkney and Shetland.

*Q.* Where are the Hebrides, or Western Isles?

*A.* They are a series of Islands and Islets lying along the W. coast of Scotland, partly and principally in the Atlantic Ocean, but partly also in the Frith of Clyde. (M. A.)

The Hebrides, or Western Isles of Scotland (the *Hebudes* or *Ebudes* of the ancients), are situated between  $55^{\circ} 35'$  and  $58^{\circ} 51'$  N. lat., and between  $5^{\circ}$  and  $7^{\circ} 52'$  W. long. The Islands (seven) in the Frith of Clyde constitute a co. (Buteshire), the others belong respectively to the counties of Argyle, Inverness, and Ross. The Hebrides consist of about 200 Islands, great and small, and are usually divided into the Inner and Outer Hebrides; the former embracing all those Islands which lie nearest to the mainland, including those in the Frith of Forth, the latter consisting of a long continuous range of Islands, stretching N. N. E. and S. S. W. from Barra Head, in lat.  $56^{\circ} 49'$  N., to the Butt of the Lewis, in lat.  $58^{\circ} 51'$  N. The strait, which divides the Outer Hebrides from the Inner, and from the mainland of Scotland, is called the Minch, and is, where narrowest, from 15 to 16 ms. across. The Outer Hebrides are commonly called the Long Island, and appear, in fact, as if they had originally consisted of one lengthened Island, divided at a remote era into its present portions by some convulsion of nature. Lewis and Harris (which are more extensive than all the rest put together), though considered as separate, form, in fact, only one Island; and the sounds, or arms of the sea, which intervene between the larger Islands of the group, are so interspersed with Islets, that the range is still nearly continuous. The total extent of the Hebrides is estimated at about 2750 sq. ms. or 1,760,000 acres, of which 64,000 acres are lakes. They are divided into 30 parishes, of which 5 are in the Islands in the Frith of Clyde, 17 in the Inner Hebrides, and 8 in the Outer Hebrides. The total pop. in 1801 was 74,022; in 1831, 104,021; and in 1841, 108,000. Of the 200 Islands of which the Hebrides consist, more than half are so small or so sterile as not to be inhabited. In 1808, only 79 were regularly inhabited during the whole year; while 8 were tenanted during the summer, and abandoned on the approach of winter. The greater portion of the people reside within a mile of the sea-shore: in fact, except in the Islands of Bute and Islay, scarcely an inhabited house can be seen 1000 yards from the sea-shore, or 300 ft. above the level of the sea.

*Q.* Where are the British Isles?

*A.* The islands of Great Britain and Ireland are situated in the N. Atlantic Ocean, off the W. shores of continental Europe, opposite to the N. parts of France, the Low Countries (Belgium and Holland), Denmark, and the S. parts of Sweden and Norway. (M. A.)

The British Empire, one of the most civilized, powerful, and important states that have ever existed, consists of the islands of Great Britain and Ireland, with the smaller islands contiguous to them, and their dependencies



in various parts of the world. Great Britain, the largest, and by far the richest and most populous of the British Islands, includes what were formerly the independent kingdoms of England and Scotland; the former occupying its S., most extensive and fertile, and the latter its N., and most barren portion. These two kingdoms, having been united, form with that of Ireland what is called the *United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland*, which constitutes not only the nucleus and centre, but the main body and seat of the wealth and power of the empire.

The islands of Great Britain and Ireland are situated between  $50^{\circ}$  and  $59^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $2^{\circ}$  E. and  $11^{\circ}$  W. long. Great Britain, which, from its superior magnitude and importance, gives name to the United Kingdom and the empire, is not only the largest of the European Islands, but one of the largest in the world. It lies to the E. of Ireland, and approaches at its S. E. extremity at Dover to within 21 ms. of the opposite coast of France. But as the coast of Great Britain stretches N. N. W. from Dover to Duncansby Head, the extreme N. E. point of the island, while the opposite shore of the Continent recedes in a N. E. direction, the intervening space, called the North Sea or German Ocean, is of very considerable dimensions. To the S. of the British Islands is the English Channel; and W. and N. the broad expanse of the Atlantic.

Great Britain is very irregularly shaped, being deeply indented by numerous gulfs and arms of the sea, but on the whole it approaches to the figure of a wedge, being narrowest at its N. and broadest at its S. extremity. The longest line not intersected by any considerable arm of the sea that can be drawn in Great Britain, extends from Rye in Sussex (lat.  $50^{\circ} 57' 1''$  N., long.  $0^{\circ} 44'$  E.), to Cape Wrath in Sutherland (lat.  $58^{\circ} 36'$  N., long.  $4^{\circ} 56'$  W.), a distance of about 580 ms.; and its greatest breadth from the Land's End (lat.  $50^{\circ} 4' 8''$  N., long.  $5^{\circ} 41' 31''$  W.) to a point near Lowestoffe, on the coast of Norfolk (lat.  $52^{\circ} 28' 30''$  N., long.  $1^{\circ} 46'$  E.), is about 367 ms. But, owing to the indentations already referred to, its breadth in some places is much less, being between the friths of Forth and Clyde under 40, and between the Murray Frith and the Minch under 30 ms. from shore to shore. Its area is estimated at 89,500 sq. ms., of which England and Wales contain 59,500, and Scotland (exclusive of its dependent islands) 26,000 sq. ms. The area of the Scottish Islands is estimated at 4000 sq. ms. The pop. of Great Britain, according to the census of 1841, amounts to 18,650,965.

Ireland lies to the W. of Great Britain, between the parallels of  $51^{\circ} 25'$  and  $55^{\circ} 23'$  N. lat., and of  $5^{\circ} 27'$  and  $10^{\circ} 30'$  W. long. Its figure is rhomboidal; and though it has many noble bays and harbours, it is less indented by gulfs and arms of the sea, and is decidedly more compact than Great Britain. It is everywhere surrounded by the Atlantic, except on its E. shores, which are separated from Great Britain by St. George's Channel, the Irish Sea, and the North Channel. From St. David's Head in Wales to Carnsore Point, the distance across is 50 ms.; from Port Patrick in Galloway to Donaghadee it is 22 ms.; but from the Mull of Cantire to Tor Point in Ireland, it is only 12 ms. The longest line that can be drawn in Ireland, in about the same meridian, extends from the old Head of Kinsale in Cork to Bloody Farland Point in Donegal, a distance of about 237 ms.; the longest line that can be drawn crosswise, in nearly the same parallel of lat., extends from Emlagh Rash, on the coast of Mayo, to Quintin Point, at the mouth of Lough Strangford, on the coast of the county Down, being about 182



ms. ; but in other places the breadth is a good deal less. So conveniently is Ireland situated in respect of water communication, that there is no part more than 50 or 55 ms. distant from the sea, or from one of its arms. The area of Ireland is estimated at 31,000 sq. ms.

Great Britain contains, in all, 84 counties, of which 40 belong to England,\* 12 to Wales,† and 32 to Scotland.‡ Great Britain and Ireland form together what is termed the United Kingdom, of which London is the capital. The government is a limited hereditary monarchy. The legislative power is vested in the parliament, consisting of the king or queen,§ the house of lords, and the house of commons. The king is regarded as the fountain of justice and the supreme head of the church. He is the commander-in-chief of the forces of the empire, both on land and sea. To him belongs the exclusive prerogative of granting pardons and of commuting punishments. The house of lords consists of the temporal peers of England, who are hereditary, the elective peers of Scotland and Ireland, the bishops of England, and four Irish lords spiritual. The house of lords is also the supreme court of appeal for Great Britain and Ireland. The house of commons consists of individuals elected by the different counties, cities, boroughs, and universities, to represent them in parliament. It is required by law that the candidates be possessed of a certain amount of property, excepting the sons of peers, and those who are to represent the universities. The number of members of the house of commons, at present, amounts to 658, of whom 471 are chosen by England, 29 by Wales, 53 by Scotland, and 105 by Ireland.

IRELAND is divided into four provinces, viz. : Ulster, in the N. ; Leinster, in the E. ; Munster, in the S. ; and Connaught, in the W. These are subdivided into counties, of which Ulster contains 9,|| Leinster 12,¶ Munster 6,\*\* and Connaught 5.†† Amounting in all to 32.

---

\* Bedford, Berks, Bucks (or Buckinghamshire), Cambridge, Chester (or Cheshire), Cornwall, Cumberland, Derby, Devon, Dorset, Durham, Essex, Gloucester, Hereford, Hertford, Huntingdon, Kent, Lancaster (or Lancashire), Leicester, Lincoln, Middlesex, Monmouth, Norfolk, Northampton, Northumberland, Nottingham, Oxford, Rutland, Salop (or Shropshire), Somerset, Southampton (or Hampshire), Stafford, Suffolk, Surrey, Sussex, Warwick, Westmoreland, Wilts, Worcester, York.

† Anglesea, Brecon (or Brecknockshire), Cardigan, Caermarthen, Caernarvon, Denbigh, Flint, Glamorgan, Merioneth, Montgomery, Pembroke, Radnor.

‡ Aberdeen, Argyle, Ayr, Banff, Berwick, Bute, Caithness, Clackmannan, Dumbarton, Dumfries, Edinburgh, Elgin (or Murray), Fife, Forfar (or Angus), Haddington, Inverness, Kincardine, Kinross, Kirkcudbright, Lanark, Linlithgow, Nairn, Orkney and Shetland, Peebles, Perth, Renfrew, Ross and Cromarty, Roxburgh, Selkirk, Stirling, Sutherland, Wigtown.

§ Alexandrina Victoria is now queen of Great Britain and Ireland.

|| Antrim, Armagh, Cavan, Donegal, Down, Fermanagh, Londonderry, Monaghan, Tyrone.

¶ Carlow, Dublin, Kildare, Kilkenny, King's, Longford, Louth, Meath, Queen's, Westmeath, Wexford, Wicklow.

\*\* Clare, Cork, Kerry, Limerick, Tipperary, Waterford.

†† Galway, Leitrim, Mayo, Roscommon, Sligo.

*Q.* Where is the Isle of Man?

*A.* It is in the Irish Sea, nearly equi-distant from England, Scotland, Ireland, and Wales. (M. A.)

THE ISLE OF MAN (Anc., *Mona*, *Monapia*, or *Monædia*) is an island belonging to the United Kingdom, in the Irish Sea, between lat.  $54^{\circ} 4'$  and  $54^{\circ} 27' N.$ , and long.  $4^{\circ} 17'$  and  $4^{\circ} 34' W.$ ; its N. E. extremity (the point of Ayre) being 17 ms. from Burrow-head, in Wigtownshire; its E. coast 34 ms. from St. Bee's head, in Cumberland, and the town of Peel, on its W. side, 30 ms. from Ballyquintin Point, in Ireland: greatest length, 35 ms.; greatest breadth, about 13 ms. Area, 280 sq. ms., exclusive of the Calf of Man, a small disjointed fragment of the island, at its S. extremity. Pop., in 1841, 47,000.

*Q.* Where is the Isle of Anglesea?

*A.* It is in the Irish Sea, at the N.W. extremity of Wales, from which it is separated by the Menai Strait. (M. A.)

ANGLESEA, or ANGLESEY (the *Mona* of Tacitus), is an island and county of N. Wales, in the Irish Sea, separated from the mainland of Britain by a narrow strait, varying in width from 200 yards to 2 ms. It is of a triangular form, extending, Holyhead included, about 27 ms. from E. to W., by about 20 from N. to S.; area, 173,440 acres; surface generally undulating; climate temperate, but liable to fogs; there is in most parts a great deficiency of wood, and it has generally a bare, uninviting aspect. The pop., which in 1776 amounted to 19,780, had increased in 1841 to 50,000.

*Q.* Where are the Scilly Islands?

*A.* They are a group of islands lying at the point of junction, as it were, of the English and St. George's Channels, about 30 ms. W. by S. from Land's End, the most W. point of England. (M. A.)

THE SCILLY ISLANDS belong to England, and are supposed by some to be the *Cassiterides*, or tin islands, of the ancients. There are supposed to be, in all, about 150 islands and rocks, but there are only about half a dozen of any importance. St. Mary's, the largest, is said to contain about 1640 acres; the entire area of the group, as given in the population returns, is only 5570 acres. Pop., about 2500. From their situation, they necessarily have a mild, equable temperature; and though fogs be common, the islands are very healthy.

*Q.* Where are the Balearic Isles?

*A.* They are situated in the Mediterranean Sea, off the E. coast of Spain. (M. A.)

THE BALEARIC ISLANDS (Anc. *Baleares*) consist of Majorca, Minorca, and Ivica, besides the two very small ones of Formentera and Cabrera. These islands belong to Spain, and constitute a separate province.

*Q.* Where is the Island of Majorca?

*A.* It is the largest of the Balearic Islands in the Mediterranean Sea, belonging to Spain, from the E. coast of which it is 110 ms. distant. (M. A.)

MAJORCA (Span. *Mallorca*) lies between  $39^{\circ} 15'$  and  $40^{\circ} N.$  lat., and  $2^{\circ} 23'$  and  $3^{\circ} 32' E.$  long. Greatest length, 48 ms.; greatest breadth, 42 ms.;

estimated area, 1340 sq. ms. Pop., 182,000. Its shape is that of an irregular, four-sided figure, the angles of which are formed W. by cape Tramontana, N. by cape Formenton, E. by cape Peri, and S. by cape Salinos. Palma, the chief town, is in lat.  $39^{\circ} 38' N.$ , long.  $2^{\circ} 45' E.$

**Q.** Where is the Island of Minorca ?

**A.** Minorca (Anc. *Balearis Minor*) is the second in size of the Balearic Islands, belonging to Spain, in the Mediterranean, off the E. coast of Spain, from which it is distant about 140 ms. (M. A.)

MINORCA is intersected by the 40th parallel of N. lat., and the 4th meridian of E. long.; Mahon, its cap., being in lat.  $39^{\circ} 51' 10'' N.$ , long.  $4^{\circ} 18' 7'' E.$ ; it is of an oblong shape, extending from W. N. W. to E. S. E., but somewhat concave on its S. side. Length 32 ms.; average breadth, 9 ms.; area about 290 sq. ms. Pop. 44,000.

**Q.** Where is the Island of Ivica ?

**A.** It is in the Mediterranean Sea, forming one of the Balearic group belonging to Spain, situated about 42 ms. S.W. of Majorca. (M. A.)

IVICA, Iviza or Ibiza (Anc. *Ebusus*), is situated between  $38^{\circ} 50'$  and  $39^{\circ} 7' N.$  lat., and  $1^{\circ} 22'$  and  $1^{\circ} 46' E.$  long., about 50 ms. E. by N. of Cape Nao in Valencia, Spain; the cap., on its S. W. side, being in lat.  $38^{\circ} 53' 16'' N.$ , long.  $1^{\circ} 26' 32'' E.$  It is of an irregular five-sided figure; its length from N. E. to S.W. being 27 ms., and its average breadth 15 ms. Area, about 400 sq. ms. Pop., 22,000. The capital, Iviza, is fortified, and has a good harbour.

**Q.** Where is the Island of Corsica ?

**A.** It is in the Mediterranean Sea, between Sardinia and the Genoese coast. On the N. is the Gulf of Genoa; E. the Tuscan Sea; S. the Strait of Bonifacio, separating it from Sardinia; and to the W. it is opposite the coasts of France and Spain. (M. A.)

CORSICA (Anc. *Cyrrnos*, and also *Corsi*, whence its name) is a large island of the Mediterranean, belonging to France, of which it forms a department. Its S. extremity is 10 ms. N. of the island of Sardinia, from which it is separated by the Strait of Bonifacio. Piombino, about 50 ms. distant, is the nearest town in Italy, and Antibes, 120 ms. N. W., the nearest point in France. Shape, somewhat oval, with a projecting appendage at the N. E. extremity; Area, about 3380 sq. ms. Pop. 208,000. Ajaccio is the capital.

Corsica was anciently noted for its extensive wood and its bitter honey; the bees derived the latter from the yew trees, with which the island abounded. The inhabitants were remarkable for their longevity, which was supposed to be owing to their using this bitter honey as a part of their food.

**Q.** Where is the Island of Sardinia ?

**A.** It is an island of S. Europe, and, next to Sicily, which it nearly equals in size, the largest in the Mediterranean, being separated from Corsica on the N. by the Strait of Bonifacio. (M. A.)

SARDINIA (Ital. *Sardegna*, Fr. *Sardaigne*, Anc. *Ichnusa*, from its resemblance to the print of a foot, *post Sardinia*). It lies S.W. from the central part of Italy; the mouth of the Tiber, the nearest point of the peninsula, is

140 ms. distant; the coast of Africa is 110 ms., and the head of the Gulf of Genoa 230 ms. It is of an oblong form; length, N. and S., 170 ms.; greatest breadth, 90 ms. Area, with its dependent islands, 10,534 sq. ms. Pop., in 1838, 524,633. Cagliari is the capital. [See Key, p. 240.]

In ancient times, Sardinia was highly fruitful, and was regarded as one of the granaries of Rome; but the climate, except among the mountains, was considered so unhealthy, that the Romans seldom kept a standing force there for any length of time. A species of wild parsley grew there, which, if eaten, contracted, it is said, the nerves of the face, producing involuntary and painful fits of laughter, and often causing death; hence the expression *Sardonius risus*, or *Sardonic grin*, for a horrible or hideous laugh.

*Q.* Where is the Island of Elba?

*A.* It is in the Mediterranean Sea, between the coast of Tuscany and the Island of Sardinia. (M. A.)

ELBA (the *Æthalia* of the Greeks, and the *Iloa* or *Ilva* of the Etruscans and Romans) is an Island of the Mediterranean, or rather of the Tyrrhene Sea, belonging to Tuscany, from which it is separated by the strait of Piombino, 7 or 8 ms. across, being the largest and most important of those in the possession of the grand duchy; between lat.  $42^{\circ} 43'$  and  $42^{\circ} 53'$  N., and long.  $10^{\circ} 5'$  and  $10^{\circ} 25'$  E. Shape irregular, but not very unlike that of the letter T, having the upper end towards the E. Length, E. to W., 16 ms.; breadth varying from 2 to 12 ms.; circumference about 68 ms.; area, 150 sq. ms. Pop. in 1835, 16,865.

*Q.* Where are the Lipari Islands?

*A.* They consist of a group of Islands in that part of the Mediterranean called the Tyrrhenian Sea, off the N. coast of Sicily. (M. A.)

The LIPARI ISLANDS (Anc. *Æoliæ Insulæ*) are a dependency of Sicily, from the N. coast, of which they are from 10 to 40 ms. distant, forming a part of the intendency of Messina, between lat.  $38^{\circ} 20'$  and  $38^{\circ} 55'$  N., and long.  $14^{\circ} 15'$  and  $15^{\circ} 15'$  E. Aggregate pop. of the group estimated at about 22,000, of whom about 12,500 belong to the town of Lipari. There are seven principal Islands, Lipari, Vulcano, Stromboli, Salini, Panaria, Pelicudi, and Alicudi; and a number of adjacent islets and rocks.

These Islands were called *Hephæstiades* by the Greeks, and *Vulcaniæ* by the Romans, from their emitting smoke and flames; such places being supposed to be either inhabited by, or under the immediate protection of Vulcan. Vulcano, however, was more especially sacred to the god of fire, and is said by Virgil to be "*Vulcani domus, et Vulcania nomine tellus.*" They were also frequently called *Æolian Isles*, from *Æolius*, one of their sovereigns. This prince having learned, according to Pliny, to foretell, from observations made on the smoke of the volcanoes, the coming changes of the winds, was said by the poets to have the latter under his command.

*Q.* Where is the Island of Sicily?

*A.* It is in the Mediterranean Sea, separated from the S. extremity of Italy by the narrow strait of Messina, only 2 ms. across, and from Cape Bon in Africa by a channel 85 ms. in width. (M. A.)



SICILY (Anc. *Sicilia*), the largest, finest, most important, most fruitful, and most celebrated Island of the Mediterranean, constituting that portion of the kingdom of Naples entitled the *Dominii al di la di Faro*, lies between lat.  $36^{\circ} 38'$  and  $38^{\circ} 18' N.$ , and long.  $13^{\circ} 20'$  and  $15^{\circ} 40' E.$  It is of a triangular shape, and was hence, in antiquity, sometimes called *Triginta*, but more commonly *Trinacria*, from its terminating in three promontories of Boeo. (Anc. *Lilybæum*), Passaro (Anc. *Pachynam*), and Faro (Anc. *Pelorum*). It seems to have derived its usual name of *Sicilia* from the Sicani or Siculi, its earliest inhabitants. Length, 180 ms.; greatest breadth, measuring from the N. E. to the S. E. angle of the Island, 120 ms. Area, estimated at 9900 sq. ms. Pop. in 1836, above 2,000,000.

Q. Where is the Island of Malta?

A. It is in the Mediterranean Sea belonging to Great Britain, 60 ms. S. S. W. of Cape Passaro, in Sicily, and 200 ms. N. of Tripoli, in Africa. Gozzo and Comino (the latter lies between Gozzo and Malta) are dependencies of Malta.

MALTA (Anc. *Melita*) was known to the Phœnicians at a very remote period, and to the Greeks as early as the days of Homer. Here the apostle Paul was shipwrecked, on his voyage from Palestine to Rome. It often changed masters, both in ancient times and during the middle ages. More recently, it was renowned as the residence of the Knights of St. John of Jerusalem, on whom it was conferred by the emperor Charles V. After holding it nearly three centuries, it was captured from them by Bonaparte, on his voyage to Egypt, in 1798; two years afterwards, the British took it, and have retained it ever since.

Q. Where are the Ionian Isles?

A. They are a collection of seven principal and several smaller islands in the Mediterranean Sea, on the W. and S. coasts of Greece. (M. A.)

The IONIAN ISLANDS are situated between the 36th and 40th parallels of N. lat., and between the 19th and 23d degs. of E. long., consisting of the seven principal islands of Corfu, Paxo, Santa Maura, Cephalonia, Ithaca or Theaki, Zante, and Cerigo, forming what is termed the Ionian Republic, or the Republic of Seven Islands. This republic is under the protection of Great Britain, who granted a constitution in 1817. The Lord High Commissioner, who is appointed by the British government, commands the forces, convenes the legislature, appoints the governors of the different islands, &c. Corfu is the seat of government.

In ancient times, these islands formed small independent states, until they were conquered by Alexander the Great. Afterwards, they fell under the power of Rome. Since that period, they have often changed masters. The Neapolitans, and subsequently the Venetians, who held them for more than four centuries, were in possession. More recently, the Russians, and then the French, held them. Now they are virtually a part of the British empire.

Q. Where is the Island of Corfu?

A. It is in the Mediterranean Sea, off the S. part of the coast of Albania,\* from which it is separated by a narrow channel. (M. A.)

\* Albania is a large province of European Turkey, bounded N. by Dalmatia and Servia, E. by Macedon and Thessaly, S. by Livadia, and W. by



**CORFU** (Anc. *Corcyra*) is an island in the Mediterranean, the seat of government, and most important, though not the largest of the Ionian islands. It lies between lat.  $39^{\circ} 20'$  and  $39^{\circ} 50'$  N., and long.  $19^{\circ} 35'$  and  $20^{\circ} 6'$  E.; off the S. part of the coast of Albania, from which it is separated by a channel only 3-5ths of a m. wide at its N. extremity, 6 ms. at its S. extremity, and 15 ms. in the centre. The shape of Corfu is elongated; the island describes a curve, the convexity of which is towards the W.; length, N.W. to S.E., 41 ms.; breadth greatest in the N., where it is 20 ms.; but it gradually tapers towards its S. extremity. Area, 227 sq. ms. Pop. (1833) 60,890.

*Q.* Where is the island of Cephalonia?

*A.* It is in the Mediterranean Sea, near the W. coast of Greece. (M. A.)

**CEPHALONIA** (Anc. *Cephalenia*) is the largest island of those composing the Ionian Republic, near the W. coast of Greece, opposite the Gulf of Patras; between lat.  $38^{\circ} 3'$  and  $38^{\circ} 29'$  N., and long.  $20^{\circ} 21'$  and  $20^{\circ} 49'$  E.; 8 ms. N. of Zante, 5 ms. S. of Santa Maura, and 64 ms. S. S.E. of Corfu. Length, N. N.W. to S. S.E., 32 ms.; breadth very unequal. Area, 348 sq. ms. Pop. (1833) 56,450.

*Q.* Where is the Island of Zante?

*A.* It is in the Mediterranean Sea, off the W. coast of the peninsula of Morea. (M. A.)

**ZANTE** (Anc. *Zacynthus*) is one of the Ionian islands, of which it is the third in point of magnitude and importance, about 10 ms. off the W. coast of the Morea, its capital being in lat.  $37^{\circ} 47' 17''$  N., long.  $20^{\circ} 54' 32''$  E. It is of a somewhat oblong shape; greatest length N. W. to S.E., about 20 ms.; greatest breadth, 10 ms. Area estimated at 156 sq. ms. Pop. in 1836, 35,348.

*Q.* Where is the Island of Cerigo?

*A.* It is in the Mediterranean Sea, the most southerly of the seven principal Ionian islands, situated at a considerable distance from the others, near the S. extremity of the peninsula of the Morea. (M. A.)

**CERIGO** (Anc. *Cythera*) lies between lat.  $36^{\circ} 7'$  and  $36^{\circ} 23'$  N., and long.  $22^{\circ} 52' 30''$  and  $23^{\circ} 7' 30''$  E., 25 ms. E. of Cape Matapan. Length, N. to S., 20 ms.; greatest breadth, 12 ms. Area, 116 sq. ms. Pop. (1833), 8760.

*Q.* Where is the Island of Candia?

*A.* It is in the Mediterranean Sea, situated S.E. of the Morea, belonging to the Grecian Archipelago, of which it forms the S. boundary. (M. A.)

**CANDIA** (Anc. *Crete* or *Creta*) is a large and celebrated island of the Mediterranean, lying between  $34^{\circ} 57'$  and  $35^{\circ} 41'$  N. lat., and  $23^{\circ} 29'$  and  $26^{\circ} 20'$  E. long., its N.W. extremity being 80 ms. S.E. of Cape Matapan, in Greece, and its N.W. termination 110 ms. S.W. of the nearest point of Asia Minor. It is long and narrow, its length from E. to W. being about

the Gulf of Venice, along with that part of the Mediterranean called the Ionian Sea. It is at present included in the Turkish government of Rumelia.

160 ms., with a breadth varying from 6 to nearly 50 ms., but averaging about 20 ms. Area, 3200 sq. ms. Pop., in 1839, 158,000; of whom, 100,000 are native Greeks, 44,000 Turks, and the remainder Hellenes, Jews, and other foreigners, Arab and Albanian troops, and about 2000 black slaves.

*Q.* Where is the Island of Milo?

*A.* It is in the Grecian Archipelago (Ægean Sea), about 70 ms. E. of the Morea. (M. A.)

MIL0 (Anc. *Melos*) is an island of the Archipelago, belonging to Greece, in the group of the central Cyclades, the summit of Mount St. Elias; in its S. W. angle, 2036 ft. above the sea, being in lat.  $36^{\circ} 40' 28''$  N., long.  $24^{\circ} 23' 14''$  E. Pop., 2500. This island is said by Pliny to be circular (*Omnium rotundissima*, lib. iv., cap. 12), but it is really of an oblong shape, being about 13 ms. in length from E. to W., and, where broadest, about 7 ms. across: it is indented on its N. side by a spacious bay, stretching N. W. and S. E. about 6 ms., which has deep water throughout, and forms one of the best asylums for shipping in the Levant.

*Q.* Where is the Island of Naxio?

*A.* Naxio, or Naxia, (Anc. *Naxos*,) is in the Grecian Archipelago, E. of the Morea, the largest of the group called the Cyclades, intersected by the 37th parallel of N. lat., and the meridian of  $25^{\circ} 30'$  E. long. (M. A.)

NAXIO is about 5 ms. E. of Paros, its capital of the same name being in lat.  $37^{\circ} 7'$  N., long.  $25^{\circ} 26'$  E. Shape oval; circuit, about 48 ms. Area, 106 sq. ms. Pop., 18,000.

*Q.* Where is the Island of Negropont?

*A.* It is in the Grecian Archipelago, lying close to the E. coast of independent Greece, from which it is separated by a channel (Anc. *Euripus*) varying from 40 yards to about 14 ms. in breadth. (M. A.)

NEGROPONT, or EGRIFO (Anc. *Eubœa*), is a long, straggling Island, between lat.  $37^{\circ} 57'$  and  $39^{\circ} 4'$  N., and long.  $22^{\circ} 57'$  and  $24^{\circ} 36'$  E.; and forming, with the Sporades, a separate monarchy of its own name. Length, 110 ms.; breadth from 5 to 26 ms.; the widest part being measured from Chalcis to C. Kili. Area, 1480 sq. ms. Pop., in 1836, 60,000. Eubœa is very similar in its mountainous character and geological constitution to the neighbouring continent, from which it seems to have been separated by some sudden convulsion of nature.

*Q.* Where is the Island of Lemnos?

*A.* It is in the N. part of the Grecian Archipelago (Ægean Sea), 43 ms. S. E. of the promontory of Mount Athos, in Turkey, and about the same distance W. of the Strait of the Dardanelles (Hellespont.) (M. A.)

LEMNOS (Turk. *Stalimene*) is an Island of the Grecian Archipelago, belonging to the dominion of the Porte, intersected by the parallel of  $39^{\circ} 50'$  N. lat., and the meridian of  $25^{\circ} 10'$  E. long. Area about 150 sq. ms. Pop. said to amount to 12,000, chiefly Greeks. It is of an irregular quadrilateral shape, being nearly divided into two peninsulas, by two deep bays or

indentations of the sea, Port Paradise on its N. and Port St. Antonio on its S. side.

*Q.* Where is the Island of Aland?

*A.* It is in the Baltic Sea, situated near the point of meeting of the Gulfs of Bothnia and Finland, intersected by the parallel of  $60^{\circ} 20'$  N. lat., and the 20th meridian of E. long. It is the chief island of a group consisting of many islets and rocks. (M. A.)

It is 17 ms. long and 16 ms. broad, and contains about 9000 inhabitants.

The Islands of ALAND\* are a group at the entrance of the Gulf of Bothnia, between  $59^{\circ} 50'$  and  $60^{\circ} 32'$  N. lat., and  $19^{\circ} 10'$  and  $21^{\circ} 7'$  E. long., consisting of more than 80 inhabited and upwards of 200 uninhabited islets and rocks (*Shäron*), occupying an area of about 470 sq. ms., and divided into three oblong clusters by the Straits of Delet and Lappväsi. The Baltic bounds them to the S.; on the W. the strait of Alandshaf separates them from Sweden, its width being about 24 ms.; and on the E. the straits of Wattuskiftet, which are scarcely 2 ms. broad where they are narrowest, and about 14 ms. where they are broadest, interpose between them and the Finland shore. Pop. of the group, 14,000, of Swedish extraction. Aland, the chief island, is divided by a narrow strait from Ekerö, the westernmost Island, which has a telegraph. On the E. coast of Aland is the old castle of Castleholm, now in ruins. Kumlinge has a pop. of 3000. These Islands were wrested by Russia from Sweden in 1809; and give the former a position from which they may easily made a descent on the Swedish coast.

*Q.* Where is the Island of Dago?

*A.* It is in the Baltic Sea, near the coast of Livonia,† 7 ms. N. of the Isle of Oesel, near the entrance to the Gulf of Finland. (M. A.)

This Island is 2½ ms. in circumference, and has two castles, called Dagerwort and Paden. Lat.  $58^{\circ} 44'$  N., long.  $22^{\circ} 56'$  E.

*Q.* Where is the Island of Oesel?

*A.* It is in the Baltic Sea, extending across the mouth of the Gulf of Riga, intersected by the parallel of  $58^{\circ} 30'$  N. lat., and by the 22d and 23d meridian of E. long. (M. A.)

OESEL is an Island of the Baltic, belonging to Russia, and included in the government of Livonia or Riga, principally between lat.  $58^{\circ}$  and  $58^{\circ} 40'$  N., and long.  $21^{\circ} 40'$  and  $23^{\circ}$  E. Length about 60 ms.; greatest breadth near 30 ms. Area, estimated at 1150 sq. ms. Pop., including the inhabitants of the adjacent Islands of Moen and Runoe, about 35,000, all Esthonians except some German landed proprietors, and a few Swedes.

---

\* These Islands, with the exception of Aland, are so small that they could not be shown except on a map of a scale much greater than would be suitable for a school atlas. In the Map of Europe, (M. A.) therefore, the chief island only is represented, and indicates sufficiently the general position of the group.

† Livonia is a government in the W. part of European Russia, between the Gulf of Livonia (this gulf is a portion of the Baltic, situated S. of the Gulf of Finland) and Lake Peïpus. Capital, Riga.

**Q.** Where is the Island of Gothland ?

**A.** It is in the Baltic Sea, lying S. W. of Oesel, distant 60 ms. from the continent of Sweden. (M. A.)

**GOTHLAND**, or more properly, Gottland, (i. e. "good land,") is an Island in the Baltic, belonging to Sweden, in the Län or government of the same name, lying between lat.  $56^{\circ} 55'$  and  $58^{\circ}$  N., and between long.  $18^{\circ} 10'$  and  $19^{\circ} 13'$  E. It is near 80 ms. in length ; its greatest breadth is above 30 ms. The area is computed at 1118 sq. ms. The pop. in 1833 was estimated at 39,800.

**Q.** Where is the Island of Oland, or Oeland ?

**A.** It is in the Baltic Sea, and belongs to Sweden, from which it lies S. E., separated from it by a narrow channel. (M. A.)

**OLAND** is a long and narrow island, lying E. of and separated from the province of Calmar by the narrow strait of that name. It lies between  $56^{\circ} 11'$  and  $57^{\circ} 22'$  N. lat., and  $16^{\circ} 20'$  and  $17^{\circ} 12'$  E. long.; it is about 80 ms. in length, and from 3 to 11 in width ; area estimated at 400 sq. ms. Pop. 31,000. Borgholm, on the W. coast, is the chief town.

**Q.** Where is the Island of Rugen ?

**A.** It is in the S. W. part of the Baltic Sea, belonging to Prussia, opposite to Stralsund, and separated from Pomerania by a strait varying from  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 2 ms. in width. (M. A.) [*See Map No. 20.*]

**RUGEN** is an Island in the Baltic, forming a part of the Prussian province of Pomerania, intersected by the parallel of  $54^{\circ} 30'$  N. lat., and the meridian of  $13^{\circ} 30'$  E. long. It is of an exceedingly irregular shape, being deeply indented by bays and arms of the sea. Area, 361 sq. ms. Pop. about 30,000. Bergen, the capital, situated in the centre of the Island, has 2700 inhabitants. After being long in possession of Sweden, Rugen became part of the Prussian dominions in 1815.

**Q.** Where is the Island of Zealand ?

**A.** It is situated at the entrance of the Baltic Sea, being separated from Sweden by the Sound, and from Funen and Langeland by the Great Belt. (M. A.) [*See Map No. 20.*]

**ZEALAND** is the largest and most important of the Danish Islands, being that on which Copenhagen is situated. It lies between  $54^{\circ} 58'$  and  $56^{\circ} 10'$  N. lat., and  $10^{\circ} 50'$  and  $12^{\circ} 35'$  E. long. Length, 80 ms.; greatest breadth about 65 ms. Its area may be estimated at 2830 sq. ms. Pop., in 1834, including that of the small and thinly peopled Islands of Moen and Samsøe, 439,962.

**Q.** Where is the Island of Funen ?

**A.** It is in the Danish Archipelago, the next in size after Zealand, lying between it and continental Denmark ; separated from the former by the Great, and from the latter by the Little Belt.

**FUNEN**, or **FYEN**, is a fertile island in the Baltic Sea, belonging to Denmark, situated between  $55^{\circ} 2'$  and  $55^{\circ} 40'$  N. lat., and  $9^{\circ} 40'$  and  $10^{\circ} 51'$  E. long. Length, N. E. to S. W., 50 ms.; its greatest breadth near 40 ms. Area, 1187 sq. ms. Pop. in 1834, 151,600. Odensee is the capital. Funen, together with the islands of Langeland, Taasing, &c., forms a province of Denmark.



## MOUNTAINS.

*Q.* Where are the Dofrafield Mts.?

*A.* They divide, for the most part, Sweden and Norway, and extend from about  $63^{\circ}$  N. lat. and  $12^{\circ}$  E. long. to the N. Cape, in the general direction of N. N. E. and S. S. W. (M. A.)

This chain is also called the Scandinavian Alps, and the Dovrefield, and the Doffrine Mountains.

*Q.* Where are the Ural Mts.?

*A.* The Ural, or Oural Mts. are an extensive chain, extending, including its subsidiary portions, nearly under the same meridian from the N. border of the Sea of Aral to the shores of the Arctic Ocean, or from about the 51st to about the 69th deg. of N. lat. It forms, during the greater part of its course, the boundary between Europe and Asia. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Pyrenees Mts.?

*A.* They are a lofty chain of mts. in the S. W. part of Europe, which extends from the Mediterranean to the Bay of Biscay, constituting a natural barrier between France and Spain, between lat.  $42^{\circ} 10'$  and  $43^{\circ} 20'$  N., and long.  $3^{\circ} 20'$  E. and  $2^{\circ}$  W. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Cevennes Mts.?

*A.* They are a chain of mts. in the S. of France, commencing near the E. end of the Pyrenees, and running in a general direction N. through the departments of Lozère, Gard, Upper Loire, and Ardèche, form the dividing ridge between the valleys of the Rhone and Loire rivers. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Auvergne Mts.?

*A.* They are in the S. central part of France: they branch from the Cevennes, and running in a general direction N. W., form the dividing ridge between the valleys of the Loire and the Garonne rivers. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Cantabrian Mts.?

*A.* They run W. along the whole N. coast of Spain from the Pyrenees to Cape Finisterre, the most western point of Spain. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Sierra Morena range?

*A.* In the S. part of Spain; they separate the waters of the Guadalquivir from those of the Guadiana, and run in a W. S. W. direction, ending near the S. E. corner of Portugal. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Sierra Nevada range?

*A.* In the S. part of Spain; they separate the waters of the Guadalquivir from those which flow into the Mediterranean Sea, and run in a W. S. W. direction, ending in the rock of Gibraltar, near the Strait of that name. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Alps?

*A.* They begin on the side of France between the territory of Genoa and the country of Nice, pass into Switzerland, cross that



country and Tyrol, separating for the most part Italy from France, Switzerland and Germany, and terminate, after many windings, near the Gulf of Trieste, on the Gulf of Venice. Their general form resembles that of a crescent. The highest summit is Mont Blanc. (M. A.)

The Alps constitute one of the most extensive, and, at the same time, the highest mountain system of Europe. They stretch in a vast curve, nearly semicircular, from about  $7^{\circ} 30'$  E. long., where they unite with the Apennines, to the E. extremity of the Gulf of Venice near Fiume, in about  $14^{\circ} 30'$  E. long.; an extent of 700 ms. From a point near the head waters of the Adige and the Drave, a branch of these mountains, the Norci and Styrian Alps, extends N. by E. towards the Danube, joining, it is said, the Carpathian Mountains, which traverse the E. parts of the Austrian empire. The Alps are distinguished in different quarters by various local names, for which see Map, No. 20, M. A.

The Alps are closely united to several other mountain ranges; on the W. to the Apennines, which traverse Italy in its whole length; on the S. E. to the Balkan, which covers Turkey and Greece with its numerous ramifications; and on the E. to the Carpathians.

Q. Where are the Apennines?

A. They skirt the Gulf of Genoa, and run in a S. E. direction to the S. extremity of Italy.

Or, to describe them more minutely: this chain, beginning near the meridian of  $7^{\circ} 30'$  E. long., in the territory of Genoa, traverses Italy in its whole length. When near the end of its course, it divides into two branches, one of which runs S. E. towards the Capo di Leuca, while the other advances S. to the Strait of Messina.\* (M. A.)

Q. Where are the Carpathian Mts.?

A. They are a chain which bounds Hungary on the N.W., N., and N. E., and Transylvania on the N. E., E., and S. E.† (M. A.)

Q. Where are the Balkan Mts.?

A. They are a chain of mts. in European Turkey, between Bulgaria and Rumelia, which commences near the Adriatic, (Gulf of Venice,) and terminates at the Black Sea. (M. A.)

Or, to be more minute.—This chain enters Turkey at its N.W. corner, and runs E. in an irregular line, to Cape Eminch on the Black Sea. It throws off in its progress two considerable branches towards the N., one dividing Bosnia from Servia, and the other, Servia from Bulgaria; and two towards the S., one dividing Albania from Rumelia, and the other, called the Rhodope Mts., crossing Rumelia to the shores of the Grecian Archipelago.

---

\* At its W. extremity, this range, being connected with the Alps, may be considered as an extensive offset of that great system.

† Hungary and Transylvania form part of the Austrian empire.

*Q.* Tell the length of the range, and the heights of those mts. that have figures attached to them.

*A.* The Dofrafield, or Dovrefield Mts. are 1000 ms. long, and 7600 ft. high ; Ural Mts., 1400 ms. long, 4000 ft. high ; Pyrenees, 260 ms. long, 10,000 ft. high ; the Alps, 700 ms. long ; Apennines, 700 ms. long, and from 8000 to 11,000 ft. high ; Carpathians, 550 ms. long, 8600 ft. high ; Balkan, 700 ms. long. (M. A.)

*Q.* What race of people are in the northern part of Russia ?

*A.* Samoyedes.

*Q.* What three races are partly in Europe, and partly in Asia ?

*A.* Baschkirs, Kalmucks, and Cossacks.

#### DISTANCES.

*Q.* How many miles is it from Iceland to Norway ?

*A.* 850 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* From Norway to Greenland ?

*A.* 1800 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* From Scotland to Labrador ?

*A.* 2100 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* From Ireland to Labrador ?

*A.* 1950 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* From England to Newfoundland ?

*A.* 2200 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* From France to Canada ?

*A.* 2800 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* From France to Nova Scotia ?

*A.* 3000 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* From Oporto, in Portugal, to New York ?

*A.* 3500 ms. (M. A.)

---

#### NORWAY.

*Page 219.—Lesson 151.—Map No. 18.*

*Q.* What bounds Norway on the north ?

*A.* Arctic Ocean.

*Q.* South ?

*A.* Skager Rack.

*Q.* East ?

*A.* Sweden.

*Q.* West ?

*A.* Atlantic Ocean.

*Q.* What mountains on the east ?

*A.* Dofrafield.

*Q.* How long and high are they ?

*A.* 1000 ms. long, and 7600 ft. high.

*Q.* What islands north of the Arctic Circle ?

*A.* Loffoden.

Q. Which is the chief river?

A. Glommen.

Q. How long is it?

A. 250 ms. (M. A.)

Q. What is the population of Bergen?

A. 22,000. (M. A.)

Q. Christiania?

A. 21,000. (M. A.)

Q. Drontheim?

A. 10,000. (M. A.)

Q. Kongsberg?

A. 8000. (M. A.)

Q. Which extends farthest north, Norway or Sweden?

A. Norway.

*For a further description, see Key, page 224.*

## SWEDEN.

*Page 221.—Lesson 152.—Map No. 18.*

Q. What bounds Sweden on the north and west?

A. Dofrafield Mts.

Q. East?

A. Gulf of Bothnia, and Baltic Sea.

Q. South?

A. Baltic Sea.

Q. Which are the principal rivers of Sweden?

A. Tornea, Kalix, Lulea, Skelleftea, Indal, Luisna, Dal, and Clara.

Q. Tell the length of each of these.

A. Tornea is 250 ms. long; Kalix, 250; Lulea, 200; Skelleftea, 200; Indal, 150; Luisna, 200; Dal, 300; Clara, 250. (M. A.)

Q. The chief lakes?

A. Malar, Wener, and Wetter.

Q. How long are the last two?

A. Wener is 80 ms. long; Wetter, 70. (M. A.)

Q. What is the population of Stockholm?

A. 83,000. (M. A.)

Q. Gottenburg?

A. 29,000. (M. A.)

Q. Gefle?

A. 10,000. (M. A.)

Q. Carlsrona?

A. 12,000. (M. A.)

Q. Calmar?

A. 5000. (M. A.)

Q. Upsal?

A. 5000. (M. A.)

Q. Fahlun?

A. 5000. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, page 225.*

## RUSSIA IN EUROPE.

*Page 226.—Lesson 154.—Map No. 18.*

Q. What bounds Russia on the north?

A. Arctic Ocean.

Q. What seas on the south?

A. Black, and Azov.

Q. What sea and gulf on the west?

A. Baltic Sea, and Gulf of Bothnia.

Q. What mountains on the east?

A. Ural.

Q. What rivers form the south-east boundary?

A. Volga and Don.

Q. What rivers flow into the White Sea?

A. Mezene, Dwina, and Onega.

Q. Into the Gulf of Riga?

A. Duna.

Q. The Gulf of Dantzic?

A. Vistula.

Q. The Sea of Azov?

A. Don.

Q. The Black Sea?

A. Dnieper, Bog, and Dniester.

Q. Tell the length of all these rivers.

A. Volga is 2000 ms. long; Don, 1000; Mezene, 400; Dwina, 700; Onega, 300; Duna, 350; Vistula, 550; Dnieper, 1000; Bog, 400; Dniester, 500. (M. A.)

Q. Which are the three principal lakes?

A. Onega, Ladoga, and Peipus.

Q. How long is each?

A. Onega is 150 ms. long; Ladoga, 130; Peipus, 90. (M. A.)

Q. What is the population of St. Petersburg?

A. 470,000. (M. A.)

Q. Moscow?

A. 350,000. (M. A.)

Q. Kazan?

A. 57,000. (M. A.)

Q. Cronstadt?

A. 45,000. (M. A.)

- Q. Odessa ?  
 A. 69,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Riga ?  
 A. 67,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Wilna ?  
 A. 54,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Orel ?  
 A. 30,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Warsaw ?  
 A. 141,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Cracow ?  
 A. 37,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Lublin ?  
 A. 8000. (M. A.)  
 Q. On what gulf are St. Petersburg, Cronstadt, and Revel ?  
 A. Gulf of Finland.  
 Q. How long is it ?  
 A. 280 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. How long is the Gulf of Bothnia ?  
 A. 430 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. The White Sea ?  
 A. 400 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. The Black Sea ?  
 A. 760 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. On what river is Moscow ?\*  
 A. It is on the River Moskva.  
 Q. The other chief cities ?  
 A. Riga† is on the River Duna : Moghilev,‡ on the Dnieper ; Cherson,§ on the Dnieper ; Niznei Novgorod, on the Volga ; Archangel,|| on the Dwina ; Sinbirsk,¶ on the Volga.

\* Moscow (Russ. *Moskva*) is a large city of European Russia, long the residence of the sovereigns, and still one of the capitals of the empire, on the navigable R. Moskva, 400 ms. S. E. of St. Petersburg, lat.  $55^{\circ} 45' N.$ , long.  $37^{\circ} 33' E.$

† Riga is an important city and river port of European Russia, cap. of Livonia, on the Duna, about 9 ms. from its embouchure, in the Gulf of Riga, lat.  $56^{\circ} 57' N.$ , long.  $24^{\circ} E.$

‡ Moghilev is a town of European Russia, on the Dnieper, 85 ms. S. W. of Smolensk, and 110 ms. E. by S. of Minsk, lat.  $53^{\circ} 53' N.$ , long.  $30^{\circ} 24' E.$

§ Cherson is on an eminence on the right bank of the Dnieper, about 60 ms. above Kinbourn Fort, at the entrance to the estuary of that river, lat.  $46^{\circ} 37' N.$ , long.  $32^{\circ} 38' E.$

|| Archangel is the principal city and port of trade in the N. of Russia, on the right bank of the Dwina, about 34 ms. above where it falls into the White Sea, lat.  $64^{\circ} 32' N.$ , long.  $40^{\circ} 33' E.$

¶ Sinbirsk is on the Volga, on an isthmus between it and the Sviaga, lat.  $54^{\circ} 18' N.$ , long.  $48^{\circ} 22' E.$



*Q.* When were the battles of Narva, Poltava, and Borodino fought ?

*A.* Narva in 1700 ; Poltava in 1709 ; Borodino in 1812.

*For a further description, see Key, page 225.*

---

## DENMARK.

*Page 229.—Lesson 156.—Map No. 18.*

*Q.* What bounds Denmark on the north ?

*A.* Skager Rack.

*Q.* South ?

*A.* Hanover.

*Q.* East ?

*A.* Cattegat.

*Q.* West ?

*A.* North Sea.

*Q.* What peninsula forms the chief part of Denmark ?

*A.* Jutland.

*Q.* What two islands lie east of Jutland ?

*A.* Funen and Zealand.

*Q.* On what island is Copenhagen ?

*A.* Zealand.

*Q.* What is the population of Copenhagen ?

*A.* 119,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Flensburg ?

*A.* 16,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Sleswick ?

*A.* 8000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Elsineur ?

*A.* 8000. (M. A.)

*Q.* In what direction from Denmark are the Farøe Isles ?

*A.* North-west.

*Q.* Iceland ?

*A.* North-west.

*Q.* How far from Jutland to Scotland ?

*A.* About 450 ms.

*Q.* Which are the principal of the Faroe Isles ?

*A.* Stromoe, Osteroe, Suderoe, and Sandoe.

*Q.* The population ?

*A.* 6800. (M. A.)

*Q.* How long and wide is Iceland ?

*A.* It is 230 ms. long, and 220 wide. (M. A.)

*Q.* What towns in Iceland ?

*A.* Reikiaviig, and Skalholt.

*Q.* Capes ?

*A.* North, and Closterbay.

Q. Bays ?

A. Breede, and Faxe.

The principal Danish Islands are Zealand, Funen, Laaland, Falster, and Bornholm. (*See Map No. 20.*) (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, page 225.*

## HOLLAND.

*Page 231.—Lesson 157.—Map No. 18.*

Q. What bounds Holland on the north and west ?

A. North Sea.

Q. On the south ?

A. Belgium.

Q. East ?

A. Hanover, and Prussia.

Q. What river flows through this country ?

A. Rhine.

Q. How long is it ?

A. 950 ms.

Q. What bay lies north of Amsterdam ?

A. Zuyder Zee.

Q. What country lies due west from Holland ?

A. England.

Q. How many miles is it by the scale ?

A. About 110 ms.

Q. What sea separates Holland and England ?

A. North Sea.

Q. How many inhabitants has Amsterdam ?

A. 207,000. (M. A.)

Q. Rotterdam ?

A. 78,000. (M. A.)

Q. Groningen ?

A. 30,000. (M. A.)

Leyden and Utrecht are on one of the lower branches of the Rhine. *See Map No. 20.* (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, page 226.*

## BELGIUM.

*Page 232.—Lesson 158.—Map No. 18.*

Q. What bounds Belgium on the north ?

A. Holland, and the North Sea.

Q. South ?

A. France.

*Q.* East ?

*A.* Prussia.

*Q.* Which is the principal river of Belgium ?

*A.* The Meuse ; the city of Liege is on its W. bank ; this river is 400 ms. long. (M. G.)

*Q.* How many inhabitants has Brussels ?

*A.* 134,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Ghent ?

*A.* 88,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Antwerp ?

*A.* 75,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Liege ?

*A.* 52,000. (M. A.)

Antwerp and Ghent are on the river Scheldt. *See Map No.*

20. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Europe, lesson 150th, Map No.*

18. *Key, page 226.*

## ENGLAND.

*Page 239.—Lesson 162.—Maps No. 18, and 19.*

*Map No. 18.—Q.* What bounds England on the north ?

*A.* Scotland.

*Q.* South ?

*A.* English Channel ?

*Q.* East ?

*A.* North Sea.

*Q.* West ?

*A.* Wales, and the Irish Sea.

*Q.* What strait separates it from France ?

*A.* Dover.

*Q.* What channel ?

*A.* English.

*Q.* What channel between England and Wales ?

*A.* Bristol.

*Map No. 19.—Q.* What rivers form part of the boundary between England and Scotland ?

*A.* Tweed, and Esk.

*Q.* What hills ?

*A.* Cheviot.

*Q.* What firth separates the north-west and south-west parts of England and Scotland ?

*A.* Solway.

*Q.* What is the most southern extremity of England ?

*A.* Lizard Point.

*Q.* The most western ?

*A.* Land's End.

Q. What are the three chief rivers of England ?

A. Humber, Thames, and Severn.

Q. What two rivers form the Humber ?

A. Ouse, and Trent.

Q. How long are each ?

A. Ouse is 100 ms. long ; Trent, 133. (M. A.)

Q. The Thames ?

A. 233 ms. (M. A.)

Q. The Severn ?

A. 200 ms. (M. A.)

Q. What rivers flow into the North Sea ?

A. Commencing at the North. — The Tyne, Weare, Tees, Humber, Yare, Orwell, Blackwater, and Thames.

Q. Into the Wash ?

A. Witham, Glen, Welland, Neu, and Great Ouse.

Q. Into the English Channel ?

A. Ouse, Avon, Frome, Exe, and Tamer.

Q. Into the British Channel ?

A. Severn.

Q. How long is the latter ?

A. 200 ms. (M. A.)

Q. What rivers flow into the Irish Sea ?

A. Lune, Ribble, Mersey, and Dee.

Q. What islands lie at the mouth of the Thames ?

A. Sheppey, and Thanet.

Q. In the English Channel ?

A. Isle of Wight.

Q. In the Irish Sea ?

A. Isle of Man.

Q. In the British Channel ?

A. Lundy.

Q. Near Land's End ?

A. Scilly Isles. These are dangerous to seamen, and vessels are often wrecked on them. For the position of the Norman Isles, *See Map No. 21.* These Islands once belonged to France, and were a part of the patrimony of the Norman kings, whence their name. (M. G. p. 239.)

Q. Point out Jersey, Guernsey, Alderney, and Sark.

Q. What is the population of the Isle of Man ?

A. 47,000. (M. A.)

Q. Isle of Wight ?

A. 42,000. (M. A.)

Q. Norman Isles ?

A. 76,000. (M. A.)

Q. Which is the chief lake in England ?

A. Windermere.

- Q. How long is it ?  
 A. 12 ms. (*Mere*, or *Meer*, signifies a lake.) (M. A.)  
 Q. The chief mountains ?  
 A. Helvellyn, and Skiddaw.  
 Q. How high are they ?  
 A. Helvellyn is 3325 ft.; Skiddaw, 3175. (M. A.)  
 Q. What is the population of *London* ?  
 A. 1,874,000. (M. A.)\*  
 Q. Manchester ?  
 A. 242,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. *Liverpool* ?  
 A. 223,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Birmingham ?  
 A. 183,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. *Leeds* ?  
 A. 152,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. *Bristol* ?  
 A. 122,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Plymouth ?  
 A. 80,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. *Norwich* ?  
 A. 63,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. *Sheffield* ?  
 A. 68,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. *Hull* ?  
 A. 42,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. *Nottingham* ?  
 A. 53,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Portsmouth ?  
 A. 53,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. *New Castle* ?  
 A. 50,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. *Sunderland* ?  
 A. 17,000. (M. A.)

---

\* The exact population of London and its suburbs in 1841 was 1,873,676, but on the maps it is engraved 1874, indicating the number 1,874,000. It is to be observed, that in placing the figures of the population on the Maps of the School Atlas, those indicating the thousands only are given, especially where the amount is considerable. Where a fraction of a thousand occurs in the actual number, say below 500, the preceding, and when above 500, the following thousand is shown. Thus *Liverpool*, with 223,003 inhabitants, is engraved 223, and *Birmingham*, with 182,922, is engraved 183. In the maps of our own states, where more minuteness, particularly in the smaller numbers, is required,  $\frac{1}{4}$  represents about 250,  $\frac{1}{2}$  500, and  $\frac{3}{4}$  750; thus 1250, or about that amount, would be  $1\frac{1}{4}$ , 1500 would be  $1\frac{1}{2}$ , and 1750 would be  $1\frac{3}{4}$ .



*Q. Bath?*

*A.* 38,000. (M. A.)

*Q. Cambridge?*

*A.* 24,000. (M. A.)

*Q. Oxford?*

*A.* 24,000. (M. A.)

*Q. Worcester?*

*A.* 25,000. (M. A.)

*Q. Shrewsbury?*

*A.* 18,000. (M. A.)

*Q. Chester?*

*A.* 23,000. (M. A.)

*Q. York?*

*A.* 29,000. (M. A.)

*Q. Carlisle?*

*A.* 23,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* On what rivers are the towns printed in Italics situated?

*A.* London is on the Thames;\* Liverpool, on the Mersey;† Leeds, on the Aire;‡ Bristol, at the confluence of the Avon and Frome;§ Norwich on the Wensom;|| Sheffield on the Don;¶

\* London (Lat. *Londinium*, Fr. *Londres*), the metropolis of the U. Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, and the most populous, wealthy, and commercial city of which we have any accounts, is situated partly and principally on the N. bank of the Thames, in the county of Middlesex, and partly on its S. bank, in the county of Surrey, about 45 ms. above the river's mouth at the Nore, and 15 below the highest tideway.

† Liverpool is a seaport of England, being, next to London, the greatest emporium of the British empire, and, in fact, of the world, in the co. of Lancaster, on the E. or right bank of the Mersey, 32 ms. W. by S. of Manchester, 67 ms. W.S.W. of Leeds, and 196 ms. N.N.W. of London; lat.  $53^{\circ} 22' N.$ , long.  $2^{\circ} 57' W.$

‡ Leeds is a celebrated manufacturing town of England, being the great centre of the woollen cloth trade, co. York, W. riding, situated on both sides of the navigable river Aire, 23 ms. W.S.W. of York, 29 ms. N. of Sheffield, and 170 ms. N. by W. of London; lat.  $53^{\circ} 47' N.$ , and long.  $1^{\circ} 32' W.$

§ Bristol is a city, co., and sea-port of England, at the confluence of the Avon and Frome, 8 ms. N.W. of the embouchure of the former, in the Bristol Channel, and 108 ms. W. of London. Lat.  $51^{\circ} 27' N.$ , long.  $2^{\circ} 35' W.$

|| Norwich, a city of England, being a county of itself, and an important manufacturing town, is situated in co. Norfolk, of which it is the cap., on the navigable river Wensom (crossed here by 10 bridges), 56 ms. N.E. of Cambridge, and 96 ms. N.N.E. of London; lat.  $52^{\circ} 7' N.$ , long.  $1^{\circ} 16' E.$

¶ Sheffield is a market town, cap. of the district of Hallamshire, W. riding, co. York, at the confluence of the Don and Sheaf, the former of which is

Hull, on the Humber;\* Nottingham on the Leen;† New Castle, on the Tyne;‡ Sunderland, on the Weare;§ Bath, on the Avon;|| Cambridge, on the Cam;¶ Oxford, on the left bank of the Isis, a branch of the Thames;\*\* Worcester, on the Severn;†† Shrews-

crossed by three and the latter by two bridges, 39 ms. S. of Leeds, and 140 ms. N. by W. of London.

\* Hull is a large and important commercial town, and river-port of England, and co. of itself, locally situated in co. York, E. riding, on the N. bank of the Humber estuary, 22 ms. from the Spurnhead, 34 ms. S. E. of York, and 155 ms. N. of London. Lat.  $53^{\circ} 45' N.$ , long.  $0^{\circ} 20' W.$

† Nottingham is an extensive manufacturing town of England, and co. of itself, locally situated in Nottingham co., of which it is the cap., situated on the Leen, about  $\frac{3}{4}$  of a m. from its junction with the Trent, crossed here by an old bridge of 19 arches, 14 ms. E. by S. of Derby, and 108 ms. N. W. of London.

‡ Newcastle-upon-Tyne is a river-port of England, locally situated in Castle-ward, co. Northumberland, of which it is the cap., but it is also a co. by itself, and is celebrated as the principal British port for the shipment of coal, on the N. bank of the Tyne, about  $9\frac{1}{2}$  ms. from its mouth, 54 ms. E. of Carlisle, and 244 ms. N. by W. of London: lat.  $54^{\circ} 58' N.$ , long.  $1^{\circ} 37' W.$

§ Sunderland is a sea-port of England, being, next to Newcastle and Stockton, the greatest port in the kingdom for the shipment of coal, co. Durham, ward Easington, on the Weare, close to its mouth in the North Sea, 13 ms. N. E. of Durham, with which city it is connected by a railway, and 245 ms. N. N. W. of London; lat. (of light-house)  $54^{\circ} 55' N.$ , long.  $1^{\circ} 21' W.$

|| Bath is a city of England, in the N. E. part of co. Somerset, 102 ms. W. by S. of London, on the Avon, along which its buildings extend for upward of 2 ms., ascending the acclivities, and crowning some of the summits of the adjoining range of hills.

¶ Cambridge is a town of England, in the co. Cambridge, being the seat of one of the great English universities, on the Cam; 48 ms. N. by E. of London. The greater portion of the town stands on the S. E. bank of the river.

\*\* Oxford is a city of England, cap. of Oxford co., and the seat of the oldest of the two great English universities, on the left bank of the Isis, near its confluence with the Cherwell, which are both crossed by numerous bridges, (one of which, on the London road, is a handsome stone structure, of five arches,) 52 ms. W. N. W. of London, lat. (Observatory)  $51^{\circ} 45' N.$ , long.  $1^{\circ} 15' W.$

†† Worcester is a city of England, locally situated in the co. of Worcester, of which it is the cap., but forming a co. of itself; on the Severn, crossed by a handsome stone bridge of five arches; 25 ms. S. W. of Birmingham, and 100 ms. W. N. W. of London; lat.  $52^{\circ} 9' N.$ , long.  $2^{\circ} 0' W.$

bury, on the Severn; \* Chester, on the Dee; † York, on the Ouse; ‡ and Carlisle, on the Eden, at the confluence of the Caldew and Petter. §

Q. In what years did the battles that are marked on the map take place?

A. Battle of Hastings, 1066; North Allerton, 1138; Lincoln, 1140; Durham, 1346; Otterburn or Chevy Chace, 1388; Shrewsbury, 1403; Hexham, 1463; Bosworth, 1485; Flodden Field, 1513; Edge Hill, 1642; Newbury, 1643-4; Marston Moor, 1644; Horncastle, 1644; Naseby, 1645; Worcester, 1651; Sedgemoor, 1685.

Q. What light-house is near Plymouth Sound?

A. Eddystone.

Q. How far is it from England to Denmark?

A. 400 ms. (M. A.)

Q. To Russia?

A. 900 ms. (M. A.)

Q. To Holland?

A. 150 ms. (M. A.)

Q. To the Island of Jersey?

A. 100 ms. (M. A.)

Q. To Guernsey?

A. 80 ms. (M. A.)

Q. To Spain?

A. 460 ms. (M. A.)

\* Shrewsbury is a market town of England, co. Salop, of which it is the cap.; nearly in the centre of the co., in a peninsula formed by the Severn, on two gentle declivities, 50 ms. S. by E. of Liverpool, 138 ms. N. W. of London. It is chiefly separated from the river by garden and meadow ground, skirted by a range of genteel houses, and its exterior appearance is from many points striking and majestic.

† Chester is a city and sea-port of England, locally in the co. of Chester, on a rocky elevation on the N. bank of the Dee, by which it is half encircled, on the S. border of the co., about 6 ms. above the confluence of the Dee with its estuary, 27 ms. S. by E. of Liverpool, 164 ms. N. W. of London; lat.  $53^{\circ} 11' N.$ , long.  $2^{\circ} 52' W.$

‡ York (Anc. *Eboracum*) is an ancient and celebrated city of England, being, under the Romans, the capital of Britain, and at present the second city of the kingdom in respect of rank, though not of importance. It is a county of itself, and a parliamentary and municipal borough, locally situated near the centre of the co. York, of which it is the cap., at the junction of the N., E., and W. Ridings; on the Ouse, at the confluence of the Foss, 22 ms. N. E. of Leeds, 33 ms. N. W. of Hull, 170 ms. N. N. W. of London, and 160 ms. S. S. E. of Edinburgh. Lat.  $53^{\circ} 57' N.$ , long.  $1^{\circ} 4' W.$

§ Carlisle is a city of England, co. Cumberland, on a gentle eminence, in an extensive plain at the confluence of the Eden, Caldew, and Petter, which nearly surround it; 260 ms. N. N. W. of London, and 98 ms. N. by W. of Manchester.

- Q. To Newfoundland ?  
*A.* 2200 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. To Cape Clear ?\*  
*A.* 195 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. How wide is the strait of Dover ?  
*A.* 21 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. How long and wide is the Irish Sea ?  
*A.* 130 ms. long, and 100 wide. (M. A.)

## WALES.—MAP No. 11.

- Q. What bounds Wales on the north ?  
*A.* Irish Sea.  
 Q. South ?  
*A.* Bristol Channel ?  
 Q. East ?  
*A.* England.  
 Q. West ?  
*A.* St. George's Channel.  
 Q. What bay on the west coast ?  
*A.* Cardigan.  
 Q. On the south ?  
*A.* St. Brides, and Caermarthen.  
 Q. What island lies north of Wales ?  
*A.* Anglesea.  
 Q. What is its population ?  
*A.* 50,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. What strait separates it from Wales ?  
*A.* Menai.  
 Q. What rivers are wholly in Wales ?  
*A.* Conway, Dovey, Tief, and Towy.  
 Q. What rivers rise in Wales, but flow into England ?  
*A.* Dee, Severn, Teme, and Wye.  
 Q. What are the three chief mountains in Wales ?  
*A.* Snowdon, Cader Idris, and Plynlimmon.  
 Q. How high are the first two ?  
*A.* Snowdon is 3571 ft. high ; Cader Idris, 3550 ft.  
 Q. How many miles is it from St. David's Head to Carnsore Point ?†  
*A.* 50 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. What is the population of Merthyr Tydvil ?  
*A.* 35,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Swansea ?  
*A.* 17,000. (M. A.)

---

\* From Cape Clear, Ireland to Land's End, England, 195 ms. (*See Atlas.*)

† The S. E. extremity of Ireland. (M. A.)

- Q. Caermarthen ?  
 A. 10,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Mold ?  
 A. 9000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Holywell ?  
 A. 9000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Caernarvon ?  
 A. 8000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Holyhead ?  
 A. 4000. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, page 227.*

---

## SCOTLAND.

*Pages 241-2.—Lesson 164.—Map No. 19.*

- Q. What bounds Scotland on the north and west ?  
 A. Atlantic Ocean.  
 Q. East ?  
 A. North Sea.  
 Q. South ?  
 A. England, and the Irish Sea.  
 Q. What separates it from Ireland ?  
 A. North Channel ?  
 Q. How wide is it ?  
 A. 12 ms.  
 Q. Which is the most northern part of Scotland ?  
 A. Dunnet Head.  
 Q. Southern ?  
 A. Mull of Galloway.  
 Q. Eastern ?  
 A. Buchan Ness.  
 Q. Western ?  
 A. Ardnamurchan Point.

## FIRTHS OR FRITHS.

- Q. Where is Dornoch Firth ? (Firth or Frith is used in Scotland for Bay and Strait. M. G., p. 241.)  
 A. It is on the E. coast of Scotland, in the N. E. part, penetrating inland. (M. A.)  
 Q. Where is Cromarty Firth ?  
 A. It is in the N. part of Scotland, setting up from Murray Firth inland. (M. A.)  
 Q. Where is Murray Firth ?  
 A. It is on the E. coast of Scotland, in the N. E. part, penetrating far inland. (M. A.)



MURRAY FIRTH (Anc. *Æstuarium Vararis*) is a bay on the E. coast of Scotland, between Ross-shire and Elginshire.

Q. Where is the Firth of Tay?

A. It is on the E. coast of Scotland, lying N. of Firth of Forth, penetrating inland. (M. A.)

Q. Where is the Firth of Forth?

A. It is a narrow arm of the sea, on the E. coast of Scotland, in the S. E. part, setting up far inland. (M. A.)

After the R. Forth is joined by the Devon, on the N. it begins to widen, and gradually assumes the appearance of a bay. This bay, called the Frith of Forth, is about 50 ms. long, and, where widest, is near 15 ms. broad.

Q. Where is Solway Firth?

A. It is a large arm of the Irish Sea, separating the S. W. part of Scotland from the N. W. part of England.

Q. Where is the Firth of Clyde?\*

A. It is a long crooked arm of the sea on the W. coast of Scotland, directly opposite the Firth of Forth, on the E. (M. A.)

Q. Where is Wigton Bay?

A. It is on the S. coast of Scotland, and in the S. W. part, penetrating inland. (M. A.)

Q. Where is Glenluce Bay?

A. It is on the S. coast of Scotland, situated in the S. W. part, lying W. of Wigton Bay, and setting up from the Irish Sea inland. (M. A.)

Q. Where is the Sound of Jura?

A. It is on the W. coast of Scotland, separating the islands of Jura and Isla from the mainland. (M. A.)

Q. Where is the Minch?

A. It is on the W. Coast of Scotland, separating Lewis and Harris Island from the mainland.† (M. A.)

Q. Where is the Little Minch?

A. It is on the W. Coast of Scotland, lying S. S. W. of the Minch, both forming a strait which divides the Outer Hebrides from the Inner, and from the mainland of Scotland. (M. A.)

#### CAPES.

Q. Where is Cape Wrath?

A. It is the N. W. point of Scotland, and also of Great Britain. Lat.  $58^{\circ} 34' N.$ , long.  $4^{\circ} 47' W.$  (M. A.)

Q. Where is Dunnet Head?

A. It is the N. extremity of Scotland, and its N. point in the

---

\* United to the Firth of Forth by the Forth and Clyde canal.

† Lewis and Harris (which is more extensive than all the rest of the Hebrides put together), though considered as separate, forms, in fact, only one island.

Pentland Firth is also the N. extremity of Great Britain. Lat.  $58^{\circ} 42' N.$ , long.  $3^{\circ} 29' W.$  (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Duncansby Head?

*A.* It is the extreme N. E. point of Scotland, and also of Great Britain. Lat.  $58^{\circ} 40' N.$ , long.  $3^{\circ} 8' W.$  (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Kinnaird's Head?

*A.* It is a lofty promontory on the E. coast of Scotland, in Aberdeenshire. (M. A.)

Here is a castle four stories high, on the top of which is a light-house. Lat.  $57^{\circ} 39' N.$ , long.  $1^{\circ} 46' W.$

*Q.* Where is Tarbet Ness?

*A.* It is in Cromarty county, on the E. coast of Scotland, in the N. E. part, extending in a N. E. direction between Dornoch and Murray Firths. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Buchan Ness?

*A.* It forms the E. extremity of Scotland, in Aberdeenshire. Lat.  $57^{\circ} 27' N.$ , long.  $1^{\circ} 34' W.$  (M. A.)

Near this promontory are the Bullers of Buchan, and other stupendous rocks and precipices, much admired for their awful grandeur.

*Q.* Where is the Mull of Galloway?

*A.* It forms the extreme S. point of Scotland. (M. A.)

This Mull forms the W. point of entrance to Luce, or Glenluce Bay, and the E. point of entrance to the North Channel, between the Irish Sea and the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

The Mull of Galloway is a promontory of Scotland, county Wigton, comprising the S. portion of the district called the Rhynns. It stretches in a S. S. E. direction from Portpatrick to the Point of the Mull, about 17 ms. : its breadth varies from about 2 to 5 ms. The Point of the Mull, the farthest S. limit of Scotland, in lat.  $54^{\circ} 38' N.$ , long.  $4^{\circ} 52' W.$ , rises about 255 ft. above the level of the sea, and is bold, bleak, and striking. A light-house of the first class, with an intermittent light, having the lantern elevated 325 ft. above the level of the sea, has been erected on this headland. The view from the balcony of the light-house is very extensive, commanding the whole Isle of Man, the Coast of Cumberland and the Cumberland Mountains; a great part of the coast with the mountains of Dumfries-shire and Galloway, the Paps of Jura, and the Coast of Ireland, from Fairhead to the Mourne Mountains.

*Q.* Where is the Mull of Cantire?

*A.* It is the S. extremity of the peninsula of Cantire,\* on the W. coast of Scotland, on which is a light-house, in lat.  $55^{\circ} 17' N.$ , long.  $5^{\circ} 41' W.$  (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Ardnamurchan Point?

*A.* It is a promontory on the W. coast of Scotland, Argyleshire, being the most westerly point in the mainland of Great Britain, lat.  $56^{\circ} 45' N.$ , long.  $6^{\circ} 8' W.$  (M. A.)

---

\* This peninsula is situated in the S. W. part of Scotland, forming the southern extremity of Argyleshire.

(Ness and Mull are the same as Cape, Head, or Point. M. G. p. 241.)

## ISLANDS.

Q. What islands lie west of Scotland?

A. Hebrides or Western Islands. (M. A.)

Q. What islands lie north?

A. Orkney. (M. A.)

Q. What firth separates them?

A. Pentland. (M. A.)

Q. How wide is it?

A. 4 ms. (M. A.)

Q. What islands lie N. E. from the Orkneys?

A. Shetland. (M. A.)

Q. What is the population of the Shetland Islands?

A. 30,000. (M. A.)

Q. Orkney Islands?

A. 30,000. (M. A.)

Q. Hebrides?

A. 108,000. (M. A.)

Q. Which is the chief town of the Hebrides?

A. Stornaway. (M. A.) (Lat.  $58^{\circ} 13' N.$ , long.  $6^{\circ} 16' W.$ )

Q. Of the Orkneys?

A. Kirkwall. (M. A.) (Lat.  $59^{\circ} N.$ , long.  $2^{\circ} 57' W.$ )

Q. Of the Shetland Islands?

A. Lerwick. (M. A.) (Lat.  $60^{\circ} 11' N.$ , long.  $1^{\circ} 10' W.$ )

Q. Where is Staffa?

A. It is a small island of Scotland, belonging to the Hebrides (famous for its basaltic columns and caverns), off the W. coast of the Island of Mull, 9 ms. N. N. E. from Iona. (M. A.)

Q. Where is Iona?

A. It is a small island of Scotland, belonging to the Hebrides, situated near the W. extremity of the island of Mull, intersected by the parallel of  $56^{\circ} 22' N.$  lat., and the meridian of  $6^{\circ} 26' W.$  long. (M. A.)

Iona was anciently celebrated for its religious institutions, schools, and learned men. (M. G., p. 242.)

IONA, or ICOLMKILL, (the native name is I, pronounced like *ee*, and signifying "island,") is chiefly interesting on account of its ruins and historical remembrances. While western Europe lay buried in ignorance and barbarity, this island was remarkable as the seat of learning and of the Christian religion, which was introduced near the middle of the 6th century, by St. Columba, a native of Ireland. The name Icolmkill is a contraction of I-Columb-kill, *i. e.* the "island of Columba's cell or monastery," *kill* or *kil* signifying any religious residence. Length of the island, about 3 ms.

## LOCHS, OR LAKES.

*Q.* Where is Loch Shin? (Lakes and inlets are called Lochs in Scotland. *M. G.*, p. 242.)

*A.* It is in the S. part of Sutherlandshire, in the N. of Scotland. At its S. E. extremity issues the rapid river Shin, which flows into the head of the Frith of Dornoch. (*M. A.*)

This loch or lake is 15 ms. long and 2 broad.

*Q.* Where is Loch Mare?

*A.* It is in Ross-shire, in the N.W. part of Scotland, and flows into the Minch. (*M. A.*)

This lake is 16 ms. long, and from 1 to 2 ms. broad. There are 24 small islands in it.

*Q.* Where is Loch Ness?

*A.* It is in Inverness-shire, in the N. part of Scotland. Its outlet, at the N. extremity, is the r. Ness, which flows into Murray Firth, below Inverness. (*M. A.*)

This lake is about 24 ms. long, and from about three-quarters of a mile to 2 ms. wide.

*Q.* Where is Loch Rannoch?

*A.* It is in Perthshire, near the interior of Scotland; it receives the waters of Loch Ericht from the N., and flows into the R. Tay. (*M. A.*)

This lake is 11 ms. in length.

*Q.* Where is Loch Tay?

*A.* It is in Perthshire, in the interior of Scotland, formed by several streams and the R. Tay, which flows through its whole length. (*M. A.*)

This lake is 15 ms. long, and in most parts above 1 m. broad.

*Q.* Where is Loch Lomond?

*A.* It is between the counties or shires of Stirling and Dumbarton, in the S. W. part of Scotland. Its outlet is the R. Leven, which, issuing from its S. extremity, falls into the Firth of Clyde, close to Dumbarton. (*M. A.*)

This, which is the largest of the Scotch, and, indeed, of the British lakes,\* is a noble sheet of water, of a triangular shape, about 21 ms. in length, N. N.W. and S. S. E., and where broadest, along its S. shore, it is from 7 to 8 ms. across; but its upper portion is comparatively narrow, being only about 1 m. in breadth. Its area is estimated at about 25,000 acres: its most usual depth is about 20 fathoms; but in some places it has a depth of 80, and even of 120 fathoms. It is studded with numerous islands, some of which are of considerable size, and finely wooded.

---

\* The largest *lake*, properly speaking, but not the largest *loch*—the latter term is often applied, in Scotland, to arms of the sea.

*Q.* Where is Loch Leven ?

*A.* It is in Kinross-shire, in the E. part of Scotland, and flows into the Firth of Forth. (M. A.)

This lake is upwards of 10 ms. in circumference, and somewhat of a circular form. It has several small islands, on one of which is a ruinous castle, where Mary, queen of Scots, was confined by the confederate lords, after she had separated from Bothwell; and on another, named St. Serf's Isle, is the ruin of a priory. On the E. side of the lake, near its outlet, stands the ruinous monastery of Portmoak.

*Q.* How long is Loch Ness ?

*A.* 24 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* Loch Lomond ?

*A.* 21 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Loch Assynt ?

*A.* It is in Sutherlandshire, in the N. W. part of Scotland, on the W. coast, setting up from the Minch inland. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Loch Broom ?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Scotland, in the N. W. part, in Ross-shire, setting up from the Minch inland. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Loch Sunart ?

*A.* It is an inlet of the sea, on the W. coast of Scotland, which extends 20 ms. E. into Argyleshire, from the N. end of the island of Mull. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Loch Linnhe ?

*A.* It is an arm of the sea on the W. coast of Scotland, which separates the counties of Argyle and Inverness. It extends in a N. E. direction from the sound of Mull to Fort William, where it takes a westerly direction, and acquires the name of Loch Eil. Another branch, in an easterly direction, is called Loch Leven.

*Q.* Where is Loch Awe ?

*A.* It is in the W. part of Scotland, in Argyleshire. The river Awe, the outlet of this lake, flows into Lake Etive.

This lake is 24 ms. long, while its average breadth is only about 1 m.

*Q.* Where is Loch Fyne ?

*A.* It is an inlet of the Atlantic Ocean, on the W. coast of Scotland, in Argyleshire. (M. A.)

This lake is nearly 40 ms. in length, and receives and returns a tide on each side of the isle of Arran, which is opposite its entrance.

#### RIVERS.

*Q.* What rivers flow into Murray Firth ?

*A.* Spey, and Doveran.

*Q.* The North Sea ?

*A.* Ythan, Don, Dee, North Esk, South Esk, and Tweed.

*Q.* The Firth of Tay ?

*A.* Tay, and Earn.

*Q.* The Firth of Forth ?

*A.* Forth.



Q. The Solway Firth ?

A. Esk, Nith, and Dee.

Q. The Firth of Clyde ?

A. Doon, Ayr, and Clyde.

Q. Where is the Caledonian Canal ?

A. It extends in a S. E. direction from Murray Firth on the E. coast of Scotland, to Lake or Loch Linnhe on the W. coast, opening a way for frigates across Scotland, through Loch Ness, Loch Oich, and Loch Lochie.

Q. On what rivers are the chief cities ?

A. Glasgow is on the Clyde ; \* Perth, on the Tay ; † Paisley, on the White Cart ; ‡ Ayr, on the Ayr ; § Dumfries, on the Nith ; || Aberdeen, on the Dee ; ¶ Leith, on the Leith ; \*\* Kilmarnock, on the Irvine, and on the small stream Kilmarnock or Fenwick, a tributary †† of the former.

\* Glasgow, a city, river-port, and the most populous and important manufacturing and commercial town of Scotland, county Lanark, on both sides of the Clyde, 42 ms. W. by S. from Edinburgh, and 18 ms. E. S. E. from Greenock ; lat.  $55^{\circ} 51' 32''$  N. (Macfarlane's Observatory), long.  $4^{\circ} 17' 54''$  W., being about 8 ms. farther S. than Edinburgh.

† Perth, a royal and parliamentary borough, and manufacturing town of Scotland, county of Perth, of which it is the capital, situated on a plain on the right bank of the Tay, 33 ms. N. by W. from Edinburgh ; lat.  $56^{\circ} 23'$  N., long.  $3^{\circ} 26'$  W.

‡ Paisley, a parliamentary borough, market and manufacturing town of Scotland, county of Renfrew, partly on an eminence and partly on a plain, on both sides the White Cart, 3 ms. S. of Renfrew Ferry, on the Frith of Clyde, and 8 ms. W. by S. from Glasgow.

§ Ayr, a sea-port, royal borough, and maritime town of Scotland, capital of Ayrshire, on the S. side of the R. Ayr, at its confluence with the sea, 75 ms. S. W. from Edinburgh, and 34 ms. S. S. W. from Glasgow.

|| Dumfries, a sea-port and parliamentary borough of Scotland, county of Dumfries, of which it is the capital, on the E. bank of the Nith, about 9 ms. from its influx into the Solway Frith, 64 ms. S. by W. from Edinburgh, and 30 ms. W. by N. from Carlisle.

¶ Aberdeen, capital of Aberdeen county, an ancient, distinguished, and flourishing royal borough, situated mostly on rising ground on the N. bank of the Dee, near its mouth ; lat. (of Marischal College Observatory)  $57^{\circ} 8' 58''$  N., long.  $2^{\circ} 5' 41''$  W.

\*\* Leith, a sea-port and parliamentary borough of Scotland, county Mid Lothian or Edinburgh, on both sides of a small r. of the same name, at its confluence with the Frith of Forth, on a flat sandy shore, 2 ms. N. by E. of the centre of Edinburgh, of which city it is the port.

†† Kilmarnock, an eminent manufacturing town, parliamentary borough, borough of regality, and parish of Scotland, district of Cunningham, Ayrshire, on level ground on the N. bank of the Irvine, and on the small stream Kilmarnock or Fenwick, a tributary of the former ; 20 ms. S. W. by S. from Glasgow, and 12 ms. N. N. E. from Ayr.

## MOUNTAINS.

*Q.* Where are the Grampian Hills?

*A.* They are a celebrated and well-known mountain chain forming the line of demarcation between the Lowlands and Highlands of Scotland. Its limits are not very well defined; but it may be regarded as commencing on the E. side of Loch Etive in Argyleshire, and as stretching across the island, till it terminates between Stonehaven and the mouth of the Dee on the E. coast.

Or, the Grampians may be very accurately described as follows: They are a chain of mts. in Scotland, which stretches like a mighty wall along the southern front of the Highlands, running from Argyleshire, on the Atlantic, across the island, into Aberdeenshire, on the North Sea, and then forming another ridge in a north-westerly direction, extends to the county of Elgin, and the borders of Inverness.

There appears to be considerable diversity among geographers respecting the application of the name Grampian. The term is not used by the natives of that part of Britain. It is derived from the *Mons Grampius*, mentioned by Tacitus in his *Agricola*. In its most extensive application, it appears to comprehend all the mountain ranges N. of a line drawn from the Firth of Clyde to the Firth of Tay, thus including all the higher mountains of Scotland. Ben Nevis, in Inverness-shire, is the highest of the Grampian system, and of all the mts. in Great Britain, rising 4379 ft. above the level of the sea. Ben Mac Dhu, situated in the W. part of Aberdeenshire, is second only to Ben Nevis, having an elevation of 4305 ft. above the sea; Ben Cruachan, in Argyleshire, S. of Loch Etive, is 3669 ft. high. Ben Lomond, in Stirlingshire, is perhaps the best known of the mountains of Scotland, on account of its forming the southern extremity of the Highlands. It rises 3197 ft. above the level of the sea. Ben Venu, in Perthshire, extends along the southern shores of Loch Katrine, and presents the most striking features in the picturesque scenery for which that lake is so remarkable. Ben Vorlich, or Voirlich, in Perthshire, is second only to Ben Venu, among all the mts. of Scotland, for wild and variegated scenery.

*Q.* Where are the Cheviot Hills?\*

*A.* They run from N. E. to S. W., and form part of the boundary between Scotland and England. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Ben Nevis?

*A.* It is in Inverness-shire, being the highest of the Grampians, situated immediately to the E. of Fort William, near the W. coast of Scotland. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cairngorm Mt.?

*A.* It is in the N. E. part of Scotland, at the S. W. extremity of Banffshire, on the border of Inverness. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Ben Lawers?

*A.* It is in the interior of Scotland, on the N. side of Loch Tay. (M. A.)

---

\* The highest summit is 2658 ft. above the sea. † Ben signifies Mountain.

Q. How high are the last three?

A. Ben Nevis is 4379 ft.; Cairngorm Mt., 4050 ft.; Ben Lawers, 4015 ft. (M. A.)

#### POPULATION OF CITIES.

Q. What is the population of Glasgow?

A. 275,000. (M. A.)

Q. Edinburgh?

A. 138,000. (M. A.)

Q. Aberdeen?

A. 63,000. (M. A.)

Q. Paisley?

A. 60,000. (M. A.)

Q. Dundee?

A. 60,000. (M. A.)

Q. Leith?

A. 26,000. (M. A.)

Q. Greenock?

A. 37,000. (M. A.)

Q. Kilmarnock?

A. 20,000. (M. A.)

Q. Dunfermline?

A. 8000. (M. A.)

Q. Where is John O'Groat's House?

A. In the N. E. part of Scotland. (M. A.)

This was long ago noted as the most northerly dwelling in Scotland: it is now in ruins. (M. G.)

#### DISTANCES.

Q. How far is it from the Clyde to the West Indies?

A. 4800 ms. (M. A.)

Q. From Scotland to Labrador?

A. 2100 ms. (M. A.)

Q. From Scotland to Iceland?

A. 550 ms. (M. A.)

Q. From the Faroe to the Orkney Islands?

A. 400 ms. (M. A.)

Q. From Greenland to the Shetland Islands?

A. 1550 ms. (M. A.)

Q. To the Faroe Isles from Shetland?

A. 200 ms. (M. A.)

Q. From the Shetland Isles to Norway?

A. 200 ms. (M. A.)

Q. From Scotland to Norway?

A. 350 ms. (M. A.)

Q. From Scotland to Sweden?

A. 600 ms. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, pages 227-8.*

## I R E L A N D .

*Page 244.—Lesson 166.—Map No. 19.**Q.* What bounds Ireland on the north, south, and west?*A.* Atlantic Ocean.*Q.* On the East?*A.* Irish Sea.*Q.* What separates it from England?*A.* Irish Sea.*Q.* How long and wide is the Irish Sea?*A.* It is 130 ms. long, and 100 ms. wide. (M. A.)*Q.* What separates Ireland from Scotland?*A.* The North Channel.*Q.* How wide is it?*A.* 12 ms. (M. A.)*Q.* What separates Ireland from Wales?*A.* St. George's Channel.*Q.* How wide is it?*A.* 50 ms. (M. A.)*Q.* Which is the most northern part of Ireland?*A.* Malin Head.*Q.* The most southern?*A.* Mizen Head.*Q.* The most western?*A.* Cape Sybil.

## ISLANDS.

*Q.* Where is Rathlin Island?*A.* It is in the Atlantic Ocean, off the N. coast of Ireland.  
(M. A.)*Q.* Where is Tory Island?*A.* It is in the Atlantic Ocean, off the N. coast of Ireland.  
(M. A.)*Q.* Where are the North Isles of Arran?*A.* They are in the Atlantic Ocean, on the W. coast of Ireland,  
co. Donegal. (M. A.)

The most N. extremity of the largest of these islands, called Arranmore, is in lat.  $55^{\circ}$  N., long.  $8^{\circ} 29'$  W. A light-house is erected on this point, with a fixed light elevated 200 ft. above high-water mark. This island contains about 2000 acres, and nearly 1000 inhabitants; the land being divided into the minutest portions, such as a "cow's foot," or the quarter of a cow's grass. They are mostly fishers.

*Q.* Where is Achil Island?*A.* Achil, or Eagle Island, is in the Atlantic Ocean, on the W. coast of Ireland, county Mayo, separated from the mainland by a narrow channel. (M. A.)

This island is about 30 ms. in circumference, and contains above 23,000

acres. Pop. 5277. It is mountainous; and eagles—whence its name—breed in its inaccessible fastnesses. The inhabitants speak the Irish language, and are in an extremely depressed, miserable condition.

*Q.* Where is Enisture Island?

*A.* It is in the Atlantic Ocean, on the W. coast of Ireland, lying S.W. of Clare Island. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the South Isles of Arran?

*A.* These consist of three islands, in the Atlantic Ocean, on the W. coast of Ireland, stretching N.W. and S.E., about 12 ms. along the mouth of Galway Bay, being part of the county Galway, in Ireland. (M. A.)

These islands contain in all about 6854 acres; the largest, Arranmore, comprising about 4607; Innis More, 1338; and Innis Leer, 909. Pop. 3191.

*Q.* Where is Blasket Island?

*A.* It is in the Atlantic Ocean, on the W. coast of Ireland, co. Kerry, situated on the N. side of the entrance into Dingle Bay. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Valentia Island?

*A.* It is in the Atlantic Ocean, on the W. coast of Ireland, co. Kerry, lying S. E. of Blasket Island, on the S. side of the entrance to Dingle Bay. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Clare Island?

*A.* It is near the W. extremity of St. George's Channel, about 7 ms. S. E. from Baltimore, co. Cork, Ireland. (M. A.)

The southern point of this island is Cape Clear, so well known to mariners.

#### BAYS.

*Q.* Where is Carlingford Bay?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of Ireland, setting up from the Irish Sea, between the counties of Down and Louth. (M. A.)

This Bay is 8 ms. in length, by from 1 to  $1\frac{1}{2}$  ms. wide, with deep water and secure anchorage, but, being situated between lofty mts., is liable to sudden squalls.

*Q.* Where is Dundalk Bay?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of Ireland, co. Louth, lying S. of Carlingford Bay, and leads into the Irish Sea. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Dublin Bay?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of Ireland, co. Dublin, lying S. S. E. of Dundalk Bay, and leads into the Irish Sea. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Bantry Bay?

*A.* It is an inlet of the sea, in the S.W. extremity of Ireland, co. Cork, between Crow Point, on the N., and Sheep's Head, on the S. (M. A.)

This is one of the finest and most capacious harbours in Europe. It stretches inwards, in a N. E. direction, above 25 ms., with a breadth varying from 4 to 6 ms. Near the entrance of the bay, on its N.W. side, is Bear Island, separated from the mainland by a crooked strait about a mile broad,



having from 10 to 30 or 40 fathom water, and affording a safe retreat for the largest vessels. Farther up the bay is Whiddy Island, on the S. side of which, nearly opposite to Bantrytown, there is an admirable roadstead, where ships lie land-locked in from 24 to 40 ft. water. Bear Island forms, as it were, a natural breakwater, protecting the bay from the S.W. winds.

*Q.* Where is Kenmare Bay ?

*A.* It is an inlet of the sea, in the S.W. part of Ireland, co. Kerry, lying N. of Bantry Bay. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Dingle Bay ?

*A.* It is an inlet of the sea, in the S.W. part of Ireland, co. Kerry, lying N. of Kenmare Bay. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Galway Bay ?

*A.* It is a large Bay on the W. coast of Ireland, encircled on the N. and E. by co. Galway, and S. by co. Clare ; to the W. where the S. Isles of Arran stretch across its entrance, it is open to the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

This bay extends about 20 ms. from W. to E., and is from 7 to 20 ms. wide.

*Q.* Where is Killala Bay ?

*A.* It is an inlet of the sea, in the N.W. part of Ireland, co. Mayo, prov. of Connaught. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Donegal Bay ?

*A.* It is a large inlet of the sea, on the W. coast of Ireland, and in the N. W. part, forming the S. boundary of the co. Donegal. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Wexford Harbour ?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of Ireland, and in the S. E. part co. Wexford, setting up from St. George's Channel. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Waterford Harbour ?

*A.* It is on the S. coast of Ireland, setting up from St. George's Channel, between Waterford and Wexford counties. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cork Harbour ?

*A.* It is on the S. coast of Ireland, co. Cork, setting up from St. George's Channel. (M. A.)

#### HEADS.

*Q.* Where is Malin Head ?

*A.* It is the N. extremity of Ireland. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Fair Head ?

*A.* It is the N. E. point of Ireland. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Kinsale Head ?

*A.* It is on the S. coast of Ireland, county Cork. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Mizen Head ?

*A.* It is the S. point of Ireland. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Loop Head ?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Ireland, county Clare, at the mouth of Shannon R. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Urris Head?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Ireland, county Mayo. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Teillen Head?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Ireland, county Donegal. (M. A.)

#### LOUGHS.\*

*Q.* Where is Lough Swilly?

*A.* It is on the N. coast of Ireland, county Donegal, setting up from the Atlantic Ocean, and penetrating far inland. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Lough Foyle?

*A.* It is on the N. coast of Ireland, county Londonderry, and is connected with the Atlantic, by a short and narrow strait.

This lough, of an oval form, is about 15 ms. long, and 8 ms. wide in the middle, which is connected with the sea by a strait, less than a mile in breadth. The R. Foyle, which flows into its southern extremity, is navigable for vessels of 400 tons as far as Londonderry.

*Q.* Where is Belfast Lough?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of Ireland, in the N. E. part, setting up from the Irish Sea, between the counties of Down and Antrim. (M. G.)

*Q.* Where is Lough Strangford?

*A.* It is a large bay or inlet of the Irish Sea, in the county of Down, on the E. coast of Ireland. (M. A.)

This lough is about 17 ms. long and 5 ms. broad, and contains a great many small islands. The bar or entrance into it from the Irish Sea is 3 ms. below Strangford, and not a m. in breadth.

*Q.* Where is Lough Neagh?

*A.* It is in the N. E. part of Ireland, (about 90 ms. N. of Dublin,) near the centre of the province of Ulster, having N. and E. the county of Antrim, S. E. Down, by which it is merely touched, S. Armagh, W. Tyrone, and N. W. Londonderry. The lower Bann R. is the only channel through which its reflux waters find a passage to the sea.

This is the largest lake in the United Kingdom, being 21 ms. in length, by about 9 ms. in breadth; occupying, inclusive of Lough Beg, (2551½ acres), which is joined to it, an area of 61,626 Irish, or 99,823¾ statute acres, at ordinary high-water mark. Though by far the largest, it is by no means the most beautiful of the Irish lakes. Its waters are celebrated for their petrifying quality.

*Q.* Where is Lough Earne?

*A.* It is a celebrated lake in the N. W. part of Ireland, county Fermanagh, which it divides into two nearly equal portions. It is usually considered as divided into the Upper and Lower lake, connected by a broad winding channel, perhaps 7 ms. long, which

---

\* The term lough is used in Ireland for lakes and inlets of the sea. (M. G.)

might properly be called the R. Erne. It discharges itself at its N. W. extremity by a rapid current of about 9 ms., which, after falling over many ledges of obstructing rocks, precipitates itself down a grand cataract into Ballyshannon Bay,\* at the town of Ballyshannon. (M. A.)

Lake Erne contains in all an area of about 40,000 acres; and stretches N. W. and S. E. 30 or 35 ms. The lower lake is the largest; and both it and the upper lake are full of Islands, some of them large and thickly inhabited, many of them well wooded, and the whole so disposed and accompanied by such a diversity of coast, as to form a vast number of rich and interesting prospects.

*Q.* Where is Lough Allen?

*A.* It is in the N. W. part of Ireland, county Leitrim, generally supposed to be the source of the Shannon R. (M. A.)

This Lake is about 10 ms. in length, and from 4 to 5 in width. It is generally supposed to be the source of the Shannon, and it has perhaps the best title to that distinction. It is elevated 144 ft. above the level of high water-mark at Limerick; and the Shannon has been rendered navigable as far as the lough.

*Q.* Where is Lough Ree?

*A.* It is in the central part of Ireland, forming part of the R. Shannon. (M. A.)

This Lake is 17 ms. in length, and perhaps 6 in its greatest breadth.

*Q.* Where is Lough Deirgart?

*A.* It is in the central part of Ireland, forming part of the R. Shannon, and crossed by the 53rd deg. of N. lat. (M. A.)

*Q.* Of what river do the last three named loughs form a part?

*A.* Shannon.

*Q.* Where is Lough Mask?

*A.* It is in the W. part of Ireland, counties of Mayo and Galway, province of Connaught, lying N. of Lough Corrib.

*Q.* Where is Lough Corrib?

*A.* It is in the W. part of Ireland, county of Galway, province of Connaught, lying S. of Lough Mask, and discharges itself into Galway Bay. (M. A.)

This Lake is 22 ms. in length, containing numerous islands.

*Q.* Where is the Lake of Killarney?

*A.* The Lake of Killarney, or Lough Lane, consists properly of three lakes, connected by a winding channel, situated in the S. W. part of Ireland, county Kerry, lying at the E. extremity of the extensive range of mts. called Macgillicuddy's Reeks, and is divided into three parts, called the Lower, Middle, and Upper Lake; their reflux waters being carried off by the Lane R., which falls into Castlemaine harbour, at the bottom of Dingle Bay. (M. A.)

---

\* This and Donegal Bay are connected.

*Q.* How long is Lough Neagh ?

*A.* 21 ms. (M. A.)

#### RIVERS.

*Q.* Where is the Bann River ?

*A.* Bann, Upper and Lower, two rivers in the N. of Ireland : the first, or Upper Bann, rises in the plain called the Deer's or King's meadow, in the N. part of the Mourne Mts., in the co. of Down. Its course, at first, is winding ; but its general direction is N.W. After passing Gilford and Portadown, it falls into Lough Neagh at Banfoot ferry.\*

The Lower Bann issues from Lough Beg, connected on the N. W. with Lough Neagh, and flowing N. with a little inclination to the W., falls into the Atlantic Ocean about 4 ms. N. W. of Coleraine. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Foyle River ?

*A.* It is in the N. part of Ireland, formed by the conflux of the Fin and the Mourne, at Lifford, in the co. of Donegal. After their junction it flows in a general direction N. N. E., and 4 ms. below Londonderry, expands into a bay, called Lough Foyle,† which communicates with the Atlantic by a short and narrow strait.

*Q.* Where is the Boyne River ?

*A.* It is in the E. part of Ireland, has its source in the Bog of Allen, near Carberry, in Kildare co. It flows N. E. by Trim, Navan, and Slane, to Tulloghallen, whence it follows an E. course to Drogheda, uniting with the Irish Sea about 2 ms. lower down. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Liffey River ?

*A.* It is in the E. part of Ireland, rises in the co. of Wicklow, flows W. into co. Kildare, where it has a cataract near Leixslip, and then turning N. E. passes through the co. and city of Dublin, below which it enters the Irish Sea.

*Q.* Where is Avoca, or Ovoca River ?

*A.* It is in the co. of Wicklow, province of Leinster, Ireland, having its source near the head waters of the Liffey, in the N. part of the co., and flowing first S. S. E., then E., empties itself into St. George's Channel. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Slaney River ?

*A.* It is in the S. E. part of Ireland, rises at the foot of Mount Lugnaquilla, co. of Wicklow, flows in a general S. E. course, and falls into the arm of the sea termed Wexford Harbour.

*Q.* Where is Barrow River ?

*A.* It is in the S. E. part of Ireland, being, next to the Shannon,

---

\* Near Portadown it is joined by the Newry canal ; and is thence navigable by barges to the Lake.

† This Lough is of an oval form, and is about 15 ms. long, and 8 ms. wide in the middle.



the most important in that island. It rises in the Sliehbhloom Mountains, Queens co.: its course is first N. E. to Portarlinton, then E. to Monastereven, and thence nearly due S., past Athy, Carlow, Craig, and New-Ross; about 8 ms. below which it falls into the estuary of Waterford Harbour, of which it forms the right arm. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Suire River?

*A.* It is in the S. E. part of Ireland, rises in Tipperary co., in the Sliehbhloom Mts., and has generally a S. course till it approaches the Knock-me-le-down range of hills, which separates its basin from that of the Blackwater. It then turns E., and ultimately falls, together with the Barrow, into the estuary termed Waterford Harbour. (M. A.)

In a commercial point of view, this is one of the most valuable rivers of Ireland. Vessels of 500 tons come up it to Waterford; besides which city, Carrick, Clonmel, Cahir, &c., are situated on it.

*Q.* Where is the Blackwater River?\*

*A.* It is in the S. part of Ireland, being the chief r. of Munster: it rises on the confines of the counties of Limerick and Kerry, and soon assumes an eastern direction, which it generally preserves till about a dozen miles from its mouth, when it turns suddenly S., and falls into St. George's Channel at Youghall Harbour. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Lee River?

*A.* It is in the S. W. part of Ireland; rises on the confines of co. Kerry, flows E. to Cork, and falls into Cork Harbour. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Shannon River?

*A.* It extends through the centre of Ireland, being the largest and most important r. in the island; it rises in the N. W. part of the co. of Cavan, and, flowing at first southerly, and afterwards south-westerly, falls into the Atlantic Ocean, near  $52^{\circ} 30'$  N. lat., and  $10^{\circ}$  W. long. (M. A.)

This river in its course traverses several lakes, the principal of which are Lough Allen, Lough Ree, and Lough Deirgart. Towards its termination, the r. widens into an estuary from 1 or 2 to 10 ms. broad. It is navigable for almost 200 ms., or to within 6 or 7 ms. of its source.

*Q.* How long is the Shannon?

*A.* 200 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* What river flows into Lough Neagh?

*A.* Blackwater. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Ghurane Tuel Mt.?

*A.* It is in the S.W. corner of Ireland, co. Kerry, adjoining the celebrated lakes of Killarney, which lie E. (M. A.)

---

\* Sometimes called the Broadwater R.



Q. How high is it?

A. It is the highest mt. in Ireland, rising 3400 ft. above the level of the sea. (M. A.)

Q. When were the battles of Aghrim and the Boyne fought?

A. Battle of the Boyne, 1690; Aghrim, 1691. (M. A.)

Q. On what river is Dublin?

A. On the Liffey.\*

Q. The other principal cities?

A. Waterford is on the River Suire;† Londonderry, on the Foyle;‡ Athlone, on the Shannon;§ Limerick, on the Shannon;||

\* Dublin, a city and sea-port of Ireland, of which it is the cap., co. Dublin, on the E. coast of the island, at the mouth of the Liffey, by which it is intersected: 292 ms. W.N.W. of London, 138 ms. W. of Liverpool, 60 ms. W. of Holyhead; lat.  $53^{\circ} 20' N.$ , long.  $6^{\circ} 17' W.$  The city is supposed to be the *Eblana* of Ptolemy, and was called by the native Irish *Ballyathcliath*, "the town on the ford of the hurdles;" and by the Danes *Divelin* or *Dubhlin*, "the black pool," from its vicinity to the muddy swamps at the mouth of the river.

† Waterford, a city, parliamentary borough, and sea-port of Ireland, province of Munster, on the estuary of the R. Suir, about 10 ms. from the sea, and 82 ms. S. S. W. of Dublin; lat.  $52^{\circ} 13' N.$ , long.  $7^{\circ} 10' W.$  It is a county of itself, comprising 9683 acres, but it is locally situated near the W. extremity of the county of Waterford, of which it is the capital.

‡ Londonderry, or Derry, a city, parliamentary borough, and river-port of Ireland, cap. co. of same name, and a co. by itself, advantageously and beautifully situated on the W. bank of the Foyle, about 5 ms. above where it falls into Lough Foyle, 121 ms. N. by W. of Dublin; lat.  $54^{\circ} 59' N.$ , long.  $7^{\circ} 19' W.$

§ Athlone, an inland town of Ireland, counties Westmeath and Roscommon, on the Shannon, 65 ms. W. of Dublin, lat.  $53^{\circ} 32' N.$ , long.  $7^{\circ} 54' W.$  Its name is derived from *Ath Luan*, "the ford of the rapids." To command this ford a castle was built here by the English shortly after their arrival in the country, that became a post of great consequence. In 1641 Athlone was besieged by the Irish army, but, after a resistance of upwards of five months, was relieved by the Duke of Ormond. In the subsequent war of 1688, it was gallantly defended by Colonel Grace against the English, but was taken by storm the next year by Gen. Ginkell, afterwards earl of Athlone. The fortifications, which had suffered much during this siege, were renovated, but in 1697, the castle and the greater part of the town were destroyed by the explosion of a gunpowder magazine, occasioned by lightning. During the late war with France, it was made the military dépôt for the W. of Ireland, and secured by strong works on the Connaught side, covering an extent of fifteen acres, and containing two magazines, an ordnance store, an armory for 15,000 stand of small-arms, and barracks for 900 men.

|| Limerick, a city, parliamentary borough, river-port, and co. of itself, in Ireland, province of Munster, on the Shannon, 107 ms. S.W. of Dublin, and 55 ms. E. of Loophead at the mouth of the Shannon; lat.  $52^{\circ} 40' N.$ , long.  $8^{\circ} 35' W.$  It is principally situated on the S. E. side of the r., within the co. of Limerick, but partly also on its N. side, within the co. of Clare. The

Cork, on the Lee;\* and Drogheda, on the Boyne, four miles above the sea.†

#### POPULATION OF CITIES AND TOWNS.

Q. What is the population of Dublin?

A. 233,000. (M. A.)

Q. Cork?

A. 115,000. (M. A.)

Q. Belfast?

A. 75,000. (M. A.)

Q. Limerick?

A. 48,000. (M. A.)

Q. Waterford?

A. 29,000. (M. A.)

Q. What towns have from 10,000 to 19,000 inhabitants?

A. Armagh, Londonderry, Newry, Dundalk, Bandon, Athlone, Sligo, Clonmell, Drogheda, Galway, and Kilkenny. (M. A.)

#### DISTANCES.

Q. How far is it from Ireland to Iceland?

A. 700 ms. (M. A.)

Q. To Labrador?

A. 1950 ms. (M. A.)

Q. To Spain?

A. 600 ms. (M. A.)

Q. From Cape Clear (Ireland) to Land's End (England)?

A. 195 ms. (M. A.)

#### PROVINCES.

Q. In what part of Ireland is Ulster?

A. In the north?

ULSTER is one of the four provinces into which Ireland is divided, and the most northerly, comprising the counties of Donegal, Londonderry, Antrim, Tyrone, Fermanagh, Monaghan, Armagh, Down, and Cavan.

This province is bounded E. by the Irish Sea, N. and W. by the Atlantic

co. of the city, which is identical with the parliamentary borough, includes an area of about 27,000 acres.

\* Cork, a city and river-port of Ireland, province of Munster, on the Lee, 11 ms. above where it discharges itself into Cork Harbour; lat.  $51^{\circ} 53' N.$ , long.  $8^{\circ} 29' W.$ ; 135 ms. S.W. of Dublin. This is the second city of Ireland in respect of population and commercial importance, and forms a co. in itself, having a local jurisdiction separate from that of the co. of Cork, by which it is surrounded. The co. of the city comprises 44,463 acres.

† Drogheda, a parliamentary borough and sea-port town of Ireland, being a co. in itself, but locally in the counties of Meath and Louth, province of Leinster, on the Boyne, four miles above its embouchure in the Irish Sea, and 25 ms. N. of Dublin.

Ocean, S. W. by the province of Connaught, and S. by that of Leinster. The principal place is Belfast.

Ulster comprises 54 baronies, 332 parishes, 8450 sq. ms., 5,408,070 English statute acres, 3,754,352 cultivated acres, 1,469,922 acres of unimproved mountains and bogs, 183,796 acres in lakes. The pop. in 1841 was 2,388,890.

*Q.* In what part of Ireland is Leinster?

*A.* In the east?

LEINSTER is one of the four great provinces into which Ireland is divided, on the E. side of the Island, comprising the counties of Carlow, Dublin, Kildare, Kilkenny, King's, Longford, Louth, Meath, Queen's, Westmeath, Wexford, and Wicklow.

This province is bounded N. by Ulster, E. and S. by St. George's Channel, and W. by Munster and Connaught. Dublin is the capital.

Leinster comprises 97 baronies, 992 parishes, 7472 sq. ms., 4,782,058 English statute acres, 4,114,160 cultivated acres, 635,424 acres of unimproved mountains and bogs, 32,474 acres in lakes. The pop. in 1841 was 1,971,970.

*Q.* In what part of Ireland is Munster?

*A.* In the south-west.

MUNSTER is one of the four great provinces into which Ireland is divided, comprising the S. W. portion of the Island, and counties of Clare, Cork, Kerry, Limerick, Tipperary, and Waterford.

This province is bounded N. by Connaught, E. by Leinster, and S. and W. by the Atlantic. The principal place is Cork.

Munster comprises 59 baronies, 816 parishes, 9187 sq. ms., 5,879,872 English statute acres, 3,929,852 cultivated acres, 1,905,368 acres of unimproved mountains and bogs, 44,652 acres in lakes. The pop. in 1841 was 2,395,800.

*Q.* In what part of Ireland is Connaught?

*A.* In the west.

CONNAUGHT is one of the four provinces into which Ireland is divided, on its W. coast, containing the counties of Galway, Leitrim, Mayo, Roscommon, and Sligo.

This province is bounded N. by Donegal and Sligo Bays, E. by the River Shannon, which separates it from Leinster, S. by Munster, and W. by the Atlantic Ocean. Galway is the principal town in Connaught.

Connaught comprises 42 baronies, 296 parishes, 6765 sq. ms., 4,329,608 English statute acres, 2,805,109 cultivated acres, 1,330,022 acres of unimproved mountains and bogs, 194,477 acres in lakes. The pop. in 1841 was 1,418,613.

General totals of the above provinces: 252 baronies; 2436 parishes; 31,000 sq. ms.; 20,399,608 English statute acres; 14,603,473 cultivated acres; 5,340,736 acres of unimproved mountains and bogs; 455,399 acres in lakes; pop. in 1841, 8,175,273; pop. per square mile, 263.7.

The foregoing provinces were in ancient times independent kingdoms.

*For a further description, see Key, page 228: also, under head of British Isles, Key, pages 262-3.*

## FRANCE.

*Page 247.—Lesson 168.—Map No. 21.*

*Q.* What bounds France on the north ?

*A.* English Channel, Strait of Dover, and Belgium.

*Q.* South ?

*A.* Spain, and the Mediterranean Sea ?

*Q.* East ?

*A.* Baden, Switzerland, and Sardinia.

*Q.* West ?

*A.* Bay of Biscay.

*Q.* What river flows into the English Channel ?

*A.* Seine.

*Q.* Into the Bay of Biscay ?

*A.* Loire, and Garonne.

*Q.* Into the Gulf of Lyons ?

*A.* Rhone.

*Q.* How long is each river ?

*A.* Seine is 300 ms. ; Loire, 500 ; Garonne, 300 ; Rhone, 450.

(M. A.)

*Q.* What river forms the boundary between France and Baden ?

*A.* Rhine.

*Q.* What lake does the Rhone flow from ?

*A.* Geneva.

*Q.* What mountains separate France from Spain ?

*A.* Pyrenees.

*Q.* From Sardinia ?

*A.* The Alps ?

*Q.* From Switzerland ?

*A.* The Jura Mts.

*Q.* What mountains between the Rhone and Loire ?

*A.* Cevennes.

*Q.* West of the Loire ?

*A.* Auvergne.

*Q.* West of the Rhine ?

*A.* Vosges Mts.

*Q.* What Islands on the coast of France ?

*A.* Norman Isles, Belleisle, Noirmoutier, Dieu, De Re, and Oleron. (M. A.)

*Q.* Which belong to Great Britain ?

*A.* Norman Isles.

*Q.* What is the population of Paris ?

*A.* 1,000,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Marseilles ?

*A.* 170,000. (M. A.)

- Q. Lyons ?  
 A. 200,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Bordeaux ?  
 A. 95,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Rouen ?  
 A. 100,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Nantes ?  
 A. 75,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Lille ?  
 A. 72,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Toulouse ?  
 A. 68,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Strasburg ?  
 A. 50,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Orleans ?  
 A. 40,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Toulon ?  
 A. 45,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. What Island in the Mediterranean Sea belongs to France ?  
 A. Corsica.  
 Q. How long and wide is it ?  
 A. 120 ms. long, and 50 wide. (M. A.)  
 Q. How many inhabitants has Bastia ?  
 A. 12,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Ajaccio ?  
 A. 9000. (M. A.)  
 Q. On what river is Bordeaux ?\*  
 A. Garonne.  
 Q. Rouen ?†  
 A. Seine.  
 Q. Nantes ?‡  
 A. Loire.

---

\* Bordeaux, or Bourdeaux (Anc. *Burdigala*), is an important commercial city and sea-port of France ; capital of department Gironde, in the centre of an extensive plain, on the left or W. bank of the Garonne, 55 ms. S. E. from its embouchure, 102 ms. N. N. E. of Bayonne, and 307 ms. S. W. of Paris ; lat.  $44^{\circ} 50' N.$ , long.  $0^{\circ} 33' W.$

† Rouen (Anc. *Rothomagus*) is one of the principal cities of France, and the great seat of its cotton manufacture, department Seine-Inferieure, of which it is the capital, on the Seine, 44 ms. (direct distance) from its mouth, and 67 ms. N. W. from Paris ; lat.  $49^{\circ} 26' N.$  long.  $1^{\circ} 5' E.$

‡ Nantes (Anc. *Mamnetes*, or *Civitas Namnetum*) is a large and celebrated commercial city and port of France, department Loire-Inferieure, of which it is the capital, on the Loire, where it is joined by the Erdre and Severe-Nantaise, about 34 ms. from its mouth, and 210 ms. S. W. from Paris ; lat.  $47^{\circ} 13' N.$ , long.  $1^{\circ} 32' W.$



Q. Tours?\*

A. Loire.

Q. Orleans?†

A. Loire.

Q. Toulouse?‡

A. Garonne.

Q. Strasburg?§

A. Ill.

Q. Point out Tours, and other noted battle-fields.

A. Battle of Tours in 732; Crecy, 1346; Poitiers, 1356; Agincourt, 1415; Toulouse, 1814; Orthes, 1814. (M. A.)

For a further description, see Key, page 229.

---

SPAIN.

Page 249.—Lesson 169.—Map No. 21.

Q. What bounds Spain on the north?

A. France, and the Bay of Biscay

Q. South?

A. Mediterranean Sea, and Atlantic Ocean.

Q. East?

A. Mediterranean Sea.

Q. West?

A. Portugal.

Q. Which are the chief rivers of Spain?

A. Douro, Tagus, Guadiana, Guadalquivir, and Ebro.

---

\* Tours (Anc. *Cæsaromagus*) is a city of France, department Indre et Loire, of which it is the capital; it is surrounded by extensive and fertile plains, and is itself placed on the narrow tongue of land between the rivers Loire and Cher, close to the point of their confluence, 127 ms. S. W. from Paris. Lat. 47° 23' N., long. 0° 41' E.

† Orleans (Anc. *Genabum*, and afterward *Aureliana*) is a city of France, in the centre of the kingdom, capital department Loiret, on the Loire, 34 ms. N. E. from Blois, and 68 ms. S. S. W. from Paris. Lat. 47° 54' N.; long. 2° 45' E.

‡ Toulouse, or Thoulouse (Anc. *Tolosa*), is one of the principal and most ancient cities in the S. of France, department Haute-Garonne, of which it is the capital, on the Garonne, at the junction of the canals of Languedoc and Briare with that river, 132 ms. S. E. from Bordeaux; lat. 43° 35' N., long. 1° 26' E.

§ Strasburg, or Strasbourg, (Anc. *Argentoratum*), a fortified city of France, on its E. frontier, department Bas-Rhin, of which it is the capital, on the Ill, within a short distance of the Rhine, to which its glacis extends, and across which it communicates with Kehl by a bridge principally of boats, about 100 ms. S. S. W. from Mentz, and 250 ms. E. by S. from Paris; lat. 48° 34' N., long. 7° 44' E.

Q. How long are each of these ?

A. Douro is 450 ms. long ; Tagus, 550 ; Guadiana, 500 ; Guadalquivir, 450 ; Ebro, 350. (M. A.)

Q. Which are the chief mountains ?

A. Pyrenees, Cantabrian, Sierra Morena, and Sierra Nevada.

Q. How high are they ?

A. Pyrenees, 10,000 ft. ; Cantabrian, 11,200 ft. ; Sierra Morena, 5883 ft. ; Sierra Nevada, 11,678 ft. (M. A.)

Q. Which separate France from Spain ?

A. Pyrenees.

Q. What mountain lies west of Barcelona ?

A. Montserat.\*

Q. What Islands lie east of Spain ?

A. Balearic.

Q. What strait separates Spain from Africa ?

A. Gibraltar.

Q. How wide is it ?

A. 15 ms. (M. A.)

Q. What is the population of Madrid ?

A. 224,000. (M. A.)

Q. Barcelona ?

A. 181,000. (M. A.)

Q. Seville ?

A. 91,000. (M. A.)

Q. Granada ?

A. 59,000. (M. A.)

Q. Valencia ?

A. 66,000. (M. A.)

Q. Cordova ?

A. 39,000. (M. A.)

Q. Cadiz ?

A. 64,000. (M. A.)

Q. Malaga ?

A. 75,000. (M. A.)

Q. Saragossa ?

A. 44,000. (M. A.)

Q. Point out the places noted for sieges.

A. Saragossa, Badajoz, Pampeluna, St. Sebastian, and Cadiz.

Q. Battles ?

A. Battle of Talavera in 1809 ; Ciudad Rodrigo, 1812 ; Salamanca, 1812 ; Vittoria, 1813. (M. A.)

Q. Naval battles ?

A. Jervis' victory, off Cape St. Vincent, in 1797 ; Nelson's victory, off Cape Trafalgar, in 1805. (M. A.)

*For a further description of Spain, see Key, page 229.*

---

\* This is noted for its singular form and the monasteries built on it. (M. G. p. 249.)

## PORTUGAL.

Page 251.—Lesson 170.—Map No. 21.

Q. What bounds Portugal on the north and east?

A. Spain.

Q. South and west?

A. Atlantic Ocean.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. Tagus, Douro, and Guadiana.

Q. How long is each of these?

A. Tagus is 550 ms. long; Douro, 450; Guadiana, 500.

(M. A.)

Q. On what river is Lisbon?\*

A. Tagus.

Q. Oporto?†

A. Douro.

Q. Coimbra?‡

A. Mondego.

Q. Which are the principal mountains?

A. Sierra Estrella?

Q. What is the population of Lisbon?

A. 298,000. (M. A.)

Q. Oporto?

A. 80,000. (M. A.)

Q. Coimbra?

A. 20,000. (M. A.)

Q. St. Ubes?

A. 15,000. (M. A.)

Q. Braga?

A. 14,000. (M. A.)

Q. Elvas?

A. 10,000. (M. A.)

Q. Evora?

A. 14,000. (M. A.)

\* Lisbon (Port. *Lisboa*; Anc. *Olisipo*, and afterward *Felicitas Julia*), is the capital city and principal sea-port of Portugal, in the comarca of its own name, admirably situated for commerce on the right bank, and near the mouth of the Tagus, 172 ms. S. from Oporto, 220 ms. N. W. from Cadiz, and 320 ms. W. S. W. from Madrid. Lat.  $38^{\circ} 42' N.$ , long.  $9^{\circ} 5' W.$

† Oporto, or Porto, is an important commercial city and sea-port of Portugal, on the N. bank of the Douro, about 2 ms. from its mouth, 174 ms. N. by E. from Lisbon; lat.  $41^{\circ} 10' N.$ , long.  $8^{\circ} 37' W.$

‡ Coimbra, a city of Portugal, province Beira, capital of a district, and see of a bishop, partly on a steep rocky precipice, and partly on a plain contiguous to the Mondego, 115 ms. N. N. E. from Lisbon; lat.  $40^{\circ} 12' N.$ , long.  $8^{\circ} 26' W.$

Q. Where is Ourique ?

A. In the S. part of Portugal.

Q. Vimeira ?

A. In the S. W. part of Portugal.

Q. Busaco ?

A. In the N. W. part of Portugal.

*For a further description, see Key, pages 229-30.*

## GERMANY.\*

*Page 260.—Lesson 177.—Map No. 20.*

Q. What bounds Germany on the North ?

A. The North Sea, Denmark, and the Baltic Sea.

Q. South ?

A. Switzerland, and Lombardy and Venice.

Q. East ?

A. Poland, Galicia, and Hungary.

Q. West ?

A. Holland, Belgium, and France.

Q. How many German States are there ?†

A. Thirty-nine.

Q. How many are empires ?

A. One.

Q. Kingdoms ?

A. Five.

Q. Grand Duchies ?

A. Seven.

Q. Duchies ?

A. Nine.

Q. Principalities ?

A. Ten.

Q. Electorates ?

A. One.

Q. Landgraviates ?

A. One.

Q. Lordships ?

A. One.

Q. Republics ?

A. Four.

Q. How many States are Catholic ?

A. Six.

Q. Protestant ?

A. Thirty-three.

\* For description, see Key, pages 230 to 239.

† See table of the German States, in Mitchell's Atlas, Table No. 1.

Q. Absolute in government?

A. Five.

Q. How long and wide is Germany?

A. It is 600 ms. long, and 550 ms. wide. (M. A.)

Q. Its area?

A. 251,000 sq. ms. (M. A.)

Q. Population?

A. 40,000,000. (M. A.)

Q. To what state does Holstein and Lauenburg belong?

A. Denmark.

Q. To what states does Luxemburg belong?

A. Belgium and Holland.

#### GERMAN STATES.

Q. Point out the different States on the Map.\*

A. Austria, Prussia, Bavaria, Wirtemberg, Hanover, Saxony, Baden, Hesse Cassel, Hesse Darmstadt, Hesse Homburg, Holstein, &c., Luxemburg, Saxe Weimar, Saxe Coburg Gotha, Saxe Altenburg, Saxe Meiningen Hilburghausen, Brunswick, Mecklenburg Schwerin, Mecklenburg Strelitz, Oldenburg, Nassau, Anhalt Dessau, Anhalt Bernburg, Anhalt Cothen, Reuss Greitz, Reuss Schleitz, Hohenzollern Hechingen, Hohenzollern Sigmaringen, Lichtenstein, Schwartzburg Sondershausen, Schwartzburg Rudolstadt, Lippe Detmold, Lippe Schauenburg, Waldeck, Kniphausen, Lubec, Hamburg, Bremen, Frankfort. (M. A.)

#### RIVERS.

Q. What Rivers flow into the North Sea?

A. Rhine, Ems, Weser, Elbe, and Eyder.

Q. Into the Baltic Sea?

A. Oder.

Q. How long is each of these?

A. Rhine, 950 ms.; Ems, 150; Weser, 300; Elbe, 600; Oder, 450. (M. A.)

Q. Which is the principal river in the south of Germany?

A. The Danube.

Q. Into what river do the Meuse, Moselle, Mayne, and Neckar flow?

A. The Rhine.

Q. The Lech, Iser, Inn, Ens, Leitha, March, Raab, and Drave?

A. The Danube.

The Save also flows into the Danube. (M. G.)

---

\* The smaller German States which have a common title, will be found under their respective heads: thus, the Saxon Duchies are under SAXE; those of Anhalt, under ANHALT, &c. The capitals designate the general position of the special divisions. (M. G.—*this lesson*.)



*Q.* Into what river do the Hunte, Aller, Fulda, and Werra, flow?

*A.* The Weser.

*Q.* The Moldau, Mulda, Saal, Havel, and Ilmenau?

*A.* The Elbe.

The Neisse, Bober, and Wartha, are the chief branches of the Oder. (M. G.)

*Q.* Into what sea does the Danube flow?

*A.* The Black Sea. (*See Map No. 18.*)

#### LAKES.

*Q.* Where is Muritz Lake?

*A.* It is in the S. E. part of the Grand Duchy of Mecklenburg Schwerin, being the largest lake in N. Germany. (M. A.)

This lake has an area of more than 50 sq. ms., and is elevated 216 feet above the level of the sea.

*Q.* Where is Lake Schweiloch?

*A.* It is in the S. part of Brandenburg, (a province of E. Prussia), and flows into the R. Spree. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Ammer Lake?

*A.* It is in the S. part of Bavaria, and flows into Ammer R. (M. A.)

This lake is about 12 ms. long, and 27 in circuit.

*Q.* Where is Cheim Lake?

*A.* It is in the S. E. part of Bavaria, and flows by a small branch into the Inn R. (M. A.)

This lake is about 35 ms. in circuit.

*Q.* Where is Atter Lake?

*A.* It is in the Archduchy of Upper Austria, and flows into a branch of the Danube. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Traun Lake?

*A.* It is in the Archduchy of Upper Austria, lying E. of Atter Lake, and flows into a branch of the Danube. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Lake of Constance?

*A.* It lies between Switzerland and Germany, surrounded by the territories of Baden, Wirtemberg, Bavaria, Austria (Vorarlberg,) and Switzerland, and flows into the Rhine. (M. A.)

CONSTANCE (Anc. *Lacus Brigantinus*, or *Suevicus*, Germ. *Bodensee*,) is situated in central Europe, being the largest belonging to Germany, between lat. 47° 29' and 47° 49' N., and long. 9° 2' and 9° 45' E. Length N. W. to S. E., about 45 ms., greatest breadth about 8½ ms.; area, about 200 sq. ms.; elevation above the level of the sea, 1255 ft.; greatest depth, 964 ft. Its most N. portion consists of a narrow prolongation, called the Neberling Lake. The Rhine enters the Lake of Constance on the S. E., and issues from its N. W. extremity at the city of Constance, connecting it with the lake called the Unter or Zeller-see, which contains the fertile Island of Reichenau, and is sometimes considered part of the Lake of Constance.

*Q* Where is Cirknitz Lake?

*A.* It is in Carniola (a duchy of Austria) intersected by the parallel of  $45^{\circ} 45'$  N. lat., and the meridian of  $14^{\circ} 23'$  E. long.

This lake is about 20 ms. in circumference.

CIRKNITZ or Zirknitz is an alternating lake : it is full of water in winter, which passes off in the early part of summer, and the bottom of the lake becomes a pasture-ground. (M. G., *this lesson*.)

#### ISLANDS.

*Q.* Where are the Islands of Rugen, Usedom, and Wollin?

*A.* They are in the Baltic Sea, on the coast of the Prussian province of Pomerania. (M. A.)

*Q.* To what state do they belong?

*A.* To Pomerania.

*Q.* What Island lies west of Holstein?

*A.* Heligoland.

*Q.* To what power does it belong?

*A.* To Great Britain?

#### MOUNTAINS.

*Q.* Where are the mts. called the Fichtelgebirge?

*A.* Fichtelgebirge, (i. e. Pine Mountains), is an irregular mountain mass situated principally in the N. E. part of Bavaria. (M. A.)

These mts. may be considered as the centre and nucleus of the mts. in central Germany, and from them branch, in four directions, the ranges composing the watershed that divides the rivers of the Black Sea from those of the Baltic and North Sea.

*Q.* Where are the Erzgebirge Mts.? (i. e. Ore Mountains.)

*A.* Diverging N. E. from the Fichtelgebirge, they form the boundary between Saxony and Bohemia, having their scarped side S. towards the R. Eger. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Riesengebirge Mts.?

*A.* They form the boundary between Prussian Silesia on the N., and Austrian Bohemia and Moravia on the S. (M. A.)

They form the E. continuations of the Erzgebirge, which join the Carpathian ridge near the source of the Oder and Vistula. The last three ranges form the Sudetic Mts. (M. G.)

*Q.* Where are the Hartz Mts.?

*A.* Harz or Hartz (*Silva Hercynia*, Tac.), a mountain chain of Germany, on the S. E. frontier of Hanover, connected by low hills with the Thuringer-wald, a W. offset from the Fichtelgebirge, the great centre of the German mountain system.

These mts. extend farther N. than any other chain, and immediately at its foot commences the great plain which stretches N. to the Baltic, and from the North Sea to the Volga R.

*Q.* Where is the Böhmerwald ?

*A.* It forms the S. W. boundary of Austrian Bohemia, separating it from Bavaria. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Arlberg Mts. ?

*A.* They are on the S. frontier of Bavaria. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Vosges Mts. ?

*A.* Vosges (Germ. *Wasgau*) Mts., a chain in the N. E. part of France, which extends parallel with the Rhine, separating the departments of Haute and Bas-Rhin on the E. from those of Haute-Saône, Vosges, and Meurthe on the W., stretching also into Rhenish Bavaria, and terminating to the N. E. in Mont Tonnerre.

*Q.* How high are all the foregoing Mts. ?

*A.* Fichtelgebirge, 5200 ft. ; Erzgebirge, 3900 ft. ; Reisingebirge, 5200 ft. ; Hartz, 4500 ft. ; Böhmerwald or Bohemian Forest 4500 ft. ; Arlberg, 5000 ft. ; Vosges, 4500 ft. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Black Forest or Schwarzwald ?

*A.* It stretches from the banks of the Rhine, where that r. forms the Swiss boundary, in a northern direction through the Grand Duchy of Baden as far as the Neckar R., and towards the E. far into the kingdom of Wirtemberg, falling gradually in the latter direction with prolonged offsets, but suddenly and steeply towards the valley of the Rhine. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Odenwald ?

*A.* It extends from the N. E. part of Baden into Hesse Darmstadt, or the Grand Duchy of Hesse, in a N. W. direction. (M. A.)

The highest summit, the Katzenbüchel, 2180 ft., lies in Baden ; but the greater part of the chain belongs to Hesse.

*Q.* Where are the Hercynian or Wild Mts. ?

*A.* They form the S. E. boundary of Bohemia, dividing it from Moravia, and separating the affluents of the Elbe from those of the Danube. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Alps ?

*A.* They begin on the side of France, between the territory of Genoa and the country of Nice, pass into Switzerland, cross that country and the Tyrol, separating for the most part Italy from France, Switzerland and Germany, and terminate, after many windings, near the Gulf of Trieste, on the Gulf of Venice.

The Alps compose the great central table-land of Europe, over a sixth part of which their ramifications are estimated to extend. The most elevated summits of the Alpine system yield in elevation only to those of the Caucasus ; Mont Blanc, in Savoy, the culminating point, is 15,668 ft. in height. The Alps divide into nine principal branches, which spread over Switzerland, France, Germany, the Austrian empire, Turkey, Greece, and Italy ; the Apennine, Carpathian, and Balkan Mts., &c., all belong to, or are intimately connected with, this system.

*For a further description of the Alps, see Europe, lesson 150th, Map No. 18, Key, pages 272-3.*

*Q.* How long are the Alps?

*A.* 700 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* Point out the Rhetian, Julian, Noric, and Styrian Alps.

*A.* They stretch from the frontier of Switzerland through Tyrol, following the right bank of the Inn, as far as the point of junction of Upper Austria and Carinthia; here they take an E. N. E. direction through Styria into Hungary, and subside in the Leitha chain, near the Danube. (M. A.)

#### GERMAN PROVINCES OF AUSTRIA.\*

*Q.* Where is Bohemia?

*A.* In the N. E. part of the empire; it has N. E., Prussian Silesia; N. and N. W., Saxony; S. W., Bavaria; and S. and S. E., the archduchy of Austria and Moravia. (M. A.)

The kingdom of **BOHEMIA** (Germ. *Böhmen*, Boh. *Czech*) is an inland country, occupying the centre of Europe, and forming an important portion of the Austrian empire, between lat.  $48^{\circ} 34'$  and  $51^{\circ} 3'$  N., and long.  $12^{\circ} 5'$  and  $16^{\circ} 46'$  E. It contains 20,285 sq. ms. Pop. 3,828,479. Its shape is an irregular rhomboid; greatest length, E. to W., 200 ms.; greatest length, N. to S., 170 ms. The principal rivers of Bohemia are the Elbe, Moldau, Beraun, Eger, and Sazawa. Chief towns, Prague, the capital, Budweis and Klattau.

*Q.* Where are Moravia and Austrian Silesia?

*A.* They are in the N. part of the empire; on the N. they have Prussian Silesia; E. and S. E., Galicia and Hungary; S., the latter country and Lower Austria; and W. and N. W., Bohemia. (M. A.)

**MORAVIA** (Germ. *Mähren*) is an important province of the Austrian empire, which, including Austrian Silesia, incorporated with it since 1783, extends between lat.  $48^{\circ} 40'$  and  $50^{\circ} 25'$  N., and the 15th and 19th degs. of E. long. It is of a rhomboidal shape; greatest length about 185 ms.; average breadth 55 ms. Area, about 10,240 sq. ms. Pop. in 1838, 2,143,052. Principal rivers of Moravia, the March, Schwartz, Iglawa and Thaya. Chief towns, Brunn, the capital, Olmutz, Iglau, and Sternberg. The chief rivers of Silesia are the Oder and Vistula. Capital, Troppau.

*Q.* Where are Upper and Lower Austria?

*A.* In the W. part of the empire; they form an archduchy which constitutes the principal part of the hereditary dominions of the house of Austria. The archduchy is bounded N. by Bohemia and Moravia, E. by Hungary, S. by Styria, Illyria, and the Tyrol, and W. by the Tyrol and Bavaria. It is divided into Upper and Lower Austria. The former occupies the western, the latter the eastern portion of the archduchy. (M. A.)

The Archduchy of Austria, the nucleus and centre of the Austrian empire, is divided into the two provinces of Austria above the Ens, and Austria below the Ens, commonly termed Upper and Lower Austria. The lower

\* See Key, page 230.



province has for centuries experienced no alteration in its boundaries ; but Upper Austria was enlarged in the present century by the incorporation of the archbishopric of Salzburg, with the exception of the lordship of Berchtesgaden, which fell to Bavaria, and of the district lying along the right bank of the Inn from the Salza to the mouth of that river. The archduchy of Austria lies between lat.  $46^{\circ} 57'$  and  $49^{\circ} 0'$  N., and long.  $12^{\circ} 46'$  and  $17^{\circ} 7'$  E. ; and, according to the measurement of the imperial engineers, contains 15,017 English sq. ms., of which 7317 belong to the lower, and 7700 to the upper province. The principal rivers of these provinces are the Danube, Inn, Salza, Ens, Leitha, March and Thaya. The chief towns of Upper Austria are, Lintz, Salzburg, and Steyer. Of the Lower province, Vienna, the capital of the empire, Neustadt and Glocknitz.

*Q.* Where is the Tyrol ?

*A.* The Tyrol (Anc. *Rhætia*, with part of *Noricum*) is a province of the Austrian empire ; having N., Bavaria ; E., the archduchy of Austria, and Carinthia ; S., the Lombardo-Venetian kingdom ; and W., Switzerland (the Grisons, &c.), and the principality of Lichtenstein. (M. A.)

This province lies between  $45^{\circ} 40'$  and  $47^{\circ} 44'$  N. lat., and  $9^{\circ} 32'$  and  $12^{\circ} 55'$  E. long. Length, E. to W., about 120 ms. ; average breadth somewhat less than 100 ms. Area estimated at about 11,000 sq. ms. Pop., in 1838, 831,298. This country may be regarded as an extension of Switzerland towards the E. It is traversed in its whole extent by the main ridge of the Alps, which has here some of its loftiest summits, including, among others, mount Ortler, 12,823 ft., and the Gross Glockner, 12,567 ft. above the level of the sea. This grand chain separates the waters that flow N. to the Rhine and the upper Danube from those that flow S. to the Po and the Adriatic (Gulf of Venice), and the lower Danube. But, exclusive of this gigantic chain, an inferior chain, from 50 to 60 ms. S. of the latter, divides the country into three portions : the valley of the Inn, to the N. of the high Alps ; that of the Drave, between the high Alps and the inferior chain ; and the country to the S. of the latter, drained by the Adige, and other rivers flowing into the Adriatic (Gulf of Venice). The principal rivers of the Tyrol are the Inn, Rhine, Lech and Adige. The chief towns are Innspruck, the capital, Trent, Roveredo, Botzen and Halle.

*Q.* Where is Styria ?

*A.* It has N. the archduchy of Austria ; E. Hungary ; S. E. Croatia ; S. Carniola ; and W. Carinthia and Upper Austria. (M. A.)

The province of STYRIA (Germ. *Steiermark*) is an interior territory, situated immediately S. of Upper and Lower Austria. It lies between  $45^{\circ} 55'$  and  $47^{\circ} 40'$  N. lat., and  $13^{\circ} 30'$  and  $16^{\circ} 10'$  E. long. It varies in length from N. to S., from 120 to 40 ms. ; from E. to W. it is about 110 ms. in extent. Area, 8531 sq. ms. Pop. in 1838, 940,951. This province is divided into Upper and Lower Styria ; the first is a rugged, mountainous district, through which the Styrian Alps extend from E. to W. ; but the other is for the most part a fertile, level plain, watered by the Drave, the Muhr, the Raab, and other streams. The Ens waters the northern part of the Upper province. Upper Styria is famous for its iron, much of which is made



into steel, and exported to other countries. The towns of Styria are, Gratz, the capital, Marburg, and Cilly.

*Q.* Where are Carinthia and Carniola?

*A.* They have N. Upper Austria and Styria; E. Styria; S. Croatia and Istria, and W. a part of the government of Trieste, the Lombardo-Venetian kingdom, and the Tyrol. (M. A.)

The Duchies of CARINTHIA and CARNIOLA (Germ. *Kärnthen* and *Krain*, form two contiguous inland provinces of the Austrian empire; the former being included in the ancient *Noricum*, and the latter in *Illyricum*: they now respectively form the northern and central portions of the kingdom of Illyria, as established in 1815, chiefly between lat.  $45^{\circ} 30'$  and  $47^{\circ} 10' N.$ , and long.  $12^{\circ} 40'$  and  $15^{\circ} 40' E.$  Area, 6930 sq. ms. Pop. (1838) 748,785, about 3-5ths of which belong to Carniola. These provinces compose that part of Illyria forming the government of Laybach, and are divided into five circles, viz., Carinthia into Klagenfurt and Villach, or Lower and Upper Carinthia; and Carniola into those of Laybach, Adelsberg, and Neustadt. The Save and the Drave are the principal rivers of these duchies. Klagenfurt is the capital of Carinthia, and Laybach of Carniola.

For the other great divisions of Austria, see Map No. 18. They are Hungary, Galicia, and Dalmatia. Chief towns, Pest, Lemberg, and Zara. (M. G., p. 261—*this lesson*.)

*Q.* Where is Hungary?

*A.* It is bounded on the N. and N. E. by Moravia and Galicia, E. by Transylvania, S. by Turkey, Sclavonia and Croatia, and W. by Styria and Lower Austria. (M. A.)

HUNGARY (Hung. *Magyar Ország*, Germ. *Ungarn*) is an extensive kingdom of Central or S. E. Europe, forming a part of the Austrian empire, situated between  $44^{\circ} 28'$  and  $49^{\circ} 36' N.$  lat., and  $16^{\circ}$  and  $25^{\circ} E.$  long. Its extreme length, from E. to W., is about 420 ms.; the greatest breadth from N. to S. is about 330 ms. The area is computed at 78,822 sq. ms. Pop. uncertain, but estimated at upwards of 10,000,000. The kingdom of Hungary includes, besides Hungary proper, Sclavonia, Croatia, and several districts of less importance. The government is called a limited monarchy, but aristocracy is predominant, and the nobles have great power, while the great mass of the peasantry are in a state of extreme degradation. The kingdom of Hungary formerly included, besides its present territories, Transylvania, Dalmatia, and the Military Frontier; which countries, since their annexation to the crown of Austria, still go under the general name of the Hungarian dominions. Hungary is a well-watered country, and contains many rivers. The latter consist of the Danube and its branches, the Theiss, Maros, Koros, Waay and Raab. Buda, on the W. bank of the Danube, is the residence of the viceroy and his court, but Pest, on the opposite side of the river, is the seat of the judicial tribunals of the kingdom, so that the two cities, taken together, may be considered as the capital. Presburg, on the Danube, Debretzen, S. of the Theiss, Szegedin, at the junction of the Theiss and Maros, and Temesvar, are the other chief towns.

*Q.* Where is Galicia?

*A.* It lies to the N. of the Carpathians, by which it is separated from Hungary; on the N. W. Galicia is separated from the state

of Cracow, and a part of the kingdom of Poland, by the Vistula; on the N. and N. E. part of Poland and Russia; on the E. is the western part of Russia; and S. E. is Moldavia. (M. A.)

The kingdom of GALICIA (Germ. *Galizien*) forms the N. E. portion of the Austrian dominions, being situated between  $47^{\circ}$  and  $50^{\circ} 50'$  N. lat., and  $18^{\circ} 54'$  and  $26^{\circ} 37'$  E. long. Its length, from E. to W., is about 350 ms.; its greatest breadth, from N. to S., near 230 ms. The area is computed at 32,949 sq. ms. Pop. about 4,600,000. The chief rivers of Galicia are the Vistula, the Bug, the Dniester, and the Pruth. Lemberg is the capital; the other towns of any importance are Brody, Bochnia, Sambor, Tarnopol and Stanislaus.

*Q.* Where is Dalmatia?

*A.* It lies in the S. part of the empire; on the N. it is bounded by Hungary, N. E. and E. by Turkey, and S. W. by the Adriatic (Gulf of Venice). (M. A.)

DALMATIA (Anc. part of *Illyricum*) forms a kingdom belonging to the crown of Austria, situated between  $42^{\circ}$  and  $45^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $14^{\circ} 30'$  and  $19^{\circ}$  E. long., being the most S. province of the Austrian empire, comprising a long and narrow territory lying along the N. E. shore of the Adriatic, and numerous islands in that sea. Length of the continental portion, N. W. to S. E., 250 ms.: breadth greatest towards the N., where it averages nearly 40 ms.; but it tapers thence gradually to its S. extremity, and in its lower half is never more than 15 ms. in width. Area, 5098 sq. ms. Pop. 320,000. The rivers of Dalmatia are of small extent, and all flow into the Gulf of Venice; the most important are the Narenta, Cettina and Kerka. Zara is the capital; the other towns of any note are Spalatro, Ragusa, and Cattaro.

#### GERMAN PROVINCES OF PRUSSIA.\*

*Q.* Where is Pomerania?

*A.* It is a large province of the Prussian states, lying along the S. coast of the Baltic, having E. and S. the provinces of West Prussia and Brandenburg, and W. Mecklenburg.

This province extends between  $53^{\circ}$  and  $54^{\circ} 50'$  N. lat., and from  $12^{\circ} 20'$  to  $18^{\circ} 2'$  E. long. Its form is oblong, its length (from E. to W.) being above 200 ms.; while its breadth varies from 30 to 60 and 80 ms. Area, 12,179 sq. ms. Pop. in 1837, 970,117, of whom 956,334 were Protestants. It is divided into three regencies, and these again into 25 circles. Surface flat. Principal towns, Stettin, Stralsund, Greifswald, Stargard, Stolpe, &c. Principal rivers, Oder, Leba, Stolpe, Rega, Persante, Ucker, Peene, and Ihna. The Haff is a large bay, or rather lagoon, of an irregular form, which communicates with the Baltic by the mouths of the Oder.

*Q.* Where is Brandenburg?

*A.* It has N., Mecklenburg and Pomerania; E., the provinces of Prussia and Posen; S., Silesia and the kingdom of Saxony; and W., Prussian Saxony, Anhalt, and Hanover. (*See Map of Austria and Prussia.*)

BRANDENBURG is an important province of the Prussian states, consisting, principally of the ancient mark or marquissate of Brandenburg, between

\* See Key, pages 230-31.

51° 10' and 53° 37' N. lat., and 11° 13' and 16° 12' E. long. Area, 15,000 sq. ms. Pop., in 1837, 1,694,042, of whom 1,666,232 were Protestants, 15,258 Catholics, and 12,552 Jews, &c. It is divided into two regencies and thirty-four circles. Principal towns, Berlin, Potsdam, Frankfurt, Brandenburg, &c. It consists principally of an immense sandy plain, watered by the Oder, Spree, Havel, Netz, and other rivers, and by numerous lakes.

*Q.* Where is Silesia?

*A.* It is in the N. E. part of Germany, lying around the upper portion of the Oder; having N., the province of Poland; E., Poland and Cracow; S. E., Austrian Galicia; S., Austrian Silesia, Moravia, and Bohemia; and W., Saxony and Brandenburg. (M. A.)

SILESIA is an important and valuable province of the Prussian dominions. It lies between 49° 40' and 52° N. lat., and 14° 25' and 18° 12' E. long., and has an oblong shape, extending N. W. and S. E. Area, 15,711 sq. ms. Pop., in 1837, 2,645,166; of whom 1,394,088 were Protestants, 1,226,555 Catholics, and 25,510 Jews. The proportion of Protestants to Catholics has increased considerably since the Prussian conquest. Principal towns, Breslau, Liegnitz, Glogau, Gorlitz, Neisse, Glatz, Oppeln, &c. It is divided into three regencies, and these again into 57 circles. Surface rugged and mountainous along its S. and S. W. frontier, but in other parts it is either flat, or but slightly undulating; this is particularly the case on the E. side of the Oder.

*Q.* Where is Saxony?

*A.* The province of Saxony is in the southern part of Prussia; it is bounded N. by Hanover and Brandenburg; S. by the kingdom of Saxony, and the Saxon duchies; E. by Brandenburg; and W. by Hanover, Brunswick, and Hesse Cassel.

This province extends from 51° 55' to 53° 10' N. lat., and from 10° 34' to 14° 21' E. long. Length, from E. to W. 175 ms.; breadth, from N. to S., 123 ms. Area, 8492 sq. ms. Pop., in 1837, 1,539,353, of whom 1,437,353 were Protestants, and 97,932 Catholics. It forms a portion of the southern part of the great flat plain of Northern Germany, and is intersected by the river Elbe and its branches, the Saale, the Muldau, and the Elster. It includes within its boundaries the independent principalities of Anhalt, of Schwartzburg Sondershausen, and part of Brunswick. The province is divided into three regencies, and these again into 41 cities. Principal towns, Magdeburg, Halle, Halberstadt and Erfurth.

*Q.* Where is Westphalia?

*A.* It has N., Hanover; E., the latter, and some of the smaller German States; S., the latter, and S. W., the Prussian province of the Rhine; and W., Holland. (M. A.)

The province of WESTPHALIA contains all the N. portion of the Prussian dominions to the W. of the Weser, lying between lat. 50° 40' and 52° 30' N., and long. 6° 25' and 9° 23' E. Area, 7801 sq. ms. Pop., in 1837, 1,317,541; of whom 749,782 are Catholics, 554,649 Protestants, and 13,016 Jews. Principal towns, Munster, Minden, Paderborn, Armsberg, Hamm, &c. It is divided into three regencies, and these again into 37 circles. Principal

rivers, Ems, Weser, Lippe, &c. Surface in the E., N. E., and S., hilly or mountainous ; but it is level in the middle of the province, and in the N. W. adjoining Holland.

*Q.* Where is the province of the Rhine ?

*A.* It has N., Holland ; E., the province of Westphalia, Nassau, and other German States ; S., France ; and W., the latter, Belgium, and Holland. (M. A.)

This province contains the S. portion of the Prusso-Rhenish provinces, lying between  $49^{\circ}$  and  $52^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $6^{\circ}$  and  $9\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  E. long. Area, 10,327 sq. ms. Pop., in 1837, 2,433,250, of whom 1,842,154 are Catholics, and 564,728 Protestants. Principal towns, Aix-la-Chapelle, Cologne, Coblenz, Dusseldorf, Elberfeldt, Barmen, Treves, Bonn, &c. It is divided into five regencies, and these again into 59 circles. Principal rivers, Rhine, (which traverses almost the whole extent of the province), Moselle, Saar, Roer, and Wupper. Surface very various.

*Q.* Where is Prussia Proper ?

*A.* In the N. E. part of the kingdom of Prussia. It has the Baltic Sea N. ; Pomerania and Brandenburg W. ; Poland and Posen S. ; and Russia E.\*

The province of PRUSSIA PROPER, formerly divided into E. and W. Prussia, is the original patrimony of the dukes of Prussia, hence often called ducal Prussia. In the year 1525, it was formed into a duchy, as a fief of Poland. In 1657 that kingdom acknowledged its independence, with the duke of Brandenburg as sovereign. In 1701 duke Frederick III. placed the crown on his head as king Frederick I., thereby elevating Prussia into a kingdom. It received from time to time various accessions of territory, but Frederick II. (Great), from 1740 to 1786, more than doubled the previous extent of Prussia, and raised it to the position of a first-rate monarchy. By the treaty of Vienna it received further accession, and is now the 5th in rank of the great European powers.

Prussia Proper extends from  $52^{\circ} 50'$  to  $55^{\circ} 53'$  N. lat., and from  $16^{\circ}$  to  $22^{\circ} 54'$  E. long. Its greatest length is about 295 miles, with a width varying from 120 to 80 miles. Pop., in 1837, 2,125,535, of whom 1,532,326 were Protestants, 555,230 Catholics, and the rest Jews and Mennonites. It is divided into four regencies, and 57 circles. Principal towns, Konigsberg, Dantzick, Elbing, Culm, Thorn, and Marienwerder. The province consists chiefly of an immense plain, traversed by the Vistula, Pregel, Passay, and other rivers, and interspersed with numerous lakes and vast forests.

*Q.* Where is Posen ?

*A.* In the eastern part of the kingdom of Prussia ; on the N. is Prussia Proper ; S. Silesia ; E. Poland ; and W. Brandenburg.

POSEN is a province of the Prussian monarchy, comprising the portion of Poland assigned to Prussia by the treaty of Vienna in 1815. It is of a triangular shape. Area, 11,374 sq. ms. Pop., in 1837, 1,158,608, of whom 739,527 were Catholics, 344,853 Protestants, and 74,194 Jews. Principal towns, Posen, Bromberg, Gresen. It is divided into two regencies, and

---

\* The provinces of Prussia Proper and Posen are not in Germany, and are not represented in the map of that country in the Atlas.



these again into six circles. Surface generally flat, and in part occupied by extensive marshes and forests. Principal rivers, Warta, Netze, and Obra.

#### CAPITALS AND THEIR POPULATION.

Q. Point out the capitals of the German States, and tell the population of each.

A. AUSTRIA, Vienna, 360,000; PRUSSIA, Berlin, 311,000; BAVARIA, Munich, 106,000; WIRTEMBERG, Stuttgard, 38,000; HANOVER, Hanover, 24,000; SAXONY, Dresden, 80,000; BADEN, Carlsruhe, 20,000; HESSE CASSEL, Cassel, 26,000; HESSE DARMSTADT, Darmstadt, 23,000; HESSE HOMBURG, Homburg, 3000; HOLSTEIN, &c., Kiel, 7500; LUXEMBURG, Luxemburg, 10,000; SAXE WEIMAR, Weimar, 10,000; SAXE COBURG GOTH, Gotha, 12,000; SAXE ALTENBURG, Altenburg, 12,000; SAXE MEININGEN HILBURGHAUSEN, Meiningen, 5000; BRUNSWICK, Brunswick, 36,000; MECKLENBURG SCHWERIN, Schwerin, 12,000; MECKLENBURG STRELITZ, New Strelitz, 6000; OLDENBURG, Oldenburg, 8000; NASSAU, Wisbaden, 8000; ANHALT DESSAU, Dessau, 10,000; ANHALT BERNBURG, Bernburg, 5000; ANHALT COTHEN, Cothen, 6000; REUSS GREITZ, Greitz, 7000; REUSS SCHLEITZ, Lobenstein, 3000; HOHENZOLLERN HECHINGEN, Hechingen, 3000; HOHENZOLLERN SIGMARINGEN, Sigmaringen, 1000; LICHTENSTEIN, Vadutz, 1000; SCHWARTZBURG SONDRERSHAUSEN, Sondershausen, 3800; SCHWARTZBURG RUDOLSTADT, Rudolstadt, 5000; LIPPE DETMOLD, Detmold, 3000; LIPPE SCHAUBENBURG, Buckeburg, 2100; WALDECK, Arolsen, 2000; KNIPHAUSEN, Kniphausen, 50; LUBEC, Lubec, 26,000; HAMBURG, Hamburg, 128,000; BREMEN, Bremen, 42,000; FRANKFORT, Frankfort, 55,000. (M. A.)

#### CAPITALS SITUATED ON RIVERS.

Q. Point out those capitals situated on rivers that are named in the Map, and the names of the rivers.

A. Vienna is on the Danube;\* Berlin, on the Spree;† Munich, on the Iser;‡ Stuttgard, on the Nesen, a small tributary of the

\* Vienna, (Germ. *Wien*, Lat. *Vindabona*), a city of Germany, cap. of the Austrian empire, province Lower Austria, on an arm of the Danube, where it is joined by the small rivers Wien and Alster, 190 ms. E. from Munich, 330 ms. S. S. E. from Berlin, and 800 ms. N. W. from Constantinople. Lat. of the observatory, in the centre of the city, 48° 12' N.; long. 16° 32' E.

† Berlin, the cap. of the Prussian States, and the ordinary residence of the monarch, on the Spree, 127 ft. above the level of the sea, in the middle mark of Brandenburg; lat. 52° 31' N., long. 13° 22' E. It was founded about the middle of the 12th century.

‡ Munich, (Germ. *München*.) a city of S. Germany, the cap. of Bavaria, highly interesting on account of its collections of the fine arts, on the Iser, crossed here by three bridges, about 220 ms. W. from Vienna, and 118 ms. E. S. E. from Stuttgard; lat. 48° 8' N., long. 11° 34' E.



Neckar;\* Hanover, on the Leine;† Dresden, on the Elbe;‡ Cassel, on the Fulda;§ Luxemburg, on the Alzette, a tributary of the Sur;|| Weimar, on the Ilm, an affluent of the Saale;¶ Meiningen, on the Werra;\*\* Brunswick, on the Ocker, a branch of the Aller;†† Oldenburg, on the Hunte, a tributary of the Weser;‡‡ Wisbaden, on an affluent of the Rhine;§§ Dessau, on the Mulda;||| Bern-

\* Stuttgart, a city of S. Germany, cap. of the kingdom of Wirtemberg, on the Nesen, a small tributary of the Neckar, about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  ms. from its embouchure in that river, 38 ms. S. E. by E. from Carlsruhe, and 120 ms. N. W. from Munich. Lat. (of the gymnasium)  $48^{\circ} 46' N.$ , long.  $9^{\circ} 10' E.$

† Hanover, a city of W. Germany, cap. of the kingdom of Hanover, on the Leine, a branch of the Weser, 84 ms. S. from Hamburg, 62 ms. S. E. from Bremen, 35 ms. W. from Brunswick. Lat.  $52^{\circ} 22' N.$ , long.  $9^{\circ} 44' E.$

‡ Dresden, a city of Germany, cap. of the kingdom of Saxony, on both sides of the Elbe; 61 ms. S. S. E. from Leipzig, 233 ms. E. N. E. from Frankfort on the Mayne, 220 ms. N. N. E. from Munich, 100 ms. S. by E. from Berlin, and 230 ms. N. W. from Vienna; lat.  $51^{\circ} 2' N.$ , long.  $13^{\circ} 34' E.$

§ Cassel (Anc. *Castellum Cattorum*), a town of W. Germany, province of Lower Hesse, of which, and of the electorate of Hesse Cassel, it is the cap., and residence of the elector. It is finely situated on both sides of the Fulda, 72 ms. S. by W. from Hanover, and 89 ms. N. N. E. from Frankfort on the Mayne; lat.  $51^{\circ} 19' N.$ , long.  $9^{\circ} 35' E.$

|| Luxemburg, (Germ. *Lutzelburg*), a town belonging to the kingdom of the Netherlands, the cap. and only place of any importance in the Grand Duchy of Luxemburg, and one of the strongest fortresses of Europe; on the Alzette, a tributary of the Sur, 22 ms. S. W. from Treves, and 77 ms. S. S. E. from Liege; lat.  $49^{\circ} 37' N.$ , long.  $6^{\circ} 7' E.$

¶ Weimar, a city of central Germany, cap. of the Grand Duchy of Saxe, and the usual residence of the grand duke, on the Ilm, an affluent of the Saale, 104 ms. W. by S. from Dresden, 116 ms. S. E. from Hanover, and 136 ms. S. W. from Berlin.

\*\* Meiningen, a town of Central Germany, cap. of the Duchy of Saxe-Meiningen Hilburghausen, on the Werra, here crossed by two stone bridges, 31 ms. E. N. E. from Fulda.

†† Brunswick, a city of Germany, cap. of the Duchy of Brunswick, on the Ocker, a branch of the Aller; lat.  $56^{\circ} 18' N.$ , long.  $10^{\circ} 32' E.$

‡‡ Oldenburg, a town of N. W. Germany, cap. of the Grand Duchy of Oldenburg, and residence of its sovereign, circle of same name, on the Hunte, a tributary of the Weser, 24 ms. W. N. W. from Bremen. Lat.  $53^{\circ} 8' N.$ , long.  $8^{\circ} 13' E.$

§§ Wisbaden or Wiesbaden, a town of W. Germany, cap. of the Duchy of Nassau, and one of the most frequented watering places in the confederation; on an affluent of the Rhine, 4 ms. N. from the latter, and 6 ms. N. N. W. from Mentz.

||| Dessau, a town of N. Germany, cap. of the duchy of Anhalt Dessau, residence of the duke and seat of government, on the left bank of the Mulda,

burg, on the Saale ;\* Greitz, on the Elster ;† Sigmaringen, on the Danube ; Vadutz, on the Rhine ; Lubec, on the Trave ;‡ Hamburg, on the Elbe ;§ Bremen, on the Weser ;|| and Frankfort, on the Mayne.¶

#### UNIVERSITIES AND COLLEGES.

Point out the places where universities and colleges are situated, and tell the number in each state respectively.

*Q.* In Prussia ?

*A.* Berlin (*the capital*), in Brandenburg ; Breslau, in Silesia ; Bonn, in Rhine ; Halle and Magdeburg, in Saxony ; Königsberg, in East Prussia ; Griefswald, in Pomerania ; Munster, in Westphalia. (M. A.)

*Q.* In the Austrian Empire ?

*A.* Vienna (*the capital*), in Lower Austria ; Prague, in Bohemia ; Lemberg, in Galicia ; Olmutz, in Moravia ; Innspruck, in the Tyrol ; Grätz, in Styria ; and Pavia and Padua, in the Italian States. (M. A.)

*Q.* In Bavaria ?

*A.* Those of Munich (the capital), Würzburg, Furth and Erlangen. (M. A.)

near its confluence with the Elbe, 67 ms. S. W. from Berlin, and 33 ms. N. by W. from Leipzig : lat.  $51^{\circ} 50'$  N., long.  $12^{\circ} 17'$  E.

\* Bernburg, a town of Germany, cap. duchy of Anhalt Bernburg, on the Saale, by which it is intersected, 23 ms. S. from Magdeburg.

† Greitz, Greiz, or Graitz, a town of Central Germany, cap. of the principality of Reuss (elder branch), on the White Elster, 49 ms. S. from Leipzig.

‡ Lubec, a city of N. Germany, the cap. of the Hanseatic towns, and the seat of their high court of appeal, is situated on the Trave, about 10 ms. (direct distance) from Travemunde, at its mouth in the gulf of Lubeck, in the Baltic, 36 ms. N. E. from Hamburg, and 38 ms. S. E. from Kiel ; lat.  $53^{\circ} 52'$  N., long.  $10^{\circ} 41'$  E.

§ Hamburg, the principal commercial city and sea-port of Germany, cap. of the republic of Hamburg, and one of the three existing Hanse Towns, and four free imperial cities of Germany ; on the N. bank of the Elbe, at the point where it receives the Alster, 60 ms. S. E. from its mouth, 60 ms. N. E. from Bremen, and 36 ms. S. W. from Lubeck ; lat.  $53^{\circ} 32'$  N., long.  $9^{\circ} 58'$  E.

|| Bremen, one of the three free German Hanseatic cities, on the Weser, by which it is intersected, 60 ms. S. W. from Hamburg, and about 37 ms. (direct distance) from Bremenhaven, at the mouth of the Weser ; lat.  $53^{\circ} 4'$  N., long.  $8^{\circ} 48'$  E.

¶ Frankfort, a celebrated city of Germany, the cap. of a small republic of the same name, and of the whole Germanic confederation, is situated about 270 ms. W. S. W. from Berlin, and 50 ms. E. by S. from Coblentz. It stands on the right bank of the R. Mayne, across which there is a bridge, connecting it with Sachsenhausen, one of its suburbs.

*Q.* In the Kingdom of Hanover ?

*A.* The university of Göttingen. (M. A.)

*Q.* In the Kingdom of Saxony ?

*A.* The university of Leipsic ? (M. A.)

*Q.* In Baden ?

*A.* The universities of Heidelberg, and Freiburg. (M. A.)

*Q.* In Wirtemberg ?

*A.* The university of Tübingen. (M. A.)

*Q.* In the Duchy of Holstein ?

*A.* The university of Kiel. (M. A.)

This university, founded in 1665, has had many distinguished men among its professors : it has a valuable library, comprising 70,000 volumes, and is attended at present by about 300 students.

*Q.* In the Grand-Duchy of Mecklenburg-Schwerin ?

*A.* The university of Rostock. (M. A.)

*Q.* In the Grand-Duchy of Saxe-Weimar ?

*A.* The university of Jena. (M. A.)

*Q.* In Hesse-Cassel, or Electoral Hesse ?

*A.* The university of Marburg. (M. A.)

*Q.* In the Grand-Duchy of Hesse-Darmstadt ?

*A.* The university of Giessen. (M. A.)

This university, founded in 1607, is now usually attended by between 300 and 400 students ; a few years ago, the ordinary number was upward of 500.

#### POPULATION OF CITIES.

*Q.* Which is the most populous city in Germany ?

*A.* Vienna.

*Q.* The next ?

*A.* Berlin.

#### BATTLES.

*Q.* In what years did the battles fought in Austria take place ?

*A.* Battle of Sor, in 1745 ; Lowositz, 1756 ; Kolin, 1757 ; Prague, 1757 ; Reichenberg, 1757 ; Austerlitz, 1805 ;\* Diernstein, 1805 ; Wagram, 1809 ;† Aspern, 1809 ;‡ Culm, 1813. (M. A.)

\* In the vicinity of this town, on the 2d of December, 1805, took place the famous battle that bears its name, between the grand French army under Napoleon, and the combined Russian and Austrian armies under their respective emperors. The genius of Napoleon never shone more conspicuously than on this occasion. His superior talent more than compensated for the numerical inferiority of his forces, and secured for the French a complete and decisive victory with comparatively little loss on their part. The battle of Austerlitz was followed by the treaty of Presburg, signed on the 26th of December.

† This village is celebrated in military history for the great battle fought in its vicinity, on the 6th of July, 1809, by the grand French army under

‡ For note, see next page.

Q. When did the battles fought in Prussia take place ?

A. Battle of Molwitz, in 1741 ; Friedberg, 1745 ; Lissa, 1757 ; Rosbach, 1757 ; \* Zorndorf, 1758 ; Minden, 1759 ; † Liegnitz, 1760 ; ‡ Cunersdorf, 1760 ; Tongau, 1760 ; Altenkirchen, 1796 ; § Magdeburg, 1806 ; Erfurth, 1806 ; Lutzen, 1813. || (M. A.)

Napoleon, and the Austrians under the archduke Charles. The former gained a complete victory ; the Austrians lost above 20,000 men taken prisoners, besides a vast number killed and wounded. This great victory led to an armistice, followed by the treaty of Schœnbrunn.

‡ This and the neighbouring village of Essling were, in 1809, the scene of a tremendous conflict between the grand French army, commanded by Napoleon, and the Austrians, under the Archduke Charles. After two days' (21st and 22d May) continuous fighting, with vast loss on both sides, Napoleon was obliged to withdraw his troops from the field, and take refuge in the Island of Lobau, in the Danube.

\* A village celebrated in modern history for its being the scene of the great victory gained on the 5th of November, 1757, by Frederick the Great, with little loss to his own forces, over the French and Imperialists.

† The French were defeated in the vicinity of Minden in 1759, by the Prussians under Prince Ferdinand, brother to Frederick the Great, and the British under Lord George Sackville. The non-compliance of the latter with the orders of the former is said to have saved the French from a complete rout, and gave rise at the time to a great deal of acrimonious discussion.

‡ On the 16th of August, 1760, Frederick the Great totally defeated the Austrian general Laudohn in the neighbourhood of this town ; Frederick made his dispositions with so much skill as to render it impossible for Marshal Daun, who commanded another Austrian army, to come to Laudohn's assistance.

§ The vicinity of this town was, in 1796, the theatre of some obstinate conflicts between the French and Austrians ; in one of which, on the 21st September, the brave general Marceau was killed.

|| This town, the population of which is under 1500, would be unworthy notice, were it not that its environs have been the scene of two of the most memorable conflicts of modern times. The first, which occurred on the 16th of November, 1632, took place between the Imperialists, under Wallenstein, and the Swedes, under their heroic monarch, Gustavus Adolphus. The latter were victorious ; but the victory was dearly purchased by the death of their king, who fell (it has been alleged by treachery) in the action. Besides their king, the Swedes lost about 3000 men ; but the loss of the Imperialists amounted to double that number, and their artillery fell into the hands of the conquerors.

The other great conflict took place nearly on the same ground, on the 2d of May, 1813, between the French, under Napoleon, and the allied army, encouraged by the presence of the emperor Alexander and the king of Prussia. The struggle was most obstinate and bloody ; but in the end victory declared in favour of the French. The allies lost 20,000 men, killed and wounded, and that of the French was also very severe.



Q. When did the battles fought in Bavaria take place ?

A. Battle of Blenheim, in 1704 ;\* Hohenlinden, 1800 ;† Ratisbon, 1809 ;‡ Eckmuhl, 1809.§ (M. A.)

Q. When did the battles fought in Saxony take place ?

A. Battle of Bautzen, in 1813 ; Dresden, 1813 ; Leipsic, 1813.|| (M. A.)

\* This village is famous in modern history as being the scene of the great battle fought August 13, 1704, between the English and Imperialists, under the Duke of Marlborough and Prince Eugene, and the French and Bavarians, under Marshals Tallard and Marsin and the Elector of Bavaria. Each army consisted of nearly 80,000 men. The English and their allies gained a complete and decisive victory. Their enemies left above 10,000 men killed and wounded on the field ; a vast number more were drowned in the Danube, and above 13,000 were made prisoners ; among the latter were Marshal Tallard (whose son was killed) and many other officers of distinction. All the artillery, baggage, &c., of the French and Bavarians fell into the hands of the conquerors. The loss of the latter, though severe, was not greater than might have been expected, having amounted to about 5000 killed and 8000 wounded.

† Near this village took place, on the 3d of December, 1800, one of the greatest conflicts of the revolutionary war, between a French and Bavarian army under Moreau, and the Austrians under the Archduke John. The former gained a complete victory. Besides killed and wounded, the Austrians lost 10,000 prisoners and 100 pieces of cannon. Campbell's noble ode, entitled *Hohenlinden*, has rendered the name at least of this battle familiar to most Americans.

‡ Ratisbon was the capital of the dukes of Bavaria, till their duchy was overturned by Charlemagne. It was afterwards a free imperial city, governed by a count of the empire. In 1809, some severe fighting took place before it between a part of the grand French army, under Napoleon, and the Austrians, to the disadvantage of the latter, who were forced to retire towards Bohemia.

§ Here, on the 22d April, 1809, the grand French army, under Napoleon, gained a decisive victory over the Austrians, under the Archduke Charles. Marshal Davoust, having particularly distinguished himself on this occasion, was raised by Napoleon to the dignity of Prince of Eckmuhl. The battle of the 22d was preceded by partial actions on the 19th, 20th, and 21st, all of which terminated favourably for the French.

|| The vicinity of Leipsic, and, indeed, the town itself, was, in October, 1813, the scene of a most tremendous conflict. Napoleon having concentrated at this point such of his forces as he had been able to collect from the different parts of Germany, to the amount of about 135,000 men, was attacked on the 16th by the allied army, under Prince Schwartzemberg, Blucher, and other generals, accompanied by the Emperors of Russia and Austria, the King of Prussia, &c. The allied forces amounted to at least 250,000 men. The struggle, which was fierce, obstinate, and bloody in the extreme, terminated at nightfall without any decided advantage to either party. It was renewed on the 18th, when a Saxon brigade went over, during the heat of the action, from the French to the allies, which, combined with their supe-



Q. When did the battle fought in Wirtemberg take place ?

A. Battle of Ulm, in 1805.\* (M. A.)

Q. When did the battle fought in Saxe-Weimar take place ?

A. Battle of Jena, in 1806.† (M. A.)

GERMANY (Germ. *Deutschland* or *Teutschland*; Fr. *Allemagne*; Ital. *Germania*, *Slavonia*) at present comprises all the countries of central Europe, and is situated between  $45^{\circ} 30'$  and  $55^{\circ} 50'$  N. lat., and  $4^{\circ} 45'$  and  $22^{\circ} 54'$  E. long. These limits have reference to all the territories comprised in the Germanic confederation, including some districts which do not belong to Germany proper; e.g. Luxemburg and Friuli. According to the more strict application of the name, Germany is bounded on the N. by the North Sea, Denmark, and the Baltic Sea; E. by Prussian Poland, Galicia, and Hungary; S. by Croatia, Illyria,‡ Italy, and Switzerland; and W. by France, Belgium, and Holland. Its length, from the Netherlands to the E. part of Prussia, is upwards of 700 ms.; its breadth is very unequal; measuring

rrior force, gave the latter an advantage that all the genius of Napoleon, seconded by the valour and devotion of the French, could not counteract. Though the French maintained their ground during the day, a retreat became indispensable; and owing to the accidental blowing up of a bridge, a part of the French army was cut off; so that Napoleon lost 25,000 men, who fell into the hands of the allies as prisoners, exclusive of the far greater number who fell in the previous battles. Prince Poniatowski, who may emphatically be said to have been the last of the Poles, after displaying prodigies of valour, lost his life in the retreat on the 19th, having been drowned in attempting to cross the Elster. This great victory completely emancipated Germany from the yoke of the French, and opened the road to Paris to the allies.

\* In 1805, Ulm was the theatre of some most important military events. Austria, having declared war against France, pushed forward a strong army into Bavaria, under General Mack, who established his head-quarters at Ulm. But Napoleon having succeeded by a series of masterly manœuvres in cutting off Mack's communications with Austria, the latter was cooped up in the city with all that portion of his army, amounting to about 26,000 men, that had not already fallen into the hands of the French. Considering the strength of the place, and the numbers of the garrison, a vigorous resistance might have been anticipated; but, instead of this, Mack capitulated on the 17th of October, and delivered up the town, and his army as prisoners of war, without so much as firing a shot.

† Jena is famous in modern history, from its vicinity having been the scene of the great battle of the 14th of October, 1806, between the grand French army under Napoleon, and the Prussians, commanded by the King and the Duke of Brunswick, the latter of whom was mortally wounded in the action. The French gained a complete and decisive victory. The Prussians lost above 20,000 men, killed and taken in the course of the day, with all their cannon, baggage, &c. In fact, their army may be said to have been totally destroyed; as most of the troops who escaped from the field were soon after compelled to surrender.

‡ It will be recollected that the kingdom of Illyria forms only a part of the Austrian empire.

from N. to S., from the Baltic to the southern limit of Tyrol, it amounts to near 600 ms. The area is stated at 251,000 sq. ms. Before the French revolution, the German empire was divided into nine circles; namely, those of Austria, Bavaria, and Suabia, in the S.; Franconia, Upper Rhine, and Lower Rhine, in the middle; and Westphalia, Upper Saxony, and Lower Saxony, in the N. Other countries, however, were considered as forming parts of the empire, of which the principal were Bohemia, Silesia, Moravia, and Lusatia. The present Germanic Confederation, as established by an act of the Congress of Vienna, on the 8th of June, 1815, consists of thirty-nine independent states. The central point and organ of the confederation is the Federative Diet, which sits at Frankfort on the R. Mayne. It exercises its authority in a double form: 1st, as a general assembly, termed Plenum; and, 2dly, as a minor council, called the Federative Diet Ordinary. The Plenum meets only when an affair relating to all the confederation is to be decided. It has seventy votes, of which four belong to Austria, and as many to each of the five German kingdoms; the other states, according to their respective importance, have three, two, or one vote each. The Federative Diet Ordinary possesses in all seventeen votes, out of which eleven principal states have each a single vote, and the remaining twenty-seven only six joint votes. Austria presides in both assemblies, and decides in case of equality. The objects of the Germanic Confederation are mutual defence against a common enemy, and the preservation of internal security and peace among the confederated states, which have no right to declare war on each other, but must submit their differences to the decision of the Diet. The following is a list of the states, with the number of votes which each possesses in the general assembly:

#### I. States having each four votes:

- |             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| 1. Austria. | 4. Saxony.      |
| 2. Prussia. | 5. Hanover.     |
| 3. Bavaria. | 6. Württemberg. |

#### II. States having each three votes:

- |                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 7. Baden.                   | 10. Holstein and Lauenburg. |
| 8. The electorate of Hesse. | 11. Luxemburg.              |
| 9. The grandduchy of Hesse. |                             |

#### III. States having each two votes:

- |                           |             |
|---------------------------|-------------|
| 12. Brunswick.            | 14. Nassau. |
| 13. Mecklenburg-Schwerin. |             |

#### IV. States having each one vote.

- |                               |                               |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 15. Saxe-Weimar.              | 27. Lichtenstein.             |
| 16. Saxe-Coburg.              | 28. Hohenzollern-Sigmaringen. |
| 17. Saxe-Meiningen.           | 29. Waldeck.                  |
| 18. Saxe-Hildburghausen.      | 30. Reuss, elder branch.      |
| 19. Mecklenburg-Strelitz.     | 31. Reuss, younger branch.    |
| 20. Oldenburg and Kniphausen. | 32. Lippe-Schauenburg.        |
| 21. Anhalt-Dessau.            | 33. Lippe-Detmold.            |
| 22. Anhalt-Bernburg.          | 34. Hesse-Homburg.            |
| 23. Anhalt-Coethen.           | 35. Lübeck.                   |
| 24. Schwarzburg-Sonderhausen. | 36. Frankfort.                |
| 25. Schwarzburg-Rudolstadt.   | 37. Bremen.                   |
| 26. Hohenzollern-Hechingen.   | 38. Hamburg.                  |

The following is a list of the Austrian, Prussian, Dutch, and Danish possessions comprised in the Germanic Confederation :

**AUSTRIAN.**—The archduchy of Austria, the duchies of Salzburg, Styria, Carinthia, Carniola, Austrian Friuli, the territory of Trieste, the county of Tyrol, with Vorarlberg, the kingdom of Bohemia, the margraviate of Moravia, and Austrian Silesia.

**PRUSSIAN.**—The provinces of Brandenburg, Pomerania, Silesia, Prussian Saxony, Westphalia, and the province of the Rhine.

**DUTCH.**—The grandduchy of Luxemburg.

**DANISH.**—The duchies of Holstein and Lauenburg.

## SWITZERLAND.

*Page 263.—Lesson 178.—Map No. 20.*

**Q.** What bounds Switzerland on the north ?

**A.** France, Baden, and Wirtemberg.

**Q.** South ?

**A.** Sardinia, and Lombardy and Venice.

**Q.** East ?

**A.** The Tyrol.

**Q.** Where are the Jura Mts. ?

**A.** They commence near Geneva, and stretch from S. W. to N. E. along the frontier of France and Switzerland. (M. A.)

**Q.** Where are the Pennine Alps ?

**A.** They extend along the frontier of Switzerland and Italy, between Mont Blanc, in Savoy, near the S. W. boundary of Switzerland, and the Lepontine Alps, having a general direction from S. W. to N. E. (M. A.)

**Q.** Where are the Lepontine Alps ?

**A.** They extend along the frontier of Switzerland and Italy, stretching between the Pennine and Rhetian or Rhætian Alps, having a general direction from S. W. to N. E. (M. A.)

**Q.** How high is Mt. Rosa ?

**A.** 15,552 ft. (M. A.)

**Q.** The Jura Mts. ?

**A.** 5300 ft. (M. A.)

**Q.** Where is Lake Constance ?

**A.** It lies between Switzerland and Germany, surrounded by the territories of Baden, Wirtemberg, Bavaria, Austria and Switzerland, and flows into the Rhine. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, page 313.*

**Q.** Where is the Lake of Geneva ?

**A.** The Lake of Geneva, or Lake Lemman (Germ. *Genfersee*, Anc. *Lacus Lemanus*) is the largest lake of Switzerland, near the S. W. extremity of which it is situated. It has N. E. and S. E.

the canton of Vaud or Lemane; S. W. that of Geneva; and S. Savoy. The R. Rhone forms its outlet.

*For a further description, see Europe, lesson 150th, Map No. 18, Key, pages 257-8.*

*Q.* Where is Lake Neufchâtel?

*A.* Lake Neufchâtel (Ger. *Neuenburger-See*), called also the Lake of Yverdon, is on the S. E. side of the small canton of Neufchâtel, which lies in the N. W. part of Switzerland, bordering on France, and flows into the Aar R. (M. A.)

This lake is 21 ms. in length, and about 5 ms. in its greatest breadth; greatest depth, about 400 ft. The surface is estimated to be 1320 ft. above the level of the sea.

*Q.* Where is Lake Lucerne?

*A.* It is situated nearly in the centre of Switzerland, on both sides of the R. Reuss, which forms its outlet. (M. A.)

Lake Lucerne (Germ. *Waldstätter See*) is one of the most picturesque pieces of water in Europe. It is nearly cruciform, with an addition to its E. end, called the Lake of Uri. Its entire length is about 25 ms., but the breadth of any of its arms is seldom more than 2 or 3 ms. The surface is 1380 ft. above the level of the sea. The greatest depth is stated to be 900 ft.

*Q.* Where is Lake Zurich?

*A.* It is in the N. part of the canton of Zurich, which lies in the N. E. part of Switzerland; and at its N. W. extremity it discharges itself by the Limmat.

This is one of the principal lakes of Switzerland, being bounded by the cantons of Zurich, Schwytz, and St. Gall. It curves slightly from S. E. to N. W. Length, about 25 ms.; breadth, varying to about 3 ms.; but at Rapperschwil it is contracted to less than a  $\frac{1}{2}$  m., and is crossed there by a wooden bridge. Area estimated at about 23 sq. ms.; height above the sea, 1362 Eng. ft. Its depth in some places exceeds 600 ft.; but for several hundred yards from its banks it is (near Zurich at least) seldom more than from 6 to 12 ft. in depth. At its S. E. extremity it receives the Linth canal, which brings to it the superfluous waters of the Lake Wallenstadt; at its N. W. extremity it discharges itself by the Limmat.

*Q.* How long is each of these lakes?

*A.* Constance is 45 ms. long; Geneva, 47; Neufchâtel, 21; Lucerne, 18; Zurich, 25. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Neufchâtel and its territory?

*A.* Neufchâtel (Germ. *Neuenburg*) is a town of Switzerland, cap. of the canton of Neufchâtel, situated on the N. W. shore of the lake of Neufchâtel.\* (M. A.)

Neufchâtel territory is a canton in the N. W. part of Switzerland, bordering on France. (M. A.)

---

\* This town is 17 ms. N. W. from Freyburg, and 46 ms. E. S. E. from Bessançon. Pop. about 5000. It is built upon the steep slope of the Jura Mts., and along a narrow strip of level ground between the hills and the lake.



This canton forms a principality belonging to Prussia ; it lies between lat.  $46^{\circ} 50'$  and  $46^{\circ} 10' N.$ , and long.  $6^{\circ} 25'$  and  $7^{\circ} 5' E.$  ; having N. E. and E. the canton of Berne, S. E. the lake of Neuchâtel, S. W. Vaud, and W. and N. W. the department of Doubs, in France. Length, N. E. to S. W., 33 ms. ; average breadth about 9 ms. ; area, 280 sq. ms. Pop. in 1837, 58,616, of whom 17,744 were either citizens of other cantons, or foreigners. The Jura chain runs through the canton in its entire length, dividing it into two parts, one belonging to the basin of the Rhine, and the other to that of the Rhone.

Q. What is the population of Geneva ?

A. 28,000. (M. A.)

Q. Basle ?

A. 20,000. (M. A.)

Q. Berne ?

A. 20,000. (M. A.)

Q. Zurich ?

A. 12,000. (M. A.)

Q. Lucerne ?

A. 7000. (M. A.)

Q. Which of these towns have colleges ?

A. Geneva, Basle, and Berne. (M. A.)

Q. How high are the falls of the Rhine ?

A. 60 ft. (M. A.)

Q. When was the battle of Morgarten fought ?

A. In 1315. (M. A.)

Q. Of Morat ?

A. In 1476. (M. A.)

Q. Of Zurich ?

A. In 1798. (M. A.)

Q. What three considerable rivers rise in Switzerland ?

A. Rhine, Rhone, and Inn. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, page 239.*

## ITALY.

*Pages 265-6.—Lesson 179.—Maps No. 21 and 20.*

*Map No. 21.*—Q. What mts. bound Italy on the north ?

A. The Alps.

Q. What sea on the south and west ?

A. Mediterranean.

Q. East ?

A. The Gulf of Venice.

Q. What islands lie west ?

A. Corsica, Sardinia, and Elba.

Q. South ?

A. Sicily.



*Q.* What strait separates Italy from Turkey ?

*A.* Otranto.

*Q.* What mountains extend through Italy ?

*A.* Apennine.

*Map No. 20.—Q.* Where is the river Po ?

*A.* The Po (Anc. *Eridanus* or *Padus*) is the principal r. of Italy ; it issues from mount Viso in the Alps, on the confines of France, in about  $44^{\circ} 40'$  N. lat., and  $7^{\circ}$  E. long. It flows at first easterly, then northerly, till it reaches the point of about  $45^{\circ} 13'$  N. lat., and  $7^{\circ} 50'$  E. long., when its general course becomes and continues almost due E. After dividing Austrian Italy from the states of Parma, Modena, and the "States of the Church," (the Pope's dominions), it empties itself into the Gulf of Venice by numerous mouths, near  $45^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $12^{\circ} 30'$  E. long. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, page 256.*

*Q.* What rivers flow into it on the north ?

*A.* The Mincio, Oglio, Adda, Tecino, Dora Baltea, Dora, and Chisson. (M. A.)

*Q.* South ?

*A.* Panaro, Taro, Trebia, and Tanaro. (M. A.)

*Q.* What rivers flow into the Gulf of Venice ?

*A.* The Po, Adige, Brenta, Piave, and Tagliamento. (M. A.)

*Q.* How long are the Po and Adige ?

*A.* Po, 450 ms. long ; Adige, 200. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Lake Garda ?

*A.* It is in the N. part of Lombardy and Venice, and flows into the Mincio R. (M. A.)

Lake Garda (Anc. *Lacus Benacus*) is a noted lake in Austrian Italy, bounded by the provinces of Mantua, Brescia, and Verona, and the circle of Roveredo, in the Tyrol, and situated between  $45^{\circ} 26'$  and  $45^{\circ} 56'$  N. lat., and  $10^{\circ} 32'$  and  $10^{\circ} 50'$  E. long. Its length is about 35 ms.; its greatest breadth about 10 ms. The R. Mincio forms its outlet. A steamboat plies between Desenzano, on its S. coast, and Riva, at its N. extremity.

*Q.* Where is Lake Como ?

*A.* It is in the N. W. part of Lombardy and Venice, and flows into the Lower Adda. (M. A.)

Lake of Como (Ital. *Lago di Como*, Anc. *Larius Lacus*) is a famous lake of N. Italy, which, in modern times, has derived its name from the city of Como, situated at the S. W. extremity of this lake. This fine sheet of water (intersected by the 46th parallel of N. lat.) is very irregularly shaped, being divided by the triangular district which has Bellagio at its apex, into three great arms, one of which stretches from Bellagio S. W. to Como, another N. to Riva and Novate, near the mouth of the Maria R., and a third S. E. to Lecco, and the outlet of the Adda. These divisions of the lake are sometimes called, from the chief towns on their banks, the lakes of Como, Belluno, and Lecco. Its greatest length may be about 38 ms.; but it is nowhere above 4 ms. in width. The depth is said to vary from 40 to 600 ft. It receives

the waters of the Upper Adda, and several other rivers, but its only outlet is by the Lower Adda.

*Q.* Where is Lake Maggiore?

*A.* It is in N. Italy, lying partly between Piedmont and Lombardy, and partly within the Swiss canton of Tessin or Tecino, intersected by the 46th parallel of N. lat., and the meridian of  $8^{\circ} 40'$  E. long. Its only outlet is the Lower Tecino. (M. A.)

Maggiore (Lago Di), or Lake of Locarno (Anc. *Lacus Verbanus*), is a long and narrow lake, stretching above 40 ms. from Magadino, at its N., to Sesto-Calende, at its S. extremity, while in its widest parts, opposite to the mouth of the Toce, it is about 6 ms. across, but its ordinary breadth does not exceed from 2 to 3 ms. Its general direction is S. S. W. and N. N. E., and it may, in fact, be considered as an expansion of the Tecino, which enters it at its N. and leaves it at its S. extremity. In addition to the Upper Tecino, it receives on its W. the waters of the Toce, and on its E. side those of the Tresa, flowing from the Lago di Lugano (Lake Lugano).

*Q.* How long is each of these lakes?

*A.* Garda, 35 ms.; Como, 38; Maggiore, 40. (M. A.)

#### KINGDOM OF SARDINIA.

*Q.* How is Sardinia bounded?

*A.* It is bounded on the N. by Switzerland; E. by Austrian Italy (*Lombardy and Venice*), and the territories of Parma, Tuscany, and Modena; S. by the Mediterranean; and W. by France. (M. A.)

Sardinian States (It. *Stati Sardi*) is the name given to the dominions of the house of Savoy. This kingdom comprehends, besides the island of Sardinia, an extensive territory occupying the N. W. portion of Italy, between  $43^{\circ} 40'$  and  $46^{\circ} 27'$  N. lat., and  $5^{\circ} 38'$  and  $10^{\circ} 6'$  E. long. Length, from S. E. to N. W., near 250 ms.; greatest breadth, above 200 ms. It includes the duchy of Savoy, Piedmont in its more extensive sense, the duchy of Genoa, and the county or province of Nice. Total area of the kingdom, 29,534 sq. ms. Pop. 4,400,000. Area of the continental portion, about 19,000 sq. ms. Pop. about 4,100,000. The prevailing religion of the Sardinian States is Roman Catholicism. The government is a monarchy, hereditary in the male line; and though the regal authority is somewhat circumscribed by a supreme council in the Island of Sardinia, it is absolute in the continental portion of the kingdom. Turin is the capital.

*Q.* Where are the Maritime Alps?

*A.* They separate Piedmont from Nice. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Cottian Alps?

*A.* They separate Piedmont from France. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Pennine Alps?

*A.* They extend along the frontier of Switzerland and Italy, between Mont Blanc, in Savoy, near the S. W. boundary of Switzerland, and the Lepontine Alps, having a general direction from S. W. to N. E. (M. A.)

Q. How high is Mont Blanc ?

A. 15,668 ft. (M. A.)

Q. Mt. Rosa ?

A. 15,552 ft. (M. A.)

Q. How long and high are the Apennines ?

A. 700 ms. long, and from 8000 to 11,000 ft. high. (M. A.)

Q. What is the population of Turin, and the other towns ?

A. Turin, 124,000 ; Novarra, 15,000 ; Alessandria, 35,000 ; Mondovi, 17,000 ; Asti, 22,000 ; Coni, 18,000 ; Saviglione, 15,000 ; Aosta, 7000 ; Nice, 34,000 ; Genoa, 115,000 ; Novi, 6000. (M. A.)

Q. When were the various battles fought ?

A. Battle of Turin, in 1706 ; Mondovi, 1796 ; Montenotte, 1796 ; (this battle was the commencement of Bonaparte's career of victory, it being the first in which he acted as a commanding general out of France ;) Voltri, 1797 ; Novi, 1799 ; Marengo, 1800.

Q. On what river is Turin ?\*

A. On the Po.

Q. Alessandria, and the other chief towns ?

A. Alessandria is on the Tanaro, a branch of the Po ; † Asti, on the Tanaro ; ‡ Coni, at the confluence of the Stura and Gesso. § (M. A.)

Q. Where is Monaco ?

A. It has W. the division of Nice ; E. that of Genoa ; and S. the Mediterranean. (M. A.)

This is a small principality of N. Italy, under the protection of the King of Sardinia, about 8 ms. in length, by  $6\frac{1}{2}$  in breadth. Area, 52 sq. ms. Pop. about 7000. Monaco, a little town on the Mediterranean, is the capital.

\* Turin (Ital. *Torino*, Anc. *Augusta Taurinorum*), a city of N. Italy, the capital of the Sardinian dominions, province of same name, in Piedmont, near the Po, where it is joined by the Dora, 80 ms. W. S. W. from Milan. Lat.  $45^{\circ} 4' N.$ , long.  $7^{\circ} 40' E.$

† Alessandria, or Alexandria, an important town and fortress of the Sardinian States, province of the same name, in a marshy country on the Tanaro, near where it is joined by the Bormida, 47 ms. E. S. E. from Turin, lat.  $44^{\circ} 55' N.$ , long.  $8^{\circ} 36' E.$

‡ Asti (Anc. *Asta* or *Hasta Pompeia*), a city of the Sardinian States, province of Alexandria, on the Bourbo, near its confluence with the Tanaro, 28 ms. E. S. E. from Turin, lat.  $44^{\circ} 57' N.$ , long.  $8^{\circ} 12' E.$

§ Coni, or Cuneo, a town of N. Italy, kingdom of Sardinia, capital of division and province, on a hill at the confluence of the Stura and Gesso, 45 ms. S. by W. from Turin.

## ISLAND OF SARDINIA.

*Map No. 21.*—*Q.* Where is the Island of Sardinia?

*A.* It is an island of S. Europe, and next to Sicily, which it nearly equals in size, the largest in the Mediterranean, being separated from Corsica, on the N., by the Strait of Bonifacio. (M. A.)—*For a further description, see Key, p. 269.*

*Q.* How long and wide is it?

*A.* 170 ms. long, and 90 wide. (M. A.)

*Q.* What strait separates it from Corsica?

*A.* Bonifacio.

*Q.* Point out its highest Mt.

*A.* Mt. Genargentu.

*Q.* What is the population of Cagliari?

*A.* 27,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Sassari?

*A.* 24,000. (M. A.)

*For a further description of Italy, see Key, pages 239–40.*

## LOMBARDY AND VENICE, (OR AUSTRIAN ITALY.)

*Page 268.—Lesson 180.—Maps No. 20, 21.*

*Map No. 20.*—*Q.* How is Lombardy and Venice bounded?

*A.* It is bounded on the N. W. and N. by Switzerland, Tyrol, and Illyria; E. by Illyria and the Gulf of Venice; S. and S. W. by the States of the Church (Papal States), Modena, Parma, and the Sardinian Territories. (M. A.)

This country extends from about  $44^{\circ} 48'$  to  $46^{\circ} 40'$  N. lat., and from  $8^{\circ} 32'$  to  $13^{\circ} 44'$  E. long. Length near 250 ms.; greatest breadth above 120 ms. The area is 18,534 sq. ms. Pop. about 4,450,000. Milan is the seat of government.

*For a further description, see Italy, Key, page 240.*

*Q.* What is the population of the chief towns?

*A.* Milan, 185,000; Venice, 97,000; Padua, 45,000; Mantua, 27,000; Cremona, 28,000; Brescia, 35,000; Pavia, 25,000; Lodi, 15,000; Verona, 48,000; Belluno, 12,000; Udine, 22,000; Treviso, 11,000; Vicenza, 20,000; Bergamo, 30,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Point out those situated on rivers.

*A.* Mantua is on the Mincio;\* Cremona, on the Po;† Pavia, on the Tecino;‡ Lodi, on the Adda;§ Verona, on the Adige.||

\* Mantua (Ital. *Mantova*) is a fortified town of Austrian Italy, province of Lombardy, capital deleg. Mantua, on both sides the Mincio, 21 ms. S. S. W. from Verona, and 37 ms. E. by N. from Cremona; lat.  $45^{\circ} 9' N.$ , long.  $10^{\circ} 48' E.$

For notes, see next page.



*Q.* When were the different battles fought?

*A.* Battle of Pavia, in 1525; Rivoli, in 1796; Arcola, in 1796;\* Lodi, in 1796;† Belluno, in 1797. (M. A.)

## ITALIAN DUCHIES.

### PARMA.

*Q.* How is Parma bounded?

*A.* It is bounded on the N. by the Austrian dominions, from which it is separated by the Po; E. by Modena; S. by the Modenese, Tuscan, and Sardinian Territories; and W. by the dominions of Sardinia. (M. A.)

The duchy of Parma is an independent state of N. Italy, between 44° 22' and 45° 8' N. lat., and 9° 20' and 10° 37' E. long. Its extent from E. to W., is above 60 ms.; from N. to S., near 50 ms. Area estimated at 2250 sq. ms. Pop. in 1833, 440,000.

### MODENA.

*Q.* How is Modena bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by Austrian Italy; E. by the N. delegs. of the Papal States; S. by Tuscany, Lucca, and the Mediterranean; and W. by a portion of the Sardinian dominions, and Parma.

The duchy of Modena, called by the Italians *Stato Estense*, is a state of

† Cremona, a city of Austrian Italy, capital deleg. same name, on the left bank of the Po, 46 ms. S. E. by E. from Milan, and 26 ms. N. W. from Parma; lat. 45° 7' N., long. 10° 2' E.

‡ Pavia (Anc. *Ticinum*) is a frontier city of Austrian Italy, Lombardy, capital deleg. of its own name, on the Ticino, 19 ms. S. S. W. from Milan; lat. 45° 10' N., long. 9° 9' E.

§ Lodi, a city of Lombardy, capital deleg. Lodi and Crema, on the Adda, here crossed by a wooden bridge, and on the road from Milan to Piacenza, 18 ms. S. E. from Milan; lat. 45° 18' N., long. 9° 20' E.

|| Verona, a celebrated city of Austrian Italy, capital deleg. of same name, on the Adige, at the point where the last declivities of the Alps sink into the great plain of Lombardy, 64 ms. W. from Venice; lat. 45° 26' N., long. 11° E.

\* A series of sanguinary engagements took place here on the 15th, 16th, and 17th of November, 1796, between the Austrians and the French, under Napoleon, when the former were ultimately defeated.

† Lodi is famous in modern history for the victory achieved here on the 10th of May, 1796, by Napoleon, in his first Italian campaign. The cannon of the Austrians swept the bridge behind which they were drawn up; but it was, notwithstanding, forced by the French at the point of the bayonet, and the Austrian army totally defeated. On this occasion, the intrepidity and gallantry of Napoleon shone as conspicuously as his skill as a tactician.



N. Italy, consisting of the united duchies of Modena and Massa-Carrara, principally included between the 44th and 45th degrees of N. lat., and the 10th and 11th degrees of E. long. Area estimated at 2145 sq. ms.; and the pop. at 400,000.

## LUCCA.

*Q.* How is Lucca bounded?

*A.* It is bounded (except a few small detached portions) N. W. and N. by the territories of Modena, and the Tuscan Lunigiana; E. and S. by Tuscany; and W. by the Mediterranean. (M. A.)

The duchy of Lucca is a state of Central Italy, being, excepting San Marine, the smallest of the Italian States, between lat.  $43^{\circ} 46'$  and  $44^{\circ} 14'$  N., and long.  $10^{\circ} 9'$  and  $10^{\circ} 42'$  E. Length (N. to S.), 26 ms.; greatest breadth, 21 ms. Area (including Montignoso, &c.), 434 sq. ms. Pop. 150,000.

## TUSCANY.

*Q.* How is Tuscany bounded?

*A.* It is bounded (with the exception of some small detached portions) N. by the territories of Lucca, Modena, and the Papal States; E. and S. E. by the latter; and S. W. and W. by the Mediterranean, here called the Tyrrhene or Tuscan Sea. (M. A.)

The grand-duchy of Tuscany (Anc. *Etruria*) forms a state of N. and Central Italy, being the third in rank in that peninsula, principally between lat.  $42^{\circ}$  and  $44\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  N., and the 10th and 12th degrees of E. long. Length, from N. to S., about 130 ms.; greatest breadth, from E. to W., above 100 ms. Total area, including Elba and some other small islands in the Mediterranean, 8759 sq. ms. Pop. 1,450,000. Florence is the capital.

## STATES OF THE CHURCH.

*Q.* How are the States of the Church bounded?

*A.* They are bounded N. by Austrian Italy; N. E. and E. by the Adriatic (Gulf of Venice), and kingdom of Naples; S. W. by the Mediterranean; and W. and N. W. by Tuscany and Modena. (M. A.)

Papal State (Ital. *Stato Pontificio*, or *Stato della Chiesa*, i. e. "State of the Church") is a division of Italy, comprehending the dominions of the see of Rome, of which the Pope is the sovereign. It is principally situated between  $41^{\circ} 10'$  and  $45^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $11^{\circ}$  and  $14^{\circ}$  E. long. Its length is about 270 ms.; the breadth varies greatly; in one part it extends across the Italian Peninsula, and is near 140 ms. broad. Area estimated at 17,572 sq. ms. Pop. 2,730,000. The seat of government is at Rome.

*Q.* What is the population of the cities in those states?

*A.* IN PARMA:

Parma, the capital, contains 36,000; Piacenza, 28,000. (M. A.)

IN MODENA:

Modena, the capital, contains 27,000; Reggio, 18,000. (M. A.)

IN LUCCA:

Lucca, the capital, contains 24,000. (M. A.)

## IN TUSCANY :

Florence, the capital, contains 97,000; Pisa, 20,000. (M. A.)

## IN THE STATES OF THE CHURCH :

Bologna contains 69,000; Ferrara, 25,000; Ravenna, 16,000; Rimini, 27,000. (M. A.)

Q. Where is San Marino?

A. It is a little republic of Italy, under the protection of the Pope, situated in the States of the Church, near  $43^{\circ} 55'$  N. lat., and  $12^{\circ} 30'$  E. long. (M. A.)

SAN MARINO, a town and republic of Italy, under the protection of the Pope; being about the smallest, as well as the most ancient, state in Europe. The territory of the republic, enclosed on all sides by the legation of Urbino, in the Papal States, consists of a craggy mountain, about 2200 ft. high, and some adjacent hillocks, with one town and four villages; comprising an area of about 22 sq. ms., and a pop. of 7600. The town stands on the side of the mountain above mentioned, about 15 ms. S. W. from Rimini, and 26 ms. N. N. W. from Urbino: lat.  $43^{\circ} 56'$  N., long.  $12^{\circ} 27'$  E.

Map No. 21.—Q. What is the population of Rome?

A. 149,000. (M. A.)

Q. Bologna?

A. 69,000. (M. A.)

Q. Ferrara?

A. 25,000. (M. A.)

Q. Florence?

A. 97,000. (M. A.)

Q. Leghorn?

A. 76,000. (M. A.)

Q. On what river is Rome?

A. On the Tiber.\* (M. A.)

Q. Florence?

A. On the Arno.† (M. A.)

Q. What island west of Tuscany?

A. Elba. (M. A.)

This is noted for having been the residence of Napoleon Bonaparte during part of the years 1814 and 1815. (M. G. p. 268.)

\* Rome, the most celebrated of European cities, famous alike in ancient and modern history; first, as the metropolis of the most powerful nation of antiquity, and, afterwards, as the ecclesiastical capital of Christendom, and the residence of the pope, on both sides the Tiber, but principally on its E. bank, about 16 ms. from its mouth, 115 ms. N. W. Naples, and 145 S. S. E. Florence; lat.  $41^{\circ} 53'$  N., long.  $12^{\circ} 29'$  E. The pop., which, in 1837, amounted to 156,552, had decreased, in 1838, to 148,903, owing to the influence of cholera and other causes.

† Florence (Ital. *Firenze*, Anc. *Florentia Tuscorum*) is a city of Central Italy, and cap. of the grand-duchy of Tuscany, on both sides the Arno, 63 ms. S. by W. from Bologna, 68 ms. E. N. E. from Leghorn, and 187 ms. N. W. from Rome; lat.  $43^{\circ} 46'$  N., long.  $11^{\circ} 15'$  E.

## KINGDOM OF NAPLES.

*Pages 270-1.—Lesson 181.—Maps No. 21 and 22.*

*Map No. 21.—Q.* How is Naples bounded?

*A.* It has N., the Papal States; E., the Adriatic (Gulf of Venice); and elsewhere the Mediterranean. (M. A.)

The kingdom of Naples, otherwise called the KINGDOM OF THE TWO SICILIES, is a European state of the second class: its continental districts are nearly identical with the *Magna Græcia* of antiquity. It comprises the S. portion of Italy, with Sicily and the adjacent islands, included between the 36th and 43d degs. of N. lat., and the 12th and 19th of E. long. Its total area may be estimated at 42,550 sq. ms., and its pop. at about 7,846,000.

The Neapolitan territory is divided into two principal portions, the continental and the insular, the first being called the *Dominij al di qua del Faro* (the country on this side the Faro, or Straits of Messina), and the latter, *Dominij al di la del Faro* (or the country beyond the Faro). The latter portion has been fully treated of under the head Sicily, pages 269-70.

The continental part of the kingdom of Naples, the limits of which have scarcely varied for the last eight centuries, is about 400 ms. in length, N. N. W. to S. S. E., and 130 ms. in its greatest breadth, from Cape Campanella to the Garganian promontory. Its shape is very irregular; at its S. E. extremity are the two peninsulas of Calabria and Otranto, forming one the foot and the other the heel of the boot which Italy is supposed to resemble, while to the N. W. of the latter is the conspicuous promontory of Gargano, extending into the Adriatic (Gulf of Venice), representing the Spur.

The kingdom of Naples is divided into 22 provinces, or intendancies, 15 belonging to the peninsula, and 7 to Sicily. The government is nominally a limited monarchy, but approaches very nearly to a despotism. The reigning family is a branch of the house of Bourbon.

*Q.* What strait separates Naples from Turkey?

*A.* Otranto.

*Q.* What gulf is there in the south?

*A.* Taranto.

*Q.* What mountains extend through it?

*A.* Apennines.

*Q.* What mountain near Naples?

*A.* Mt. Vesuvius.

*Q.* In Sicily?

*A.* Mt. Etna.

*Q.* What islands lie north of Sicily?

*A.* Lipari.

*Q.* What capes in Sicily?

*A.* Passaro, Lungo, and Sorello.

*Q.* What strait separates Italy and Sicily?

*A.* Messina.

*Q.* What is the population of Naples?

*A.* 350,000. (M. A.)

Q. Palermo?

A. 140,000. (M. A.)

Q. Messina?

A. 60,000. (M. A.)

Q. Catania?

A. 52,000. (M. A.)

Q. Taranto?

A. 18,000. (M. A.)

Q. Bari?

A. 19,000. (M. A.)

Q. Syracuse?

A. 16,000. (M. A.)

Q. How long and wide is Sicily?

A. 180 ms. long, and 130 wide. (M. A.)

Q. What island south?

A. Malta.

Q. What island north of Malta?

A. Gozzo.

Map No. 22.—Q. On what coast do the Ionian Isles lie?

A. That of Turkey and Greece.

For a description of the Ionian Isles, see *Key*, pages 267–8.

Q. Which is the largest island?

A. Corfu.

Q. Which is the most northern?

A. Corfu.

Q. The most southern?

A. Cerigo.

Q. What is the population of the Ionian Islands?

A. 208,000. (M. A.)

Q. Chief towns?

A. Corfu, 17,000; Argostoli, 4500; Zante, 20,000; Kapseli, 5000. (M. A.)

## GREECE.

Page 272.—Lesson 182.—Map No. 22.

Q. What bounds Greece on the north?

A. Turkey.

Q. South and west?

A. Mediterranean Sea.

Q. East?

A. Archipelago.

Q. What peninsula in the south?

A. Morea.

- Q. What isthmus unites it to the main land ?  
 A. Corinth.  
 Q. What is the southern Cape of Greece ?  
 A. Matapan.  
 Q. What island south of the Morea ?  
 A. Cerigo.  
 Q. What islands west of Greece ?  
 A. St. Maura, Cephalonia, and Zante.  
 Q. What groups east ?  
 A. Northern Sporades, and Cyclades.  
 Q. What island near the east coast ?  
 A. Negropont.  
 Q. What gulfs on the south ?  
 A. Colokythia, and Coron.  
 Q. East ?  
 A. Napoli, and Egina.  
 Q. West ?  
 A. Patras, and Lepanto.  
 Q. What gulfs nearly separate Hellas and the Morea ?  
 A. Egina, and Lepanto.  
 Q. Point out the chief mountains.  
 A. Mt. Velia, and Mt. Zagora.  
 Q. Rivers ?  
 A. Orpheu, Vasdico, and Aspropotamos.  
 Q. Lake ?  
 A. Topolias.  
 Q. Tell the population of Athens.  
 A. 17,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. The other towns.  
 A. Livadia, 10,000 ; Patras, 6000.  
*For a further description, see Key, pages 240-1.*

---

### TURKEY IN EUROPE.

*Page 276.—Lesson 184.—Map No. 18.*

- Q. What bounds Turkey on the north ?  
 A. Austria.  
 Q. South ?  
 A. Greece, Archipelago, and Sea of Marmora.  
 Q. East ?  
 A. The Black Sea.  
 Q. West ?  
 A. Gulf of Venice.  
 Q. Which is the chief river ?  
 A. Danube.



*Q.* How long is it ?

*A.* 1600 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* Into what sea does it flow ?

*A.* Black.

*Q.* Point out the principal mountains.

*A.* Balkan.

*Q.* How long are they ?

*A.* 700 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* What strait between the Archipelago and the Sea of Marmora ?

*A.* Dardanelles.

*Q.* What channel leads into the Black Sea ?

*A.* Channel of Constantinople.

*Q.* What is the population of Constantinople ?

*A.* 600,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Adrianople ?

*A.* 100,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Bucharest ?

*A.* 80,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Serajevo ?

*A.* 60,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Salonica ?

*A.* 70,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Sophia ?

*A.* 50,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Joannina ?

*A.* 12,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Ibraila ?

*A.* 30,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Shumla ?

*A.* 20,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Seres ?

*A.* 27,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* On what strait is Constantinople ?

*A.* On the Channel of Constantinople.

*Q.* On what rivers are the largest of the other cities ?

*A.* Silistria is on the Danube ;\* Widin, on the Danube ;† Belgrade, on the Danube ;‡ Ibraila, on the Danube. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, pages 241-2.*

---

\* Silistria (Turk. *Dristra*), a city of European Turkey, province Bulgaria, capital of a Sanjak, on the Danube, 63 ms. E. N. E. from Rutschuck.

† Widin or Vidin, a fortified town of Bulgaria, capital of a Sanjack, on the Danube, 130 ms. S. E. from Belgrade.

‡ Belgrade (Anc. *Singidunum*), a fortified town of the principality of Servia, on the right bank of the Danube, at the point where it is joined by the Save; lat. 44° 47' N., long. 20° 39' E.

## ASIA.

*Page 279.—Lesson 186.—Map No. 23.*

*Q.* How is Asia bounded?

*A.* It is bounded on the N. by the Northern or Arctic Ocean; on the E., by the Pacific Ocean; on the S., by the Indian Ocean; and on the W. and N. W., by the Red Sea, the Mediterranean, the Ægean Sea or Archipelago, the Strait of the Dardanelles, the Sea of Marmora, the Channel of Constantinople, the Black Sea, the River Ural, the Ural Mountains, and lastly, by the River and Sea of Kara. (M. A.)

On the N., Asia is washed by the Arctic Sea, which separates it from the Arctic countries of America; on the E. by the Pacific Ocean, which divides it from the continent of America; on the S. by the Indian Ocean, which lies between it and Australia; on the W. it is conterminous with Africa and Europe. The boundary line between it and Africa is formed by the Gulf of Aden, the Strait of Babelmandeb (where both continents are only about 16 ms. apart), the Red Sea, and the Isthmus of Suez, where both continents unite for about 50 ms. Asia is separated from Europe by the Mediterranean Sea, the Ægean Sea or Archipelago, the Strait of the Dardanelles, the Sea of Marmora, the Channel of Constantinople, the Black Sea, and the sea of Azov. From the eastern shores of the latter sea, the boundary line runs along the River Don to that part of its course which approaches nearest to the Volga; thence due E. to that stream; thence up the middle of its channel to the mouth of the River Kama. Thence it follows the course of that r. up to its source in the Uralian range, which latter forms the remainder of the boundary line to the Gulf of Kara, E. of the Island of Nova Zembla.

Asia, the largest, most early civilized, and, in many respects, the most interesting of the great divisions of the globe, extends from  $1^{\circ} 20'$  to  $78^{\circ}$  N. lat., and, when the islands belonging to it are included, from  $11^{\circ}$  S. lat. From west to east it extends from  $26^{\circ}$  to  $190^{\circ}$  E. long. The most northerly point of the continent is Cevero Vostochnoi,  $78^{\circ}$  N. lat.; the most easterly, East Cape,  $190^{\circ}$  E. long.; the most southerly, Cape Romania (formed by the extremity of the Malay peninsula),  $1^{\circ} 20'$  N. lat.; and the most westerly, Cape Baba, in Asia Minor,  $26^{\circ}$  E. long. Cape Cevero Vostochnoi and Cape Romania are more than 5300 ms. distant from each other, and this, consequently, is the extent of Asia from N. to S. Its greatest breadth occurs under the parallel of  $70^{\circ}$  N. lat., between Cape Baba and the E. coast of the Corea, where it extends about 5400 ms. from W. to E. Its surface is supposed to cover about 16,000,000 sq. ms., being above four and a half times the area of Europe. Pop. estimated at 450,000,000.

*Q.* Which is the largest city and river?

*A.* Pekin is the largest city, and the Yangtse-kiang the largest river. (M. A.)

## DIVISIONS.

*Q.* How is Siberia bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N., by the Arctic Ocean; E. and S. E., by

those arms of the Pacific Ocean known as the Sea of Kamtschatka and the Sea of Ochotsk; S., by the Chinese Empire, and Independent Tartary; and W., by Europe. (M. A.)

Q. Capital?

A. Tobolsk.

SIBERIA is a vast territory belonging to Russia, and occupying the whole northern part of the Asiatic continent. It is situated between  $47^{\circ} 30'$  and  $78^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $59^{\circ}$  and  $190^{\circ}$  E. long. Length, from E. to W., about 4000 ms. Greatest breadth, from N. to S., near 2000 ms. Area estimated at 5,000,000 sq. ms. The pop. was estimated in 1838 at 2,650,000.

Q. How is Tartary bounded?

A. It is bounded N. by Asiatic Russia (Siberia); E. and S. E., by those arms of the Pacific Ocean known as the Channel of Tartary, the Sea of Japan, the Strait of Corea, and the Yellow Sea; S., by China, Thibet, Little Thibet, Afghanistan, and Persia; and W. and N. W., by the Russian Empire, from which it is separated by the Caspian Sea, and Ural River. (M. A.)

TARTARY, or TATARY, is a very extensive region of Central Asia, partly comprised in the Chinese empire, and partly in Independent Tartary, which see.

Tartary is the name given in Europe to that immense region extending almost entirely across Asia from the Caspian to the Eastern Ocean. It is the second of the three great belts into which that continent is portioned out. Although the name of Tartary be only partially recognised within these limits, and though in so vast a region much diversity of every kind must necessarily exist, the general similarity is striking. Many parts of it are bordered, and even pervaded, by chains of mountains; and large cities, cultivated spots, and fixed societies here and there occur. It contains also sandy deserts of considerable extent. Still, the predominant characteristic is that of plains almost boundless, covered with herbage more or less abundant, and occupied by wandering and pastoral tribes, whose camps, like moving cities, pass continually to and fro over its surface.

Q. How is Independent Tartary bounded?

A. It is bounded N., by the Russian dominions (Siberia); E. and S. E., by the Chinese Empire; S., by Afghanistan and Persia; and W. and N. W., by the Russian Empire, from which it is separated by the Caspian Sea, and Ural River. (M. A.)

INDEPENDENT TARTARY, or TOORKISTAN (*i. e.* the "country of the Turks"), is situated in the N. W. central part of Asia, between  $35^{\circ}$  and  $45^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $50^{\circ}$  and  $75^{\circ}$  E. long. Length, from N. to S., near 1400 ms.: greatest breadth, from E. to W., about 950 ms. Area vaguely estimated at from 700,000 to 1,000,000 sq. ms. A large portion of this extensive country consists of elevated table-land, intersected by ridges of mountains, some of which appear to be not less than 18,000 ft. above the level of the sea. Deserts of greater or less extent are found in different parts. Toorkistan is divided into a number of independent states or *khanats*, which vary greatly in extent and population. All the chiefs or *khans* appear to be possessed of a power more or less arbitrary. The principal khanats are those of Bokhara, Khiva, and Khokand. Mohammedanism is the prevailing religion of

Toorkistan : it is said that the laws of the Koran, especially in Bokhara, are more strictly observed here than in any other Mohammedan country. The amount of the pop. is wholly conjectural, but is estimated at about 6,500,000. The uncertainty on the subject may be inferred from the circumstance that the last Russian embassy to Bokhara reckoned the pop. of that country at 2,500,000 ; while the late A. Burnes reckoned it at not more than 1,000,000. A great proportion consists of fixed inhabitants, cultivating the ground, or inhabiting towns. The bulk of these, over all Independent Tartary, as well as Cashgar and Cabul, consist of a race called *Taujiks*, apparently descended from an original native people reduced to subjection by the conquering tribes who at present bear sway ; and the name is now generally applied to all who have adopted the same peaceable and industrious habits.

*Q.* How is Turkey bounded ?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the Russian Empire (from which it is partially separated by the Black Sea) ; E. by Persia ; S. by Arabia and by the Mediterranean ; W. by the Ægean Sea or Archipelago, and the Strait of the Dardanelles ; and N. W. by the Sea of Marmora. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital ?

*A.* Constantinople.

The Turkish dominions in Asia are of much greater extent than those in Europe, but their population is supposed to be about the same. They embrace the whole peninsula of Asia Minor and the adjacent islands, the greater part of Armenia and Koordistan, with Syria and Palestine, Mesopotamia, and a portion of Arabia. In all, they may comprise an area of about 430,000 sq. ms., with a pop. probably, of about 10,000,000.

Turkey or Ottoman Empire (in Turkish, *Osmanlee Vilayetee*, or the "country of the Osmânlees") is an extensive country occupying the S. E. portion of Europe, and the W. part of Asia, principally situated between 30° and 48° N. lat., and 16° and 48° E. long. ; bounded on the N. by Austria and the Russian Empire (from which it is partially separated by the Black Sea) ; E. by Persia ; S. by Arabia and by the Mediterranean ; and W. by the Mediterranean, the Adriatic (Gulf of Venice), and the Austrian territories. Length, from N. N. W. to S. S. E., above 1800 ms. ; greatest breadth, from N. to S., perhaps 700 ms. The area of European Turkey is estimated at about 207,000 sq. ms., and the pop. at 10,000,000 ; the area of Asiatic Turkey at about 430,000 sq. ms., and the pop. at 10,000,000, which would give 637,000 sq. ms. for the area, and 20,000,000 for the pop. of the whole empire. The religion of Turkey is Mohammedanism ; the Grand Seignior is regarded as the vicegerent of the prophet, and the protector of the Moslem faith. The government is an absolute despotism, the sultan being under no other restraint than what the laws of the Koran impose. Constantinople is the capital.

*Q.* How is Arabia bounded ?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the Asiatic provinces of the Turkish Empire (Syria, Mesopotamia, and Koordistan) ; N. E. by the Gulfs of Persia and Oman ; E., S. E., and S., by that part of the Indian Ocean called the Arabian Sea ; and W. by the Arabic Gulf or Red Sea. (M. A.)



Arabia is an extensive peninsula, comprising the S. W. portion of the Asiatic Continent, situated between the rest of Asia and Africa, and between  $12^{\circ} 22'$  and  $33^{\circ} 45'$  N. lat., and  $32^{\circ} 50'$  and  $58^{\circ} 42'$  E. long. Its greatest length from Suez to Cape Isolette is 1690 ms., and its greatest width from the Strait of Babelmandeb to the city of Bussorah, on the Euphrates, 1350 ms. Its area is estimated at from 1,000,000 to 1,200,000 sq. ms. Arabia has been supposed to contain from 8,000,000 to 10,000,000 inhabitants, though this is probably beyond the mark. The nomadic habits of the greater part of its pop., and the number of petty states into which the settled pop. is divided, and the little that is known with respect to most of them, renders it impossible to assign either their limits or their population.

Arabia was commonly divided by the ancient geographers (and the terms are still retained) into three parts, Arabia Felix, or *happy*; Petræa, or *stony*; and Deserta, or *desert*. Arabia Felix borders on the Persian Gulf, the Indian Ocean, and the S. part of the Red Sea; Arabia Petræa lies on the Red Sea, N. of Arabia Felix; Arabia Deserta includes all the northern part of the country. Among the Arabians, however, these names are not known. They call Arabia Deserta, Nedjed or Nej'd; Arabia Petræa, the Hedjaz; Arabia Felix is divided into Yemen, Hadramaut, Oman, and Lahsa.

*For further particulars, see Key, page 389.*

*Q.* How is Persia bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the Russian province of Georgia, the Caspian Sea, and Independent Tartary; E. by Afghanistan and Beloochistan; S. and S. W. by the Persian Gulf, and that part of the Indian Ocean called the Arabian Sea; and W. by Asiatic Turkey. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Teheran.

Persia (called by the natives *Iran* or *Eeran*) is an extensive country in the S. S. W. part of Asia, between  $25^{\circ}$  and  $40^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $44^{\circ}$  and  $62^{\circ}$  E. long. Its political boundaries have varied greatly at different epochs, sometimes including Armenia, Georgia, and Bokhara, and sometimes reduced to less than its natural limits. At present, however, the territories of Persia are much more circumscribed; the provinces of Herat, Afghanistan and Beloochistan are quite independent, while a considerable tract of land E. of the Tigris is possessed by Turkey. The greatest extent of Persia (with its present boundaries) from N. to S., is about 800 miles, and from E. to W., about 700 ms. Area, 470,000 sq. ms. Pop. estimated at 8,000,000. The religion is Mohammedanism; the government a military despotism.

*Q.* How is Afghanistan bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by Independent Tartary; E. by the kingdom of Lahore; S. by Beloochistan; and W. by Persia. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Cabul.

Afghanistan, called also the kingdom of Cabul, is a kingdom of S. Asia, between  $28^{\circ}$  and  $36^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $59^{\circ}$  and  $72^{\circ}$  E. long. Its actual limits, however, are very uncertain. Including Herat, the area is estimated at about



300,000 sq. ms. ; the pop. at 6,000,000. A large portion of the country is mountainous, or consists of high table land. In character, the Afghans resemble the Arabs ; they are hospitable, brave, rapacious, and revengeful. Mohammedanism is the prevailing religion. Cabul is the capital.

*Q.* How is Beloochistan bounded ?

*A.* It is bounded N. by Afghanistan, and the sandy desert of Caubul ; E. by Upper and Lower Sinde ; S. by that part of the Indian Ocean called the Arabian Sea ; and W. by Persia. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital ?

*A.* Kelat.

Beloochistan (Anc. *Gedrosia*, and the countries of the Ichthyophagi, Oritæ, Arabitæ, &c., *Arrian*) is a country in the S. of Asia, bordering on the Indian Ocean, and lying between  $24^{\circ} 50'$  and  $30^{\circ} 40'$  N. lat., and  $57^{\circ} 50'$  and  $69^{\circ} 10'$  E. long. Length, E. to W., 700 ms. ; breadth, on either side, 350 ms., and 190 ms. in the centre ; area, 150,000 sq. ms. The pop. has been estimated at from 1,500,000 to 3,000,000 ; but the latter is no doubt beyond the mark : we incline to think that the smaller number would be nearer the truth. The Belooches are for the most part pastoral in their mode of life, though some of them are engaged in agriculture. In character, they are hospitable, and generally faithful to their promises, but avaricious, rapacious, and revengeful. The prevailing religion is Mohammedanism. The government is a confederacy of several small territories, each having its own chief. All the others recognise the supremacy of the Khan, who resides at Kelat.

*Q.* How is Hindoostan bounded ?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the highest mts. in the world, the Himmaleh or Himalaya, which separate it from Thibet and Little Thibet ; N. E. by the Burrampooter or Brahmapootra R., which separates it from British Birmah ; S. E. by the Bay of Bengal ; S. by the Indian Ocean ; S. W. by the Arabian Sea ; and N. W. by the Indus R., which separates it from Beloochistan and Afghanistan. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital ?

*A.* Calcutta.

HINDOOSTAN OR HINDOSTAN (*i. e.* in Persian, the "country of the Hindoos," or INDIA ON THIS SIDE THE GANGES) is an extensive country in the S. of Asia, between  $8^{\circ} 4'$  and  $35^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $67^{\circ}$  and  $91^{\circ}$  E. long., extending from Cape Comorin, on the S., to the Himmaleh or Himalaya Mts., on the N., and from the head of the Bay of Bengal, on the E., to the western border of the valley of Indus, on the W. The length, from N. to S., is near 1900 ms. ; breadth, from E. to W., between 1400 and 1500 ms. The area of Hindoostan is estimated at 1,200,000 sq. ms. The number of inhabitants, by the latest accounts, is about 140,000,000. According to Malte-Brun, the pop. is not less than 134,000,000 ; the Penny Cyclopædia estimates it at between 110,000,000 and 120,000,000. A large portion of this vast country is subject to the English. The East India Company shares with the King of Great Britain the sovereignty over almost all the provinces which

combine to form the Anglo-Indian Empire. This company, without possessing the title, enjoys nearly all the rights of royalty. Its authority, however, is dependent on the British Parliament, to which the officers of the East India government are directly responsible. The territory, under the administration of the company, is divided into three governments, designated as the presidency of Bengal and Agra, the presidency of Madras, and the presidency of Bombay. The inhabitants of Hindoostan may be divided into three principal classes, viz.: the Aborigines, or Hindoos, the Asiatics of foreign extraction, and the Europeans.

*Q.* How is Birmah bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N., by Thibet and China; E., by China, Tonquin, and Siam; and S. and W., by the Bay of Bengal and Assam and Aracan. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Monchaboo.

BIRMAH, or the BIRMAN EMPIRE, is an extensive country of India beyond the Ganges, formerly the most powerful state of that peninsula, and considerably larger than at present; extending between the lat. of  $9^{\circ}$  and  $27^{\circ}$  N., upwards of 1000 ms. in length, and nearly 600 ms. in breadth. At present it comprises the territory between lat.  $15^{\circ} 45'$  and  $27^{\circ} 22'$  N., and long.  $92^{\circ} 43'$  and  $99^{\circ}$  E. Length, N. to S., 710 ms., greatest breadth, E. to W., 370 ms. Area, about 254,000 sq. ms. Pop. estimated at from 4,000,000 to 6,000,000.

The Birmans are much less civilized than the Hindoos. In religion they are Buddhists; neither Mohammedanism nor Christianity has made any progress among them. The government is an absolute despotism, their sovereign being the lord of the life and property of all his subjects.

*Q.* How is Siam bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N., by Birmah; E., by the Empire of Anam; S., by the Gulf of Siam and Independent Malacca; and W., by the Bay of Bengal and Birmah. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Bangkok.

SIAM (called by the natives *Thai*, the free country, and by the Birmans *Yoodra* or *Yuthia*) is an extensive country of India beyond the Burram-pooter, comprising, with its dependent states, most of the central and S. parts of that peninsula; extending between the 6th and 21st degs. of N. lat., and the 98th and 104th degs. of E. long.; besides Siam Proper, it includes a part of Laos, or the country of the Shans; also portions of Malacca and Cambodia. Its area has been very variously stated, but according to Crawford, it amounts to 190,000 sq. ms.; Mitchell estimates it at 184,000 sq. ms. Its pop. has been estimated, though on very vague and unsatisfactory data, by Crawford, at 2,790,500, and by Malcolm at 3,000,000; of whom, probably 1,500,000 are native Siamese, 800,000 Shans, 250,000 Malays, Peguans, &c., and 450,000 Chinese settlers; but other authorities estimate the pop. at from 6,000,000 to 8,000,000; in Mitchell's Geography it is stated at 3,800,000. Buddhism is the prevailing religion of the Siamese. The government is an absolute despotism.

*Q.* How is Anam bounded ?

*A.* It is bounded N., by China ; W., by Siam, and in the rest of its extent by those arms of the Pacific Ocean known as the Gulf of Tonquin, the China Sea, and the Gulf of Siam. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital ?

*A.* Hue.

ANAM or AN-NAM (Empire of) is a country of Asia, occupying the E. portion of the great E. peninsula of S. Asia, or India beyond the Ganges, comprising Cochin China and Tonquin (to which only the name of An-nam properly belongs), with the E. and S. part of Cambodia, part of Laos, and many small islands in the China Sea. It lies between  $8^{\circ} 45'$  and  $23^{\circ} 28'$  N. lat., and  $101^{\circ}$  to  $109^{\circ}$  E. long. It is 965 ms. in length, varying in width from 415 ms. to 200 ms. Area, probably about 350,000 sq. ms. Pop. variously estimated at from 5 to 15 or 20 millions ! The lowest estimate is that of Mr. Crawford ; in Mitchell's Geography it is given at 9,000,000, which seems a fair average.

*Q.* How is China bounded ?

*A.* It is bounded N. by Chinese Tartary ;\* E., S. E., and S. by those arms of the Pacific Ocean known as the Petchelée Gulf, the Yellow Sea, the Eastern Sea, the Strait of Formosa, the China Sea, and the Gulf of Tonquin ; on the land side by Tonquin, Laos, and Birmah ; and W. by Thibet and Chinese Tartary. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital ?

*A.* Peking.

CHINA is an extensive country in E. Asia, bordering on the Pacific, and constituting the principal portion of the Chinese empire. It lies between  $20^{\circ}$  and  $41^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $98^{\circ}$  and  $124^{\circ}$  E. long. Length, from N. to S., 1474 ms. ; breadth, from W. to E., 1355 ms. But these are not the longest straight lines that may be made to intersect its surface ; since, from the N. E. corner to the frontiers of Birmah, the distance is 1669 ms., and from the N. W. extremity to the isle of Amoy, it is 1557 ms. The entire area is probably about 1,640,000 sq. ms.† The coast is upwards of 2500 ms. in length, while the land frontier occupies a space of 4400 ms. Thus, China Proper is about eight times the size of France, and eleven times that of Great Britain.

\* On the northern frontier, China is enclosed by the great wall, about 1500 ms. long, and 20 ft. high. It is believed to have been built about 200 years before the Christian era, and exceeds everything of human art and industry that is read of in history.

† Though these are offered as the dimensions of China, with some confidence as to their correctness, it is right to quote the statements of former writers. Lord Macartney (1797) gives the area of China Proper at 1,297,999 sq. ms., which has been copied by Pinkerton and Murray ; Malte-Brun (1811) gives 1,482,091 sq. ms. The *Quarterly Review* (July 1836) states that the surface "by the most correct maps may be taken at 1,680,000 sq. ms., or 1,075,200,000 acres." Gutzlaff (1838), evidently misled by a misprint in the English translation of Malte-Brun, sets down the area at 537,000 sq. ms., while at p. 57 of the same work the number of sq. ms. allotted to each province, when added up, amount to 1,297,999, Lord Macartney's estimate.

*Great Plain.*—The first object that invites attention in the general aspect of China is its *great plain*, which, occupying the N. E. part of the country, is above 700 ms. in length, and varies in width from 150 to near 500 ms. The entire area encloses no less than six provinces, and a space of 210,000 sq. ms., being seven times greater than the plain of Lombardy. It is extremely populous; and if we might depend upon the census of 1813, no fewer than 170,000,000 “mouths”—the Chinese expression for souls—are fed upon its surface! The N. portion, bounded by the great wall, is dry and sandy, and its E. portion, bordering on the sea, and between the two great rivers, the Hoang-ho and the Yang-tse-Kiang, by which it is intersected, is low, swampy, and studded with lakes. But, notwithstanding these deductions, it may be said to be, on the whole, extremely fertile. It has few trees, but is everywhere well watered; is cultivated with the utmost care, and produces vast quantities of rice, with cotton, wheat, &c.

The government of China is an absolute despotism. The emperors of the present or Mantchoo dynasty, sprung from a union of the eastern Tartars and Monguls, and have been in possession of the sovereignty since the year 1644.

The area of China\* Proper is not quite a third part of the whole empire. It is true that its dimensions have not been satisfactorily determined, and it will be seen that our estimate of the extent of the empire, as well as of China Proper, differs from the calculations of preceding geographers; which, indeed, widely disagree with each other, except where the mistakes of one writer have been copied by another.

Q. How is the Chinese Empire bounded?

A. It is bounded N. (for the immense extent of 3300 ms.) by Asiatic Russia; E. and S. E. by those arms of the Pacific Ocean known as the Channel of Tartary, the Sea of Japan, the Strait of Corea, the Yellow Sea, the Eastern Sea, the Strait of Formosa, the China Sea, and the Gulf of Tonquin; on the land sides, S. and S. W. by Tonquin, Laos, Birmah, and Hindoostan; and W. and N. W. by Independent Tartary. (M. A.)

Q. Capital?

A. Peking, or Peking.

The CHINESE EMPIRE is a vast country of S. E. Asia, between lat. 20° and 56° N., and long. 70° and 144° E., in form nearly square. Its extent from the borders of Khokan and Budukshan to the sea of Ochotsk is 3350 ms., and its greatest width from the frontiers of Daouria, N., to Tonquin, S., is 2100 ms., enclosing, altogether, a space of about 5,200,000 sq. ms. Thus the Chinese empire includes all the table-land of eastern Asia—nearly a third part of the whole continent—or a little more than a tenth part of the land portion of the globe; and contains within its enormous area the largest amount of population united under one government in the world. The coast line has an extent of above 3350 ms., and the total circumference of the empire is about 12,550 ms.

---

\* We have borrowed this name from the Malays, who call China *Tchina*. Generally speaking, the Chinese call their empire after the name of the reigning dynasty, so that it has differed at different periods. Being at present governed by the Manchoo dynasty, who have adopted the name of *Thising*, the Chinese call themselves *Thising-Jin*, that is, men of Thising.



According to a census which is stated to have been taken by the Chinese government in 1812, the entire pop. of the empire amounted to more than 360,000,000. Balbi estimates it at 170,000,000. In Mitchell's Geography the amount is assumed at 226,000,000.

*Q.* How is Thibet bounded ?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the Kuen-lun and Thsoun-ling Mts., which separate it from Little Bucharía and the Desert of Cobi; E. by China; S. and S. W. by the great Himmaleh Mts., separating it from Birmah, Assam, and Hindoostan; and W. by the Beloor Mts., separating it from Independent Tartary. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital ?

*A.* Lassa.

THIBET or TIBET (native *Toup'ho*, *Bhote*, and *Puëkoachim*, "snowy region of the north") is a very extensive region in the S. E. central part of Asia, of which very little is known. It appears to lie between  $27^{\circ}$  and  $36^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $72^{\circ}$  and  $103^{\circ}$  E. long. The W. part of this vast tract, called Little Thibet (including Ladakh, Lé, Baltee, &c.), formerly under the control of China, appears now to be independent of that power. Its boundaries on every side but the S. being so uncertain, and our knowledge of the country so limited, it is impossible to form any thing like an accurate estimate either of its area or pop.

The country is politically divided into Wei and Tsang, or Hither and Farther Thibet. Wei is that division bordering on China, and having for its capital Lassa, or H'lassa, the residence of the Delai Lama. It is divided into 8 cantons, that of Lassa being the principal; and 39 feudal townships, called *tooszes*, which lie northward, contiguous to some similar townships in the country of Ko-ko-nor. Tsang, or Ulterior Thibet, is W. of the former, and extends W. from about long.  $90^{\circ}$  E. It is divided into 7 cantons, its capital being Teshoo Loomboo. These two provinces are under the direction of two ministers, sent from the imperial cabinet at Pekin; and of two high priests of Thibet, called Delai Lama and Bantchin-Erdeni. The ministerial residents govern both provinces conjointly, consulting only with the Dalai Lama for the affairs of Hither, and with the Bantchin-Erdeni for those of Farther Thibet. All appointments to offices of government and titles of nobility must be approved by the Chinese officers. But in minor matters the residents do not interfere, leaving such affairs to the secular deputies of the high priests, called D'heba. The government of the 39 feudal townships in Hither Thibet, and of the Tamuh or Dam Mongols, inhabiting the N. frontier, is entirely in the hands of residents. Two officers, natives of the country, are sent to each canton from Lassa, and relieved every three years. The subordinate management of the communities is entrusted to two officers in each, the d'heba and vazir, the former appointed from Lassa, the latter a native of the place, who, with the chief lama of the village, form a sort of local council, dependent on the provincial authorities; who again are obliged to refer to the capital for instructions in all extraordinary cases.

Thibet is remarkable as being the central seat and head-quarters of Buddhism, where the Buddhist religion is preserved in its greatest purity. The whole nation is divided into two distinct and separate classes, those who carry on the business of the world, and those who hold intercourse with heaven. No interference of the laity ever interrupts the regulated duties of



the clergy, nor do the latter ever employ themselves in secular affairs. In this, and in the absence of castes, consist some of the most striking differences between the religion of Thibet and that of Hindoostan, all distinction of caste being utterly repudiated by the Buddhic faith. The priests of Thibet are all called *lamas*; and the Grand, or Dalai Lama, who resides at Lassa, is believed by his adherents to be an incarnation of the Divinity in a human form. On the dissolution of this body, he is supposed to reappear in the body of some infant, who subsequently passes through the term of his mortal existence with all the honours of the Grand Lama. The Teshoo Lama, and others, are also supposed to be divine incarnations, occupying successively different bodies; and Turner gives an amusing account of an interview with the former, who, although only 18 months old, appears to have conducted himself with astonishing dignity and decorum! The Buddhists of Thibet have convents for men and women, and their religious institutions present several striking coincidences with those of the Roman Catholic church.

Thibet appears to have had relations with the Chinese Empire at a very early period; but it was governed by its own princes till about 1720, when the Emperor Kang-he acquired its sovereignty. Still, the greater share of power was left in the hands of the Grand Lama till the invasion of the Nepaul Gorkhas in 1790; when, on their expulsion by the Chinese, the present form of government was established, and strangers, formerly permitted to enter the country, were altogether excluded.

*Q.* How is Corea bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by Mantchooria; E. by the Sea of Japan; S. by the Strait of Corea; and W. by the Yellow Sea. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Kingkitao.

COREA (called by the natives *Chaou-Seen*, by the Chinese *Keaou-le*, and by the Mantchoo Tartars *Sol-ho*) is a maritime country on the E. coast of Asia, tributary to China, consisting of a large oblong-shaped peninsula, with an adjoining portion of the continent, and a vast number of islands, which are especially numerous on the W. coast. The whole of the dominions lie between lat.  $34^{\circ} 30'$  and  $40^{\circ}$  N., and long.  $123^{\circ} 50'$  and  $129^{\circ} 30'$  E.; having E., the Sea of Japan; S., the Strait of Corea; W., the Yellow Sea, and Gulf of Leao-tong; N. W., the province of Leao-tong; and N., Mantchooria. From the latter it is separated by a mountain chain, and the Thumen-Kiang River. Length, N. to S., 400 ms.; average breadth of the peninsula, about 130 ms. Total area, inclusive of islands, probably about 48,000 sq. ms. The pop. has been estimated at 15,000,000, but there are no real grounds for this estimate, which, we have little doubt, is greatly beyond the mark. Gutzlaff represents the coasts as thinly inhabited. Mitchell estimates the pop. at 7,000,000.

*Q.* How is Japan bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the Sea of Ochotsk and the independent part of the Island of Seghalien, Tarakai, or Karafto; E. by the N. Pacific Ocean; S. by the Eastern Sea of the Chinese; and W. by the Sea of Japan; which communicates with the open ocean by the Straits of La Perouse, Sangar, &c., running between the different islands. (M. A.)

Q. Capital?

A. Jedo.

The EMPIRE OF JAPAN, (called *Nippon* by the Japanese; *Yang-hoo*, and *Jepen* or *Jepoon* by the Chinese\*) is an insular empire off the E. coast of Continental Asia, and opposite to the Sea of Japan and the Channel of Tartary and Strait of Corea, by which it is separated from Mantchooria. It comprises five large, and a great number of small islands, lying between the 30th and 50th parallels of N. lat., and between the 128th and 151st degs. of E. long.

Our knowledge of Japan is somewhat limited. A few Dutch traders annually visit its only open port, Nangasaki; and the Russians have acquired some slight acquaintance with the country; but, though the talents of Kämpfer, Thunberg, Krusenstern, Siebold, Meylan and Fischer, have been engaged in collecting materials for a good description of this very curious and interesting country, the cautious and jealous policy of the Japanese government with respect to the admission of foreigners (caused, as in China, by the attempts of Jesuit missionaries to Christianize the country), has hitherto in a great measure baffled the efforts of European inquirers into its internal arrangements and economy. The shores of Japan are, likewise, either so rocky or so extremely flat, and are so often enveloped in heavy and dangerous fogs, that exploring vessels cannot approach near enough to make an accurate survey of the coasts.

Balbi calculates the area of the Japanese Empire at about 240,000 sq. ms., and McCulloch at 266,600 sq. ms. The pop. is variously estimated at from 12,000,000 to 25,000,000. In Mitchell's work the sq. ms. are stated at 260,000, and the inhabitants at 14,000,000.

As an evidence of the superior civilization of the Japanese, we may adduce the great attention which is paid to female education, and the general respect shown to that sex—a respect which is without a parallel among the nations of Asia. In their moral character, the people of Japan are represented as manly, honest, and brave, and as entertaining a high sense of honour. The prevailing religion is Buddhism, variously modified by other superstitions. The government is despotic; but the emperor himself is considered as subject to the laws, which are of long standing and cannot be easily changed. Yedo (Jedo), on the Island of Nippon, is the capital.

#### SEAS.

Q. Where is the Sea of Kara?

A. It is N. W. of Siberia, extending northward from the boundary of Europe and Asia into the Arctic Ocean, and having W. and N. the Islands of Nova Zembla. (M. A.)

Q. Where is the Sea of Kamtschatka?

A. It lies between the N. E. extremity of Asia and the N. W. of America, and is separated from the Pacific Ocean by the Aleutian Islands. (M. A.)

Q. Where is the Sea of Ochotsk?

A. It is in the N. E. of Asia, between the peninsula of Kamt-

---

\* *Yang-hoo* signifies the "workshop of the sun;" *Jepoon*, the "country of the rising sun."

schatka on the E. and the E. part of Siberia and the Island of Seghalien on the W., being separated from the Pacific Ocean on the S. E. by the chain of the Kurile Islands. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Sea of Jesso?\*

*A.* It is in the N. E. of Asia, having the Sea of Ochotsk on the N., the Island of Seghalien on the W., and the Kurile Islands on the S. E., separating it from the Pacific Ocean.

*Q.* Where is the Sea of Japan?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of Asia, situated between the Japanese Islands and the opposite coasts of Mantchooria and Corea. (M. A.)

This sea extends from about  $34^{\circ}$  to  $52^{\circ}$  N. lat. (if we include the Gulf or Channel of Tartary, at the N. extremity), and from  $127^{\circ} 20'$  to  $142^{\circ}$  E. long. Its length is about 1400 ms.; greatest breadth about 600 ms.

*Q.* Where is the Yellow Sea?†

*A.* It is on the E. coast of Asia, having N., Mantchooria; E., Corea; S., the Eastern Sea; and W., China. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Eastern Sea?

*A.* It has N. the Yellow Sea; N. N. E. the Japanese Islands; S. S. W. the Island of Formosa; and W. China; being separated from the Pacific Ocean on the S. E. by two or three small groups of islands, among which the Loo-Choo have obtained some celebrity in latter times. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the China Sea?‡

*A.* It extends from the Island of Formosa to the Equator, lying between the Philippines and the Islands of Palawan and Borneo on the E. and S. E., and Farther India and China on the N. W. and N.

*Q.* Where is the Arabian Sea?

*A.* It stretches between the peninsula of Hindoostan on the E., and that of Arabia on the W., having Beloochistan on the N., and is formed by the Indian Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Red Sea?

*A.* It lies between Arabia and Africa, communicating with the Indian Ocean by the Strait of Babelmandeb and the Gulf of Aden. (M. A.)

Red Sea (Anc. *Arabicus Sinus*, or *Rubrum Mare*), an extensive inland sea between Africa and Arabia, connected with the Indian Ocean by the

\* This is also called the *Sea of Seghalien* or *Tarakai*, from the large island forming its W. side, and commonly called Seghalien.

† Called *Wang-Hai* (Yellow Sea) by the Chinese, which is merely an extensive N. Gulf of the *Tongo-Hai* (Eastern Sea).

‡ Called *Han-Hai* (Southern Sea) of the Chinese; called by the Europeans the *Chinese Sea*, because it is traversed by them in their voyage to China.

Strait of Babelmandeb, less than 20 ms. across, between lat.  $12^{\circ} 40'$  and  $30^{\circ}$  N., and long.  $32^{\circ}$  and  $44^{\circ}$  E. Extreme length, 1500 ms.; extreme breadth, 230 ms.; average breadth, 135 ms.; estimated area, 185,000 sq. ms. It runs in a pretty direct course from N. N. W. to S. S. E., being divided at its N. extremity into two arms, the longest and most westerly of which is the Gulf of Suez, at the head of which is the port of the same name. The other branch, which runs N. N. E., having a length of 120 ms., is called the Gulf of Akaba. On the promontory between these gulfs is the mountain group of Djibbel-Musa, including Mounts Sinai and Horeb, famous in Scripture History. The Gulf of Suez is more than 180 ms. in length, and its breadth may average about 22 ms. The Strait of Djubal, the entrance to this gulf, is nearly 16 ms. across. The present charts of the Red Sea were formed in 1829, by order of the East India Company, under the superintendence of Captains Elwin and Moresby; but a considerable section of its S. part had been surveyed in 1801, by Sir H. Popham, under Lord Valencia. The more recent, however, is the only complete survey that has been made of this important gulf.

The Red Sea, though, generally speaking, of great depth (probably averaging 100 fathoms), is in parts studded with rocky islets and hidden coral banks, which extend far into the channel, and sometimes impede the course of vessels. The islands are scattered pretty abundantly in all parts of the sea. Several occur near the entrance of the two northern gulfs; but by far the greater number are found at its S. W. extremity, nearly opposite Massuah; this group being denominated the Dhalak Archipelago. Farther S. are several other islands, one of which (called Djibel-Teer) comprises an active volcano, rising nearly 1200 feet above the sea. The Island of Cameran lies S. W. of Loheia; and nearly opposite Hodeida, in lat.  $15^{\circ}$  N., is the group of the Zebayer Islands.

The Red Sea is first mentioned in Sacred History in connexion with the miraculous passage of the Israelites across the Gulf of Suez. (*Exod.* xiv. 21.) In the time of Solomon, two ports, Elath and Ezion-geber, were established on the Gulf of Akaba; and the Phœnicians seem to have carried on a large trade on this sea, though, probably, they had no direct communication with India. The early Greek writers, including Herodotus, seem to have had very vague notions respecting the Red Sea; for the Ἐρυθρὰ θάλασσα apparently comprises, in their estimation, the whole extent of coast from the Indus to the coast of Africa. During the flourishing period of the Persian Empire, the Persian Gulf was the medium through which Europe and Western Asia received the wealth of the east; but under the successors of Alexander, especially the Ptolemies, who exerted themselves to promote the trade of this sea, it became an important channel of intercourse between Europe and India and the east. This intercourse continued with little intermission, though not to the same extent at all times, till the discovery of the passage round the Cape of Good Hope, by which commerce was diverted into a wholly different channel. The time, however, seems now to have arrived when the Red Sea is again to recover a portion, if not the whole, of its ancient importance as a great commercial highway.

Great discrepancy of opinion has prevailed respecting the origin of the name. According to Pliny (*Hist. Nat.* lib. vi. cap. 23) and Quintus Curtius (lib. viii. cap. 9), its Greek name, signifying red, is derived from Erythros, a king of the adjoining country. But the more probable opinion seems to be that it is derived from the great abundance of coral found in it.



*Q.* Where is the Dead Sea?

*A.* It is in the S. part of Palestine. The R. Jordan flows into it at its N. extremity, but it has no visible outlet. (M. A.)

The Dead Sea (Anc. *Lacus Asphaltites*; Arab. *Bahr Lout*; i. e. the "Sea of Lot") is situated in Palestine, between  $31^{\circ} 8'$  and  $31^{\circ} 47'$  N. lat., and  $35^{\circ} 25'$  and  $35^{\circ} 38'$  E. long. Its length is about 50 ms.; its greatest breadth, 12 ms. The towns of Sodom and Gomorrah are said to have been on its western bank, where some few ruins occur. The waters of the Lake Asphaltites are pungent and bitter. Asphaltum floats upon its surface, and covers the whole extent of its shores. Near the S. portion of the Dead Sea is a low mountain ridge, about 150 ft. high, which is one mass of solid rock-salt, covered with layers of soft limestone and marl. Several of the streams which flow into the sea in this part, are salt as the saltiest brine. It appears from the researches of a late writer, Russegger, that the Dead Sea is 1429 feet below the level of the Mediterranean.

The extent, &c., of the Dead Sea, as given by McCulloch, varies a little from the preceding; we therefore subjoin his very beautiful and lengthy description of it, as follows:

Dead Sea, a Lake of Palestine, celebrated in Scripture history, between  $31^{\circ} 5'$  and  $31^{\circ} 52'$  N. lat., and  $35^{\circ} 26'$  and  $35^{\circ} 43'$  E. long. Its dimensions have been variously stated, but it is probably about 55 ms. in length, and 20 in extreme width. On the E. and W. it is bounded by exceedingly high mountains; on the N. it opens to the plain of Jericho and the valley of the Jordan; on the S. the Valley of El-Ghor extends, as if it were a continuation of its bed, to the Gulf of Akabah.

Nothing can be more dreary than the scenery around this famous lake; the soil, impregnated with salt, is without vegetation, the air is loaded with saline particles, and the bare crags of the surrounding mountains furnish no food for either beast or bird. Hence its neighbourhood is deserted by animated beings, and the dreary stillness of the place is increased by the nature of the lake itself. Intensely salt, its waters are not moved by a gentle breeze, and, owing to the hollowness of its basin, being seldom affected by a strong one, its usual appearance is that of stagnation, agreeing well with the death-like stillness and desolation around.

This absence of life has given to the lake its popular designation of Dead Sea, and is the source of the common tradition that its waters are fatal to fish, and its exhalations to birds and other animals. This is, however, incorrect; straggling birds fly over its surface uninjured; and Maundrell found upon its shores some shells, which seemed to imply that it was not *altogether* tenantless. The water is very limpid, but extremely bitter and nauseous, the substances held in solution amounting to one-fourth part of its whole weight. It has also a strong petrifying quality, which accounts for the want of any great variety of fish; and it is peculiarly buoyant, though the assertion that nothing sinks within its bosom is wholly fabulous. Asphaltum (whence its classical name) floats in great quantities on its surface; and a bituminous stone, very inflammable, and capable of receiving a high polish, is found upon its shores.

The Dead Sea is one of the class of lakes that have no visible outlets: it receives six streams besides the Jordan, but gives forth none; the surplus water being carried off by evaporation. Its depth varies in the dry and rainy



seasons, but is never very great; at its narrowest part, about 8 ms. from its S. extremity, it is usually fordable.

Its Arabic name, *Bahr Lout* (Sea of Lot), refers to the connexion between the history of this lake and that of the nephew of Abraham, in whose days its bed, then the fertile vale of Siddim, was considered by the sacred historian as worthy to be compared with the "garden of the Lord." (Gen. xiii. 10.) It certainly contained five cities (Gen. xiv. 2); and, according to Stephen of Byzantium (art. Σοδομα), 10, and Strabo (xvi., cap. 2, 764), 13. In the visitation by which they were all destroyed, with the exception of Zoar (Gen. xix. 23, 24), the neighbouring country underwent an extraordinary change; so much so, that Moses in another place (Deut. xxix. 23) describes it as "a land of brimstone, and salt, and burning," characteristics by which it still continues to be marked. Ruins of the overthrown cities are said to have been seen on the W. side of the lake, but the fact has not been authenticated. In Scripture this collection of water is called the Salt Sea (Gen. xiv. 3; Deut. iii. 17; Josh. xv. 5); the Sea of the Plain (Deut. iii. 17); and the East Sea (Ezek. xlvii. 18; Joel, ii. 20).

*Q.* Where is the Mediterranean Sea?

*A.* It is bounded N. by Europe; E. by Asia; and S. by Africa, communicating at its W. extremity, by the Strait of Gibraltar, with the N. Atlantic Ocean, and at its N. E. extremity, by the Dardanelles, with the Sea of Marmora, and by the Channel of Constantinople, with the Black or Euxine Sea. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, pages 242-3*

*Q.* Where is the Black Sea?

*A.* It lies between European Russia on the N.; the Caucasian countries of Circassia and Georgia on the N. E. and E.; Asiatic Turkey on the S.; and European Turkey on the W. It communicates with the Mediterranean Sea by the Channel of Constantinople, the Sea of Marmora, and the Strait of the Dardanelles, and with the Sea of Azov by the Strait of Enikale. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, page 244*

*Q.* Where is the Caspian Sea?

*A.* It is a large inland sea, being wholly enclosed, having no outlet whatever to the ocean, and is surrounded by Tartary, Persia, the Caucasian countries, and the Russian governments of Astrakhan and Orenburg. (M. A.)

Caspian Sea (the *Mare Hyrcanum* of the ancients) is a great salt lake of W. Asia, extending from 36° 35' to 47° 25' N. lat., and from 46° 50' to 54° 10' E. long. Its direction is from N. by W.  $\frac{1}{2}$  W. to S. by E.  $\frac{1}{2}$  E., but at its N. end it turns due E., terminating in a considerable gulf called *Mervoi Kultuk*, or the Dead Sea. It is here almost 400 ms. from E. to W., but in general it is not much more than half that width, and at its narrowest part (about 40° 20' N.) it does not exceed 120 ms. across: its greatest length, from N. to S., is estimated at from 750 to 800 ms.; and its area may be estimated at 120,000 sq. ms. The waters of this sea are much less salt than those of the Atlantic. Gmelin estimates the proportion as 1 to 4.

Though it receives the waters of the Volga and several other rivers of considerable magnitude, the Caspian has no outlet. The surface of this sea is stated to be more than 300 ft. below that of the ocean.

The Caspian Sea, *Κασπία Θάλασσα*, is the oldest name of this water. It was derived from the Caspii, a people who inhabited its banks; as the *more modern* term Hyrcanian Sea, *Θάλασσα Τηρανία*, was similarly derived from the more important Hyrcanii, a principal branch of the great Persian family. In the present day it is called *More Gualenskoi* by the Russians; *Kulsum*, by the Persians; *Bahr Kurzum* by the Arabs; *Kulzum Denghis*, by the Turks; and *Akdinghis* by the Tartars.

*Q.* Where is the Sea of Aral?

*A.* It is a great inland sea or lake of Asia, in Independent Tary, situated E. of the Caspian Sea, between the 43d and 47th degs. of N. lat., and the 58th and 62d of E. long. It has no outlet. (M. A.)

This sea is about 240 ms. in length from S. W. to N. E., and from about 90 to nearly 120 ms. in breadth; so that, with the exception of the Caspian, it is the most extensive inland sea of the Old World. It has a great number of islands, particularly towards the S., and is generally so shallow, that it can be safely navigated only by flat-bottomed boats. Its waters are salt, and its coasts generally low and sandy, the country around consisting mostly of vast arid steppes. It is well supplied with fish, of which sturgeons are the most valuable; seals are also met with. The Sea of Aral receives, besides smaller streams, the waters of two great rivers, the Sir or Sihon (the *Jaxartes* of the ancients), and the Amoo or Jihon (the *Oxus* of the ancients). But, notwithstanding it has no outlet, the prevalent opinion is, that the supply of water brought to it, and also to the Caspian Sea, is unequal to what is carried off by evaporation, and that their level and surface are being gradually diminished. The extraordinary difference between the level of the Caspian and the Sea of Aral, and the level of the Black Sea, as well as the nature of the soil in their vicinity, the traditional and historical statements with respect to their boundaries, and the opinions of the most eminent naturalists, all lead to the belief that they once extended over a much larger tract of country, and most probably made part of one great inland sea.

#### GULFS.

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Obi?

*A.* It is an inlet of the Northern Ocean, in the N. W. part of Siberia. The S. W. extremity is entered by the R. Obi. (M. A.)

This gulf is 360 ms. long from N. to S., and from 45 to 60 ms. in breadth.

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of the Lena?

*A.* It is an inlet of the Northern or Arctic Ocean, on the N. coast of Siberia. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Anadir?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of Siberia, near Bhering's Strait; it sets up from the Sea of Kamtschatka far inland. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Tonquin?

*A.* It is N. E. of the Empire of Anam, formed by the China Sea. (M. A.)

This gulf is situated between  $18^{\circ}$  and  $22^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $106^{\circ}$  and  $110^{\circ}$  E. long. Length above 200 ms.; greatest breadth above 170 ms.

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Siam?

*A.* It is situated between the Malay Peninsula, on the W., and Cambodia on the E., being formed by the China Sea. (M. A.)

This gulf is about 500 ms. in length, and 350 ms. in its greatest breadth.

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Martaban?

*A.* It is S. of the Birman Empire, formed by the Bay of Bengal. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Manaar?

*A.* It is an inlet of the Indian Ocean, dividing the Island of Ceylon from the S. extremity of Hindoostan; extending between lat.  $7^{\circ} 30'$  and  $9^{\circ}$  N., and long.  $78^{\circ}$  and  $80^{\circ}$  E. (M. A.)

This gulf would seem, from its situation between Ceylon and the continent, to be important for commercial purposes; but it is, on the contrary, hardly navigable, from its shallowness, except for vessels of the size of a small sloop, and is, in consequence, but little frequented. A ridge of rocks and sand-banks extends nearly across it from the N. shore of Ceylon to Ramisseram I., near the S. E. coasts of Hindoostan, which the natives call Adam's Bridge, from a tradition amongst them that the father of mankind here passed from Ceylon, his first residence, to India.

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Cambay?

*A.* It is an inlet of the Arabian Sea, on the W. coast of Hindoostan. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Cutch?

*A.* It is an inlet of the Arabian Sea, on the W. coast of Hindoostan, lying N. W. of the Gulf of Cambay. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Oman?

*A.* It lies between the coasts of S. Persia and Beloochistan on the N., and those of Oman on the S. and W. It connects with the Gulf of Persia by the Strait of Ormus, 33 ms. wide, in which the noted Isle of Ormus is situated. This gulf forms the N. part of the Arabian Sea; its width, from Cape Ras-al-Gat to the coast of Beloochistan, is about 220 ms. (M. A.)

From very early times, this part of the Arabian Sea has been a great commercial thoroughfare for the trade carried on from India to the countries on the Euphrates and the Mediterranean. More than 2000 years ago, its waters were traversed by the fleet of Alexander the Great, under the command of his admiral Nearchus, in the noted voyage from the Indus to the Euphrates.

*Q.* Where is the Persian Gulf?

*A.* It separates Persia from Arabia, communicating with the Arabian Sea by the Strait of Ormus, and the Gulf of Oman. (M. A.)

This gulf is an extensive arm of the Indian Ocean, separating Persia from Arabia, between the 24th and 30th degs. N. lat., and the 47th and 57th degs. E. long., uniting with the Indian Ocean by the strait, about 32 ms. across,

between Cape Musseldom (lat.  $26^{\circ} 19' N.$ , long.  $56^{\circ} 30' E.$ ) and the opposite coast. This gulf has somewhat of an oval shape, extending about 520 ms. N. W. and S. E., with an average breadth of about 160 ms.; but toward its S. E. end it is upwards of 220 ms. in width, though it soon afterward, on taking its northern bend, previously to its junction with the ocean, becomes much narrower. It receives at its N. W. end the united waters of the Euphrates and Tigris, called the Shat-ul-Arab, about 70 ms. below Bus-sorah; but it has few or no other affluents of any importance. These streams, however, assisted in some measure also by the shape of the gulf itself, tend to diminish the height of the tides, which are considerably less than in the Red Sea.

*Q.* Where is the Bay of Bengal?

*A.* It stretches between the peninsula of Farther India on the E., and that of Hindoostan on the W., formed by the Indian Ocean. (M. A.)

The Bay of Bengal is a large arm of the Indian Ocean, and is the largest portion of water which bears the name of bay. It extends N. from  $8^{\circ}$  to  $22^{\circ} N.$  lat.; the long. of the middle of the bay is about  $90^{\circ} E.$  from Greenwich. It is of a triangular form, the coasts on each side stretching N. W. and N. E. until they meet at the mouths of the Ganges and Burrampooter rivers. On the W. side is Hindoostan, and the island of Ceylon; on the E. is Aracan, Birmah, the British provinces S. of the Salwen, and the W. part of Siam; S. E. is the I. of Sumatra; E. of the middle of the bay are the Andaman and Nicobar Islands. From E. to W. the Bay of Bengal extends 1350 ms., and from N. to S. almost 1000 ms. It receives at its head the waters of the Ganges and Burrampooter rivers; on the W. those of the Mahanuddy, the Godavery, and the Krishna or Kistna; on the E. the Irrawaddy and Salwen are the principal streams which flow into this part of the ocean.

#### STRAITS.

*Q.* Where is Bhering's Strait?

*A.* It separates Asia on the N. E., from America on the N. W., and connects the Arctic with the Pacific Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Strait of Matsmay?

*A.* It separates Niphon from Jesso, and connects the Sea of Japan with the Pacific Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Strait of Corea?

*A.* It separates Corea from Niphon and Kiusiu, and connects the Sea of Japan with the Eastern Sea. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Strait of Formosa?

*A.* It separates the Island of Formosa from China, and connects the Eastern with the China Sea. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Strait of Malacca?

*A.* It separates Malacca or the Malay Peninsula from the Island of Sumatra, and connects the China Sea with the Indian Ocean. (M. A.)

The breadth of this strait in some places is less than 30 ms.; its whole length is about 600 ms.



*Q.* Where is the Strait of Babelmandeb?

*A.* It separates Arabia from Abyssinia, and connects the Red Sea with the Indian Ocean. (M. A.)

The width of this strait is estimated at about 16 ms.; it is divided in two by the small island of Perim, which lies 4 or 5 miles from the Arabian coast. In the deepest part of the strait no soundings are found with 100 fathoms of line. The name Babelmandeb signifies, in Arabic, "the Gate of Tears."

#### CAPES.

*Q.* Where is Cape Cevero Vostochnoi?

*A.* This cape (called *North East* Cape by Baldwin and Morse; and Cape *Taimura* by McCulloch) forms the most northerly point of Asia. (M. A.) Lat.  $78^{\circ}$  N., long.  $104^{\circ}$  E.

*Q.* Where is Cape Chalagskoi?

*A.* It is on the N. coast of Siberia. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is East Cape?

*A.* This cape (called by McCulloch, *Tshukotskoi Noss*) forms the most easterly point of Asia, situated opposite Cape Prince of Wales, the most westerly point of America. (M. A.) Long.  $190^{\circ}$  E.

*Q.* Where is Cape St. Thadeus?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of Siberia. (M. A.) Lat.  $62^{\circ} 50'$  N., long.  $179^{\circ} 5'$  E.

*Q.* Where is Cape Cambodia?

*A.* It is the most southerly point of Cambodia. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Romania?

*A.* This cape (called by McCulloch, Cape *Buros*) is the most southerly point of Asia. (M. A.) Lat.  $1^{\circ} 20'$  N.

*Q.* Where is Cape Comorin?

*A.* It forms the S. extremity of Hindoostan. (M. A.) Lat.  $8^{\circ} 4'$  N., long.  $77^{\circ} 37'$  E.

*Q.* Where is Cape Ras-al-Gat?

*A.* It forms the most easterly point of Arabia. (M. A.) Lat.  $22^{\circ} 22'$  N., long.  $59^{\circ} 58'$  E.

*Q.* Where is Cape Isolette?

*A.* It is on the S. E. coast of Arabia. (M. A.)

#### RIVERS.

*Q.* Where is the Obi River?

*A.* It is a large River of Siberia, in the governments of Tomsk and Tobolsk, rising by two principal sources near the frontiers of the Chinese Empire, near the 50th parallel of N. lat., and the 89th meridian of E. long. Its course is first north-westerly, till its junction with the Irtysk, in about  $61^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $69^{\circ}$  E. long., when it changes to the N., and continues in this direction to its termination in the Gulf of Obi, in about  $66^{\circ} 40'$  N. lat., and  $67^{\circ}$  E. long. Length, 2500 ms. (M. A.)



If the Irtysh or Irtish (which joins the Obi in lat.  $61^{\circ}$  N., and is the longest and widest stream, and most direct from the source) be considered the main river, its length will exceed 3000 ms.; the area of its entire basin has been estimated at 1,357,000 sq. ms. The Obi, which is the eastern branch, has numerous affluents, the principal of which are the Tom, Tehelim, and Ket, joining it on the E. or right bank. After its junction with the Irtysh, it attains a breadth in some places of nearly 20 ms., with a depth varying from 2 to 7 fathoms, and has a very rapid current, forming in the lower part of its course numerous islands, and flowing over rocky ledges, that greatly impede navigation during the few months that the river is free from ice. The Irtysh rises within the Chinese Empire, in lat.  $47^{\circ}$  N., long.  $89^{\circ} 10'$  E., on the N. side of the Thian-Chan Mts., and pursues a course nearly W. N. W. of 240 ms. to Lake Zaizan or Zaizan Nor, through which it flows, and then turns northward for about 100 ms., after which it has a general N. W. direction, passing Semipolatsinsk and Omsk, as far as Tobolsk. Below this point it makes a curve north-eastward of about 300 ms., and joins the Obi near Samarov.

*Q.* Where is the Yenisei River?

*A.* It is a great R. of N. Asia, in Siberia, through the central part of which it flows. It rises within the Chinese Empire, near  $51^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $98^{\circ}$  E. long., and proceeds at first W. for about  $5^{\circ}$  of long., to near the point where it leaves the Chinese frontier. It then turns northward, and pursues generally a northerly course to the Arctic Ocean, which it enters by a wide estuary called Yenisei Gulf, or rather the bay of the 72 islands, the mouth of which is in about  $72\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $85^{\circ}$  E. long., about 200 ms. E. of the Gulf of Obi. Length, 2300 ms. (M. A.)

This r. has its basin lying between those of the Lena to the E., and the Obi to the W., and is supposed to comprise an area of nearly 1,000,000 sq. ms., being about the same size as the province of Yeniseisk.

The Angara, or Verchnie Tungoosrka, the most important tributary of this river, is much larger than that part of the Yenisei which lies above their junction. It has a course of about 1100 ms., and flows from Lake Baikal. A deep and powerful stream, the Sanelege which runs into the same lake, may be considered as the head of the Angara. Its length is about 700 ms., making the whole at least 1800 ms., whereas the Upper Yenisei has not more than half that extent, and is altogether a much smaller river. As in the case of our Missouri and Mississippi, the largest stream has been regarded as a tributary.

*Q.* Where is the Lena River?

*A.* It is a large R. of N. Asia, the principal in E. Siberia, extending through  $19^{\circ}$  N. lat., and falling into the Arctic Ocean.

It rises in the mountains which skirt the N. W. shore of Lake Baikal, in about  $53^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $106^{\circ}$  E. long. It first runs northerly, and then in a general E. N. E. direction, till it reaches Yakoutsck, the metropolis of E. Siberia; after which it flows N. to the Arctic Ocean, which it enters by several mouths, in about  $73^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $127^{\circ} 30'$  E. long. Length, 2600 ms. (M. A.)

Near its termination, the r. is very broad, and several of its numerous arms (among which are extensive deltas or islands) present the appearance of wide estuaries. It is said to be safely navigable for the greater part of its course.

The basin of the Lena, according to Ritter, covers an area of about 800,000 sq. ms.

*Q.* Where is the Amoor River?

*A.* Amoor (Amur or Amour, called also the Seghalien) is a large R. of E. Asia, which has its sources in Mongolia. It is formed by the junction of two rivers,—the Onon or Chilka, which rises nearly under the 110th deg. of E. long., and the 50th deg. of N. lat., and the Kerlon or Argoun, which rises nearly under the same meridian, but about  $2\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  more to the S. The latter river traverses the Lake of Koulon, and, issuing from it, and pursuing a N. E. course, forms, for a considerable distance, the line of demarcation between the Russian and Chinese Empires. The Kerlon and Onon unite near the Fort of Ruklanova, in about the 120th deg. of E. long. The combined r. having taken the name of Amoor, flows E. and S. E., till, at its most S. point, it is joined by its large tributary, the Songari, flowing N. E.; the Amoor, having suddenly taken the same direction, preserves it during the remainder of its course, till it falls into the arm of the sea opposite the N. end of the Island of Seghalien, or Tchoka, in about the 53d deg. of N. lat., and the 140th deg. of E. long. (M. A.)

The entire course of the r., to the source of either of its principal branches, may be estimated, inclusive of its windings, at about 2200 ms.; but the distance in a direct line from its sources to its embouchure does not exceed 1400 ms.

*Q.* Where is the Hoang-Ho River?

*A.* Hoang-Ho or Whang-ho (*i. e.* the “Yellow River,” so named from the colour which the yellow clay along its banks gives to its waters) is one of the largest rivers of China, which rises in the Kuen-lun Mts., near  $35^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $98^{\circ}$  E. long. It pursues a very circuitous N. E. course through the N. W. part of China, and enters the S. part of Chinese Tartary near  $42^{\circ}$  N. lat., where, after running due E., it suddenly bends S., penetrating China to a latitude nearly parallel to its source; and then it pursues an easterly direction till it enters the Yellow Sea, in about  $33^{\circ} 50'$  N. lat., and  $120^{\circ} 10'$  E. long. Length, 2500 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Yang-tse-Kiang River?

*A.* Yang-tse-Kiang, or “Blue River,” called, also, sometimes, Ta Kiang or “Great River,” is the largest r. of China. Its source has never been visited by Europeans, but, according to the statements of some Chinese travellers, it appears to rise between  $34^{\circ}$  and  $35^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $89^{\circ}$  and  $90^{\circ}$  E. long. Its general course

is easterly, and it falls into the Eastern Sea in about  $32^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $121^{\circ}$  E. long. Length 2800 ms. (M. A.)

The breadth of this r. in the last 800 ms. of its course varies from 1 to 3 ms. The tide ascends about 400 ms.: in this part the depth of the r. is very great; a Chinese proverb says, "the sea has no boundary, and the Ta Kiang no bottom." The whole length of the Yang-tse-Kiang is estimated at above 3000 ms.

The *Hoang-ho*, or "Yellow River," and the *Yang-tse-Kiang*, or "Son of the Ocean," rank in the first class of rivers. "These two great streams, similar both in rise and destination, descend with rapidity from the great table-lands of Central Asia, and each of them meets a branch of mountains which forces it to describe an immense circuit, the *Hoang-ho* to the N., and the *Yang-tse-Kiang* to the S. Separated by an interval of 1100 ms., the one seems inclined to direct itself to the tropical seas, while the other wanders off among the icy deserts of Mongolia. Suddenly recalled, as if by a recollection of their early brotherhood, they approach one another like the Euphrates and Tigris, in ancient Mesopotamia; where, being almost conjoined by lakes and canals, they terminate, within a mutual distance of 110 ms., their majestic and immense course."—*Malte-Brun*.

*Q.* Where is the Cambodia River?

*A.* Cambodia (called also Meinam-Kong) is a large r. of S. Asia, which rises in the N. of Thibet, not far from the Kuen-lun Mts., and flows through Thibet and the W. side of Yunnan (the S. W. province of China), and Laos, and through the Cambodian Territory in a general south-easterly direction, falling into the China Sea, by several channels, between the latitudes of  $9^{\circ}$  and  $11^{\circ}$  N. Length 2000 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Meinam River?

*A.* It is a r. of Siam, which rises in the N. of Birman, and after flowing through Siam from N. to S., falls into the Gulf of Siam, by two mouths. Length 800 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Salween River?

*A.* Salween or Salwin (called by the natives *Than-Lyeng* or *Than-Lweng*) is a r. in the S. part of Asia, of the second class, which is supposed to rise in China, near  $27^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $99^{\circ}$  E. long. It descends in a nearly uniform S. direction, in almost all its course, bounding the Birman Empire for a considerable distance on the E., and falls into the Gulf of Martaban. Length 900 ms. (M. A.)

Though this r. brings down a great volume of water, it is not navigable in the lower part of its course. The upper portion has not been explored. McCulloch says the Salween R. rises in Thibet, beyond the sources of the Irrawaddy.

*Q.* Where is the Irrawaddy River?

*A.* The Irrawaddy (*Erivati*, "the Great River") is an important Asiatic R., the principal in India beyond the Burmah.

According to Mitchell's Atlas, it rises in the N. of Thibet, and flows first S. E., then generally S. through the centre of the Birman Empire, which it traverses in its entire length, till it falls, by numerous mouths, into the Bay of Bengal, in about the 16th deg. of N. lat., and between  $93^{\circ} 20'$  and  $97^{\circ}$  E. long. Length 1700 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Burrampooter or Brahmaputra River ?

*A.* Brahmaputra (*the son of Brahma*), vulg. Burrampooter, is one of the largest rivers of Asia, forming the proper E. boundary of Hindoostan. According to Mitchell's Atlas, it rises in the Kuen-lun Mts., and flows in a general course, first S. E., then W. S. W., then S. E., and finally S. S. W., and falls into the Bay of Bengal by a mouth 5 ms. wide, in lat.  $22^{\circ} 50'$  N., long.  $90^{\circ} 40'$  E. Length 1500 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Ganges River ?

*A.* Ganges (Hindoo, *Gunga*), the principal r., or, as it has been expressively termed, the Nile, of Hindoostan, through the N. and E. parts of which it flows, watering its most fertile region, and extending through  $13^{\circ}$  of long. and nearly  $10^{\circ}$  of lat., from the central chain of the Himmaleh to the Bay of Bengal.

This r. rises by two principal branches in the Himmaleh Mts., near  $31^{\circ}$  N. lat., and between  $78^{\circ} 30'$  and  $80^{\circ}$  E. long. One of these, the Bhagirathi, which is considered the true Ganges, rises from the side of a mountain 13,800 ft. above the level of the sea. In the first part of its course it runs south-westerly, but gradually changes towards the S. E., and, after its union with the Jumna, in about  $25^{\circ} 20'$  N. lat., and  $82^{\circ}$  E. long., it flows easterly, and continues in this direction to near  $88^{\circ}$  E. long., when it again changes to the S. E., and falls into the Bay of Bengal, by numerous mouths, between lat.  $23^{\circ}$  and  $21^{\circ} 30'$  N., and long.  $88^{\circ}$  and  $90^{\circ} 40'$  E. Length 1600 ms. (M. A.)

The Ganges is the holy river of the Hindoos; its waters are believed to purify from all sins. Many ablutions and suicides accordingly take place in it; and the feet of the dying, when they are sufficiently near residents, are in most instances immersed in it. Such as reside at a distance procure some of the water, and keep it with care as a sacred treasure, to be given in the hour of death. This water is, therefore, an article of considerable commerce in India. Hindoo witnesses, in the British courts of justice, are sworn upon the water of the Ganges, as the Christians and Mohammedans are upon their sacred books.

*Q.* Where is the Godavery River ?

*A.* It is a considerable river of Hindoostan, through the central part of which it flows, extending through nearly  $9^{\circ}$  of longitude. It rises, by numerous streams, in the W. Ghauts, about lat.  $20^{\circ}$  N., and long.  $74^{\circ}$  E., and runs in a direction generally E., but with a slight inclination southward, to near long.  $80^{\circ}$  E. From this



point it flows mostly S. E. for about 90 ms., bounding the province of Hyderabad on the N. E., and separates, near Rajahmundry (N. Circars), into two arms, which fall into the Bay of Bengal, between lat.  $16^{\circ} 20'$  and  $16^{\circ} 40'$ , enclosing a fertile delta, with an area of about 500 sq. ms. Length, 600 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Nerbuddah River?

*A.* Nerbuddah (*Narmada*, "The bestower of pleasure," called by Ptolemy the *Namadus*) is a river of Hindoostan, extending through  $9^{\circ}$  of long., in the N. part of the Deccan. It rises in the table-land of Gundwanah, lat.  $22^{\circ} 40'$  N., long.  $81^{\circ} 45'$  E., near the sources of the Sone and Mahanuddy. It has a general W. direction, with a slight inclination to the S., with fewer windings than most Indian rivers; and, after a course of about 800 ms., falls into the Gulf of Cambay, in lat.  $21^{\circ} 36'$  N., long.  $72^{\circ} 50'$  E. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Indus River?

*A.* Indus (*Sindhu*, Sansc.: *Aub Sind*, Pers.) is a large river of S. Asia, forming, during a great part of its course, the proper N.W. boundary of Hindoostan, and lying between the 23d and 35th parallels of N. lat., and between the 67th and 81st degrees of E. long.

This river rises in the N. declivity of the Himmaleh Mts.,\* and flowing, first, north-westerly through Little Thibet, and afterwards in a zig-zag course, first S. W., then S. W. by S., forming the boundary between Hindoostan on the one side, and Afghanistan and Beloochistan on the other, it empties itself into the Indian Ocean, by several mouths, in about  $24^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $68^{\circ}$  E. long. Length, 1700 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the River Euphrates?

*A.* It is the most famous river of Turkey, in W. Asia; rises in the pachalic of Erzerum, and is formed by the junction of two great arms—the Frat and the Morad. The former, which is also the most N., has its principal sources about 20 ms. N. E. from Erzerum, in the Tcheldir mountains, near the sources of the Araxes: the Morad has its sources on the N. declivity of the Arghidagh Mts., 45 ms. N. E. from the nearest point of Lake Van. Both these rivers pursue a W. course, inclining to the S., till they unite near Kebban, in about the 39th deg. of N. lat., and  $39^{\circ} 25'$  E. long. The united stream thence flows S. W. to Samosat (*Samosata*), in lat.  $37^{\circ} 31'$  N., long.  $38^{\circ} 23'$  E., having received, on the right, the Kara-su, and forced a passage for itself

---

\* As the source of this river has not been visited by Europeans, its situation is at present only a matter of conjecture; but general consent seems to place it on the N. declivity of the Cailas branch of the Himmaleh range, near the Chinese frontier town of Goroo, and not far from the lake Mansourour and the sources of the Sutlege.



through the main range of Taurus, and formed a double cataract 15 ms. above Samisat. From the latter point, the river pursues a nearly S. course to Rajik, about 50 ms. E. from Aleppo, its course being thence almost uniformly S. E. until it unites with the Tigris, in lat.  $31^{\circ}$  N., and long.  $47^{\circ} 40'$  E., to form the *Shat-ul-Arab*, or "River of Arabia," which discharges itself into the head of the Persian Gulf, in about lat.  $30^{\circ}$  N., and long.  $48^{\circ} 30'$  E. Length, 1400 ms. (M. A.)

The *Euphrates* (Gr. *Εὐφράτης*, so called from *εὐφραίνω*, to exhilarate or make glad, because its waters, like those of the Nile, fertilize the adjacent lands) is the most considerable river of W. Asia, and its basin, exclusive of that of the Tigris, is supposed to comprise about 109,000 sq. geog. m. After watering on either side the territories belonging to Turkey as far S. as near lat.  $36^{\circ}$ , it forms, from that point to about lat.  $33^{\circ} 30'$ , the boundary between them and Syria; it next divides Turkey from Arabia, and, lastly, from its union with the Tigris to its mouth in the Persian Gulf, about lat.  $30^{\circ}$  and long.  $48^{\circ} 30'$ , it separates Arabia and Persia.

It is singular that the ancients should have had no correct information respecting the sources either of the Euphrates or the Tigris; and there is the greatest obscurity and discrepancy in the statements they have put forth respecting them. The popular opinion seems to have been that their sources were identical! And though this notion was rejected by Strabo, Mela, Pliny, &c., none of them appears to have had any precise information on the subject.

The banks of the Euphrates were in antiquity the seat of many noble cities. The small mean town of Hillah occupies a minute portion of the site of the once mighty Babylon, "the glory of kingdoms, the beauty of the Chaldees' excellency;" Hit (anc. *Is* or *Acopolis*), Anna (anc. *Anetho*), Kerkisiya (*Cercesium*), and Bir, are among the other towns on its banks; but Bussorah or Basra, on the *Shat-ul-Arab*, is at present the only large city on the Euphrates.

Q. Where is the Don River?

A. Don (Anc. *Tanais*) is a large river of European Russia. It rises in the district of Epifan, in the government of Tula, in about  $54^{\circ}$  N. lat., and, passing by the town of Lebedian, flows S. to Voronez and Kalitva; it then turns to the E., till, at Katchalinsk, it approaches within about 36 ms. of the Volga; here it takes a W. S. W. direction, which it pursues till it falls, by various mouths, into the N. E. corner of the Sea of Azov, a little below the town of the same name. Length, 1000 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Where is the Volga River?

A. The Volga or Wolga (Anc. *Rha*) is the largest river of Europe, through the E. part of which it flows. It has its source in a small lake at the W. extremity of the government of Tver, in lat.  $57^{\circ} 10'$  N., long.  $32^{\circ} 20'$  E., 220 ms. S. S. E. from Petersburg; on the E. declivity of the Valdai plateau, near the source of the Duna, the Dnieper, and other large rivers, at an elevation of 895 ft. above the level of the sea.

It flows at first S. E. and afterward N. E., through the governments of Tver and Jaroslav; at Mologa it turns to the E. S. E., which direction it generally pursues through Jaroslav, Kostroma, Niznei Novgorod, and Kazan, to the confluence of the Kama, about lat.  $55^{\circ} 8' N.$ , and long.  $49^{\circ} 20' E.$  Thenceforward it flows generally S. S. W. through the governments of Sinbirsk and Saratof to Tzaritzin, where it approaches within 36 ms. of the main stream of the Don, their confluence being prevented by an intervening chain of hills. It then turns again to the S. E., through the government of Astrachan, and pours itself into the Caspian Sea, on its N. W. side, through an extensive delta, by more than 70 mouths, the W. and largest of these being in lat.  $46^{\circ} N.$ , and long.  $48^{\circ} E.$  Length, 2000 ms. (M. A.)

*For a further description of this river, see Key, p. 255.*

*Q.* Where is the Ural River?

*A.* The Ural, Oural, or Yaïk (the *Rhymnus* of the ancients), is a large R. of the Russian Empire, forming, in part, the N. W. boundary between Asia and Europe. It rises in the Ural Mts. (near  $55^{\circ} N.$  lat., and  $59^{\circ} E.$  long.), whence its name, in the district of Troitsk; and after a lengthened south-westerly course past Orsk, Orenburg, and Uralsk, pours its waters by various mouths into the northern extremity of the Caspian Sea. Length, 900 ms. (M. A.)

This r. is reckoned one of the bulwarks of the Russian Empire, against the incursions of the nomades of the Tartar Steppes.

*Q.* Where is the Amoo River?

*A.* The Amoo, or Oxus, is a great R. of Independent Tartary, which rises from a mountain lake in  $37^{\circ} 27' N.$  lat., and  $73^{\circ} 40' E.$  long., at an elevation of 15,600 ft. above the level of the sea. Its general direction is north-westerly: it enters the Sea of Aral, by several mouths, near  $43^{\circ} 30' N.$  lat., and  $58^{\circ} E.$  long., after a course of 1000 ms. (M. A.)

The Oxus (called by the natives Amoo or Jihon), a river of central Asia, flowing westward through the territories of Budukshan, Koondooz, Bokhara, Khiva, &c., into the Aral Sea, and extending between long.  $58^{\circ}$  and  $74^{\circ} E.$  This river was, in 1838, traced up to its source by Lieut. Wood, who ascertained that it rises in the mountain-lake of Sir-i-kol, which he called Victoria, within the district of Pamer, lat.  $37^{\circ} 27' N.$ , long.  $73^{\circ} 40' E.$ , at an elevation of 15,600 ft. above the sea. Its course hence is S. W. for about 70 ms. to Langer Kish, where it turns westward. In long.  $71^{\circ} 40'$ , it passes the ruby mines of Budukshan, near the town of Iskhasm, and is deflected northward by a large offset of the Western Himmaleh Chain. After another turn southward, its course is pretty regularly W. N. W. through extensive plains, and at the point where Sir A. Burnes crossed it on his way to Bokhara, he found it to be upwards of 800 yards in width, about 20 feet in depth, with muddy waters, and a current of about  $3\frac{1}{2}$  ms. an hour, and

from Kharjoo downwards, for 300 ms., it is made available for commercial communication. The river passes about 20 ms. N. E. of Khiva, which is situated in a verdant plain, irrigated by numerous canals supplied from its waters. It forms at its mouth a pretty extensive delta, the apex of which is about 50 ms. from its principal and only navigable embouchure in the Aral Sea, the breadth of coast from the W. to the E. mouth being about 45 ms.

The Oxus, regarded by some critics as the Araxes, mentioned by Herodotus as flowing through the territories of the Massagetæ (i., 301-205; iv., 11), was supposed by Strabo and Ptolemy to fall into the Caspian; and the traces of a valley, nearly resembling the dry bed of a river, have induced some modern geographers to adopt the opinion, that in the course of ages the Oxus formed for itself a new channel, running into the Aral Sea. But, however confused our information respecting this river, it undoubtedly formed the boundary line between the more civilized and settled nations of W. Asia, and the wandering hordes of Tartary. The Oxus was the northern limit of the territories subdued by Cyrus and Alexander, and it seems to have been used, at a very early period, as a channel for commercial intercourse between India and the countries bordering on the Caspian and Euxine. The Ochus is mentioned by Strabo as one of its principal affluents; but his account is inconsistent, and unworthy of credit.

*Q.* Where is the Sihon River?

*A.* It is a R. of Independent Tartary, which issues from the Beloor Mts., on the confines of Cashgar, and, taking a N. E. course of about 700 ms., enters the N. E. part of the Sea of Aral. (M. A.)

The Sihon, or SIRR (the ancient *Iaxartes*), formerly flowed to the Caspian Sea, but the Tartars, to free themselves from pirates, turned its course.

*Q.* Where is the Cashgar River?

*A.* It is in the W. part of Chinese Tartary, formed by two principal streams, which take their rise in the Beloor Mts., and after their confluence it flows a little N. of E., and empties into Lake Lop Nor. Length, 700 ms. (M. A.)

#### ISLANDS.

*Q.* Where are the Islands of Nova Zembla?

*A.* They are in the Arctic Ocean, N. E. of Europe, and lying off the N. coast of Asia. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Kotelnoi Island?

*A.* It is in the Arctic Ocean, off the N. coast of Siberia. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Island of New Siberia?

*A.* It is in the Arctic Ocean, lying off the N. coast of Siberia (Asiatic Russia), and E. of Kotelnoi Island. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Liaghoff Island?

*A.* It is in the Arctic Ocean, lying off the N. coast of Russian Siberia, and S. W. of the Island of New Siberia. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are Bhering's Islands?

*A.* They are in the Sea of Kamtschatka, lying off the peninsula

of Kamtschatka, and forming the most western of the Aleutian chain of islands. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Aleutian Islands?

*A.* They are an extensive chain of islands in the N. Pacific Ocean, stretching from the Peninsula of Kamtschatka, in Asia, to Cape Alaska, in N. America, comprised in the Russian government of Irkootsk. (M. A.)

These islands are very numerous, occupying a circular arc, extending from 165° to 195° E. long., and above 600 ms. in length.

Apparently, this insular chain consists of the summits of a range of submarine mountains. In 1795, a volcanic island rose from the sea, in the middle of the line, which, in 1807, was found to be enlarged to about 20 ms. in circuit, and lava was then flowing down its sides. There are always among them several volcanoes in activity, and some, known to have emitted flames, are now quiescent. Earthquakes are common, and sometimes so violent as to throw down the huts of the inhabitants. Bhering's Island, Attoo, and Oonalashka, are the largest, the first being 104 ms. in length, but many are only inconsiderable rocks. They are intersected by channels, various alike in width and in the safety of navigation. All exhibit a barren aspect; high and conical mountains, covered with snow during a great portion of the year, being the most prominent features. Vegetation scanty; there are no trees, nor any plants surpassing the dimensions of low shrubs and bushes. But abundance of fine grass is produced in the more sheltered valleys, and different roots, either indigenous or introduced recently.

The natives are of middle size, of a dark-brown complexion, resembling an intermediate race between the Mongol Tartars and N. Americans. Their features, which are strongly marked, have an agreeable and benevolent expression. Hair strong and wiry; beard scanty; eyes black. They are not deficient in capacity, and the different works of both sexes testify their ingenuity. They are indolent, peaceable, and extremely hospitable, but stubborn and revengeful. Tattooing, which was common among the females, is on the decline, but they practise a hideous mode of disfiguring themselves, by cutting an aperture in the under lip, to which various trinkets are suspended. These deformities, however, are less common than when the islands were discovered, the more youthful females having learned that they are no recommendations in the eyes of their Russian visitors. A man takes as many wives as he can maintain; they are obtained by purchase, and may be returned to their relations; or the same woman may have two husbands at once; and it is not uncommon for men to exchange their wives with each other. Their subsistence is principally obtained by fishing and hunting. Their dwellings are spacious excavations in the earth, roofed over with turf; as many as 50 or even 150 individuals sometimes residing in the different divisions. Only a few of the islands are inhabited; but in former times the population is said to have been more considerable. Its decrease is ascribed to the exactions of the Russian American Company, who have factories in the islands. Its present amount has been variously estimated, at from a few hundreds to 6000. The islands were partially discovered by Bhering, in 1741.

*Q.* Where are the Kurile Islands?

*A.* They are a chain of small islands at the E. extremity of



Asia, connecting the peninsula of Kamtschatka with the large islands which form the Empire of Japan. (M. A.)

These islands are chiefly dependent on Russia, but the three farthest S. belong to Japan. They extend between lat.  $43^{\circ} 40'$  and  $51^{\circ}$  N., and long.  $143^{\circ} 50'$  and  $156^{\circ} 20'$  E., and occupy a length of more than 700 ms. Pop. unknown, but very small. The inhabitants of the N. islands resemble the Kamtschatdales in honesty, openness of character, hospitality, and shyness to strangers. Those in the S. islands are Aïnos, a race similar to the Japanese. These islands were discovered between 1713 and 1720; but it must be acknowledged that they are very little known, even after the lapse of more than a century, and the labours of Broughton, Krusenstern, and other travellers.

*Q.* Where are the Tchantar Islands?

*A.* They are situated in the W. part of the Sea of Ochotsk, N. and N. W. of the Island of Seghalien. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Island of Seghalien?

*A.* It is a large island in the Seas of Ochotsk and Jesso, separated from the continent of Asia by the Channel of Tartary, on the W.; and from the Island of Jesso, by Prowse Strait, on the S. (M. A.)

Seghalien, or Tarakai, is a large island on the E. coast of Asia, extending from  $46^{\circ}$  to  $54^{\circ} 20'$  N. lat. Length, above 600 ms.; breadth, from 25 ms. to 120 ms. As it is very rarely visited by Europeans, little is known respecting it. It is said to be covered with dense fogs nearly all the year round. The aboriginal inhabitants are called Aïnos, being the same race as the Kurilians.

*Q.* Where are the Islands of Jesso, Nippon, Sikoke, and Kiusiu?

*A.* They form, for the most part, the Empire of Japan, situated in the E. part of Asia, opposite to the Sea of Japan, the Channel of Tartary, and the Strait of Corea, by which they are separated from Mantchooria. (M. A.) *For the situation, extent, and pop. of these islands, see Key, pages 353-4.*

*Q.* Where are the Loo-Choo Islands?

*A.* They are a group in the N. Pacific Ocean, E. of China, and nearly midway between the Empire of Japan and the Island of Formosa. (M. A.)

Loo-Choo (or Lieou-Khieou) islands are comprised within lat.  $26^{\circ}$  and  $28^{\circ}$  N., and long.  $127^{\circ}$  and  $129^{\circ}$  E. There are in all about 36 islands; but, excepting the Great Loo-Choo Island, towards the centre of the group, 70 ms. in length, by from 12 to 15 ms. broad, they are mostly of very inferior dimensions. These islands are reported to have a delightful climate, and a soil of great richness, producing the fruits and vegetables of countries the most remote from each other. Rice is cultivated with great care. Cattle, goats, and pigs, are said to be diminutive, but the poultry is large and excellent. The islands yield sulphur and salt, and have, it is alleged, rich mines of copper and tin. Conflicting statements have been made by different travellers respecting the civilization, political condition, and jurisprudence of the natives. They appear, however, to be of the same race as the Japanese,



and have adopted not merely the costume but the language of that people. Their religion is a species of Buddhism, and their government like that of other Asiatic countries of a despotical character. They are friendly and hospitable, but it is now sufficiently ascertained that Captain Hall was totally mistaken in the estimate he formed of those islanders, who, had his statements been well founded, almost realized the poetical fictions of the golden age. The Loo-Choo Islands were for some time subject to Japan, but were conquered by China about 1372. Kintching, the capital of the group, is near the S. extremity of the Great Loo-Choo, the largest island.

*Q.* Where is the Island of Formosa?

*A.* It is in the China Sea, lying S. E. of China, from which it is separated by the Strait of Formosa. (M. A.)

Formosa (Chin. *Tae-wan*, or "Terrace Bay"), an island in the China Sea, belonging partly to China, between lat.  $22^{\circ}$  and  $25^{\circ} 30'$  N., and long.  $120^{\circ} 30'$  and  $122^{\circ}$  E.; about 80 m. from the Chinese coast, from which it is separated by the Channel of Formosa or Fo-kien; and 220 ms. N. of Luzon, the chief of the Philippine Islands. Length, N. to S., about 220 ms.; breadth, in its centre, about 80 ms. Area, 15,000 sq. ms. Pop. uncertain, but perhaps, between 2,000,000 and 3,000,000. Coal of good quality has been found recently on this island.

*Q.* Where is the Island of Hainan?

*A.* It is in the China Sea, S. of China, from which it is separated by the Channel of Junks. (M. A.)

Hainan or Hai-lam (Chinese, "South of the Sea") is a large island of the Chinese Sea, near the S. extremity of the province of Canton (Quang-tong), to which it belongs, and from which it is divided by the Channel of Junks,\* which is only 15 or 16 ms. wide. Although in view of vessels going to China, it is little known or visited. It lies between  $18^{\circ} 10'$  and  $20^{\circ} 6'$  N. lat., and  $108^{\circ} 30'$  and  $111^{\circ} 5'$  E. long. The island is of a somewhat oval shape; greatest length, N. E. to S. W., about 200 ms.; average breadth, nearly 70 ms. The area is estimated at above 16,000 sq. ms. Pop. estimated in 1823 as little short of a million, independent of unconquered tribes in the interior. Khioong-tcheoo, the cap., situated on the N. coast, is said to contain 200,000 inhabitants.

*Q.* Where is Pulo Pinang Island?

*A.* It is in the Indian Ocean, on the W. coast of the Malay Peninsula, from which it is separated by a narrow strait. (M. A.)

This island, called also Prince of Wales Island, about 16 miles long, was only one uninterrupted forest till 1786, when the English East India Company purchased it from the King of Queda, a petty Malay prince on the coast of Malacca, and formed a settlement there, with a view to the refreshment of their China ships. In 1805 it was made a regular government, subordinate only to that of Bengal. This island promises to become more important, on account of the nutmegs, cloves and pepper it produces, and to the cultivation of which great attention has recently been paid. Cocoa-nuts, indigo

---

\* Probably identical with what was called "the Gates of China" by the Mohammedan authors of the 8th and 9th centuries.

and cotton are also raised. Pop. about 40,000, chiefly Malays and Chinese; the Europeans are less than a thousand in number. Georgetown, the capital of Pulo Pinang, contains 13,000 inhabitants; an English weekly newspaper is printed. A few of the shops are kept by Europeans, but the population consists mostly of Chinese.

Province Wellesley, a dependency of Pulo Pinang, lies on the opposite coast of Malacca. It is about 35 ms. long, and 4 or 5 wide. Pop. about 48,000, nearly all Malays, with a few Chinese. Rice, pepper and sugar are the chief products.

*Q.* Where are the Andaman Islands?

*A.* They are a lengthened narrow group, in the E. part of the Bay of Bengal. (M. A.)

These islands (Anc. *Bonæ Fortunæ Insulæ*) stretch N. and S., between  $10^{\circ} 30'$  and  $13^{\circ} 40'$  N. lat., under about  $92^{\circ} 50'$  E. long., and consist of four large islands and several smaller ones. Three of these are almost contiguous, being separated only by very narrow straits, so that they are usually regarded as one island, and named the Great Andaman. The other of the four is called the Little Andaman. The former, including all its parts, is about 150 ms. in length, and 20 in breadth. The latter, lying 30 ms. S. of it, is 28 ms. long, and 17 broad.

The Andaman Islands are within the full sweep of the S. W. monsoon, and are washed for eight months a year by incessant rains. They produce many large trees, that might furnish timber and planks for the construction of ships, and for the finest cabinet work. The quadrupeds are but few, consisting principally of a diminutive breed of swine and rats. Among the birds is the swallow that produces the edible nests so highly esteemed in China. Fish are generally plentiful, but occasionally scarce. The inhabitants, who are not supposed to exceed 2500 or 3000 in number, seem to be a peculiar race, in the lowest state of barbarism. They seldom exceed 5 feet in height, have protuberant bellies, limbs disproportionally slender, skin a deep sooty black, hair woolly, nose flat, lips thick, eyes small and red, their countenances exhibiting the extreme of wretchedness—a mixture of famine and ferocity. They go quite naked, and are insensible to shame from exposure. They have made no effort to cultivate the ground, and are found only on the sea-coast, depending principally for subsistence on fishing. Their implements are of the rudest texture; but they use them with great dexterity, particularly in spearing and capturing fish. They have no utensil that will resist fire, and dress their food by throwing it on the live embers, and devouring it half-broiled. Their habitations display little more ingenuity than the dens of wild beasts. Being much incommoded by insects, their first occupation in the morning is to plaster their bodies all over with mud, which, hardening in the sun, forms an impenetrable armour. They paint their woolly heads with red ochre and water, and, when completely dressed, have a most hideous appearance. They have an intense hatred of strangers, with whom they cannot be persuaded to hold any intercourse. They are supposed to worship the sun and moon: and during storms and tempests, endeavour to avert the wrath of the demon by whom they suppose them to be produced. Their language is peculiar, and is not known to have the slightest affinity to any spoken in India, or in any of the Indian Islands. They are said to be cannibals, but this is doubtful.

*Q.* Where are the Nicobar Islands ?

*A.* They are a group of islands in the Indian Ocean, lying N. W. of the island of Sumatra. (M. A.)

These islands are situated between  $6^{\circ} 30'$  and  $9^{\circ} 30'$  N. lat., and  $93^{\circ}$  and  $94^{\circ} 20'$  E. long., about midway between the N. W. point of Sumatra and the Andaman Islands, and from 100 to 130 ms. from each. Sambelong and Carnicobar, the former at the S. and the latter at the N. extremity of the group, are the principal ; there are, however, about half-a-dozen other islands of some consequence, and a number of small islets. Most of these islands are hilly, and are all covered more or less with dense woods of cocoa-nut, areca-palm, and various timber trees. The climate is extremely unhealthy to Europeans, and is supposed to owe this quality, in great part, to the extensive spontaneous decomposition of vegetable matter. These islands are inhabited by a race of natives of the Indo-Chinese stock, whose inoffensive character contrasts strongly with the wild ferocity of their neighbours of the Andaman Islands. Their chief occupations are fishing, rearing hogs and poultry, a little agriculture, and trafficking among themselves, and with foreigners who touch at the Nicobars. Cocoa and betel-nuts are met with in immense quantities, and most of the Indian ships bound eastward, call here to take in a cargo of the former, which they obtain at the rate of 4 nuts for a leaf of tobacco, and 100 for a yard of blue cloth. The natives also exchange fowls, hogs, birds' nests, ambergris, tortoise-shell, wild cinnamon, sassafras, &c., for iron, tobacco, cloth, silver coin, and other European goods. They live under a number of petty chiefs ; but little is known of their internal economy, customs, &c., the great insalubrity of the climate having successively broken up all the establishments formed on the Nicobars by the Danes, the British missionaries, &c., in the latter half of the last century. These islands are considered to belong to Denmark, and are now the only possessions in the East which that government claims.

*Q.* Where is the Island of Ceylon ?

*A.* It is a large island near the S. extremity of Hindoostan ; having N. W. the Gulf of Manaar and Palk's Strait, which separate it from Hindoostan ; S. and S. W. the Indian Ocean ; and E. the Bay of Bengal. (M. A.)

Ceylon (called by the natives *Sin-gha-la* ; by the Portuguese *Ceilão*, of which the English name Ceylon is a corruption ; Anc. *Taprobána*) is a large island belonging to Great Britain, bearing the like relation to the Indian that Sicily does to the Italian peninsula. It lies between lat.  $5^{\circ} 54'$  and  $9^{\circ} 50'$  N., and long.  $79^{\circ} 50'$  and  $82^{\circ}$  E. It tapers to a point towards the N., and is shaped like the section of a pear cut lengthwise through the middle. Length, N. to S., 270 ms. ; average breadth, nearly 100 ms. ; area, 24,500 sq. ms. Pop. (1835) 1,242,000. The inhabitants of Ceylon are composed of the Singhalese, the original possessors of the island, the Malabars, who came as invaders from the opposite coast, the Mohammedans or Moors, and a small proportion of Europeans and other foreigners. Colombo is the capital.

*Q.* Where are the Laccadive Islands ?

*A.* They are a group of islets in the Indian Ocean, lying about 75 ms. W. from the Malabar Coast. (M. A.)

The Laccadive Islands (*Laksha-Dwipa*, "a lac, or 100,000 isles") are a group in the Indian Ocean, lying chiefly between lat.  $10^{\circ}$  and  $12^{\circ}$  N., and long.  $72^{\circ}$  and  $74^{\circ}$  E. There are 19 principal isles, but the largest is not more than 6 sq. ms. in extent. Most of them are surrounded by rocks and coral reefs; the water near them, however, is deep, and they are separated by wide channels, frequented by ships passing from India to Persia and Arabia. They are inhabited by a race of Mohammedans called Moplays. Vasco de Gama discovered these islands in 1499; they were dependent on Cananore till ceded by Tippoo, in 1792; and came into the British possession with the rest of that sovereign's dominions.

*Q.* Where are the Maldivé Islands?

*A.* They are a chain of small islands in the Indian Ocean, lying S. of the Laccadives. (M. A.)

Maldivé Islands, or Maldives, a chain of islands in the Indian Ocean, extending between the 1st deg. of S. and the 7th of N. lat., a distance of about 560 statute ms.; and between  $72^{\circ} 48'$  and  $73^{\circ} 48'$  E. long. The Laccadive Islands, to the N. of the Maldives, may not improperly be considered a continuation of this island system. They are of coralline formation, arranged in round or oval groups called *atolis*, separated by several channels, which may be safely navigated by ships of the largest size. The different groups are surrounded by coral reefs, on which the surf beats violently; but between the islands the sea is perfectly smooth, and forms safe harbours for small craft. These islands have been rarely visited by Europeans, though lying in the direct route to India. All that are of any extent are richly clothed with palms and other trees; but no edifice has been seen in sailing past them, whence it may be concluded that none exists higher than a cocoa tree. The people of the Maldives are Mohammedans, and probably of an Arabic stock. They live under a Sultan, who, according to Hamilton, resides in Male, an island about 3 ms. in circuit, fortified by walls and batteries, on which above 100 pieces of artillery are mounted. The Sultan, however, considers himself dependent on the British government of Ceylon, to which he sends an annual embassy.

*Q.* Where is Cyprus Island?

*A.* It is a famous and considerable island, in the N. E. angle of the Mediterranean, between Asia Minor and Syria.

This island at present belongs to Egypt, and lies 44 ms. S. from Cape Anamour, in Asia Minor, 65 ms. W. from Latakia, in Syria, and 330 ms. E. from Candia; between lat.  $34^{\circ} 34'$  and  $35^{\circ} 42'$  N., and long.  $32^{\circ} 18'$  and  $34^{\circ} 37'$  E. Shape somewhat oval, with a considerable promontory projecting E. N. E. from the main body of the island; greatest length, 132 ms.; average breadth, from 30 to 35 ms. Pop. estimated at 70,000, of whom 40,000 are Greeks. It is intersected lengthways, or from E. to W., by a range of mountains, the highest point of which, St. Croce (anc. *M. Olympus*), is about 15 ms. S. of Nicosia.

The brutal despotism under which it has groaned for centuries, has depopulated the island, and rendered the few inhabitants it now contains remarkable only for indigence, sloth, and apathy. In antiquity, the pop. probably fell little short of 1,000,000; and in 1571, when it was conquered by the Turks, it had a pop. of about 400,000, or nearly six times its present amount. Nowhere, indeed, as Mr. Kinneir has truly stated, is the baleful



influence of the Ottoman dominion more conspicuous than in Cyprus, where it has literally turned cities into miserable villages, and cultivated fields into arid deserts.

Cyprus was originally peopled by the Phœnicians. It was colonized by the Greeks, and successively possessed by the Egyptians, Persians, Greeks, and Romans. In antiquity, it was as famous for the worship of Venus as Delos for that of Apollo and Diana. This, in fact, was the favourite seat of the goddess. Divine honours are supposed to have been first paid to her at Paphos, where she had a magnificent temple—But the whole island was sacred to Venus: and besides Paphos, three other cities were celebrated for her worship. Hence the epithets Cyprian, Paphian, Idalian, &c., applied to Venus.

After the fall of the Western Empire, Cyprus formed part of the Byzantine Empire, from which it was taken by the Saracens. Isaac, a prince of the Comneni family, having usurped the sovereignty, was dethroned in 1191, by Richard I., King of England. The latter having conferred the island on Guy de Lusignan, to indemnify him for the loss of Jerusalem, it continued in possession of his family for three centuries, or till 1480, when, on default of heirs, it fell to the Venetians. The Turks took it from them in 1571. Bregadino, the gallant defender of Famagusta, after exhausting every resource, at last capitulated on honourable terms. No sooner, however, had the place been delivered up, than the capitulation was disregarded; and Bregadino himself was skinned alive and impaled—a dreadful augury of what the population was to suffer under the dominion of such barbarous ruffians. It is now in the possession of Mehemet Ali.

#### LAKES.

*Q.* Where is Balcash Lake?

*A.* It is in the N. W. part of Chinese Tartary. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Zaizan Nor?

*A.* It is in the N. W. part of Chinese Tartary. The R. Irtysh passes through it. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Altyn Lake?

*A.* It is in the S. part of Siberia, formed by the R. Obi. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Baïkal Lake?

*A.* It is in the S. part of Siberia, in the government of Irkoutsk, and flows into the Angara, a large and rapid r., an affluent of the Yeniseï. (M. A.)

This lake, sometimes called the *Sviatore More*, or Holy Sea, is situated between 51° and 56° N. lat., and between 104° and 110° E. long. Its greatest length in a N. N. E. and S. S. W. direction, is about 370 ms.; but, where greatest, its breadth does not exceed 60 ms., and is in some parts much less. The superficial extent is estimated at 14,800 sq. ms. This lake is very deep; in some places the bottom has not been reached by a line of a hundred fathoms. Its surface is about 1793 ft. above the level of the sea. Lake Baïkal abounds with fish, particularly sturgeon; and with seals, the presence of which seems very remarkable, considering the distance from the sea. The waters are said to be subject to certain interior agitations, which render the navigation dangerous, even when the wind is moderate. Its water is completely fresh.



*Q.* Where is Poyang Lake?

*A.* It is in the E. part of China, and flows into the Yang-tse-kiang R. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Tonting Lake?

*A.* It is in the interior of China, lying W. of Poyang Lake, and flows into the Yang-tse-kiang R. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Koko Nor?

*A.* It is in the N. W. part of China. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Lake Zurrah?

*A.* It is in the W. part of Afghanistan. The R. Helmund flows into it. (M. A.)

#### MOUNTAINS.

*Q.* Where are the Ural Mts.?

*A.* The Ural or Oural Mts. are an extensive chain, extending, including its subsidiary portions, nearly under the same parallel from the N. border of the Sea of Aral to the shores of the Arctic Ocean, or from about the 51st to about the 69th deg. of N. lat. It forms, during the greater part of its course the boundary between Europe and Asia. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Little Altaï Mts.

*A.* They extend along the N. border of Soongaria, (a division of Chinese Tartary), separating it from Independent Tartary. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Great Altaï?

*A.* They consist of a vast mountain chain running from W. to E., under the general name of Altaï, forming a parallel line with the mightier ranges of Central Asia and India, and separating Siberia from the Chinese Empire. (M. A.)

These mts. commence near the Sea of Aral, and terminate at East Cape, on the Pacific Ocean, in the 190th deg. of E. long. They traverse, under different names, an extent of near 5000 ms. The highest part of the chain is computed at 11,512 ft. (1800 toises) above the level of the sea.

*Q.* Where are the Taurus Mts.?

*A.* They extend through Asiatic Turkey: commencing near the shores of the Archipelago, they extend to the R. Euphrates, in the N. E. part of Turkey, where the Ararat rises into the region of perpetual snow. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Mt. Sinai?

*A.* It is a mountain of Arabia, near the Gulf of Suez, or upper part of the Red Sea, famous for its connection with some of the most memorable events of sacred history. (M. A.)

This mountain is generally supposed to be identical with the mountain called by the Arabs *Djibbel Mousa*, or Mountain of Moses, or simply *El Tor*, the Mountain, in the peninsula between the Gulfs of Suez and Akaba, in about lat. 28° 25' N., long. 34° 10' E. The group of mountains to which Sinai belongs, and which also includes Mount Horeb, Mount St. Catherine,

and other remarkable summits, is surrounded on all sides by deserts occupied only by tribes of Bedouins, or wandering Arabs. The mountains are penetrated by deep chasms, edged by bare perpendicular ledges of rock; and the whole has a singularly wild and sterile appearance.

The height of Mount Sinai has been variously estimated, but according to observations taken by Mr. Wellsted, it may be stated at about 7500 ft. above the level of the sea, and about 2500 ft. above the convent of St. Catherine.

On the summit of the mountain is a dilapidated church, which tradition represents as founded on the spot where, amid thunder and lightning, and the smoke of the agitated mountain, Moses received the Decalogue from the hands of the Almighty. (Exodus, xx.) Truth, however, is seldom unaccompanied with error; and but a few yards distant from the church are the ruins of a mosque; this mountain, by a singular coincidence, being hal-  
lowed alike in the estimation of Jews, Christians, and Mohammedans.

It seems, to a person on the summit of Sinai, as if the whole of Arabia Petræa had once been an ocean of lava, and that, while its waves were literally running mountains high, it had suddenly been commanded to stand still. Mount Sinai itself, Mount St. Catherine, which is still higher, and the adjacent mountains, rise in sharp, conical, granite peaks; and from their steep and shattered sides huge masses have been thrown down. The prospect from the summit of Sinai is most extensive: the Gulf of Akaba, on the one hand, and that of Suez on the other, with Mount Agrib, on the Egyptain coast, are distinctly visible. Barrenness and desolation are however its grand characteristics. "No villages and castles, as in Europe, here animate the picture; no forests, lakes, or falls of water, break the silence and monotony of the scene. All has the appearance of a vast and desolate wilderness, either gray, darkly brown, or wholly black." But it is the associations connected with the mountain, and the astonishing events of which it is believed to have been the theatre, that inspire those feelings of awe and veneration felt by all who have either beheld or ascended Mount Sinai. Considerable doubts have, however, been entertained whether the mountain now described be really the Mount Sinai of the Pentateuch. It might be expected that the summit of the mountain should exhibit some traces of the stupendous phenomena that are said to have accompanied the manifestation of the Divine presence. But, according to Burckhardt, neither Sinai, nor any of the adjoining summits, exhibits any traces of volcanic action. It is supposed by some that the *Djibbel Katerin*, or Mount St. Catherine, has the best title to be regarded as the true Sinai.

There are really, however, no means by which to arrive at any satisfactory conclusions on the subject. All that can with confidence be stated (for monkish legends and traditions go for nothing) is, that Mount Sinai must be somewhere in this vicinity; and that though the hypothesis, that the *Djibbel Mousa* and the Sinai of the Bible be identical, be not free from difficulties, it is as much so, perhaps, as any other that has been advanced in its stead.

Q. Where are the Ramleah Mts.?

A. They extend through the N. of Arabia. (M. A.)

Q. Where is Mt. Ararat?

A. It is a famous Mountain of Armenia, on the confines of the Russian, Turkish, and Persian Empires. (M. A.)

Ararat (Turkish, *Aghur Dag*h; Armenian, *Macis*), a famous Mountain

of Armenia, on the confines of the Russian, Turkish, and Persian Empires, its principal summit being about 35 ms. S. of Erivan, lat.  $39^{\circ} 30' N.$ , long.  $44^{\circ} 35' E.$  Its base E. and N. E. is washed by the Araxes, from the low plain of which it rises most majestically to an immense height. It forms the termination in this direction of a range of mountains connected with the Caucasian Chain; but these, though elevated, seem, in comparison with Ararat, so low, as to strengthen the impression of sublimity and greatness made by contemplating it singly from the plains to the E. It consists of two enormous conical masses, one much higher than the other, but the lowest ascending far within the line of perpetual congelation. Repeated efforts had been made at different times to reach its summit, but this Herculean task was not effected till 1830, when Professor Parrot, of Dorpat, accomplished, by dint of extraordinary perseverance and energy, what had previously been reckoned all but impossible. He determined the altitude of the highest peak to be 16,200 French, or 17,230 English ft. above the level of the sea, being about 4760 ft. higher than Mont Blanc. The summit is described as a circular plain of limited dimensions, united by a gentle descent to the less elevated peak towards the E. The whole of the upper region of the mountain, from the height of 12,750 ft., is covered with perpetual snow and ice; and not unfrequently avalanches precipitate themselves down its sides with tremendous noise and fury.

On one of the sides of the principal cone is a chasm or cleft of prodigious depth, having much the appearance of the crater of a volcano. Tournefort says, that its precipices are blackened as if by smoke, but that nothing issues from it except torrents of muddy water; but the mountain presents many appearances of volcanic action, and Dr. Reineggs affirms that he has seen fire and smoke issue from this chasm for three days together.

Ararat is not only an object of superior interest from its mass and height, but still more from the associations with which it is connected. It is believed to be the Ararat of Scripture, on whose summit the ark rested, after the waters of the flood had subsided. (Genesis, viii., 4.) And certainly it would be difficult anywhere to find a mountain that seems better entitled to the honour of serving as a stepping-stone to those who survived that awful catastrophe.

Q. Where are the Caucasus Mts.?

A. Caucasus (Gr. *Kavkasos*) are an extensive mountain system, between the Black and Caspian Seas. The general direction of the range is from W. N. W. to S. S. E., separating Circassia from Georgia. (M. A.)

The highest summit, Elburus, is 2800 toises, or about 17,908 English ft. above the level of the sea.

Q. Where are the Elborz or Elbruz Mts.?

A. They extend through the N. of Persia from E. to W., parallel with the S. shore of the Caspian Sea. (M. A.)

These mts. form the S. boundary of the Persian province of Mazanderan, stretching along its whole length, and eastward into Khorassan. Demavend, forming its loftiest peak, 14,700 ft. high, according to Major Todd, is situated in a district called Tabrestan, and across it is that long defile called the Caspian Gates, leading from Teheran to Amul.

*Q.* Where are the Hindoo Koosh Mts. ?

*A.* They form the N. boundary of Afghanistan, separating it from Independent Tartary. (M. A.)

This grand mountain chain is a continuation of the snowy range of Hindoostan. From numerous accounts, not yet perhaps accurately combined, it is supposed to extend without interruption westward till it locks in with the Elborz Mts. and thus connects itself with Taurus and Russian Caucasus. That part which rises above the plain of Cabul is, from a peculiarly elevated peak, called generally Hindoo Koosh, or Hindoo Koo. In its progress westward, it takes, or at least it received from the ancients, the name of *Paropamisus*. One point, the most elevated yet observed, has been stated to reach 20,593 ft.

*Q.* Where are the Ghaut Mts. ?\*

*A.* They extend along the W. Coast of Hindoostan, from the Gulf of Cambay to Cape Comorin. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Beloor Mts. ?

*A.* They form a transverse chain, on the E. frontier of Independent Tartary, which connects the extremities of the Thian-chan and the Himmaleh Mts. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Thsoug-ling Mts. ?

*A.* The Thsoug-ling, or Blue Mts., extend from the W. part of the Kuen-lun, parallel to the Himmaleh, at a varying distance, along the N. boundary of Little Thibet, and as the two chains proceed westward, the space between them is gradually narrowed, till, at their extremity, they meet and form one mass with the Hindoo Koo, which extends thence westward along the N. boundary of Afghanistan. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Thian-chan Mts. ?†

*A.* They extend from E. to W. through the heart of Chinese Tartary, dividing the country into two great table-plains. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Kuen-lun Mts. ?

*A.* They form the N. boundary of Thibet. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Peling Mts. ?

*A.* They are in the N. part of China, which they intersect from W. to E. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Meling Mts. ?

*A.* They are in the S. part of China, intersecting it from W. to E., and running parallel with the Peling range. (M. A.)

#### PENINSULAS.

*Q.* Where is the Peninsula of Kamtschatka ?

*A.* It is a large peninsula near the N. E. extremity of Asia ;

---

\* The word *Ghaut* literally signifies a "mountain pass."

† Called by the Chinese, the Thian-chan, or "celestial mountains."



having E. the Aleutian Archipelago, or Sea of Kamtschatka; and W. the Sea of Ochotsk. (M. A.)

This peninsula is situated between the 51st and 62d parallels of N. lat., and the 155th and 170th meridians of E. long. It is near 800 ms. in length, and about 290 ms. in its greatest breadth; while the narrowest part of the isthmus is rather less than 100 ms. wide. Cape Lopatka, in  $51^{\circ} 0'$  N. lat., and  $156^{\circ} 42'$  E. long., forms the S. extremity of Kamtschatka. The principal inhabitants of this country are the Kamtschatdales, who belong to the Mongolian race. They occupy the S. portion of the peninsula, as far as  $58^{\circ}$  N. lat., and have fixed habitations. Kamtschatka forms a district of the Russian dominions, of which Petropaulovsk (called also Awatska or Avatchka) is the capital.

Q. Where is the Peninsula of Corea?

A. It is a large oblong-shaped peninsula of Chinese Tartary, on the E. Coast of Asia; having E. the Sea of Japan; S. the Strait of Corea; and W. the Yellow Sea. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, page 353.*

Q. Where is the Peninsula of Malacca?

A. The Malay peninsula is a long and narrow territory, forming a part of India beyond the Burrampootee, and the most S. portion of continental Asia. It has, N., Lower Siam, with which it is connected by the Isthmus of Kraw; and is on all other sides surrounded by the sea, called on the W. and S. the Straits of Malacca and Singapore; and on the E. the China Sea and Gulf of Siam. (M. A.)

This peninsula lies chiefly between the 1st and 8th degs. of N. lat., and the 98th and 104th degs. of E. long: length, N. N. W. to S. S. E., 450 ms.; breadth, varying from 50 to 150 ms. Area estimated at 45,000 sq. ms. Pop., 374,266.

Q. Where is the Peninsula of Hindoostan?

A. It is in the S. of Asia, having S. E. the Bay of Bengal, S. the Indian Ocean, and S. W. the Arabian Sea. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, pages 348-9.*

Q. Where is the Peninsula of Arabia?

A. It is an extensive peninsula, comprising the S. W. portion of the Asiatic continent, situated between the rest of Asia and Africa; having N. E. the Gulfs of Persia and Oman; E., S. E., and S., the Arabian Sea; and W. the Red Sea. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, pages 346-7.*

Q. What two seas form the western part of Turkey into a peninsula?

A. The Black Sea, and the Mediterranean. (M. A.)

Q. What seas and gulf form Arabia into a peninsula?

A. The Red and Arabian Sea, and the Persian Gulf. (M. A.)



## ISTHUSES.

*Q.* Where is the Isthmus of Suez?

*A.* It separates the Mediterranean from the Red Sea, and unites the continents of Asia and Africa. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Isthmus of Kraŭ?

*A.* It unites Lower Siam and the Malay Peninsula. (M. A.)

## DESERTS.

*Q.* Where is the Desert of Cobi?

*A.* The Desert of Shamo, or Cobi, is situated in the central portion of Chinese Tartary, extending in a south-westerly and north-easterly direction, almost entirely across it; separating, like a great inland sea, the countries upon which it borders. (M. A.)

According to the best of those imperfect accounts which we yet possess, it reaches about 2000 ms. from south-west to north-east. According to the report of Marco Polo, it is crossed, like the African deserts, by caravans with camels; and the real terrors of the journey are heightened by superstitious alarms, natural to those who find themselves bewildered in the depth of such an awful solitude. The traveller who chanced to straggle from the main body imagined that he heard the sound of march, sometimes like that of the caravan, sometimes like that of music and warlike instruments echoing through the air; when, following these delusive indications, he was led astray into some perilous, and, perhaps, fatal situation. The only precise account of it is given by the Russian embassies to China, particularly that of Lange, narrated by Bell. Though a month was spent in crossing it, the breadth does not appear to have exceeded 400 ms. The ground was covered with short and thin grass, which, owing perhaps to the saline quality of the soil, maintained a greater number of cattle than could have been supposed. There is, indeed, a considerable number of springs and lakes, but the water is so brackish as to be scarcely potable; so that a single pure spring which occurred, tasted as delicious as burgundy or champagne. A space of 20 ms. in extent, immediately beyond the Chinese wall, was composed of shifting and sinking sand, formed into waves 20 ft. high, and the crossing of which was an operation of the greatest labour. The ground along this tract is covered with pebbles of considerable beauty, and even of value.

*Q.* Where is the Desert of Akhaf?

*A.* It is in Arabia, stretching from Mecca to Muscat, and lying between Yemen and Hadramaut, on the S. and W., and between Nedsjed and Oman, on the N. and E. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Great Salt Desert?

*A.* It is in Persia, lying S. of the Elborz Mts., extending from about the 51st to the 60th degs. of E. long., occupying all the centre and E. portion of the country. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Great Sandy Desert?

*A.* It is situated towards the N.W. quarter of Hindoostan, in its largest province of Rajpootana. The desert extends in a south-westerly and north-easterly direction. (M. A.)

## LATITUDE, LONGITUDE, &amp;c.

- Q. In what latitude is Asia ?  
 A. North.  
 Q. In what longitude ?  
 A. East.  
 Q. In which zone is the northern part ?  
 A. North Frigid.  
 Q. The centre ?  
 A. North Temperate.  
 Q. Southern ?  
 A. Torrid.

## SIBERIA.

*Pages 281-2.—Lesson 187.—Map No. 23.*

- Q. What bounds Siberia on the north ?  
 A. Arctic Ocean.  
 Q. South ?  
 A. Great Altaï Mts.  
 Q. East ?  
 A. Sea of Kamtschatka.  
 Q. What great rivers flow into the Arctic Ocean ?  
 A. Obi, Yeniseï, and Lena.  
 Q. How long is each of these ?  
 A. Obi is 2500 ms. long ; Yeniseï, 2300 ; Lena, 2600. (M. A.)  
 Q. Which is the most northern cape of Siberia ?  
 A. Cevero Vostochnoi. (M. A.)  
 Q. Eastern ?  
 A. East Cape. (M. A.)  
 Q. Southern ?  
 A. Lopatka. (M. A.)  
 Q. What strait between Siberia and North America ?  
 A. Bhering's.  
 Q. How wide is it ?  
 A. 40 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. What lakes are in Siberia ?  
 A. Baïkal, and Tchany.  
 Q. How long are they ?  
 A. Baïkal, 370 ms. ; Tchany, 180. (M. A.)  
 Q. What peninsula lies east of the Sea of Ochotsk ?  
 A. Kamtschatka.  
 Q. What tribes are in Siberia ?  
 A. Samoïeds, Ostiaks, Tungouses, Buraits, Yakoutes, Koriaks, and Tchuktchi. (M. A.)  
 Q. What is the population of Tobolsk ?  
 A. 15,000. (M. A.)

Q. Irkoutsk ?

A. 12,000. (M. A.)

Q. Tomsk ?

A. 10,000. (M. A.)

Q. Barnaule ?

A. 8000. (M. A.)

Q. Omsk ?

A. 8000. (M. A.)

Q. On what rivers are these towns ?

A. Tobolsk is on the Irtysh;\* Irkoutsk, on the Angara;† Tomsk, on the Tom, a tributary of the Obi;‡ Barnaule, on the Obi;§ Omsk, on the Irtysh.|| (M. A.)

Q. What rivers flow into the Caspian Sea ?

A. Volga, Ural, and Kur.

Q. How long are the first two ?

A. Volga, 2000 ms. ; Ural, 900. (M. A.)

Q. What mountains separate Circassia and Georgia ?

A. Caucasus.

Q. What countries bound Georgia on the south ?

A. Turkey, and Persia.

Q. What is the population of Orenburg ?

A. 20,000. (M. A.)

Q. Astrachan ?

A. 31,000. (M. A.)

Q. Derbent ?

A. 20,000. (M. A.)

Q. Teflis.

A. 30,000. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, pages 344-5.*

\* Tobolsk, a city of Asiatic Russia, the cap. of W. Siberia, and of the government of its own name, and, indeed, of the whole of N. Asia ; on the Irtysh, close to its junction with the Tobol, lat.  $58^{\circ} 11'$  N., long.  $68^{\circ} 6'$  E.

† Irkoutsk (properly Irkutsk), a city of Asiatic Russia, cap. of Eastern Siberia, on the Angara, at its confluence with the Irkut, about 30 ms. from the N. W. shore of Lake Baikal, 500 ms. S. E. from Krasnojarsk, and 1450 ms. in nearly the same direction from Tobolsk ; lat.  $52^{\circ} 16'$  N., long.  $104^{\circ} 19'$  E.

‡ Tomsk, a town of Asiatic Russia, cap. of the government of same name, on the Tom, a tributary of the Obi, 650 ms. E. by S. from Tobolsk. Lat.  $56^{\circ} 29'$  N., long.  $85^{\circ} 10'$  E.

§ Barnaule, or Barnaoul, a mining town of Siberia, government of Tobolsk, circle of Tomsk, situated at the mouth of a r. of the same name, falling into the Obi, near the Altaï Mts., lat.  $53^{\circ} 20'$  N., long.  $83^{\circ} 26'$  E. It is the seat of a board for the administration of the mines, and large quantities of lead and silver ore are smelted here.

|| Omsk, a small but well-fortified town of Siberia, cap. of a province of the same name, on the Irtysh, lat. about  $55^{\circ}$  N., long.  $73^{\circ} 30'$  E.

## TURKEY IN ASIA.

*Pages 283-4.—Lesson 188.—Maps No. 23 and 24.*

*Map No. 23.—Q. How is Turkey bounded?*

*A. It is bounded N. by the Russian Empire (from which it is partially separated by the Black Sea); E. by Persia; S. by Arabia and by the Mediterranean; W. by the Ægean Sea or Archipelago, and the Strait of the Dardanelles; and N. W. by the Sea of Marmora. (M. A.)*

*For a further description, see Key, page 346.*

*Q. What river flows into the Persian Gulf?*

*A. Euphrates. (M. A.)*

*Q. What river flows into the Euphrates?*

*A. Tigris.*

*Q. How long are these rivers?*

*A. Euphrates is 1400 ms.; Tigris, 800. (M. A.)*

*Q. What mountains lie north of the Mediterranean Sea?*

*A. Taurus.*

*Q. How high are they?*

*A. 9000 ft. (M. A.)*

*Q. What mountain in the N. E.?*

*A. Ararat.*

*Q. What is the population of Smyrna?*

*A. 130,000. (M. A.)*

*Q. Erzerum?†*

*A. 80,000. (M. A.)*

*Q. Brusa?‡*

*A. 60,000. (M. A.)*

\* Smyrna (Turk. *Izmeer*), an ancient and celebrated sea-port on the W. coast of Asia Minor, at the head of a gulf of its own name;  $38^{\circ} 28' N.$  lat.,  $27^{\circ} 7' E.$  long. It has a fine appearance from the sea, but the interior consists of mean wooden houses, with narrow, crooked, dirty streets. Its trade in figs and raisins is very considerable.

† Erzerum or Erzeroum, once an important, but now declining city of Turkish Armenia, cap. of a pashalic of the same name, situated near the W. branch of the Euphrates;  $39^{\circ} 57' N.$  lat.,  $41^{\circ} 15' E.$  long. It stands at an elevation of 6000 or 7000 ft. above the sea, in consequence of which the winters are very severe. The environs are entirely destitute of wood, and fuel is scarce.

‡ Brusa or Bursa is a flourishing city of Asiatic Turkey, situated at the foot of Mount Olympus, in Asia Minor. It is famous for its warm baths, and is one of the cleanest and most pleasant cities in the empire;  $40^{\circ} 11' N.$  lat.,  $29^{\circ} 12' E.$  long. Brusa is a very ancient city, and was founded by Prusias, the protector of Hannibal. It was long the capital of Bithynia. Previous to the capture of Constantinople, it was the cap. of the Turks.

Q. Trebisonde ?\*

A. 50,000. (M. A.)

Q. Bussorah ?†

A. 60,000. (M. A.)

Q. Diarbekir ?‡

A. 40,000. (M. A.)

Q. Mosul ?§

A. 35,000. (M. A.)

Q. Bagdad ?||

A. 70,000. (M. A.)

#### SYRIA.

Q. How is Syria bounded ?

A. It is bounded N. by the pachalics of Itchil and Marash, in Asia Minor ; N. E. and E. by the R. Euphrates ; S. E. and S. by the Arabian Desert ; and W. by the Mediterranean Sea.

Q. What is the population of Damascus ?¶

A. 120,000. (M. A.)

\* Trebisonde is the chief sea-port of Asiatic Turkey on the Black Sea, on the S. coast of which it is situated ;  $41^{\circ} 3' N.$  lat.,  $39^{\circ} 28' E.$  long. In the middle ages it was an important city ; latterly it declined greatly from its former importance, but it is now reviving. Large quantities of British and other European goods are now sent into Persia and the adjacent regions from this port.

† Bussorah or Bassorah is an important city of the southern part of Asiatic Turkey, situated on the right bank of the Euphrates, or more properly the Shat-ul-Arab, or united stream of the Euphrates and Tigris ;  $30^{\circ} 25' N.$  lat.,  $47^{\circ} 35' E.$  long. It is not far from the head of the Persian Gulf, and has considerable trade with Bombay, in British and India goods.

‡ Diarbekir, a city of Asiatic Turkey, in Mesopotamia, on the right bank of the Tigris ; in  $37^{\circ} 55' N.$  lat.,  $39^{\circ} 54' E.$  long. It was once a place of great commerce by caravans with the adjacent regions, but that is now nearly extinct ; the surrounding country is harassed by the Kurds of the neighbouring mountains, and the government is too weak to repress their depredations.

§ Mosul is a decayed city, on the W. bank of the Tigris, in  $36^{\circ} 21' N.$  lat.,  $43^{\circ} E.$  long. On the opposite side of the river are some extensive mounds, supposed to mark the site of the ancient Nineveh. The cotton manufactures of Mosul were once important. From the name of this place the word muslin has been derived.

|| Bagdad is a celebrated city, once the cap. of the Caliphs, and now of a pashalic of its own name, situated on both sides of the Tigris, about 200 miles above its junction with the Euphrates. Lat.  $33^{\circ} 19' N.$ , long.  $44^{\circ} 25' E.$  It was once a place of great trade ; but, like all the noted cities in the Turkish empire, its importance has declined.

¶ Damascus (Arab. *Sham El Keber*, i. e. *Damascus the Great*), a celebrated city of Syria, capital of a pashalic of the same name, situated near the E. base of the Antilibanus Mountains, about 60 ms. E. of the Mediterranean Sea, in lat.  $33^{\circ} 33' N.$ , long.  $36^{\circ} 20' E.$  It is one of the most



Q. Aleppo?\*

A. 70,000. (M. A.)

### PALESTINE, MAP No. 24.

Q. What sea bounds Palestine on the west?

A. Mediterranean.

Q. What river flows into the Dead Sea?

A. Jordan.

Q. How long is it?

A. 150 ms. (M. A.)

Q. How long is the Dead Sea?

A. 50 ms. (M. A.)

Q. What is the population of Jerusalem?†

A. 12,000. (M. A.)

Q. The other towns?

A. Saphet, 3000; Nazareth, 3000; Naplouse, 10,000; Bethlehem, 3000; Gaza, 4000; Hebron, 1000; Joppa, or Jaffa, 4000. (M. A.)

SYRIA and PALESTINE or JUDEA, two of the most celebrated regions of the E. hemisphere: the former includes the ancient Phœnicia; and the latter is sometimes called the Holy Land, from its being the theatre of most of the great events recorded in sacred history. These famous countries have, for many centuries, ceased to be independent, and have, for a lengthened period, formed a portion of Asiatic Turkey. They extend principally between the 31st and 37th degs. N. lat., and the 34th and 41st E. long.; having N. the pachalics of Itchil and Marash, in Asia Minor; N. E. and E. the Euphrates; S. E. and S. the Arabian desert; and W. the Mediterranean. Previously to the subjugation of the country by Mehemet Ali, it was divided into the

ancient towns in the world, having been in existence in the days of Abraham. It is noted for its fine gardens and orchards, and the excellence of its fruits. The Arabs regard Damascus as one of the four terrestrial paradises.

\* Aleppo (Arab. *Haleb*; Anc. *Berœa*), called by the natives Kara Veria, is a city in the northern part of Syria, about 60 ms. E. of the Mediterranean Sea; lat.  $36^{\circ} 11' N.$ , long.  $37^{\circ} 10' E.$  In the middle ages, it was a great emporium of the India overland trade. The discovery of the passage to the East by the Cape of Good Hope affected its prosperity; it still, however, continued to be a large city until it was nearly all destroyed by an earthquake, in 1822. It is reviving slowly, and contains about a third of the population it had previous to that event.

† Jerusalem (Arab. *El Kads*; Lat. *Hierosolyma*), a celebrated city of Palestine, remarkable as the ancient capital of Judea, and as the cradle of the Christian religion. It is about 40 miles E. of the Mediterranean Sea, in lat.  $30^{\circ} 48' N.$ , long.  $35^{\circ} 20' E.$  The splendour of its first and second temples, the destruction of the city by Titus, and the dispersion of the Jews by Adrian, are events known to every reader of history. The recovery of Jerusalem and the Holy Land from the Saracens, was the great object of the Crusaders. It was taken, in 1099, by Godfrey de Bouillon, who was created king of Jerusalem, and retaken by Saladin in 1187.

four pachalics of Aleppo, Tripoli, Acre, and Damascus. Palestine, or the Holy Land, comprised in the two latter pachalics, forms the S. portion of the region, being about 200 ms. in length by 80 ms. in its extreme breadth. The entire length of Syria and Palestine may be about 450 ms., N. and S.; its breadth varying from 100 to 280 ms. Its area has been loosely estimated at 60,000 sq. ms.; and its population at from  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 2, and even 3 millions; but probably 2,000,000 may not be far from the mark. Colonel Campbell, a few years since, estimated it at 1,864,000; of whom 997,000 were supposed to be Mussulmans (Turks, Arabs, &c.), 22,000 Ansarians, or Bedouins, 17,000 Metualis and Yezidis, 48,000 Druses, 260,000 Maronites and Christians of the Romish Church, 345,000 Christians of the Greek Church, and 175,000 Jews. The practice of polygamy among several of these tribes, aided by the extensive conscriptions of Mehemet Ali, is said to have produced a great excess of females over males.

---

### A R A B I A .

*Page 285.—Lesson 189.—Map No. 23.*

- Q. What bounds Arabia on the north?  
*A.* Turkey.  
 Q. South?  
*A.* Arabian Sea.  
 Q. East?  
*A.* Persian Gulf and Gulf of Oman.  
 Q. West?  
*A.* Red Sea.  
 Q. What isthmus joins Arabia to Africa?  
*A.* Suez.  
 Q. What mountains are in Arabia?  
*A.* Sinai, and Ramleah.  
 Q. What desert lies between Yemen and Oman?  
*A.* Desert of Akhaf.  
 Q. What race inhabits it?  
*A.* Bedouins.  
 Q. What divisions of Arabia lie on the Red Sea?  
*A.* The Hedjaz, and Yemen.  
 Q. What on the Arabian Sea?  
*A.* Hadramaut, and Oman.  
 Q. On the Persian Gulf?  
*A.* Lahsa.  
 Q. How long is the Red Sea?  
*A.* 1500 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. The Persian Gulf?  
*A.* 520 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. What is the population of Muscat?  
*A.* 10,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Sana?  
*A.* 40,000. (M. A.)

Q. Mocha?

A. 5000. (M. A.)

Q. Mecca?

A. 28,000. (M. A.)

Q. Medina?

A. 18,000. (M. A.)

Q. Jidda?

A. 7000. (M. A.)

Q. Yambo?

A. 5000. (M. A.)

Q. In what part of Arabia are these places situated?

A. Muscat is situated on the E. side of Arabia, in Oman;\* Sana, in the S. W. portion of Arabia, in Yemen;† Mocha, in the S. W. portion of Arabia, in Yemen;‡ Mecca, on the W. side of Arabia;§ Medina, on the W. side of Arabia;|| Jidda, on the W. side of Arabia;¶ Yambo, on the W. side of Arabia. The four last-mentioned towns are all in the province of the Hedjaz. (M. A.)

Q. Between what seas is Petra situated?

A. Red, and Dead.

\* Muscat, a city and sea-port, on the E. side of Arabia, the cap. of Oman, lies about 96 ms. N. W. from Cape Ras-al-gat, lat.  $23^{\circ} 38' N.$ , long.  $58^{\circ} 37' E.$  This city is a great entrepôt for the commerce of India and the Persian Gulf, and for the trade in pearls. The Imam of Muscat is a prince of some importance; besides his territories in Oman, he possesses the island of Zanzibar, a district on the adjacent coast of Africa, and some islands in the Persian Gulf. His navy, which comprises some fine ships of war, is the most powerful maritime force in the Indian Seas belonging to a native sovereign.

† Sana, a city of Arabia, the cap. of Yemen, and the residence of the Imam, in a valley from 6 to 9 ms. in breadth, and 4000 ft. above the level of the ocean, near the head of the Shab R., and 150 ms. N. N. E. from Mocha.

‡ Mocha, the principal port in the Red Sea frequented by Europeans, is in Yemen, about 40 ms. N. from the Strait of Babelmandeb; lat.  $13^{\circ} 19' N.$ , long.  $43^{\circ} 20' E.$  It is the entrepôt of the coffee trade.

§ Mecca, one of the most famous cities of the eastern world, the birth-place of Mohammed, and the great centre of attraction to all the pilgrims or *Hadjis* of the Mohammedan faith; in the Hedjaz, 51 ms. E. from the port of Jidda, on the Red Sea; and 270 ms. S. by E. from Medina; lat.  $21^{\circ} 28' N.$ , long.  $40^{\circ} 15' E.$

|| Medina, or Medinet-el-Nabi, "the town of the prophet," one of the sacred cities of Arabia, the burial-place of Mohammed, and, next to Mecca, the great centre of attraction to Mohammedan pilgrims; in the Hedjaz, 100 ms. N. E. of its port of Yambo, on the Red Sea, and 260 ms. N. of Mecca. Lat.  $25^{\circ} 13' N.$ , long.  $40^{\circ} 3' E.$

¶ Jidda, or Djidda, a maritime city of Arabia, in the Hedjaz, being the port of Mecca, and one of the chief entrepôts for foreign commerce on the Red Sea. Lat.  $21^{\circ} 32' N.$ , long.  $39^{\circ} 6' E.$

*Religion.*—Antecedent to the earliest records, the city of Mecca had been sacred ground; and its holy temple, the *Kaaba*, identified in the minds of the Arabs with every sacred feeling. The legends with respect to it, to which it is unnecessary more particularly to allude, show that the religion of the early Arabs was, to a considerable extent, mixed up with that of the Hebrews. They acknowledged one supreme God, regarding, however, the sun, moon, planets, and stars, as inferior and subordinate intelligences. This religion has been called *SABIANISM*, either from *SABI*, a supposed son of Seth, or, as is more probable, from the word *SABA*, signifying the Host of Heaven. The supreme God was called *Allah Taala* (Most High God), the subordinate deities, *Al-Slahat* (the Powers). It was these titles (one particular, the other general) that led Herodotus to affirm that the Arabians worshipped only two gods, namely, *Urotalt* and *Alilat*; the former of whom he identifies with the Bacchus (*Διονυπος*) of the Greeks, the latter with Urania, the muse of astronomy. The Sabian religion can scarcely be deemed irrational, when professed by a rude people, inhabiting an open country, under a clear sky; who must have connected the changes of the seasons, and the returns of the periodic rains and droughts, that rendered their plains alternately fertile and sterile, with the revolutions of the heavenly bodies. But the Arabs also worshipped angels, and their images, which last they believed to be inspired by the supreme Divinity with life and intelligence. This sort of idolatry having been once introduced, gradually spread; and in the sixth century, and long before, the number of these deities was very great, each tribe having chosen one to be its peculiar intercessor with the Supreme Being; and 360 were enshrined in the *Kaaba*, as tutelary guardians of the days of the Arab year.

The Arabs seem, indeed, to have admitted, without hesitation, all deities; and thus, in the sixth century, a figure of the Virgin Mary, with the infant Jesus, was sculptured on one of the principal pillars of the *Kaaba* as an object of adoration. It is most probable that this indiscriminate adoption of the objects of veneration of all sects, was intended to render the sacred city sacred to all men, and thus to increase the resort of pilgrims.

After the destruction of Jerusalem by Titus, A. D. 70, many Jews fled into Arabia. These exiles made many proselytes among the natives, whole tribes embracing the Hebrew faith; so that, in a century or two, the Jewish Arabs became a very powerful section of the whole people. A similar cause, the persecution early in the third century of the Christian era, drove many Christians to Arabia, whose zeal, unchecked by former sufferings, led them to preach their doctrines in their new homes, and that with such success: that in a short time they had made a very great progress in the country.

The faith of the Persian Magi, or the religion of Zoroaster, had, at a very early period, found its way into the peninsula; had been embraced with avidity by many tribes; and thus, in the middle of the sixth century, the population of Arabia was divided, perhaps not very unequally, into Sabians, Jews, Christians, and Magians.

Such was the state of religion in Arabia at the birth of Mohammed; an epoch which may be regarded as the commencement of one of the most extraordinary revolutions that history has to record. It occurred at Mecca, in the month of May, A. D. 571, or 570. This founder of a new religion, and of a political power, which, even in his lifetime, extended over his native country, and which, under his successors, threatened to embrace the empire of the world, traced his genealogy in a direct line through eleven



descents from Koreish, the founder of the powerful tribe that bore his name. Koreish again was affirmed to be the tenth in direct descent from Adnan ; and Adnan the third, seventh, or eighth (which is doubtful) from Ishmael, the son of Abraham.

The future prophet sprang, therefore, from the noblest tribe of the Ishmaelitic Arabs, and his grandfather was, at the time of his birth, sovereign of Mecca, and guardian of the Kaaba ; consequently, from the sacredness of his territory, and the holiness of his office, a prince of great power and influence.

Yet, notwithstanding his high connexions, Mohammed's early life was passed in comparative poverty. His father, a younger son of the Sovereign of Mecca, dying before Mohammed was two years old, the latter, and his mother, were left with no other provision than five camels and a female slave. To his grandfather, Abdal-Motalleb, in the first instance, and subsequently to his uncle, Abu-Taleb, the future prophet was, therefore, indebted for his infant protection ; and this guardianship was exercised with the greatest kindness, the uncle especially (for Abdal-Motalleb died when Mohammed was only eight years old) continuing the firm friend of his ward throughout his life, and protecting him in the dangers and difficulties which beset his first attempts to disseminate his doctrines. Under the auspices of his uncle, Mohammed began life as a merchant, accompanying a trading caravan to Syria, in his thirteenth year. Subsequently, and at a very early age, Abu-Taleb recommended him as a factor to Khadija, a rich widow, to whom his skill in commerce, or his other accomplishments, so far endeared him, that, in a short time, he exchanged the name of servant for that of husband ; raising himself by this alliance to an equality with the richest, if not the most powerful men of Mecca. At the time of his marriage he was twenty-five, and his wife forty years of age. It would be useless now to attempt to discover the proximate cause that led Mohammed to attack a system of idolatry, of which his own family was at the head. It was not, however, as some have surmised, a sudden outbreak of enthusiasm ; for, after his marriage, he continued to live in all the privacy compatible with the station of a rich and highly connected individual for thirteen years. At the termination of this period, he withdrew from society, and resorted to a cave in the neighbourhood of Mecca, where, for two years, he gave out that he was in daily communication with the Divinity. At the end of this time, being then forty years of age, he assumed the character of a prophet, sent by the Almighty to establish a new religion ; or, if we may take his own words, to restore the ancient one, professed by Adam, Noah, Abraham, the prophets, and Jesus Christ, by destroying the gross idolatries of his countrymen, and weeding out the corruptions and superstitions by which, as he alleged, the Jews and Christians had deformed the beautiful simplicity of the true faith.

His first convert was his wife Khadija, of whose merits, in this and other instances, he always entertained the highest sense, uniformly speaking of her with an affection bordering upon reverence ; and placing her, after her death, among the only *four* perfect women the world had ever seen. The other three were Miriam, the sister of Moses and Aaron, the Virgin Mary, and his own daughter Fatima. The progress of the new sect was at first very slow. It is usually stated, that nine converts only were made in the first three years ; but this is scarcely consistent with the fact that, in the fourth, Mohammed felt himself strong enough to abandon his private preaching, and to proclaim his doctrines publicly.

Nothing can well exceed the simplicity of the Mohammedan doctrines, as



delivered by the founder and his immediate successors ; and as they are embodied in the 114 chapters of the Koran :—the unity of God ; the divine mission of Mohammed ; the stated observance of prayer ; the giving of alms ; the observance of an annual fast, and the pilgrimage to Mecca, comprise, under five heads, the principal points, whether doctrinal or practical, which were to be enforced. The resurrection of the body was proclaimed, and a future state, in which men will receive the reward of their good actions and obedience to the law of the prophet, or be subjected to a *purifying* punishment for their evil deeds and infidelity. The *final* admission of all believers to a state of bliss, is an article of Mohammedan faith. The supposed divine legation of Mohammed is the principal novelty introduced. The stated prayers were only adaptations of customs already existing among the Sabians, Jews, Christians, and Magians ; the annual fast was a very ancient practice among the old Arabs ; and the only change effected by Mohammed in its observance, was, by prohibiting the intercalation of a month in the lunar year, to make the sacred season fixed instead of ambulatory. The pilgrimage to Mecca was, as has been shown, a practice followed from the very earliest times ; and the rewards and punishments in another life were adopted, but with much adulteration, from the Christian doctrines. The grossly sensual character of Mohammed's paradise is, in fact, the great blemish in his religious system ; and has had a most debasing and degrading influence over the countries where it has acquired an ascendancy.

The new religion being in most parts little more than an adaptation of various parts of the religions previously existing in Arabia, was well fitted to attract all by the respect it professed for the peculiar tenets of each, excepting the idolatrous worship of the Sabians. Accordingly, Mohammed was heard with patience by the people of Mecca, till he denounced the idols of the Kaaba. This, however, raised so strong a feeling against him, that his ruin was prevented, and his life preserved, only by the firm friendship of his uncle, Abu-Taleb, who, although unconvinced by the preaching of his nephew, protected him against his enemies. In the sixth year of his mission, the persecutions to which he was exposed became so severe, that many of his followers sought, by his permission, refuge in other lands, chiefly in Abyssinia ; where they became the first instruments for planting the new faith in Africa. This event is called, by Eastern writers, *THE FIRST HEGIRA* or flight.

The protection of Abu-Taleb, though it preserved Mohammed from personal danger, could not prevent a very strong manifestation of hostility, in which Abu-Taleb himself and all his family were sharers. The other Koreishites bound themselves to hold no communion with the family of Hashem, the great-grandfather of Mohammed ; and to give the greater force to their act, it was reduced to writing, and laid up in the Kaaba. At the end of three years, however, Mohammed, having, no doubt, previously concerted his measures, proclaimed, that God had sent a worm to eat out every word in the parchment except his own holy name ; and the writing being, on inspection, found to be destroyed, the league was put an end to, and Mohammed's reputation considerably increased. In the same year, being the tenth of his mission, Abu-Taleb and Khadija died ; and their deaths were by far the greatest blow which Mohammed experienced during his career. In the Mussulman calendar, this year is commemorated as the *year of mourning*. The death of Abu-Taleb removed the only check to the virulent enmity of the Koreishites ; and a stranger having succeeded to the sovereignty of Mecca, after a troubled residence of three years—marked, however, by

the accession of many proselytes—Mohammed, on the invitation of a deputation from Medina, fled to that city ; and instantly, as if by magic, the proscribed and condemned exile became a powerful, and, as it soon appeared, an all but invincible monarch. The flight from Mecca to Medina, the second *HEGIRA*, or *Hejira*, *par excellence*, is the epoch from which the Mussulmans date their era. It occurred in the fifty-third year of Mohammed's age, and thirteenth of his mission ; and coincides with the 16th July, A.D. 622. Down to this point, Mohammed had propagated his religion by means of persuasion only : throughout eighty-five chapters of the Koran, published at Mecca, there is nothing said of a compulsory power being given to the prophet : on the contrary, he exhorts his disciples to bear with patience the evils inflicted by unbelievers, declaring he has no authority to compel any one to embrace his religion. But his doctrines breathe a very different spirit after his establishment in regal and sacerdotal power at Medina. The eighteen chapters of the Koran, published at that city, declare, that since man had perversely rejected the missions of Abraham, Moses, the prophets, Christ, and even the mild pleadings of Mohammed himself, God had now commanded him to extirpate idolatry from the earth, and to bring all mankind into submission to his will. The sword, however, was first drawn against Mohammed, and not by him. Abu-Sophian, the new sovereign of Mecca, led an army of 900 or 1000 men against the supposititious prophet, who, with a force of only 319 enthusiasts, met his enemies in the valley of Bèder, near Medina, and gained a complete victory, with the loss of only forty men, who were immediately canonized, as the first martyrs in the cause of God and his prophet.

From this time the progress of Mohammed was, if not a continued triumph—for he sustained some defeats—an example of the most rapid success upon record. During the next six years he fought twenty-seven battles, exclusive of those fought by his generals, in which he was not personally present ; and, at the end of that period, he entered Mecca in triumph, on the 20th Ramadan, in the 8th Hegira, or December 31, A.D. 629. The conquest of Mecca may be regarded as the final establishment of Mohammedanism in Arabia. The few contests that followed were merely the last struggles of an expiring opposition ; and were mostly terminated by Mohammed's generals, while the prophet himself was employed in destroying the idols in and around the Kaaba, and in sending embassies, inviting the Arabs to embrace his faith, which invitations were now attended with complete success. The following year, the 9th Hegira, is called, by Eastern writers, the year of embassies : missions from all parts of Arabia poured in, bringing the adhesion of the various tribes to the now triumphant faith ; and the victorious founder of the new religion made a solemn pilgrimage to the temple of the Kaaba, to return thanks to Heaven for his success, and the final overthrow of idolatry.

All Arabia was now united in one faith ; but Mohammed did not live long to enjoy his triumph. Some years previously, or in the 7th Hegira, A.D. 628, he was poisoned by a Jewess of Chaibar, who, on his entering that town in triumph, offered him some eggs, previously drugged, professedly to test the reality of his divine knowledge. Henceforward his strength declined ; but his death was caused by a fever,\* which having, at intervals, deprived him

---

\* The epilepsy, or falling sickness, to which he is said to have been subject, is nowhere so much as hinted at by the native writers. It is strongly insisted on by Prideaux, and by Hottinger, but their authorities are wholly Latin ; namely, Ximenes, Theophanus, Zonaras, &c.

of his reason, terminated his existence in the space of fourteen days, on the 12th of the 1st month, Rebizah, in the 11th Hegira (6th June 632), in his 63d, or according to some authorities, 65th year. He was buried at Medina; and the Mohammedan doctors differ as to which is the most sacred—Mecca, which gave birth to their apostle, or Medina, which received him in his flight, and contains his mortal remains.

During Khadija's life, Mohammed abstained entirely from the right of polygamy; after her death he took nine wives, alleging, of course, that a special revelation authorized him in exceeding the number four, to which his law restricted his followers! By Khadija, he had four sons and as many daughters; and by an Egyptian concubine he had a fifth son; all his other wives being barren. His five sons died in infancy, and of his daughters, Fatima only, who was married to her cousin Ali, survived her father. From Ali and Fatima a numerous and illustrious progeny descended, the ancestors of the numerous existing Sheriffs, or *Sons of the Prophet*.

Mohammed died in the midst of preparations to carry his spiritual faith and temporal power into other countries. His death scarcely, however, suspended the completion of his great designs: a momentary state of confusion was followed by the election of Abu-Beker, father-in-law of Mohammed, to the office of supreme head of the Mussulman religion and power, under the title of "Caliph," or "Successor of the Prophet." Under his reign, and that of his two successors, the Arab arms were carried triumphantly into all the neighbouring countries; and, by the 20th year of the Hegira, or within less than ten years from the death of Mohammed, the conquest of Syria, Persia, and Egypt, was completed. In the 13th year of the Hegira, Damascus was taken; in the 16th, Jerusalem; in the 17th, Antioch; in the 19th, Ispahan; and in the 20th, Alexandria.

The caliphate continued elective for four successive elections; the last who held the power by public suffrage, being Ali, the cousin and son-in-law of Mohammed. This FIRST BELIEVER had been thus long passed by in consequence of his refusing to hold as sacred anything not contained in the Koran, or the immediate traditions of the prophet. From this circumstance arose the division of the Mohammedans into two great sects, the SONNITES and the SCHIITES, or SHEEAHS; the latter, the disciples of Ali, whom they denominate the *vicar of God*, receiving only those doctrines which he admitted to be sacred; while their adversaries (the Orthodox Mussulmans) hold, at least in *equal* reverence, the 7275 *Sonna*, or oral laws, which, within the first 200 years of Mohammedanism, had grown into respect and veneration.

Ali fell by the hand of an assassin, after a troubled reign of five years; and Moawijah, son of Abu-Sophian, the greatest enemy of Mohammed, usurped the throne; and, what is more remarkable, had the power or art to make the caliphate hereditary in his own family. His descendants are called the Ommiade race of caliphs, from Ommiyah, the grandfather of Abu-Sophian; and they possessed the regal and sacerdotal power through fourteen successive princes, and for nearly 100 years.

Under the sway of this family the whole of Africa was subdued; and so far colonized by tribes of Bedouins that it has ever since remained, in language, manners, and religion, essentially an Arab country. The Oxus (Amoo) was very early crossed; the shepherd tribes of Turks and Tartars brought under the triumphant faith of the Arabian prophet; and, within eighty years from Mohammed's death, the sceptre of his representative ex

tended over all the countries between the Indus and the Atlantic, and (eastward of the Mediterranean) from the Indian Ocean to the Steppes of Central Asia.

Spain was the last and most remote of the conquests of the caliphs. It was subdued in the beginning of the 8th century; Roderic, the Gothic king, being defeated and slain in the battle of Xeres, July 19, A. D. 711. Subsequently to this, though the Arabs were for a short time masters of the S. of France, they made no farther impression on Europe; and, in the year 732, they were completely defeated by Charles Martel, and driven beyond the Pyrenees, which barrier they never recrossed.

The Ommiade caliphs were, in the 133d Hegira (A. D. 750), superseded by the descendants of Abbas, one of the uncles of Mohammed. The Ommiade dynasty had never received the cheerful submission of the prophet's family; and, after a lengthened struggle, the last Ommiade caliph was completely defeated in Mesopotamia, and again in Egypt, where he was slain. Abul-Abus-Saffa, and the princes, his descendants, are known in history as the Abbasside caliphs.

The seat of government had, in the meanwhile, been removed from Medina to Damascus, and from the latter to Bagdad. It was in this new seat of empire that the Arab claim to literary and scientific eminence was first raised. It was here that the splendid courts of Haroun-al-Raschid, and his sons, Al-Mansour and Motassem, were held. It was here that, under their patronage, the Greek sages and philosophers were translated, that the native Arab genius raised its head, and carried the sciences, physical and metaphysical, together with the useful arts, to a point of grandeur unknown in former times. The names alone of the Saracen philosophers, mathematicians, astronomers, physicians, botanists, chemists, and architects, who illustrated this period of Arab history, would fill a volume. Of chemistry, they may be called the *inventors*; and although, in astronomy, they did not presume to depart from the Ptolemaic hypothesis, they carried out the views of the Alexandrian philosopher, and attained results marvellous for their accuracy, when the erroneous nature of the data on which they were founded is considered. To the astronomical tables of Bagdad, Cordova, and Samarcand, subsequent observers owe a large debt of gratitude; and many of the common terms in modern astronomy, and most of the names applied to the fixed stars, attest the source whence Europe drew the elements of astronomical science. The Arabs, if they did not invent, at least were the great improvers of algebra\* (the name sufficiently attests its origin), which placed in the hands of the analyst an instrument of vast and apparently unlimited power. Perhaps, however, the most important invention we owe to the Arabs is that of the arithmetical characters, now in common use, which banished at once and forever the cumbrous and unwieldy notation of the Romans. In medicine, the Arabs were pre-eminently great: and the magnificent remains of their public and private buildings, in Syria, Egypt, and Spain, evince their skill in architecture. The Arab court of Bagdad, was,

---

\* This science was, certainly, originally discovered by Diophantus of Alexandria, but its power, as an instrument of analysis, lay dormant and unknown, till developed by the ingenuity of the Arab mathematicians. The first systematic work on this subject came from the court of the Caliph Al-Mamoon, and from the pen of the Arab, Mohammed-Ben-Musa.



in fact, the centre of the knowledge and refinement of the period in which it existed; and, by a singular contrast, that period corresponded with the darkest and most degraded portion of European History.

The caliphate shared the fate of all gigantic empires, especially of such as rise suddenly to immense power. It fell by its own unwieldiness. Spain first, and then Egypt and Africa, effected their independence. The wild Turk and Tartar tribes, among whom the Mohammedan faith had been imperfectly introduced, became dangerous neighbours to their nominal sovereigns; and, in their decreasing power, the caliphs had recourse to the desperate expedient of forming from these wild warriors a body of mercenary troops to guard their frontiers, and protect their persons. The result was identical with that which attended a similar experiment among the Romans. In a few generations the servants became the masters; and though, as in the parallel case of Rome, the destruction of this overgrown empire occupied some centuries, yet piece by piece it crumbled away, till, in the 656th Hegira (A. D. 1258), a Tartar army, having captured Bagdad, put an end to the nominal existence of the caliphate, all real power having, long before, passed into the hands of the Turkish Sultans of Asia Minor.

The foreign conquests of the Arabs made no change in the political state of the peninsula. The heads of tribes still governed their subjects, as they had governed them from time immemorial; acknowledging, in the distant caliph no more than a general head of the Arab people, and the sacred chief of the prophet's faith. As the downfall of the caliphate was unattended by any shock to Mohammedanism, merely transferring the office of "Commander of the Faithful" from the caliph of Bagdad to the Turkish sultan, it may be easily imagined that the Arabs had little difficulty in changing the objects of their veneration. Their holy cities were visited as before, and by larger caravans, as their faith was more diffused. Though they sent forth a host of conquerors, who subdued more countries in a shorter time than almost any by whom they had been preceded, their country escaped the fate of most victorious nations—that of being conquered in turn. Two revolutions only are recorded as having shaken Arabia since the era of Mohammed; and both of them, like his, were of native growth, and of a religious character.

A tribe of fanatics, under the influence of a leader named Earmath, attempted, in the 297th Hegira (A. D. 890), to effect a change in the ceremonial part of Mohammed's institutions, by rescinding the prohibition of wine, and preventing the pilgrimages to the holy cities; slaughter and desolation marked the progress of the sect for more than sixty years; but, finally, it vanished, leaving no record of its existence, but the memory of its cruelties and enormities.

The other revolution had its rise in the beginning of the last century. Abdul-Waheb, a native of Nedsjed, proclaimed himself a prophet sent from God, to reform the abuses which, in the lapse of years, had crept into the pure doctrines of Mohammed. The Koran, in the creed of Waheb, is the only rule of life, and the Mussulman traditions are entirely rejected. God is to be worshipped in the strictest unity, and every species of adoration paid to Mohammed, or any other created being, is denounced as idolatrous. Simplicity, or, rather, asceticism, seems to be the distinguishing characteristic of the new sect: they acknowledge no saints; they bury their dead without pomp or ceremony: their clothes and houses are as plain as possible; their



mosques have no ornaments whatever ; and they interdict the use of coffee, tobacco, and opium.

The Wahabee doctrine, so called from its founder, found a protector in Ebn Saoud, a Bedouin sheik of Nedsjed. The preacher was proclaimed supreme spiritual head, the soldier, prince, and general of the new worship ; extermination was threatened to all opposers, and, for a while, the progress of the Wahabees was a continued triumph. Mecca was subdued in 1802, Medína in 1804 ; and it seemed as though a repetition of Mohammed's victorious career was about to be enacted by the sons of the first establisher and supporter of the new sect. But in 1813 Mehemet Ali drove them from the western coast, and restored the holy cities to the nominal protection of the Porte. Since that time, the progress of the Wahabees appears to be at a stand ; and though they are still strong in Nedsjed, there is reason to believe that their power is on the decline, and that their numbers are decreasing.

*Schools and Education.*—The learning which gave celebrity to the court of Bagdad in the middle ages does not appear ever to have been naturalized in Arabia. Before the era of Mohammed, ignorance (that is, ignorance of written learning) was so far from being accounted disgraceful, that we learn from the Koran that Mohammed, though of the royal house of Hedjaz, could neither read nor write ; and in the present day, judges are frequently illiterate. It cannot, therefore, be supposed that education in Arabia is either very good or widely diffused. According to Niebuhr, "the Arab princes by no means encourage science ; and, throughout the East, you meet few who merit the title of learned."

Public provision is, however, made for the education of youth ; and a teacher for the children and young slaves is no uncommon part of the domestic establishment of distinguished families ; so that, in the cities, the greater part of the population can read and write—attainments which are also found commonly enough among the sheikhs of tribes in the neighbourhood of the settled districts.

To almost every mosque there is (or *was*) attached a school, where the poorer children may be taught gratuitously ; besides which, there are in every great town more or fewer private establishments where the children of the middle classes are received. The education is of a limited kind, comprising little more than reading, writing, the simple rules of arithmetic, and the doctrines of the Mohammedan religion. School-houses, like the shops, are open to the street, so that the whole process of education is conducted in public ; and, to prevent the distraction incident to such a situation, the readers and repeaters speak in the highest possible key, and accompany their delivery with violent gesticulations.

Besides these, there are in many of the greater towns schools of a higher character ; colleges, in fact, in which the higher sciences—mathematics, astronomy, astrology, and medicine are taught. In the Imanat of Yemen (which is but a small part of the district so called) there are two of these colleges. One of the chief studies in them is the ancient Arabic, now a dead language ; for their learned men are expected to understand clearly, not only the Koran in its original tongue, but also all the ancient commentators, of whom the number is very considerable. Candidates for offices, civil or ecclesiastical, are said to undergo a very rigorous public examination as to their literary and scientific attainments ; but this is mere pretence, the most illiterate persons being frequently appointed to the highest posts, while the best instructed get a precarious living as scribes, teachers, and public reciters

or poets. Hence the wish to acquire a high degree of scholastic knowledge is very weak in the majority of Arabs; and the profession of teacher is far from respectable or lucrative. In many of the towns, the public schools are falling to decay; and those qualified to conduct them prefer wandering over the country like the bards and troubadours of the middle ages, as poets and orators; in which characters, as the reciters or singers of the glories of the nation, they are welcomed and rewarded alike by the sheriffs and sheiks. There is no public provision whatever for female education; and, among the Bedouins, whole tribes can neither read nor write. A very great obstacle to the advancement of education in Arabia is the prejudice of the natives against printing. From the nature of the Arabic characters, interlacing each other, and frequently placed vertically, they appear more handsome, when well written, than when printed. There was not, a few years ago, and perhaps there is not at present, a single printing-press in the country.

*For a further description, see Key, pages 346-7.*

---

### PERSIA, &c.

*Page 287.—Lesson 190.—Map No. 23.*

*Q.* How is Persia bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the Russian province of Georgia, the Caspian Sea, and Independent Tartary; E. by Afghanistan and Beloochistan; S. and S.W. by the Persian Gulf, and that part of the Indian Ocean called the Arabian Sea; and W. by Asiatic Turkey. (M. A.)

*Q.* What river separates it from Tartary?

*A.* Attruck.

*Q.* From Turkey?

*A.* Tigris, and Euphrates.

*Q.* What sea on the north?

*A.* Caspian.

*Q.* Gulf on the south?

*A.* Persian.

*Q.* What mountains extend across Persia?

*A.* Elborz.

*Q.* What desert south of the Elborz Mts.?

*A.* Great Salt.

*Q.* What is the population of Teheran?\*

*A.* 60,000. (M. A.)

---

\* Teheran, the cap. of Persia, is situated in the N. part of the empire, at the southern base of the Elborz Mts., lat.  $35^{\circ} 40'$  N., long.  $51^{\circ} 23'$  E. It is surrounded with a high and strong earthen wall, flanked with numerous towers. The streets are narrow, and the houses have generally a mean appearance. During the summer months, Teheran is hot and unhealthy, and the court, the army, and nearly all the inhabitants encamp on the plains to the southward.

- Q. Ispahan?\*
- A. 150,000. (M. A.)
- Q. Tabreez?†
- A. 30,000. (M. A.)
- Q. Reshd?
- A. 60,000. (M. A.)
- Q. Meshid?‡
- A. 50,000. (M. A.)
- Q. Yezd?§
- A. 40,000. (M. A.)
- Q. Shiraz?||
- A. 30,000. (M. A.)
- Q. Kerman?
- A. 30,000. (M. A.)

*For a further description of Persia, see Key, page 347.*

### AFGHANISTAN.

- Q. What bounds Afghanistan on the north?
- A. Hindoo Koo Mts.
- Q. South?
- A. Beloochistan.
- Q. East?
- A. Indus River.

---

\* Ispahan is situated nearly in the centre of the empire, on the Zenderoud, a small river which loses itself in the desert, in lat.  $32^{\circ} 24' N.$ , long.  $51^{\circ} 50' E.$  It was once the cap. of Persia, and was one of the most splendid cities in the east. Though much decayed, it is still an important place, and has considerable trade and manufactures.

† Tabreez, Tabris or Tauris, is in the N. part of Persia, about 90 ms. W. of the Caspian Sea. It was once a city of great extent, with half a million of inhabitants, but is now greatly reduced in population and importance. It is surrounded with orchards, which are said to extend 30 miles in circumference.

‡ Meshid, or Mushed, is a fortified city in the N. E. part of Persia, in lat.  $36^{\circ} 18' N.$ , long.  $59^{\circ} 35' E.$  It is considered holy on account of its containing a splendid sepulchre, in which are deposited the remains of the Imam Resa, and of the Caliph Haroun al Raschid, which is visited annually by many thousand pilgrims. Meshid has some commerce, and the inhabitants manufacture velvets and fine pelisses.

§ Yezd is a city in the E. part of Persia, in lat.  $32^{\circ} 40' N.$ , long.  $55^{\circ} 40' E.$  Though situated in a sandy desert, it is an important town, and has considerable manufactures and trade; a part of the pop. consists of Parsees, Guebres, or fire-worshippers.

|| Shiraz, the cap. of Fars, is in the S. part of Persia, lat.  $29^{\circ} 37' N.$ , long.  $52^{\circ} 42' E.$  It is beautifully situated amid fine gardens, and is noted as the birth-place of Hafiz, the celebrated Persian poet. This city was greatly injured by the earthquake of 1824. It has been long celebrated for its wine.

Q. West?

A. Persia.

Q. What lake in the west?

A. Zurrah.

Q. What river flows into it?

A. Helmund.

Q. What is the population of Cabul?\*

A. 60,000. (M. A.)

Q. Candahar?†

A. 50,000. (M. A.)

Q. Herat?‡

A. 60,000. (M. A.)

Q. Peshawur?

A. 50,000. (M. A.)

*For a further description of Afghanistan, see Key, page 347.*

### BELOOCHISTAN.

Q. What bounds Beloochistan on the north?

A. Afghanistan.

Q. South?

A. Arabian Sea.

Q. East?

A. Indus River.

Q. West?

A. Persia.

Q. What is the population of Kelat?§

A. 20,000. (M. A.)

\* Cabul, the cap. of Afghanistan, is on the Cabul River, in lat.  $34^{\circ} 26'$  N., long.  $69^{\circ} 5'$  E. It is situate 6000 ft. above the sea, and surrounded with gardens abounding in the choicest fruits. The houses are mostly of wood. The city is surrounded with walls, and is fortified.

† Candahar, the cap. of the province of the same name, is about 200 ms. S. E. of Cabul. It is situated in a fertile district, abounding in fine fruits, and is well supplied with water. This city is built on the site of a more ancient town, said to have been founded by Alexander the Great. Lat.  $32^{\circ} 44'$  N., long.  $65^{\circ} 32'$  E.

‡ Herat is in the W. part of Cabul. It formerly belonged to Persia, but is now the cap. of a small and recently formed independent state, whose extent is not precisely known. It is an ancient city, and has long been important on account of its commerce and manufactures, but has suffered much of late from the inroads of the Afghans and Persians. It is noted for the abundance of the roses produced in the vicinity, and for the excellence of its rose-water. The country around the city excels in fertility.

§ Kelat, the cap. of the most powerful Khan of Beloochistan, is a fortified town of some strength for that part of the world, being surrounded with a strong mud wall of 20 feet high, strengthened with bastions at short intervals. It stands at an elevation of from 7000 to 8000 feet above the sea, and

Q. Gundava?

A. 16,000. (M. A.)

*For a further description of Beloochistan, see Key, page 348.*

## INDEPENDENT TARTARY, &c.

*Page 289.—Lesson 191.—Map No. 23.*

Q. How is Independent Tartary bounded?

A. It is bounded N. by the Russian dominions (Siberia); E. and S.E. by the Chinese Empire; S. by Afghanistan and Persia; and W. and N.W. by the Russian Empire, from which it is separated by the Caspian Sea and Ural River. (M. A.)

Q. What sea on the west?

A. Caspian.

Q. In the centre?

A. Aral.

Q. How long are these?

A. Caspian is 800 ms.; Aral, 240. (M. A.)

Q. What rivers flow into the Caspian Sea?

A. Ural and Attruck.

Q. Into the Sea of Aral?

A. Sihon and Amoo.

Q. How long are these rivers?

A. Ural is 900 ms. long; Attruck, 300; Sihon, 700; Amoo, 1000. (M. A.)

Q. What mountains are in the country?

A. Hindoo-Koosh, Beloor, and Little Altai.

Q. What is the population of Tashkent?

A. 100,000. (M. A.)

Q. Bokhara?\*

A. 150,000. (M. A.)

Q. Khokan?

A. 60,000. (M. A.)

is so cold in winter that the Khan and the principal people leave the town and descend to the lower country.

\* Bokhara, cap. of the Khanate of the same name, is a walled and fortified town. It is situated in a rich plain, embosomed in gardens and trees. Lat. 39° 48' N., long. 64° 26' E. It is a celebrated seat of Mohammedan learning, and has several hundred colleges, which are attended, it is supposed, by 10,000 pupils. The mosques are numerous, and some of them are large and massive structures. This city has an extensive commerce, by means of caravans, with the surrounding countries. It is noted for the abundance and excellence of its fruits, and for the fondness of the inhabitants for tea, which they use in various ways, and at all hours of the day.



Q. Samarcand?\*

A. 20,000. (M. A.)

For a further description of Independent Tartary, see Key, pages 345-6.

## CHINESE TARTARY.

Q. How is Chinese Tartary bounded?

A. It is bounded N. by Asiatic Russia (Siberia); E. and S. E. by those arms of the Pacific known as the Channel of Tartary, the Sea of Japan, the Strait of Corea, and the Yellow Sea; S. by China and Thibet; S. W. by Little Thibet; and W. and N. W. by Independent Tartary. (M. A.)

Q. What are its chief mountains?

A. Little Altaï, Beloor, Thsoug-ling, Thian-chan, Great Altaï, and Kuen-lun. (M. A.)

Q. How high are the last three?

A. Thian-chan, 20,000 ft. high; Great Altaï, 12,000; Kuen-lun, 16,000.

Q. Which are the principal lakes?

A. Balcash, Zaizan Nor, and Lop Nor. (M. A.)

Q. The principal rivers?

A. Cashgar, Irtysh, Selinga, Amoor, Songari, and Usuri. (M. A.)

Q. What great desert in the south?

A. Desert of Cobi. (M. A.)

Q. How long is it?

A. 2000 ms. (M. A.)

Q. What is the population of Goulja?

A. 75,000. (M. A.)

Q. Cashgar?

A. 40,000. (M. A.)

Q. Yarkand?

A. 50,000. (M. A.)

*History, Government, and Laws of China.*—The most conflicting statements have been made with respect to the government of China: while some writers have represented the whole empire as trembling under the yoke of a capricious despot, others have represented the government as administered according to the inflexible rules of justice, and with the greatest moderation and humanity! Both these representations seem to be alike inconsistent with the facts. According to the theory of the government, the emperor is absolute; his will is law; and he is not responsible to any earthly tribunal. In China, as in ancient Rome, fathers have full power over their families, and,

---

\* Samarcand, a once celebrated, but now decayed city, is situated in a fertile valley, surrounded with hills, 120 miles E. of Bokhara. Lat. 39° 50' N., long. 67° E. It was once the capital of the vast empire of Tamerlane, and the remains of that renowned conqueror and his family repose there.

on the same principle, the emperor is held to be the father of the entire Chinese people, and to have the same unlimited power over them that each individual has over his own children. Practically, however, his power is comparatively circumscribed. In China everything is determined by custom, or by immemorial practice, from which it would be highly dangerous for even the emperor to depart. The Chinese is emphatically a government of precedent; and his celestial majesty is, in reality, the creature of custom and etiquette. All employments are bestowed, according to fixed rules, on those who have obtained certificates of proficiency after passing their examinations.

Although the government of China be despotical in its form, and every device be employed to give to the emperor not merely a paternal, but a sacred character, he in fact governs according to long-established rules; and with probably as little admixture of despotism as is to be found in most governments.

Some authors affirm that oppression and mal-governmant exist in China; but this cannot be true to any considerable extent. It seems almost certain that "the most cheerfully industrious, and orderly, and the most wealthy nation of Asia," cannot be greatly misgoverned. The taxation to which the Chinese are subject is trifling compared with that imposed on the Hindoos by the East India Company; and the unceasing industry of the Chinese, and their desire to save and accumulate, prove beyond dispute, that, generally speaking, property is secure.

The emperor is called "the son of heaven" (Teën-tsyé), and the mandarins and other natives not only prostrate themselves when in his presence, but also before a tablet with the inscription "the lord of a myriad years" (Wan-suy-yay). In his character of patriarch, his imperial majesty is not only looked upon as the father of that multitudinous family, the population of his empire, but is also considered the sole dispenser of the blessings of heaven; for the prime canon of belief is, that "the duty of affording to the people sustenance and instruction is imposed on *The One Man*;" while, on occasions of national calamity, he publicly confesses his errors, and acknowledges his misconduct to be the cause of the divine displeasure. The parallel between the relations in which every person stands to his own parents and to the emperor is carried out from the most important functions of the legislature, down to the minutest observances of ceremony, all of which are regularly prescribed by law.

In approaching the imperial throne, every device is employed to create the impression of awe. Dressed in a robe of yellow, the colour worn, say the Chinese, by the sun, the emperor is surrounded by all the pageantry of the highest dignity in the world. All ranks must bow the head to a yellow screen of silk; in the great man's presence no one dares speak but in a whisper, though his person is too sacred to be often exhibited in public, and an imperial despatch is received by the burning of incense and prostration. But with all this he is not allowed to lean back in public; to smoke, to change his dress, or, in fact, to indulge in the least relaxation from the fatiguing support of his dignity.

Next, after the emperor, the court is composed of four principal ministers, two Tartars and two Chinese, who form the great council of state, assisted by certain assessors from the Han-lin or Great College, who have studied the sacred books of Confucius, which form the basis of Chinese law. These may be considered as the cabinet; but the real business of the empire is executed

by the Le-poo, or Six Boards. No. 1. Li-poo is the Board of Official Appointments, which has cognisance of the conduct of all civil officers; 2. Hoo-poo, the Board of Revenue, which regulates all fiscal matters; 3. Le-poo, Board of Rites and Ceremonies, which enforces the customs to be observed by the people; 4. Ping-poo, Military Board; 5. Hing-poo, or Supreme Court of Criminal Jurisdiction; 6. Kung-poo, Board of Public Works. There is also a colonial office, composed of Manchooks and Monguls, so that the respective tributary princes may have confidence in referring whatever concerns their interests to their own countrymen. To each of the provinces a viceroy is appointed by the chief, or Le-poo Board; and every town is presided over by a magistrate, who takes rank according as he is at the head of a *foo*, *tchoo*, or *heên*. Subordinate officers superintend the lesser divisions. All these functionaries are removed every three years; and that no ties of kindred may interfere with the strict discharge of their duties, the viceroys and magistrates are forbidden to form any matrimonial connexion with a family within the limits of their rule. It is honourable to the Chinese that, for these and other state officers, merit alone is the qualification; the son of the poorest peasant or artificer may offer himself as a candidate, and, by talent and application, rise to the highest employments.

Nothing can be more lucid and methodical than the code of laws promulgated for the guidance of the boards and their subordinate officers. Each district has a separate code, adapted to the habits and disposition of those for whom it is framed; and offences, with their punishments, are classed under six different heads, corresponding with the six boards, so that each case is referred to the tribunal against whose authority the offence may have been committed, unless it be one admitting of summary punishment.

The Thsing Leu Lee, being the fundamental laws, and a selection from the supplemental statutes of the penal code of China, has been ably translated by Sir George Staunton. "The most remarkable thing in this code is its great reasonableness, clearness, and consistency; the business-like brevity and directness of the various provisions, and the plainness and moderation of the language in which they are expressed. It consists of a clear, concise, and distinct series of enactments, savouring throughout of practical judgment and European good sense; and if not always conformable to our improved notions of expediency in this country, in general approaching to them more nearly than the codes of most other nations."

This is high, but not undeserved praise. At the same time, however, the Chinese code is not without very serious defects. There is an elaborate attention to trifles; and a perpetual interference on the part of the legislator to enforce duties and observances of no importance, or that had better be left to the discretion of individuals. The frequency of corporal punishment seems extraordinary to Europeans. It is, in fact, the universal penalty: offences the most trivial, and the gravest, whether committed by persons in the highest or the lowest walks of life, being visited by so many strokes of the bamboo! Indeed, the bamboo seems in universal requisition, from the emperor down to the meanest of his subjects; and not only the number of blows, but the length and thickness of the instrument to be used for each offence, are minutely prescribed. The prerogative of mercy is not unfrequently extended, with, however, one exception. In a country which has preserved its institutions unchanged, and its laws unaltered, for 2000 years, it is not surprising that seditious offences should be severely dealt with. The crime of treason, therefore, is visited with remorseless severity. There is much in use a sort

of pillory, called the *cangue*; and torture is employed to extort confession. The police of China is said to be vigilant and efficient; but, as a safeguard against oppression, the name of every person in any way connected with the government is published in a sort of Red Book, of which a corrected edition appears four times a year.

Another type of the patriarchal form of the Chinese government is to be found in the mode in which the state *revenue* is produced; it consists principally of tithes; not paid in the nature of taxation, but as rent, the emperor uniting the character of universal landlord with that of king and father: but though the whole population be tenants-at-will, ejectment is seldom resorted to. There are here no great estates; but if any one happen to hold more land than he can conveniently cultivate, he lets it to another, on condition of his receiving half the produce, out of which he pays the whole taxes. A great part of the poorer peasantry hold lands in this way. The revenue is paid partly in money and partly in kind. The greatest possible discrepancy exists among the estimates that have been given of its amount. It is believed, however, that the entire revenue remitted to the imperial treasury may amount to about £12,000,000 sterling, that is, £10,000,000 in money, and £2,000,000 in produce.

The military service of China is nominally composed of 1,000,000 soldiers, besides the militia and numerous standards of Mongul cavalry; but from this vast number many names must be deducted which are merely entered in the books, and perhaps the whole force does not exceed 700,000 or 800,000. The soldiers are enrolled in the corps quartered in the provinces in which they are born, and which are never quartered anywhere else. The troops are only embodied at certain seasons, being at other periods their own masters. The Tartar troops, inasmuch as they belong to a standing army at a distance from home, receive higher pay, and are more efficient soldiers than the native Chinese; though they also seem to be enervated by their long residence in this tranquil region. The whole army is divided into standards, distinguished by their different borders and colours. The principal weapons are bows and arrows; but they also use clumsy match-locks, and iron guns without carriages. The theory of tactics is well understood; but the practice is very deficient. In so peaceful a country there is but little occasion for military skill; and without intelligent officers, or improved weapons, it is not to be supposed that they should make any effectual opposition to European troops.

The Chinese navy includes, perhaps, 1000 sail, but is very inefficient; the men-of-war are mere junks, which mount a few guns; and there are few large vessels. This imperial navy is commanded by three high admirals and their inferior officers, all of whom are so profoundly ignorant of their business, that the merchant junks are better managed than the imperial cruisers. Gutzlaff draws a deplorable picture of the condition and discipline of the mercantile navy. Few sailors are regularly bred to the service, but are chiefly wretches who have been obliged to flee from their homes. Though there be a nominal commander in every junk, his authority is uniformly disregarded. Every one having the liberty of putting a certain quantity of goods on board, is a certain shareholder, and does nearly what he pleases. The Chinese make use of a compass, invented by themselves, divided into twenty-four parts, beginning at the S., the needle moving freely in a box placed upon a bed of sand. Their pilots having been accustomed to the sea from their youth, and always performing the same voyage,



have a perfect knowledge of the various localities. In the construction of river craft, the Chinese are more skilful; many of these vessels are indeed floating habitations, and thousands of families live in them during their whole lives.

*The Chinese, their Social Condition, &c.*—The Chinese are said, by Mr. Davis, to be a nation of “*incurable conservatives*.” Their rule is to adhere to all that is established, and to reject all that is new. They are the very transcript of the ancient world living in the present day; they wear the same costume, are subject to the same laws, which are administered precisely in the same way, and they exist to all intents and purposes in the same social and intellectual condition as their forefathers did 2000 years ago. This uniformity may be almost said to have been ordained by nature, for it is a remarkable fact that the Chinese are so much like each other in personal appearance, that it is difficult for a European to distinguish between them. We find no diversity in the colour of their hair, no variety of eye, no prominent and striking feature which indicates the place of their birth. They have black, stiff, and strong hair, shaved so as to leave a much-cherished tail depending from the crown; a depressed face, wherein the distinguishing features are not strongly marked, a flat nose, small angular eyes, round and prominent cheeks, a pointed chin, thin eyelids, small beards, middle stature, and strong bones. Long ears and plumpness form their *beau-ideal* of beauty; consequently, to attain the latter, they exercise but little agility.

The aristocracy of rank and wealth are unknown in China. *Distinction is solely to be obtained by learning*; and dignity is only conferred by office. Even the sons of the emperor and their families merge into the common mass, should they not study, so as to become qualified for some official employment. The mandarins, or literary aristocrats, do not obtain their rank except by passing repeated examinations, as to the fairness of which no doubt has ever been surmised, and establishing their superiority over their competitors to the satisfaction of the board of examination. There are nine degrees of mandarins, the highest being viceroys, or governors, and the lowest, collectors of the revenue, &c.: promotion can only be obtained by superior proficiency in the study of the law. The different functionaries are distinguished by the number of buttons in their caps, and other variations of costume.

The natural characteristics of the Chinese are summed up in these words: “The advantageous features of their characters, as mildness, docility, industry, subordination, and respect for the aged, are accompanied by the vices of specious insincerity, falsehood, mutual distrust, and jealousy.” The lower orders are passionately addicted to gambling, for which they have their peculiar cards and dice. That honesty is more valued than practised has been inferred from the notification to be frequently seen in shop windows, that “there is no cheating here,” and from a caution placarded in the public conveyances for travellers, to “take care of their purses.” The insincerity and falsehood laid to their charge, in so far as they really exist, are the natural consequences of the restraints under which they are laid from infancy; of the interference of the law with all their actions; and of their being obliged to suppress those feelings to which, in other countries, full vent would be given. Their attention to etiquette is a consequence of the same principle. Even when peasants visit each other, complimentary cards—the size of which determines the rank of the sender—and polite answers are exchanged. “On the arrival of the guest, considerable difficulty is found in arranging who shall make the lowest bow, or first enter the door, or take the highest seat,



or assume precedency at table, though the host contrives to place his guest in the most elevated position. When conversation commences, the mutual assent to every proposition, the scrupulous avoidance of all contradiction, and the entire absence of every offensive expression or melancholy allusion, show what a sense these people entertain of politeness." The condition of the poor is wretched in the extreme; they are frequently destitute of food, and many are said to perish in the winter season from cold for want of fuel. Begging is common in the large cities, but not more so than in Europe. It is a curious fact, that though the Chinese be remarkable for assisting each other, particularly their own relations, with money or food, they will on no account step out of their way, in case of accident, to save a fellow-creature's life; but this arises from their laws making the person last seen near a corpse answerable for the death. Robbery is not uncommon, but is very seldom accompanied with murder. The drowning of infants, particularly of females, has been said to be *customary* in China; but this is a most unfounded statement. That an enormity of this sort is sometimes committed, is certainly true; but we believe that it is of exceedingly rare occurrence.

The whole of the Chinese nation is divided into families, each of which bear the same surname, and consider each other cousins. These clans are bound to assist each other in any way that may be required; and the most powerful of them act as a salutary check upon local despotism. The *women* of China occupy a lower scale in the estimation of their countrymen than those of other nations. A broad face, diminutive waist, pale features, and feet small to deformity, constitute female beauty in the eyes of a Chinese. To ensure the last, their feet are confined from tender age in shoes calculated to stop their growth, so that the feet of some ladies only measure three inches from toe to heel. Females are universally objects of traffic. When young they are purchased by dealers for the harems of the great, where they remain in splendid seclusion. Marriages depend entirely upon the will of the parents, who *sell* their daughters at from 5000 to 6000 dollars apiece, according to the beauty or rank of the female. Early marriages are universal; no man who can afford the expenses of the ceremony deferring it after the age of 20, and parents get rid of their daughters as soon as they can; even at the early age of 14.

The Chinese may be said to be an *omnivorous* people. The principal part of their food consists of rice, which is generally eaten dry; but in the S. provinces it is mixed with the sweet potatoe in a sort of soup. Vegetables are the chief provision of all ranks, who do not consume a fifth part of the animal food that Europeans do. Pork is the favourite dish, and the head of the ass is esteemed a great delicacy. To eat everything which can possibly give nourishment is the comprehensive principle upon which Chinese diet is regulated; so that dogs, cats, and even rats and mice, are not rejected by them. They are the most expert fishermen in the world; no aquatic creature escapes their vigilance, whether it inhabit the sea, lake, canal, or river; even pools and the ridges of fields are searched for fish. Every kind of meat is minced into small pieces, and is eaten with chopsticks. The Chinese epicure delights in soups made of edible birds' nests, of the swallow species (*Hirundo esculenta*), and imported in great quantities from the E. Islands.

The favourite beverage is tea, drunk out of small cups, which are seldom washed, for that process is thought to diminish the flavour. In this article the Chinese are as great connoisseurs as Europeans are in wines.

Distilled liquors are chiefly made from rice; rum is much used, but grape wine has not been met with. Drunkenness prevails, especially in the N. provinces; but the worst species of debauchery is opium smoking, which, when carried to excess, deprives the victim of strength; he becomes a walking shadow; his eyes are vacant and staring; his whole frame is deranged, and he soon sinks into a premature grave. But it should be observed that these are the consequences of the *abuse* of the practice: when used in moderation, it is said to be comparatively innoxious. The fumes of the drug are inhaled through a peculiar pipe, in a recumbent position, and the smoker soon sleeps. When he awakes, he drinks a cup of tea, and smokes again. The Chinese delight in the drama: they will attend a play for a whole night without being wearied, and recount with ecstasy what they have seen. In their pastimes the women are never associated.

---

## HINDOOSTAN.

*Page 293.—Lesson 191.—Map No. 14.*

*Q.* How is Hindoostan bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the highest mts. in the world, the Himmaleh, which separate it from Thibet and Little Thibet; N.E. by the Burrampooter R., which separates it from British Birmah; S.E. by the Bay of Bengal; S. by the Indian Ocean; S.W. by the Arabian Sea; and N.W. by the Indus R. which separates it from Afghanistan and Beloochistan. (M. A.)

*Q.* What rivers flow into the Arabian Sea?

*A.* Indus, and Nerbuddah.

*Q.* Into the Bay of Bengal?

*A.* Ganges, Burrampooter, Godavery, and Krishna.

*Q.* How long are these?

*A.* Indus is 1700 ms. long; Nerbuddah, 800; Ganges, 1600; Burrampooter, 1500; Godavery, 600; Krishna, 500. (M. A.)

*Q.* What mountains are in the north-east?

*A.* Himmaleh.

*Q.* In the south-west?

*A.* Ghaut.

*Q.* How long and high are the first?

*A.* 1400 ms. long, and  $5\frac{1}{2}$  ms. high. (M. A.)

*Q.* What island lies south of Hindoostan?

*A.* Ceylon.

*Q.* How long and wide is it?

*A.* 300 ms. long, and 150 wide. (M. A.)

*Q.* What gulf separates it from Hindoostan?

*A.* Manaar.

*Q.* What islands lie west and south-west of Hindoostan?

*A.* Coralline Isles?

*Q.* What is the population of Benares?

*A.* 630,000. (M. A.)

Q. Calcutta ?

A. 260,000. (M. A.)

Q. Surat ?

A. 160,000. (M. A.)

Q. Delhi ?

A. 200,000. (M. A.)

Q. Lucknow ?

A. 200,000. (M. A.)

Q. Patna ?

A. 300,000. (M. A.)

Q. Madras ?

A. 400,000. (M. A.)

Q. Bombay ?

A. 230,000. (M. A.)

Q. The other large cities ?

A. Dacca, 200,000 ; Masulipatam, 75,000 ; Poonah, 110,000 ; Hyderabad, 20,000 ; Nagpore, 125,000 ; Baroda, 100,000 ; Oojein, 100,000 ; Ahmedabad, 100,000 ; Umritsir, 100,000 ; Agra, 60,000. (M. A.)

Q. Point out the capitals named in the text.

A. Calcutta, Lahore, Madras, and Bombay.

Q. What is the south-east coast of Hindoostan called ?

A. Coromandel Coast.

Q. The south-west ?

A. Malabar Coast.

Q. On what rivers are the principal cities ?

A. Calcutta is on the E. side of the Hoogly R., an arm of the Ganges ;\* Surat, on the Tapti (properly Taptee) ;† Delhi, on the Jumna ;‡ Lucknow, on the Goomty, a tributary of the Ganges ;§

\* Calcutta, a celebrated city of Hindoostan, province Bengal, capital of the British dominion in the East, and seat of the supreme government, in a level tract on the E. side of the Hoogly R., an arm of the Ganges, about 100 ms. N. of the Bay of Bengal ; lat.  $22^{\circ} 23' N.$ , long.  $88^{\circ} 28' E.$

† Surat, a large town of Hindoostan, cap. of the province of Gujrat, and of the British district of its own name, under the presidency of Bombay, on the Taptec, about 20 ms. above its mouth, in the Gulf of Cambay, and 128 ms. N. by E. from Bombay ; lat.  $21^{\circ} 11' N.$ , long.  $73^{\circ} 7' E.$

‡ Delhi (Sanscr. *Indraprast-ha*), a celebrated city of Hindoostan, presidency of Bengal, lieutenancy of Agra, cap. of the province of its own name, and anciently the metropolis of the Patan and Mogul Empires, on the Jumna, 112 ms. N. N. W. from Agra, 425 ms. N. W. from Benares, and 830 ms. in the same direction from Calcutta ; lat.  $28^{\circ} 41' N.$ , long.  $77^{\circ} 5' E.$

§ Lucknow (Hind. *Lakshmanavate*), a large city of Hindoostan, province and kingdom of Oude, of which it is the capital, on the Goomty, a tributary of the Ganges, about 150 ms. N. W. from Benares, and 265 ms. S. E. by E. from Delhi ; lat.  $26^{\circ} 51' N.$ , long.  $80^{\circ} 50' E.$

Patna, on the Ganges; \* Benares, on the Ganges; † Dacca, extending along a river which unites with the Ganges on the one hand, and the Burrampooter on the other; ‡ Poonah, on the Moolla, a tributary of the Beemah; § Hyderabad, on the Musah, a tributary of the Krishna; || Baroda, on the Wiswamitra; ¶ Oojein, on the Siprah, a tributary of the Chumbul; \*\* Ahmedabad, on the Sabermatty; †† Agra, on the Jumna. ‡‡

\* Patna, a city of British India, presidency of Bengal, and province of Bahar, of which it is the capital; on the S. bank of the Ganges, 144 ms. E. N. E. from Benares, and about 300 ms. N. W. from Calcutta; lat.  $25^{\circ} 37' N.$ , long.  $85^{\circ} 15' E.$

† Benares (*Varanashi*, Sanscr., or *Kasi*, the splendid), a large and celebrated city, and the most populous in Hindoostan, presidency of Bengal, and capital of the province and district of same name; seat of a court of circuit and appeal, and one of the six chief provincial cities in the presidency; at the head of a judicial division; lat.  $25^{\circ} 30' N.$ , long.  $83^{\circ} 1' E.$ ; on the N. W. bank of the Ganges, about 300 ft. above the level of the sea; 65 ms. E. from Allahabad, and 400 ms. N. W. from Calcutta.

‡ Dacca, an inland city of Hindoostan, province of Bengal; formerly very extensive, populous, and rich, and still one of the principal cities of the Bengal presidency, and the seat of a court of circuit and appeal, for the seventh E. district of Bengal. It extends, with its suburbs, for 6 ms. along a r., which, uniting with the Ganges on the one hand, and the Burrampooter on the other, affords the greatest facilities to commerce; lat.  $23^{\circ} 42' N.$ , long.  $90^{\circ} 17' E.$ ; 127 ms. N. E. from Calcutta, and 116 ms. E. S. E. from Moorshedabad.

§ Poonah, a city of British India, presidency of Bombay, formerly the capital of the Mahratta dominions, but now the capital of the district of its own name; on the Moolla, a tributary of the Beemah, 80 ms. E. S. E. from Bombay; lat.  $18^{\circ} 30' N.$ , long.  $74^{\circ} 2' E.$

|| Hyderabad, a city of the Deccan, Hindoostan, capital of the Nizam's dominions; on the Musah, a tributary of the Krishna, 197 ms. W. N. W. from Masulipatam, 270 ms. S. E. from Aurungabad, and 190 ms. W. S. W. from Bejapoor; lat.  $17^{\circ} 15' N.$ , long.  $78^{\circ} 35' E.$

¶ Baroda, an inland city of Hindoostan, capital of the district of its own name, and of the Guicowar's dominions; it is also the seat of a British resident; lat.  $22^{\circ} 21' N.$ , long.  $73^{\circ} 23' E.$ ; 45 ms. N. N. W. from Baroach, and 230 ms. from Bombay.

\*\* Oojein (*Hindoo Ujjayini*, or *Avanti*, the *Ozene* of Ptolemy and the *Periplus*), a city of Central India, province of Malwah, and the former capital of Scindia's dominion, on the Siprah, a tributary of the Chumbul, 34 ms. N. by W. from Indore, and 1698 ft. above the sea; lat.  $23^{\circ} 11' N.$ , long.  $75^{\circ} 51' E.$

†† Ahmedabad, a town of Hindoostan, presidency of Bombay, province of Gujerat, capital of a district of the same name, on the navigable R. Sabermatty; lat.  $22^{\circ} 58' N.$ , long.  $72^{\circ} 37' E.$

‡‡ Agra, a city of Hindoostan, capital province and district of the same name, on the S. W. bank of the Jumna, which, during the season of the



N. B. It will be recollected that several of the rivers on which the above cities are situated, are not given on the Map.

*For a further description, see Key, pages 348-9.*

## CHIN INDIA, OR FARTHER INDIA.

*Page 295.—Lesson 194.—Map No. 23.*

*Q.* How is Birmah bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by Thibet and China; E. by China, Tonquin, and Siam; and S. and W. by the Bay of Bengal and Hindoostan. (M. A.)

*For a further description of Birmah, see Key, page 349.*

*Q.* How is Siam bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the Birman Empire; E. by the Empire of Anam; S. by the Gulf of Siam and Independent Malacca; and W. by the Bay of Bengal and Birman Empire. (M. A.)

*For a further description of Siam, see Key, page 349.*

*Q.* How is Anam bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by China; W. by Siam, and in the rest of its extent by those arms of the Pacific Ocean, known as the Gulf of Tonquin, the China Sea, and the Gulf of Siam. (M. A.)

*For a further description of Anam, see Key, page 350.*

*Q.* How is Malacca bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by Lower Siam, with which it is connected by the Isthmus of Kraw; and is on all other sides surrounded by the Sea, called on the W. the Straits of Malacca; and on the E. the China Sea, and Gulf of Siam. (M. A.)

*For a further description of Malacca, see Key, page 382.*

*Q.* What rivers flow into the Gulf of Martaban?

*A.* The Irrawaddy, and Salwen.

*Q.* Into the Gulf of Siam?

*A.* The Meinam.

*Q.* Into the China Sea?

*A.* The Cambodia.

*Q.* How long are all these rivers?

*A.* The Irrawaddy is 1700 ms. long; Salwen, 900; Meinam, 800; Cambodia, 2000. (M. A.)

*Q.* What isthmus connects Malacca with Siam?

*A.* Kraw.

*Q.* What strait separates it from Sumatra?

*A.* Malacca. (M. A.)

floods, is here about half a mile broad, and at no season fordable, in lat. 27° 11' N., long. 77° 53' E. It is distant from Calcutta 950 ms., Madras 1190, and Bombay 850.



Q. Which is the south cape of Birmah ?

A. Negrais. (M. A.)

Q. Of Malacca ?

A. Romania. (M. A.)

Q. Of Cambodia ?

A. Cambodia. (M. A.)

Q. What is the population of Bankok ?

A. 50,000. (M. A.)

Q. Ava ?

A. 50,000. (M. A.)

Q. Hue ?

A. 60,000. (M. A.)

Q. Saigon ?

A. 100,000. (M. A.)

Q. Umerapoor ?

A. 30,000. (M. A.)

Q. Arracan ?

A. 10,000. (M. A.)

Q. Singapore ?

A. 50,000. (M. A.)

Q. What islands lie west of Siam ?

A. Andaman, and Nicobar. The Nicobar Islands belong to Denmark: there are no Europeans on them at present. (M. G. p. 295.)

## CHINA.

*Page 299.—Lesson 196.—Map No. 23.*

Q. How is China bounded ?

A. It is bounded N. by Chinese Tartary ; E., S. E., and S., by those arms of the Pacific Ocean known as the Yellow Sea, the Eastern Sea, the Strait of Formosa, the China Sea, and the Gulf of Tonquin ; on the land side by Tonquin, Laos, and Birmah ; and W. by Thibet and Chinese Tartary. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, pages 350-1.*

Q. What sea lies between China and Corea ?

A. Yellow.

Q. What rivers flow into the Eastern Sea ?

A. The Hoang-Ho, Yang-tse-Kiang, and Hoang-Kiang.

Q. How long are they ?

A. The Hoang-Ho is 2500 ms. long ; Yang-tse-Kiang, 2800 ; Hoang-Kiang, 700. (M. A.)

Q. What islands lie east of China ?

A. The Loochoo group, and the Island of Formosa.

Q. What island south ?

A. Hainan.

Q. How long are Formosa and Hainan ?

A. Formosa is 220 ms. long ; Hainan, 200. (M. A.)

Q. What mountains are in China ?

A. Peling, and Meling. (M. A.)

Q. What lakes ?

A. The Tonting, Poyang, and Koko Nor. (M. A.)

Q. What is the population of Pekin ?

A. 1,500,000. (M. A.)

Q. Canton ?

A. 1,000,000. (M. A.)

Q. Teentsin ?

A. 700,000. (M. A.)

Q. Nankin ?

A. 500,000. (M. A.)

Q. Voutchang ?

A. 400,000. (M. A.)

Q. Soutchow ?

A. 700,000. (M. A.)

Q. Hangtchow ?

Q. 600,000. (M. A.)

Q. Kingteching ?

A. 500,000. (M. A.)

Q. On what rivers are the five first of the foregoing cities ?

A. Pekin, or Peking, is between the Pei-Ho, and its important affluent the Hoen-Ho ;\* Canton, on the *Hoang-Kiang*, and the E. bank of its affluent, the Pe-Kiang ;† Teentsin on the Pei-Ho, at the influx of the Eu-Ho ;‡ Nankin near the S.

\* Pekin, or Peking (Chin. *Pih-King*, meaning " the northern capital "), the modern metropolis of the Chinese Empire, is situated in the province of Petchelee, in a vast sandy plain, between the Pei-Ho (which empties into the Gulf of Petchelee) and its affluent the Hoen-Ho, within about 5 or 6 ms. of each, and being united to the Pei-Ho by a canal, 562 ms. N. by W. from Nankin, and 100 W. N. W. from the Gulf of Petchelee, in the Yellow Sea ; lat. (observatory)  $39^{\circ} 54' N.$ , long.  $116^{\circ} 27' E.$

† Canton (called by the Chinese *Sang-Ching*, the provincial city), a maritime city of China, on its S. coast, cap. province Quang-tong, residence of the provincial authorities, and the principal emporium of the south. Until recently, it was the only port in China at which Europeans or Americans were allowed to reside. It stands on the N. bank of the *Hoang-Kiang*, and the E. bank of its affluent, the Pe-Kiang, 60 ms. N. N. W. from the China Sea, and 1200 ms. S. by W. from Pekin. Lat.  $23^{\circ} 7' N.$ , long.  $114^{\circ} 14' E.$

‡ Teentsin, a city of China, province of Petchelee, which has a great trade in salt. It is seated on the Pei-Ho, at the influx of the Eu-Ho, 90 ms. from its mouth, and 90 ms. S. E. from Pekin.

bank of the Yang-tse-Kiang;\* Vou-tchang, on the Yang-tse-Kiang.†

*Q.* Point out the Free Ports.

*A.* Canton, Amoy, Foutchow, Ningpo, and Shanghai.

*Q.* Point out Hongkong.

*A.* This island, ceded by the Chinese to Great Britain, is situated at the mouth of Hoang-Kiang River.

*Q.* How is Thibet bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the Kuen-lun and Thsoug-ling Mts., which separate it from Little Bokhara) and the Desert of Cobi; E. by China; S. and S. W. by the great Himmaleh Mts., separating it from Birmah, Assam, and Hindoostan. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, pages 352-3.*

*Q.* What rivers take their rise in it?

*A.* The Burrampooter, Irrawaddy, Cambodia, and Yang-tse-Kiang. (M. A.)

## THIBET AND COREA.

*Page 300.—Lesson 197.—Map No. 23.*

*Q.* How is Thibet bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the Kuen-lun and Thsoug-ling Mts., which separate it from Little Bokhara and the Desert of Cobi; E. by China; S. and S. W. by the great Himmaleh Mts., separating it from Birmah, Assam, and Hindoostan. (M. A.)

*For a further description of Thibet, see Key, pages 352-3.*

*Q.* What rivers rise in it?

*A.* The Burrampooter, Irrawaddy, Cambodia, and Yang-tse-Kiang. (M. A.)

*Q.* How long are these?

*A.* The Burrampooter is 1500 ms. long; Irrawaddy, 1700; Cambodia, 2000; Yang-tse-Kiang, 2800. (M. A.)

*Q.* What mountains on the north?

*A.* Kuen-lun.

*Q.* South-west?

*A.* Himmaleh.

\* Nankin, a city of China, in the province of Keang-soo, near the S. bank of the Yang-tse-Kiang, and about 110 ms. from its mouth, lat.  $32^{\circ} 4' N.$ , long.  $118^{\circ} 24' E.$

† Vou-tchang, a city of China, capital of the province of Hou-quang, and the chief resort of all the commercial people in the empire. As every branch of trade is carried on here, its port, on the Kian-ku, is always crowded with vessels, the r. being sometimes covered with them to the distance of two leagues. It is 655 ms. S. from Pekin. Lat.  $30^{\circ} 3' N.$ , long.  $112^{\circ} 25' E.$

- Q. How high are these?  
 A. Kuen-lun, 16,000 ft.; Himmaleh,  $5\frac{1}{2}$  ms. high. (M. A.)  
 Q. What mountain west of Lassa?  
 A. Mt. Choumalarie.  
 Q. How high is it?  
 A. 29,000 ft.—The highest mountain in the world. (M. A.)  
 Q. What river in Little Thibet?  
 A. Indus.  
 Q. What town is on it?  
 A. Ladak.  
 Q. What is the population of Jigagungar?  
 A. 100,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Of Lassa?  
 A. 24,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. What sea bounds Corea on the west?  
 A. Yellow.  
 Q. East?  
 A. Sea of Japan.  
 Q. How wide is the Sea of Japan?  
 A. 600 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. What country bounds Corea on the north?  
 A. Mantchooria.  
 Q. What sea south?  
 A. Eastern.

*For a further description of Corea, see Key, page 353.*

---

## EMPIRE OF JAPAN.

*Page 302.—Lesson 198.—Map No. 23.*

- Q. What strait separates Corea from Nippon?  
 A. Corea.  
 Q. Which is the largest of the Japan Islands?  
 A. Nippon.  
 Q. The next in extent?  
 A. Jesso.  
 Q. How long is each of these islands?  
 A. Nippon is 850 ms. long; Jesso is 320. (M. A.)  
 Q. What strait separates Nippon and Jesso?  
 A. Matsmay. (M. A.)  
 Q. What island lies north of Jesso?  
 A. Seghalien.  
 Q. How long is Seghalien?  
 A. 600 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. What channel separates it from Mantchooria?  
 A. Channel of Tartary. (M. A.)

*Q.* What islands lie north-east of Jesso?

*A.* Kurile.

*Q.* Which is the largest of these?

*A.* Staten Island. (M. A.)

*Q.* What bounds Japan on the east?

*A.* Pacific Ocean.

*Q.* How long and wide is the Pacific Ocean?

*A.* 11,000 ms. long, and 7000 wide. (M. A.)

*Q.* How far from Japan to Mexico?

*A.* 5100 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* How many inhabitants has Jedo?\*

*A.* 1,300,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Miaco?†

*A.* 500,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Osaca?‡

*A.* 150,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Matsmay?

*A.* 50,000. (M. A.)

*For a further description, see Key, pages 353-4.*

\* Jedo or Yedo, the cap. of Japan, on the S. E. shore of the Island of Nippon, at the head of the Bay of Jedo, in lat.  $36^{\circ} 39'$  N., long.  $140^{\circ}$  E., has long been considered one of the largest cities in the world, ranking in extent and population with Pekin and London. It is surrounded by a ditch and intersected by numerous canals and branches of the River Toniak, which are navigable for vessels of moderate burden. Its streets and squares are numerous, and are kept very clean, and some of the former are of great length. Each street is appropriated to persons of one trade only; lined with covered arcades, and closed at night by gates at each extremity. The houses are mostly two stories high, but built wholly of wood, and destructive fires are very frequent. Jedo has many temples, Buddhist convents, and other large public buildings: the emperor's palace covers a large extent of ground. It has an extensive commerce, but its amount is uncertain.

† Miaco, or Kio, a large city in the Island of Nippon, in the interior, 160 ms. W. of Jedo; lat.  $35^{\circ} 10'$  N., long.  $153^{\circ} 30'$  E. It was once the metropolis of the whole empire, and is still the ecclesiastical capital, being the residence of the dairi or spiritual sovereign, and the centre of the literature and science of Japan. It is situated in a fertile and spacious plain, surrounded by mountains, covered for the most part with numerous temples, monasteries, burying-places, and pleasure-houses. When in full splendour, this city appears to have been about 20 miles in length and 9 or 10 in breadth. It has extensive manufactures and considerable commerce.

‡ Osaca is a flourishing sea-port on the S. coast of Nippon, 255 miles W. of Jedo; in lat.  $34^{\circ} 56'$  N., long.  $134^{\circ} 50'$  E. It is intersected, like Venice, by numerous canals, which are crossed by bridges of cedar.



## AFRICA.

Page 305.—Lesson 200.—Map No. 25.

Q. How is Africa bounded?

A. It is bounded on the W. by the Atlantic Ocean; N. by the Mediterranean Sea; E. by the Red Sea and Indian Ocean; while its S. touches the great Southern Ocean. (M. A.)

AFRICA is a vast peninsula, comprising nearly a third of the world known to the ancients. Its shape is an irregular pyramid, at the southern extremity diminishing almost to a point; so that it has, properly speaking, only three sides.

Africa forms one of the great divisions of the globe; situated to the S. of Europe, and to the W. and S. W. of Asia. It is separated from the former by the Mediterranean Sea and the Strait of Gibraltar; the two continents approaching at the latter within about 15 ms. of each other. It is separated from Asia by the Red Sea, at whose southern extremity, the Strait of Babel-mandeb, the shores of the two continents are only 16 ms. apart. But at the most northerly extremity of the Red Sea, Asia and Africa are united by the Isthmus of Suez; the Mediterranean being there about 50 ms. from the Red Sea.

The most northerly point of Africa, Cape Bon, or, according to some writers, Ras-el-Kroon, or "Cape Horn," is in about  $37^{\circ} 21'$  N. lat.; its most southern, Cape Agulhas, or Cape Needles, is about  $34^{\circ} 50'$  S. lat. The distance between these two points is nearly 5000 ms. Cape Guardafui, in long.  $51^{\circ} 22'$  E., is the most easterly point of Africa; and Cape Verde, in long.  $17^{\circ} 32'$  W., the most westerly. The distance between these capes is about 4500 ms. It contains an area of about 11,000,000 sq. ms. The pop. of this division of the earth is variously estimated at from 50,000,000 to 100,000,000—Mitchell has stated it at 57,000,000. On the whole, Africa seems to be less liberally supplied with moisture than any of the other great divisions of the globe. But while in some parts it has immense tracts of burning desert, in others it is marshy and flooded with water. In those regions which are exempt from these extremes, animal and vegetable life appear in remarkable variety and luxuriance. Of the central portion of this continent, little or nothing is known.

Q. How is Morocco bounded?

A. It is bounded N. by the Mediterranean Sea, and Strait of Gibraltar; E. by Algiers, the Beled-el-Jerid, and the Sahara desert; S. by the Sahara Desert; and W. and N. W. by the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

Q. Capital?

A. Morocco.

THE EMPIRE OF MOROCCO (called by the natives *Moghrib ul Acsa*, i. e. the "farthest west;" the *Mauritania Tingitana* of the ancient Romans,) is situated in the N. W. part of Africa, between the 28th and 36th degs. of N. lat., and the 1st and 12th of W. long. Length, from N. E. to S. W., above 700 ms.; greatest breadth, perhaps 300 ms. Area estimated at 190,000 sq. ms. Pop. 6,000,000.

*Q.* How is Algiers bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the Mediterranean Sea; E. by Tunis; S. by the Atlas Mts., which separate it from the Beled-el-Jerid, or Country of Dates; and W. by Morocco, from which it is divided by the Desert of Angad. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Algiers.

ALGIERS (called by the Arabs *Al-Jez-air*, and by the French *Algeria*) is a territory of N. Africa, forming one of the Barbary States, between  $34^{\circ}$  and  $37^{\circ} 7'$  N. lat., and  $8^{\circ} 40'$  E. and  $2^{\circ}$  W. long. It includes the greater part of the *Numidia* and *Mauritania Tingitana* of the ancients. Length, above 500 ms.; its breadth, which is greater in the E. than in the W., varies from about 40 to about 200 ms. Area estimated at 90,000 sq. ms. The pop. has been variously estimated at from 1,500,000 to 2,300,000.

*Q.* How is Tunis bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. and E. by the Mediterranean Sea and Tripoli; S. by the Beled-el-Jerid; and W. by Algiers. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Tunis.

TUNIS (called by the inhabitants *Too-nis*) is a state or regency of N. Africa, nominally dependent on the Turkish empire, between  $33^{\circ}$  and  $37^{\circ} 20'$  N. lat., and  $8^{\circ} 30'$  and  $11^{\circ} 20'$  E. long. Length, from N. to S., about 300 ms.; greatest breadth, from E. to W., near 170 ms. Area, vaguely estimated at about 50,000 sq. ms. Pop., estimated at from 1,000,000 to 1,800,000.

*Q.* How is Tripoli bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. and N.E. by the Mediterranean Sea; S. E. and S. by the Great Desert; and S.W. and W. by the Beled-el-Jerid and Tunis. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Tripoli.

TRIPOLI (Anc. *Tripolis*) is the most easterly of the Barbary States, between  $29^{\circ}$  and  $33^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $10^{\circ}$  and  $22^{\circ}$  E. long.\* Area, estimated at 100,000 sq. ms. Pop. estimated at from 500,000 to 2,000,000.

Barbary is that portion of N. Africa which includes the foregoing states, together with the interior region called Beled-el-Jerid, or Country of Dates. It extends westward from Egypt to the shores of the Atlantic. The area is probably about 570,000 sq. ms., and the pop. 10,000,000.

*Q.* How is Egypt bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the Mediterranean; E. by the little r. El Arish, on the border of Palestine, the Desert of Idumea and the Red Sea; S. by Nubia, its southern limit, from the oldest time, having been fixed at the cataracts of Assouan; and W. by the Libyan Desert. (M. A.)

---

\* This includes the district of Barca, which forms the E. portion of Tripoli.

Q. Capital?

A. Cairo.

There have been very discordant statements as to the boundaries of this famous country. There cannot, of course, be any doubt as to its N. limit, which is formed by the Mediterranean; and it seems to have been generally agreed from a very remote period that its S. limit should be fixed at Syene, now Assouan, or rather at Philæ, in lat.  $24^{\circ} 3' 45''$  N. But the difficult point is to determine its breadth. From Philæ to near Cairo, the Nile, in most parts, flows through a narrow valley, bounded on either side by a ridge of hills, or inferior mountains: at Cairo these ridges diverge, that on the E. to Suez, and that on the W. in a N.W. direction to the Mediterranean. Some authors identify Egypt with the tract lying between the mountain-chains now referred to; while others, regarding the Nile as the source of life and vegetation in Egypt, restrict its territory within the limits covered by the inundation of the river. But from the age of the Ptolemies down to the present day, the desert country lying between the valley of the Nile and the Red Sea has been uniformly included in Egypt. On the W. side the mountain ridge already noticed seems to be its only natural boundary. Still, however, it has been usual to reckon the oases that lie within 100, or even 200 ms. of this limit, as belonging to Egypt.

From Cape Bourlos, on the coast, lat.  $31^{\circ} 36'$  N., to Philæ, the distance N. and S. in  $70^{\circ} 32'$ : about 452 geographical, or 520 English ms. But the distance by water and the extent of the alluvial territory are considerably greater than would appear from this, because of the many and considerable bends of the river. The breadth of the Egyptian coast is 160 ms.; but in ascending to Cairo (104 ms. from Cape Bourlos) the cultivated tract tapers off to a point, and the rest of the country is chiefly comprised in the narrow valley of the Nile; which, however, at Beni-souf, 83 (by water) ms. higher, spreads to the W. to form the vale of Faïoum, a circular valley of great fertility and beauty, measuring about 40 ms. from E. to W., and 30 ms. from N. to S. Thence to Assouan, the valley of the Nile is mostly confined within very narrow limits. The whole cultivable territory of Egypt, including its lateral valleys, has been estimated at 16,000 sq. ms., or about half the area of Ireland.

Egypt is naturally divided into—1. The Delta, or Lower Egypt. 2. The Valley of the Nile, comprising Central and Upper Egypt. 3. The E. Desert. 4. The W. Desert, and Oases. The political divisions are the Bahari, or Lower Egypt (identical with the Delta); the Vostani, or Central; and the Said, or Upper Egypt.

Q. How is Nubia bounded?

A. It is bounded N. by Egypt; E. by the Red Sea; S. by Abyssinia and the country of the Shilluks; and W. by the Desert of Libya. (M. A.)

Q. Capital?

A. New Dongola.

NUBIA (Anc. *N. Ethiopia*) is an extensive tract of E. Africa, between the S. boundary of Egypt and the N. limit of Abyssinia, between lat.  $13^{\circ}$  and  $24^{\circ}$  N., and long.  $30^{\circ}$  and  $39^{\circ}$  E. Estimated area, 360,000 sq. ms. Pop. unknown. The country is divided into Lower Nubia, or Nubia Proper, extending from Egypt to the N. frontier of Dongola, and thence to the

junction of the river Atbara or Tacazzé with the Nile : and Upper Nubia, which includes Shendy, Halfay (anc. *Meroë*), and Sennaar.

*Q.* How is Abyssinia bounded ?

*A.* It is bounded N. by Nubia ; E. by the Red Sea ; S. partly by the Mohammedan kingdom of Adel and the country of the Somaules, and partly by unknown regions occupied by the barbarous Galla tribes ; and W. by the country of the Shilluks and other imperfectly known regions.\* (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital ?

*A.* Gondar.

ABYSSINIA is an extensive country bordering on the Red Sea, the boundaries of which are but imperfectly known. It stretches from about lat.  $9^{\circ}$  to  $15^{\circ} 40'$  N., and from long.  $34^{\circ}$  to the Red Sea. From W. S. W. to E. N. E. it extends about 600 ms. ; and from E. S. E. to W. N. W., about 400 ms. Area estimated at about 280,000 sq. ms. Pop. variously reckoned at from 2,500,000 to 5,000,000.

It was included in the Ethiopia (from *αἰθίοψ*, *a man burned by the sun, or of a dark colour*) of the ancients. The name Abyssinia, or more properly Habessinia, from the Arabic *Habesch*, signifying a mixture or confusion, has been given to the country by the Arabic and Portuguese geographers, and indicates the supposed Arabic origin of the people, and their subsequent intermixture with the Africans. The Abyssinians do not use this name ; and either assume that of the provinces in which they live, or call themselves *Itjopians*, and their country *Manghesta Itjopia*, or kingdom of Ethiopia, a name given it by the Greeks during their ascendancy at Axum.

This country comprised, when it became first known to the Portuguese, 350 years ago, a single state or empire, under the government of an absolute and despotic sovereign, of considerable power and influence. It was repeatedly visited from time to time, but public curiosity had gradually subsided in regard to this part of the world for almost a century, when it was revived, in the year 1790, by the publication of Bruce's Travels. Many of the statements of this individual were so extraordinary that their authenticity was very generally doubted : subsequent investigations have, however, confirmed most of the leading features of his work, although some are still considered of doubtful accuracy.

The ancient government of Abyssinia is now extinct ; its force has been gradually weakened, partly by the rebellion of the governments of the different provinces, and partly by the irruptions of the Galla and other savage hordes, who have conquered and settled some of its finest provinces. The whole region is now split into an endless variety of petty states, the limits of which are perpetually changing, and between which interminable contests constantly prevail. The most important states of Abyssinia at the present time are ; Tigre, in the E. ; Amhara, in the W. ; and Shoa or Shwa, in the

---

\* The greater part of the frontier lands on the W. and S. consists of wild regions occupied by the Galla, who always ravaged, and have recently conquered a large portion of the Abyssinian monarchy. It is difficult even to guess the dimensions of a region of which there are no fixed limits, measurements, or surveys.



S. The latter seems to be the most flourishing, and to be under a more stable government than any of the others. It has recently excited some attention on account of an embassy having been sent to its sovereign in the year 1841 by the British East India Company.

Q. How is Liberia bounded ?

A. It is bounded N. and N. E. by Senegambia ; E. by Upper Guinea ; and S. and S. W. by the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

Q. Capital ?

A. Monrovia.

LIBERIA is a district on the W. coast of Africa, lying on both sides of the R. St. Paul, which falls into the Atlantic in about  $6^{\circ} 20'$  N. lat., and  $10^{\circ} 46'$  W. long. A portion of this country was purchased by the American Colonization Society, in 1821, for the purpose of colonizing such of the African race as had been, or thereafter should be, manumitted in different parts of the United States.\*

Q. How is Ashantee bounded ?

A. It is bounded N. by the Mts. of Kong ; E. by Dahomey ; S. by the Gold Coast of the Gulf of Guinea ; and W. by the Assinee, a large r., which is usually reckoned the line of demarcation between the Gold and Ivory Coast, and forms, for some miles from its mouth, the W. limit of Ashantee. (M. A.)

Q. Capital ?

A. Coomassie.

ASHANTEE is an extensive kingdom of W. Africa, lying along the Gold Coast of Guinea ; extending from  $4^{\circ} 37'$  to  $9^{\circ} 50'$  N. lat., and from  $4^{\circ} 48'$  W. to  $1^{\circ} 10'$  E. long., being about 280 ms. in length, and 250 ms. in breadth. It may contain about 60,000 sq. ms. Bowditch estimates the pop. of Ashantee Proper at 1,000,000 ; and that of the whole empire at about 3,000,000. The men are well made, more muscular on the coast than in the interior, free from the more revolting peculiarities of negro form and feature, and some of them have even aquiline countenances. The higher order of females (those not subject to hard labour) may be said to be handsome, with features rather of an Indian than an African mould. Both sexes are cleanly, washing from head to foot every day, and afterwards anointing themselves with the grease of the shea or butter-tree ; a good cosmetic, and a preservative of the skin in this hot climate. The clothes of the better classes are convenient, and not ungraceful, consisting of immense cloaks, exactly like the Roman toga, manufactured of the most costly silks.

---

\* The most contradictory accounts respecting the present condition and prospects of this colony, are to be found in works of a highly respectable character. McCulloch represents them in a very unfavourable light, while Balbi, who appears to base his statements on the testimony of impartial observers, says that they are tolerably prosperous (*assez prospère*), and that the noble object for which the colony was established—that of diffusing civilization and Christianity among the benighted Africans—has, to a considerable extent, already been attained. If we turn from these works to the publications of our own country, we shall find a still more striking discrepancy to prevail.



The war-dress substitutes for this a close vest, covered with metal ornaments and scraps of Moorish writing, as spells against danger, loose cotton drawers, and large boots of dull red leather. The superior chiefs have gold breast-plates; and all who can procure them wear gold ornaments in profusion. Some of these are well wrought, others are merely lumps of rock-gold hung to the wrist; the war cap consists of gold or gilded rams'-horns, supporting an extravagant plume of eagle's feathers. In peace, the head-dress is usually a fillet. The lower orders wear nothing but a piece of cloth fastened round the waist. Bosman enumerates five degrees, or orders of society—the king, the caboceers, the gentry, the traders, and the slaves. Besides the king, however, there is, in fact, but one distinction, that of slave and freeman; to the latter appertain, of course, all the better employments of war, state, &c.; to the former, all the meaner and more laborious occupations, of which the women get much more than their fair share. The caboceers (magistrates of towns and villages) are taken indiscriminately from the gentry; and these, again, are merely such as have enriched themselves by trade or inheritance, and who, not unfrequently, were born slaves. The occupations of trade are practised alike by the poorer freemen and the better class of slaves. The intercourse between the sexes is on the worst possible footing. Marriage is effected by paying a sum of money to the parents of the girl, and a family feast. The property of the man and woman (if she have any) does not become common. Polygamy is allowed; the king's wives amounting to the extravagant number of 3333, a mystical number which is carefully kept up, to enable him to reward any distinguished caboceer by the *present of a woman*, but never exceeded. Few, however, except the richest individuals, have more than one wife, and very many have none. The food of the higher classes is very various; soup of dried fish, owls, beef, or mutton; wild hog, deer, and monkey's flesh! together with the whole host of vegetables which the soil produces. Well-stocked and well-regulated markets are held in the towns, for the supply of these necessities as well as for articles of clothing and European manufacture. The poorer classes, excepting household slaves, live almost exclusively on fish and dhourrah. The common drink is palm-wine, one species of which is said to create a ravenous appetite.

*Q.* How is Dahomey bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the Mts. of Kong; N. E. and E. by Yarriba and Benin; S. by the Slave Coast; and W. by the Rio Volta and Logos Rivers, which separate it from the kingdom of Ashantee. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* Abomey.

DAHOMÉY consists of an immense plain rising gradually from the sea to the Kong Mountains, which are here from 150 to 200 ms. inland. The Volta and Logos Rivers, bound it on the W., but, excepting these, there seems to be no stream of any considerable importance. The country is, however, well watered, and interspersed with small marshes. The soil is wholly alluvial; and the surface is covered with a vegetation of unbounded luxuriance; Oranges, limes, guavas, and other tropical fruits, melons, pine-apples, yams, &c., grow wild; and maize, millet, and other grains, potatoes, indigo, cotton, sugar, tobacco, and spices are successfully cultivated. In some parts the country is covered with dense forests, the retreat of lions, hyenas, leopards,

elephants, and overgrown serpents. Deer and domestic animals are plentiful. Previously to the early part of the last century this country was divided into a number of petty states. The Dahomans, by whom it was overrun and laid waste, came from the interior of the continent. They are said to be hospitable to strangers, brave and resolute; and these, if they exist, would appear to make up the whole amount of their good qualities. Their disposition seems, from their conduct, to be a compound of that of the tiger and the spaniel, exhibiting the utmost ferocity and thirst for blood with the most abject servility. All the most arbitrary forms of Eastern despotism seem to be mild and free, when compared with that established in this wretched country. It is singular, too, that this despotism is not founded upon force and terror, nor is it connected with anything timid or effeminate in the character of the people. It rests on a blind and idolatrous veneration for the person of the sovereign, as for that of a superior being. He is the absolute master of the lives and properties of his subjects, and disposes of them at pleasure. It is a crime in the latter to suppose that the king eats, drinks, sleeps, or performs any of the functions of an ordinary mortal.

*Q.* How is Benin bounded ?

*A.* It is bounded N. by Yarriba ; E. by the Lower Niger ; S. by the Gulf of Guinea ; and W. by Dahomey. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital ?

*A.* Benin.

BENIN is situated near the E. extremity of the Gulf of Guinea, between  $4^{\circ}$  and  $6^{\circ} 30'$  N. lat., and  $4^{\circ}$  and  $8^{\circ}$  E. long. Benin is about 250 ms. in length by 200 ms. in extreme width, and contains probably not less than 40,000 sq. ms. On the coast, the country is level, but it rises gradually, till, on the northern frontier, the continuation of the Kong Mountains attains an elevation of 2500 ft. It is well watered by the delta of the Niger. The W. branch of this delta is the stream which has always been called the River of Benin ; farther E. is the main limb, formerly called the Nun ; but demonstrated by Lander to be the Niger. Under the influence of abundant irrigation and a tropical sun, the productions of the earth are very numerous. They do not, however, differ from those of other parts of the same coast, except that wood is rather more abundant. The hippopotamus is more common than in other countries of Guinea ; but, in other respects, the animals of Benin are the same as those of Guinea generally ; and the same remark will apply to the habits and customs of the natives ; the same arts, with the exception of gold working, for gold is not found in Benin, the same government ; the same religion (Fetichism) ; the same festivals, marked by the same disgusting cruelties, are observed here as in Ashantee, with one additional aggravation, namely, the annual sacrifice of human victims to the power of the sea. Benin is well peopled ; the capital contains 15,000 inhabitants, and the town of Warre 5000. Clapperton also found the N. frontier, very populous, as did Lander that of the E., upon the banks of the Niger. Previously to the nominal abolition of the slave-trade, this country was the great theatre of that traffic ; and is now said to be carried on to a greater extent than ever. An annual fair is held at Bonny, on the coast, at which not fewer than 20,000 slaves are sold, of whom it is alleged 16,000 are brought from the single district of Eboe, a port of Benin, on the right bank of the Niger. Some few of these are sold to native masters, as the chiefs of Old and New Calabar. But the vast majority are disposed of to

foreign traders, and are shipped principally for Brazil and Cuba. A more harmless trade, and to a considerable extent, is carried on in salt, palm oil, and blue coral.

*Q.* How is Congo bounded ?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the R. Congo or Zaire, which separates it from Loango ; S. by the R. Dande, dividing it from Angola ; W. by the S. Atlantic Ocean ; and E. by the Crystal Mts. or Mts. of the Sun, &c. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital ?

*A.* St. Salvador.

Congo is a country in Lower Guinea, to which various boundaries have been assigned by the old and more recent travellers. The Portuguese, who discovered it in 1487, included in Congo all the coast of W. Africa from cape Lopez Gonsalvo (Loango), in lat.  $0^{\circ} 37' S.$ , long.  $8^{\circ} 35' E.$ , to cape Negro, in lat.  $15^{\circ} 50' S.$ , long.  $11^{\circ} 55' E.$ ; for they found the whole of that tract inhabited by negro tribes, resembling each other in every respect, and subject to one paramount chief, called Mani-Congo (Sovereign of Congo) ; but in process of time this empire became dismembered ; inferior chiefs threw off their allegiance and erected separate kingdoms, which are at present known as Angola, Loango, Benguela, and, lastly, Congo Proper, the subject of this article.

According to Ritter, Congo consists of two distinct regions: that next to the sea, or the *littoral*, is low and flat, is traversed by many streams, and abounds in sandy deserts, but is elsewhere very fertile. The climate in this region is exceedingly unfavourable ; and pestilential emanations, and swarms of noxious animals, expose the lives of the inhabitants to perpetual danger. The other region consists of the terraces, or acclivities, ascending from the plain to the high table-land in the interior. This is by far the finest part of the country, and the richest, and most populous. The River Zaire, which descends from the interior, has its great cataracts in passing through this region.

*Government, Population, &c.*—If we may depend on the traditions of the people, who have neither annals nor history, Congo was formerly a powerful empire under a single sovereign, or rather absolute despot. But it is evident from the accounts of the early travellers, that, when first visited by Europeans, the government of Congo did not differ materially from its present form ; and that it consisted of a sort of confederacy of small states under a principal sovereign. It appears, however, pretty certain that the power of the superior monarch has materially declined during the last 200 years. Congo is now split into an infinite number of petty states, each governed by a *chenou* or chief. These chieftainships would, in Europe, be called fiefs, held under a principal sovereign, called *lindy* or *blindy N' Congo*, residing at Banza Congo (St. Salvador). Most of these chiefs affect, however, a nearly total independence ; and being all despots, and frequently at war with each other, and with the principal sovereign, the country is almost always in a state of frightful anarchy. At the death of a *chenou*, it is not his son, but his brother or maternal uncle that succeeds him.

The inhabitants are said by Tuckey to be a mixed race ; but the Portuguese never visited the country in such numbers as to produce any impression on the physical character of the people ; and the Congoese are certainly

one of the least favoured negro varieties. Generally, they seem to be sunk in the lowest state of degradation. They are incorrigibly indolent; have little or no clothing; and though they raise Indian corn, agriculture is in the lowest state, and they frequently suffer the extremity of famine. Their religion is the grossest species of Fetichism. The Portuguese having established missions in different parts of the country, the natives sometimes exhibit in their religion an odious mixture of Christianity and idolatry. They are prone to all sorts of excesses and debauchery, and the women are degraded to the condition of beasts of burden. Still, however, they are not wholly destitute of good qualities; and are said to be sincere, hospitable, and compassionate. Having been long a principal seat of the slave trade, most of the disorders that prevail are doubtless owing to the enormities growing out of that traffic. This is said to occasion perpetual wars; the slaves being mostly prisoners taken in battle, or kidnapped on the public roads. The Congoese are said frequently to decapitate their prisoners, and burn their bodies; and if such barbarity be practised when the prisoners may be sold, the presumption would seem to be that it would become much more prevalent were the traffic put an end to.

The country has been represented as very populous. Carli, one of the early missionaries, gravely reports that a king of Congo marched against the Portuguese with an army of 900,000 men. But it is evident that a country in the state we have described cannot be thickly peopled; and, in point of fact, Tuckey states that the capital of a petty state that he visited, did not contain more than 100 huts and 600 persons. In Embomma he found 60 huts, with 500 inhabitants; and at Inga 70 houses, in which not more than 300 persons resided. His observations, however, in the interior were limited; and he admits that the upper banks of the Zaire were considerably more populous than those towards the coast; but still it is certain that the accounts of the extraordinary population of the country have little better foundation than the imagination of the writers. According to the missionaries, the capital of the country, which they divided into six provinces, was built on a mountain about 150 ms. from the sea, and was called by them St. Salvador. They speak in extravagant terms of the beauty and salubrity of the situation. Carli states that it contained 40,000 inhabitants; and had several Christian churches, and a school under the direction of the Jesuits. But Metolla reports that in 1668 St. Salvador had suffered so much from the ravages of war, that the sovereign had transferred his residence to Lemba, and that the former had become a den of robbers. There are no subsequent accounts of St. Salvador on which it would be safe to place any reliance.

*Q.* How is Angola bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the Dande R., which separates it from Congo; E. by the interior kingdom of Matemba; S. by the Coanza R.; and W. by the S. Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* St. Paul de Loando.

ANGOLA, Dongo, or Ambonde, a kingdom of the W. coast of Africa, extending from  $8^{\circ} 25'$  to  $9^{\circ} 20'$  S. lat., and from  $14^{\circ}$  to  $18^{\circ}$  or  $19^{\circ}$  E. long. On the N. it is separated from Congo by the Dande; on the S. the Coanza divides it from Benguela; on the W. it has the Atlantic Ocean; and on the E. the W. portion of the interior kingdom of Matemba. It lies nearly paral-



lel to the equator, being about 350 ms. in length, from E. to W., about 60 ms. in width, from N. to S. ; containing an area of probably 17,000 or 18,000 sq. ms.

This country is properly a part of Congo, from which, however, it has been politically separated since the middle of the 16th century, when a chief, whose name or *title* was *Angola*, made himself independent of the King of Congo, and gave its present designation to his new kingdom, the native name of which was Dongo, or Ambonde. It is very powerful among the neighbouring states, the paramount authority of its monarch being acknowledged by several districts, some of them greatly exceeding itself in extent.

*Physical Character.*—Angola is generally mountainous, with few plains, except upon the sea-shore. The land appears, however, to be making advances on the sea, and forming islands, which are wholly of an alluvial and level character ; such is the Isle of Loanda, lying a mile from the coast, and forming, with the Palmareinho, one of the most convenient harbours on the W. coast of Africa. The cape itself is also a plain of the same nature, and very evidently in a state of progress westward.

The country is extremely well watered ; the principal streams are the Coanza, Benga, and Danda, which run nearly parallel to each other, and to the equator ; the first and last forming the S. and N. boundary of the country.

*Population, Customs, &c.*—The population is dense for a barbarous country, the monarch being called Incue, from the great number of subjects under his command. The pop. is estimated at from 2,000,000 to 3,000,000. The capital, St. Paul de Loanda, contains only 3000. The natives have few of the negro peculiarities in form or feature : they are of ordinary stature, well limbed, and, but for their colour, very like the Portuguese, by whom they are surrounded. Blue eyes and red hair are not uncommon among them. Society is divided into four classes, two free and two slaves ; the first two consisting of nobles and husbandmen or artificers ; the others of slaves, native born, and those acquired by war or foreign purchase. Marriage is an extremely simple ceremony, a mere agreement between the husband and the father of the woman. The appearance of the first tooth in children is an important epoch, the infant being then carried from house to house, and gifts extorted from friends and strangers. For the rest, they do not differ much from other negroes. Dancing is a favourite diversion, and a religious rite ; and, like other African people, their ceremonies are defiled with blood and cruelty. Money is of several kinds : *marked cloths*, the shell of a small fish called *simbo*, a red wood brought from Matemba, and iron, which last was introduced by the Portuguese. The year is divided into 12 months, and the week into 4 days, of which the last is observed as a sabbath. The country is parcelled out into a number of little lordships, each under a magistrate called a *sova*. The religion of the bulk of the people is Fetichism, differing in nothing from that on the coast of Guinea ; but there are many Christian families among the natives, and at one time the Jesuits had converted nearly the whole population, and established a regular form of church government. But the effect of their labours has now nearly vanished, and the negroes have relapsed into the idolatrous rites of their ancestors. The language is less barbarous, and more uniform, on this coast than in most other parts of Africa ; the whole country between the Coanza and the Zaire speaks a dialect of the same tongue, which, according to Degrandpre, is extremely musical and flexible ; with a perfect syntax, and bearing in some points a re-



semblance to the Latin. He imagines that this fact may prove a guide to the obscure history of these countries; may it not, however, be owing solely to the long intercourse which has existed between the natives and the Christian priests from Portugal and Italy.

*Q.* How is Benguela bounded?

*A.* It is bounded by the Coanza R. on the N.; by part of Matamba on the N. E.; on the S. and E. by unexplored regions; and on the west by the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

According to this outline, it extends from  $9^{\circ} 20'$  to  $16^{\circ}$  S. lat., and from  $12^{\circ}$  to  $18^{\circ} 30'$  E. long., having a mean length of 460 ms., a breadth of 270 ms. and an area of considerably more than 100,000 sq. ms.

*Q.* Capital?

*A.* St. Felipe de Benguela.

Benguela appears to be mountainous to a considerable extent; the land rising sometimes so high that a very great degree of cold is experienced; but, like other African elevations, it rises in masses rather than peaks, and abounds in terraces, table-lands, and valleys, to their very summits. The rivers are numerous, and, as the direction of the mountains is from N. E. to S. W., most of them flow into the Atlantic Ocean. Springs are so abundant, that in almost every part of the country water may be found by digging to the depth of two feet. The natural consequence of this abundant moisture in tropical countries is observed in Benguela, and nowhere is vegetation more abundant or more varied. Dense forests of cedars, palms, baobab, date-trees, tamarinds, with every other tropical tree, and some that belong to more temperate climates, clothe the sides and tops of the mountains, intermixed with vines, bananas, ananas, and all the finest species of tropical fruit. Grain is not very abundant; but this arises from the want of skill or industry in the natives, since there is no species of corn that might not be successfully cultivated upon some part of the high or low lands. Lions, tigers, elephants, rhinoceroses, hippopotami, and other large animals, are extremely numerous; in addition to which, the zebra is very commonly met with, and, in short, every wild animal for which Africa is noted is found within the limits of Benguela. The elk (which is also a native here) is particularly prized, from its being supposed that one of its hoofs has power to cure the epilepsy; deer and antelopes are abundant. Cattle, sheep, and goats, are very numerous, but it does not seem that horses are at all plentiful. Of birds, Battel reports that peacocks are found wild in the interior as numerous as any other kind: that they are accounted sacred and kept tame about the graves of the great chiefs. The ostrich is also found here, with all the reptiles, dangerous and harmless, for which this part of Africa is so much reputed, crocodiles being especially numerous and powerful. The mountains are known to yield copper, sulphur, petroleum, and crystals, and are supposed to possess gold and silver. Some of the rivers unquestionably bring down the former, but probably in small quantities, which the natives work into the handles of their hatchets.

A large portion of Benguela is inhabited by petty tribes of independent and very savage barbarians, whose habits and manners do not differ from those of other negroes, with the exception of one — the Gagas, Giagas or Iagas, a wandering horde of robbers, which appear to approximate nearer to perfect barbarism than any other, even of the African races. Travellers

of 200 years ago describe these savages as follows, and nothing more recent is known of them :—They are of no tribe nor nation, destroy all their own children, and keep up their strength and numbers by stealing those of 12 or 13 years of age from the countries which they overrun. They are bold and skilful warriors, but ruthless cannibals, without the slightest idea of art or industry, so that wherever they encamp, they destroy all around, and then depart to inflict the same desolation on some other district. They appear frequently to cause a famine, where such a calamity would otherwise seem to be impossible, verifying the animated description of the locust : “ Before them is a garden, behind them a barren desert.” Battel, who was their prisoner for more than two years, has left a full and curious account of these savages, which carries the impress of truth on every line. Benguela was formerly subject to Angola, at least nominally, and was accounted one of the 17 provinces of that kingdom. The Portuguese have long had settlements on the coast and the interior, but their power does not seem to extend far beyond their forts.

*Q.* How is Cape Colony bounded ?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the country of the Hottentots, from which it is separated N. W. by the Koussie R. ; E. by Caffraria, from which it is separated by the Great Kei R. ; and S. and W. by the Indian and Atlantic Oceans. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital ?

*A.* Cape Town.

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE (COLONY of), or Cape Colony, an extensive territory, so called from the above cape, belonging to Great Britain, in S. Africa ; comprising the greater portion of the extremity of that continent S. of lat.  $29^{\circ} 30'$  S., and between long.  $17^{\circ}$  and  $27^{\circ} 30'$  E. It has a coast line of about 1150 ms., broken by numerous bays, the principal of which are St. Helena, Saldanha, and Table bays on the W., and False bay, St. Sebastian's, Mossel, Plettenburg, St. Francis, and Algoa bays on the S. coast. Length of the territory, E. to W., about 550 ms. ; average breadth, N. to S., 240 ms., giving an area of nearly 130,000 sq. ms. Pop. in 1838, 156,616.

*Q.* How is Mozambique bounded ?

*A.* It is bounded N. by Zanguebar ; E. by that part of the Indian Ocean known as the Channel of Mozambique ; S. E. by Delagoa Bay ; S. by the country of the Boshuanas ; and W. by unexplored regions. (M. A.)

*Q.* Capital ?

*A.* Mozambique.

This territory, which takes its name from its chief city, extends along the E. coast of Africa for a distance of 1400 ms. Though it has belonged to Portugal since the beginning of the 16th century, it is yet but little known. It formerly extended almost to the equator, but Cape Delgado, in lat.  $10^{\circ} 6'$  S., is now its N. boundary. Besides the capital, Mozambique, which was once an important city, but is now greatly declined, the Portuguese have a few small settlements along the coast, and in the interior, on the Zambese R. Their authority is, for the most part, merely nominal, and they maintain themselves with difficulty in the inland districts against the native tribes. Nearly all the colonial functionaries, both civil and military, are convicts

from Portugal, and their administration is very corrupt. The city of Mozambique was visited by Vasco de Gama, in 1498, on his voyage to India. In 1506, Albuquerque made it the cap. of the Portuguese colonies in E. Africa.

## GULFS.

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Sidra?

*A.* It is a spacious gulf of the Mediterranean, between Tripoli and Barca. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Guinea?

*A.* It is a spacious gulf of the Atlantic Ocean, on the W. coast of Africa, lying S. of Upper, and W. of Lower Guinea. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Gulf of Aden?

*A.* It is in the N. W. part of Africa, between Berbera and Arabia; formed by the Indian Ocean. (M. A.)

## STRAITS, &amp;c.

*Q.* Where is the Strait of Gibraltar?

*A.* It separates Africa, on the N. W., from Europe, and connects the Mediterranean Sea with the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Strait of Babelmandeb?

*A.* It separates Abyssinia from Arabia, and connects the Red Sea with the Indian Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Channel of Mozambique?

*A.* It is a channel of the Indian Ocean, on the E. coast of Africa, separating Madagascar from Mozambique. (M. A.)

## BAYS.

*Q.* Where is Great Fish Bay?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Africa, formed by the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.) Lat.  $16^{\circ} 31' S.$ , long.  $11^{\circ} 54' E.$

*Q.* Where is Walvisch Bay?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Africa, S. E. of Great Fish Bay, formed by the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Santa Cruz Bay?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Africa, S. of Walvisch Bay, formed by the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is St. Helena Bay?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Cape Colony, S. E. of Santa Cruz Bay, formed by the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Delagoa Bay?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of Africa, at the S. extremity of Mozambique, formed by the Indian Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Bombetok Bay?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Madagascar, formed by the Channel of Mozambique. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Anton Gils Bay?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of Madagascar, opposite Bombetok Bay, on the W. coast; formed by the Indian Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Vohemaire Bay?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of Madagascar, N. of Anton Gils Bay; formed by the Indian Ocean. (M. A.)

## CAPES.

*Q.* Where is Cape Bon?

*A.* It is the most northerly point of Africa. Lat.  $37^{\circ} 21' N.$ , long.  $11^{\circ} 4' E.$

*Q.* Where is Cape Guardafui?

*A.* It is the most easterly point of Africa. Lat.  $11^{\circ} 50' N.$ , long.  $51^{\circ} 22' E.$  (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Bassas?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of Africa, at the N. extremity of Zanguebar. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Delgado?

*A.* It is on the E. coast of Africa, at the N. extremity of Mozambique. Lat.  $10^{\circ} 6' S.$ , long.  $40^{\circ} 50' E.$  (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Corrientes?

*A.* It is the S. E. extremity of Mozambique. Lat.  $24^{\circ} 1' S.$ , long.  $35^{\circ} 51' E.$

*Q.* Where is Cape Agulhas?

*A.* It is the most southerly point of Africa. Lat.  $34^{\circ} 50' S.$  (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Cape of Good Hope?

*A.* It is a celebrated promontory near the S. W. extremity of the African continent. Lat.  $34^{\circ} 29' S.$ , long.  $18^{\circ} 23' E.$  (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Cross?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Africa. Lat.  $20^{\circ} 6' S.$  (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Frio?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Africa. Lat.  $18^{\circ} 37' S.$  long.  $12^{\circ} 25' E.$  (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Palmas?

*A.* It is the most southerly point of Liberia. Lat.  $4^{\circ} 23' N.$ , long.  $7^{\circ} 38' W.$  (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Verde?

*A.* It is the most westerly point of Africa. Lat.  $14^{\circ} 43' N.$ , long.  $17^{\circ} 32' W.$  (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Blanco?

*A.* It is on the W. coast of Africa. Lat.  $20^{\circ} 46' N.$ , long.  $17^{\circ} 1' W.$  (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Bojador?

*A.* It is a celebrated promontory of the W. coast of Africa, Desert of Sahara; lat.  $26^{\circ} 12' N.$ , long.  $14^{\circ} 26' W.$  (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape Ambro?

*A.* It forms the northern extremity of Madagascar. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Cape St. Mary?

*A.* It forms the southern extremity of Madagascar. (M. A.)



## RIVERS.

*Q.* Where is the River Nile ?

*A.* It is a great and celebrated r. of N. E. Africa, flowing northerly through Abyssinia, Nubia, and Egypt, and emptying into the Mediterranean Sea by two principal mouths at Rosetta and Damietta, forming an extensive delta. (M. A.)

The Nile is formed by the junction of two streams (in  $15^{\circ} 34'$  N. lat., and  $32^{\circ} 31'$  E. long.), of which one, called the Blue River (Bahr-el-Azrek), rises in Abyssinia, in about  $11^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $36^{\circ} 55'$  E. long; the other, named the White River (Bahr-el-Abiad), has its sources considerably farther W., probably on the N. declivity of the Mts. of the Moon. These branches, which are sometimes denominated the Blue and White Nile, derive their names from the colour of their respective waters; those of the Bahr-el-Abiad being coloured by a fine white clay which is usually suspended in them. The Nile, in the upper part of its course, makes two extensive circuits, which, together, rudely resemble on the Map the form of the letter S; but below the cataracts, its general direction is almost N., with comparatively few deviations to its entrance in the Mediterranean.

The whole length of this r., from the highest sources with which we are acquainted, is estimated at 2800 ms. From its junction with the Tacazzé (in  $17^{\circ} 45'$  N. lat.) to its termination, a distance of about 1350 ms., the Nile does not receive a single affluent on either side; an instance which is without a parallel in the geography of the globe.

*Q.* Where is the Senegal River ?

*A.* It is a large r. of W. Africa, formed by the union of the Ba-fing (black-water), and the Ba Woolima, which takes place near  $14^{\circ} 10'$  N. lat., and  $10^{\circ} 30'$  W. long. (M. A.)

The general course of the r. is at first N. W., and afterwards W.: it enters the Atlantic between  $16^{\circ}$  and  $16^{\circ} 40'$  N. lat., and near  $16^{\circ} 30'$  W. long., a little below the French settlement of St. Louis, after a course estimated at 1200 ms.

Till the time of Delisle and D'Anville, the Senegal was considered identical with the Niger of the ancients, but it is now ascertained to be wholly unconnected either with the Quorra, or Niger, or with the Nilotic system of the African continent. Its sources have not been explored; but Mungo Park ascertained that they were separated from the basin of the Niger by, most probably, the northern prolongation of the Kong range.

*Q.* Where is the Gambia River?

*A.* It is a r. of W. Africa, which flows through Senegambia in a westerly direction, and empties itself into the Atlantic, between  $13^{\circ}$  and  $14^{\circ}$  N. lat., and near  $16^{\circ}$  W. long. (M. A.)

The upper course of this r. has not been explored, but, from information obtained from the natives, it is probable that the entire stream has a course of about 700 miles.

*Q.* Where is the Rio Grande?

*A.* It is a r. of W. Africa: it flows W. through Senegambia, and enters the Atlantic Ocean by a wide estuary. (M. A.)

This r., as its name imports, was supposed to be of some magnitude; but



Captain Owen found it a mere inlet, receiving some inconsiderable streams. At its mouth occur a number of islands, which, with a group opposite to them, in the open sea, form the Archipelago of the Bissagos.

*Q.* Where is St. Paul's River?

*A.* It is a r. of W. Africa; flowing S. W., it forms the boundary between Senegambia and Upper Guinea, and after passing through Liberia, it falls into the Atlantic in about  $6^{\circ} 20'$  N. lat., and  $10^{\circ} 46'$  W. long. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Niger River?

*A.* The Niger, or Quorra, is a r. in the W. part of Africa, having its remote sources in the Kong Mts., in about  $9^{\circ} 30'$  N. lat., and  $11^{\circ}$  W. long. It thence pursues a general N. E. course to Timbuctoo, below which it turns S. E., and afterwards S. and S. W., and falls into the Gulf of Guinea, by numerous mouths, in about  $5^{\circ}$  N. lat., and  $6^{\circ}$  E. long., forming an extensive delta. Its supposed length is about 2700 ms.

This river has been rendered celebrated on account of our ignorance of its course and termination, and the various theories which have been formed relative to them. The appellation Niger is unknown to the natives, and is derived from the ancients. Herodotus, 450 years B. C., speaks of it; but whether it was the river known to the moderns, or some smaller stream in the region of the Atlas, is uncertain; and hardly any geographical question has excited so much controversy, or has been the cause of so much learned disquisition.

The upper part of the Niger, called by the natives the Joliba, was first discovered by Mungo Park, who was sent out in 1795 by the African Association. He describes it at Sego, the cap. of Bambarra, as "glittering in the morning sun, broad as the Thames at Westminster, and flowing slowly to the eastward." He ascended it as far as Bammakoo, 250 ms. above Sego. In a subsequent journey, made 10 years later, he sailed from Sandanding, a short distance below Sego, down the stream probably 1400 ms. to Boussa, where, unfortunately, he was killed by the natives. Major Laing concluded, from information obtained when in Soolimana, that the Niger rises on the N. side of the Kong Mountains, at a height of 1600 ft. above the sea, and at a distance of about 320 ms. E. N. E. from Sierra Leone. Richard Lander, the servant of Captain Clapperton, who died near Saccatoo, penetrated from the coast in company with his brother John, to Boussa, in 1830; thence they sailed with the stream, to the mouth of the river, previously called the Nun, in the bight of Benin; and thus finally identified the Niger and the Quorra, and put an end to the doubts and theories that existed as to its course and termination. According to Caillié, it is navigable for large canoes within 100 ms. of its source: for 200 ms. below that point it has not been navigated by Europeans; but from Bammakoo to Timbuctoo it has been pretty accurately laid down, both by Park and Caillié. The current of the river is not strong; and both travellers saw flotillas of canoes of 60 tons and upwards, frequently passing up and down the river, which, in the rainy season, is flooded on both banks to a considerable distance. In about lat.  $16^{\circ}$  N., the stream expands, forming a lake, called Dibbie or Debo, which is from 12 to 15 ft. deep. Hence to Timbuctoo the valley becomes still wider; the

pasturage of cattle, the tillage of rice, millet, maize, &c., is extensively pursued, and along the banks are numerous villages, which export rural produce. It has already been observed that the course of the river below Timbuctoo was traversed by Park as far down as Boussa; but, as that traveller was killed there, and his papers were lost, we know nothing of this portion of the river, except that it is navigable for vessels of considerable size.

The highest point of what may be called the Lower Niger hitherto visited by Europeans is the neighbourhood of Youri (lat.  $11^{\circ} 20'$  N., and  $5^{\circ}$  E. long.). Lower down, the river enters the defiles of a mountain range, supposed to be the Kong. The direction of the stream from Youri, for about 150 ms., is nearly due S.; but it is full of rocks, sand-banks, &c., and wholly unnavigable, except at the time of the rains, and immediately after. Below Boussa, the banks on both sides are generally high and rocky; cultivated plains intervene in many places between the river and the mountains, but in others the offsets come close down to the water's edge. From Boussa downwards, the Niger is navigable for moderate sized vessels; in lat.  $6^{\circ}$  N., it leaves the hilly country, and enters an alluvial plain, the lower part of which is an unhealthy swamp, covered with jungle: many branches here diverge from the main stream, and form an extensive delta, which, however, is as yet very imperfectly known. At Atta, 150 ms. from the sea, the river is about 2 ms. wide, and some distance lower down it attains a width of 5 ms.; but its breadth, close to the mouth, is somewhat less than a mile. The tide extends about 120 ms. from the sea. The only branch of the Niger hitherto explored is the Tsadda or Chadda, which joins it on the left bank in about 400 ms. from the sea. Captain Allen and Mr. Laird sailed 100 ms. up this tributary, and found it equal in width, though not in depth, to the parent river. It has many shoals and sand-banks. The only other known tributaries of the Lower Niger are the Saccatoo, Mayarrow, and Coodonia, all joining it on the E. bank.

*Q.* Where is the Congo River?

*A.* The Congo, or Zaire, flows into the Atlantic, in about  $6^{\circ}$  S. lat. In its course it forms the boundary between the kingdoms of Loango and Congo Proper. (M. A.)

This r. was partially explored by Captain Tuckey, in 1816. Its breadth, for some distance from the sea, is not less than 5 or 6 ms.; at the mouth, no bottom was found in the middle of the stream with a line of 160 fathoms. He ascended it to the length of 280 ms., and found that it did not receive the water of any other stream in the whole of that distance; hence he was inclined to believe that there must be some under-ground communication, by which it was supplied with water.

*Q.* Where is the Ambriz River?

*A.* It is in the S. W. part of Africa, flows a little S. of W. through Congo, and empties into the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Coanza River?

*A.* It is in the S. W. part of Africa, crosses Matemba and Angola, and enters the Atlantic Ocean, in lat.  $9^{\circ} 20'$  S. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Bembaroughe River?

*A.* It is in the S. W. part of Africa, flows N. W., and empties into the Atlantic Ocean, at Cape Negro. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Orange River?

*A.* It is in the S. part of Africa, and rises in the Snow Mts., whence, having flowed, first S. W. and then W., through rude and desert territories, falls into the Atlantic Ocean in about  $29^{\circ} 30'$  S. lat., after a course of 1000 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Manice River?

*A.* It is a r. of S. E. Africa, of which but little is known, it empties into Delagoa Bay. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Zambeze River?

*A.* It is in the S. E. part of Africa, its upper course is almost unknown as far as it has been explored, it flows first N. E., then E. S. E., and enters the Channel of Mozambique by four mouths. (M. A.)

The Zambeze may rank in the first class of African rivers, and, according to probable information and conjecture, appears to flow across nearly the entire breadth of the continent.

*Q.* Where is the Ozee River?

*A.* It flows S. E. across Zanguebar, and empties into the Indian Ocean. (M. A.) This r. is only known a few miles inward.

*Q.* Where is the Webbe River?

*A.* It flows S. E. across the N. part of Zanguebar, and empties into the Indian Ocean. (M. A.) Its early course is unknown.

*Q.* Where is the Yeou River?

*A.* It is in Soudan, rises in the S. part of Houssa, flows first N. then E., and falls into Tchad on the W. side. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Shary River?

*A.* It is in the E. part of Soudan. Of its upper course nothing is known. As far as it has been explored, it flows first N., and then N. W., till it enters Tchad by several mouths.

Major Denham saw this r. at its mouth, where it was about half a mile broad, and flowed at the rate of between two and three miles an hour. Forty miles above, it was seen rolling in great majesty and beauty; but was not traced any higher.

*Q.* Where is the Misselad River?

*A.* It traverses the country of Bergoo, or Waday, in a north-westerly direction, and empties, according to report, into Lake Fittré. (M. A.)

This river is supposed by some to be the Gir of the ancient geographers, but by those who believe that the Greeks and Romans had no knowledge of Africa, S. of the Great Desert, the Gir is supposed to be a stream in the region of the Atlas. The Misselad, or Bahr Misselad, has not been visited by any European traveller, consequently nothing is known of it except by report. Mr. Browne, when in Darfur, heard of it as a large river flowing N. W. into Lake Fittré; and Burckhardt, when in Sennaar, collected information of a considerable stream in the interior, which seems to be the

same, he ascertained that a district on its banks is called Dyjr, which has some resemblance to the ancient name.

#### MOUNTAINS.

*Q.* Where are the Atlas Mts.?

*A.* They are a chain of mountains running through the N. W. part of Africa, at a distance of from 100 to 130 ms. from the sea. (M. A.)

Its loftiest pinnacles are a short distance E. of the city of Morocco, where they appear to rise above the limit of perpetual snow. Mt. Miltsin, the highest summit, is estimated to be 11,900 ft. above the level of the sea.

This famous range, which ancient fable represented as supporting the heavens, with numerous chains branching from it across the continent, diffuses moisture and fertility over sands which would otherwise have been totally unproductive.

*Q.* Where are the Mts. of Kong?

*A.* This chain commences in the interior of Senegambia, and appears to stretch across the continent, till it connects with the Mts. of the Moon, on the opposite side of Africa. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Mts. of the Moon?

*A.* They are an extensive chain of mts., which cross the central part of Africa, from E. to W. (M. A.)

The ancient geographers, 2000 years ago, were acquainted with these mountains by report, and gave them the name by which they have ever since been known. The Arabs have long called them Jibbel-el-Kumri, a term which signifies Mts. of the Moon, and which they also perhaps derived from the ancient geographical writers. These mts. have not been explored by Europeans, hence their exact position is not known. A recent traveller doubts their very existence.

*Q.* Where are the Crystal Mts.?

*A.* They are in the E. part of Lower Guinea. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Lupata Mts.?

*A.* They consist of a long chain, in Eastern Africa, which runs parallel to the coast. (M. A.)

The existence of these mts. has been doubted: it is, however, certain, that 200 or 300 ms. in the interior, considerable ranges of mountains arise; but Mr. Salt is of opinion that their prolongation beyond the Zambeze is arbitrary.

*Q.* Where are the Snow Mts.?

*A.* They are in the N. part of Cape Colony, in Southern Africa, and extend from 180 to 210 ms. from the coast. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Red Mts.?

*A.* In the S. part of Madagascar. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Radama Mts.?

*A.* They are in the N. part of Madagascar, and uniting with the Red Mts., intersect the island throughout its whole extent. (M. A.)



## ISLANDS.

*Q.* Where are the Azores Islands?

*A.* The Azores, or Western Islands, are situated in the Atlantic Ocean, W. of Portugal. They consist of three distinct groups, lying in the direction of W. N. W. and E. S. E. (M. A.)

These Islands comprise an archipelago in the Atlantic Ocean, belonging to Portugal, from which the nearest island is 900 ms. distant, occupying a line of about 320 ms. from E. S. E. to W. N. W., between  $36^{\circ} 59'$  and  $39^{\circ} 44'$  N. lat., and  $31^{\circ} 7'$  and  $25^{\circ} 10'$  W. long. They form three subordinate groups. The first, or Western group, includes Flores and Corvo; the second, or central, Fayal, Pico, St. George, Graciosa, and Terceira; and the third, or Eastern, St. Michael's, the largest of the whole, and St. Mary's. The name (*Ilhos dos Açores*) is said to be derived from the vast number of hawks, called by the natives *açor*, by which they were frequented at the epoch of their discovery.

The population of these islands is about 250,000. They are divided into three departments, and are governed by a governor-general and two lieutenant-governors. The seat of government is at Angra, in Terceira, but Ponte Delgada, in St. Michael's, is the principal town.

*Q.* Where are the Madeira Islands?

*A.* They are in the Atlantic Ocean, lying off the W. coast of Morocco, and S. W. of Portugal. (M. A.)

Of the above islands, Madeira is the principal. It is situated between  $32^{\circ} 36'$  and  $32^{\circ} 53'$  N. lat., and  $16^{\circ} 40'$  and  $17^{\circ} 20'$  W. long. It is about 37 ms. in length, and 15 ms. in its greatest breadth. Area computed at above 300 sq. ms. Pop. estimated at 112,000. The Madeiras belong to Portugal.

*Q.* Where are the Canary Islands?

*A.* The Canaries are a group in the Atlantic Ocean, belonging to Spain, lying N. and N. W. of Cape Bojador, on the desert coast. (M. A.)

These islands (believed to be the *Fortunatæ Insulæ* of the ancients) lie between lat.  $27^{\circ} 40'$  and  $29^{\circ} 30'$  N., and long.  $13^{\circ} 30'$  and  $18^{\circ} 20'$  W. Fortaventura, the nearest, is about 80 ms. from the African coast; and Palma, the farthest, 260 ms. The principal islands are Teneriffe, Grand Canary, Palma, Lanzarota, Fortaventura, Gomera, and Ferro. The area of the whole is estimated at 3256 sq. ms. Pop. about 234,000. Santa Cruz, in Teneriffe, and Las Palmas, in Grand Canary, are the chief sea-ports; the former is the capital of the whole group. Oratava and Lagunas are the other chief towns.

Besides the foregoing, several small islands, viz., Graciosa, Clara, Allegranza, &c., called the Little Canaries, are situated to the N. W. of Lanzarota, Ferro, or Hiero, the most southerly and westerly of the Canaries, has acquired considerable celebrity, from its having been selected by the early geographers as the first meridian, or the point from which they began to reckon longitude.

*Q.* Where are the Cape Verde Islands?

*A.* They are in the Atlantic Ocean, lying off the W. coast of Africa, opposite Cape Verde. (M. A.)



The Cape Verde Islands (*Ilhas Verdas*), so called by the Portuguese, because the sea to the W. of them is covered with gulf-weed, so as to present some resemblance to extensive meadows. This group is about 300 ms. from the W. coast of Africa, between  $14^{\circ} 17'$  and  $17^{\circ} 19'$  N. lat., and  $22^{\circ} 10'$  and  $25^{\circ} 30'$  W. long. There are 14 islands; 9 of them are inhabited, of which St. Jago, St. Nicolas, Bonavista, and St. Antonio, are the most important. They belong to Portugal. Pop. 88,000. (M. A.)

Q. Where is Fernando Po Island?

A. It is in the Gulf of Guinea, lying about 20 ms. W. from Lower Guinea. (M. A.)

Q. Where is Prince's Island?

A. It is in the Gulf of Guinea, lying S. S. W. from Fernando Po Island. It belongs to Portugal. (M. A.)

Q. Where is St. Thomas's Island?

A. It is in the Gulf of Guinea, lying S. S. W. of Prince's Island, and under the Equator. It belongs to Portugal. (M. A.)

Q. Where is Annobon Island?

A. It is in the Gulf of Guinea, lying S. S. W. of St. Thomas's Island. It belongs to Portugal. (M. A.)

Q. Where is Ascension Island?

A. It is in the S. Atlantic Ocean, lying W. of Africa and N. W. of St. Helena. It belongs to Great Britain. (M. A.)

Ascension, an island in the Atlantic Ocean, 1200 ms. W. of the coast of Africa, about 8 ms. in length, by 6 in breadth, its fort being in lat.  $7^{\circ} 26'$  N., long.  $14^{\circ} 24'$  W. It is of volcanic formation, and one of its hills, of tufous limestone, rises to the height of about 2800 ft. It has a bleak and barren appearance; and was uninhabited till the imprisonment of Napoleon at St. Helena, when it was garrisoned by a small British force, through whose exertions it has been partly cultivated and wonderfully improved. Springs of fresh water have been discovered. Vast numbers of turtle are taken on its shores. The climate is remarkably healthy, and the anchorage, though open, is said to be good. The object in occupying it is, that it may serve as a depôt for stores, and a place for watering ships cruising on the coast of Brazil or in the South Atlantic Ocean. Its name is derived from its having been discovered on Ascension-day, the 20th of May, 1501, by a Spanish navigator in the service of Portugal.

Q. Where is the Island of St. Helena?

A. It is in the S. Atlantic Ocean, lying W. from the coast of Benguela, and S. E. from Ascension Island. It belongs to Great Britain. (M. A.)

This island will be always famous as the scene of Napoleon's imprisonment and death. It belongs to Great Britain, and is situated 1200 ms. W. from the S. part of Benguela, in lat.  $15^{\circ} 15'$  S., long.  $5^{\circ} 46'$  W. Length,  $10\frac{1}{2}$  ms.; breadth,  $6\frac{1}{2}$  ms.; area, 47 sq. ms. Pop. about 5000, of whom nearly a half are whites.

Q. Where is the Ethiopian Archipelago?

A. It is in the Indian Ocean, off the E. coast of Africa. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Mascarenha Islands?

*A.* They are in the Indian Ocean, off the E. coast of Madagascar. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Island of Mauritius?

*A.* It is one of the Mascarenhas, situated in the Indian Ocean, E. of Madagascar, and N. E. of the Isle of Bourbon. (M. A.)

This island, which belongs to Great Britain, is between  $19^{\circ} 58'$  and  $20^{\circ} 32'$  S. lat., and  $57^{\circ} 17'$  and  $57^{\circ} 46'$  E. long., 80 ms. E. N. E. of Bourbon Island, and 500 ms. E. of Madagascar. It is an irregular oval; length, about 36 ms.; breadth varying from 18 to 27 ms. Area estimated at 780 sq. ms. Pop. about 95,000.

*Q.* Where is Bourbon Island?

*A.* It is one of the Mascarenhas, situated in the Indian Ocean, E. of Madagascar, and S. W. of the Island of Mauritius. (M. A.)

Bourbon, an island belonging to France, lies between lat.  $20^{\circ} 50'$  and  $21^{\circ} 24'$  S., being 440 ms. E. of Madagascar. Shape, oval; greatest length, 40 ms.; greatest breadth, 27 ms.; area near 900 sq. ms. Pop. about 110,000.

*Q.* Where are the Seychelle Islands?

*A.* They consist of a small group, belonging to Great Britain, in the Indian Ocean, off the E. coast of Africa. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Almirante Islands?

*A.* They are a small group, belonging to Great Britain, in the Indian Ocean, lying S. W. from the Seychelle Islands. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where are the Comoro Islands?

*A.* They are a group of four islands in the Indian Ocean, lying between the N. end of the Island of Madagascar and the African continent. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Monfia Island?

*A.* It is in the Indian Ocean, near the coast of Zanguebar; it is subject to Muscat. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Zanzibar Island?

*A.* It is in the Indian Ocean, near the coast of Zanguebar, situated between the Islands of Pemba and Monfia. It is subject to Muscat. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Pemba Island?

*A.* It is in the Indian Ocean, near the coast of Zanguebar, and N. of Zanzibar. It is subject to Muscat. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is Socotra Island?

*A.* It is in the Indian Ocean, lying S. of Arabia, and E. of Cape Guardafui, in Africa. It is subject to Keshin. (M. A.)

Socotra (anc. *Dioscoridas Insula*), is situated about 230 ms. from the E. coast of Arabia, and 120 ms. E. of Cape Guardafui, in Africa; its chief town being in lat.  $12^{\circ} 39'$  N., long.  $54^{\circ} 6'$  E. Area estimated by Mr. Wellsted at 1000 sq. ms. Pop. probably 5000, principally Bedouins, with some Arabs, African slaves, and descendants of Portuguese.

## DESERTS.

*Q.* Where is the Great Desert ?

*A.* It is an immense ocean of sand which overspreads nearly the whole northern half of Africa. Its actual and almost uninterrupted extent may be stated as reaching from the 15th to the 30th deg. of N. lat., and from the 30th of E. to the 15th of W. long. It may thus amount to nearly 3000 ms. in length, and 1000 in breadth. (M. A.)

*The Sahara, or Great Desert*, forms an immense range of territory, which would, indeed, cover the whole northern half of Africa, but for the partial exemption produced by the mountain range of Atlas, and the course of the Nile. This vast expanse, the most dreary and terrible on the face of the earth, forms an obstacle to the intercourse of nations greater than is opposed by the widest oceans. Yet the daring spirit of enterprise has induced human beings to occupy every extremity or corner in which subsistence could by any means be procured ; and they have formed routes by which, though amid suffering and deadly peril, regular journeys may be performed across this vast and desolate region.

*The surface of the Sahara* does not consist entirely of one uniform plain of sand. In the most level tracts it has been blown into heaps or hillocks, steep on one side, which remarkably increase both the dreary aspect of the region, and the difficulties with which the traveller has to contend. In other places it is traversed by dark ranges of naked rock, which sometimes approach so close as to leave only a narrow path for caravans to march through. The terrible spectacle of human bones which strew the ground, and sometimes crackle unexpectedly beneath the tread of the traveller or his camel, lends, at intervals, additional horror to the scene. The most dangerous encounter is that of the sand wind, when the sand, blown up by tempests from an extensive moving surface, fills and darkens the air, and threatens to suffocate the passenger. Yet some covert can generally be found during its fury ; and the disasters indicated by the bones which whiten the desert appear to arise almost solely from the failure of provisions, and particularly of water. The privation falls always first upon the slaves, who on such occasions perish in great numbers.

*The most remarkable and important feature*, however, which diversifies the Great African Desert, consists in the *Oases*. This eastern term, which signifies island, is very appropriately given to those detached spots, over which springs, bursting forth amid the desert, diffuse some partial verdure and fertility. The view of these spots inspires travellers with emotions peculiarly pleasing ; sometimes from mere contrast with the encircling desolation, but sometimes also from the peculiarly elegant landscape which they themselves present. They are embellished with flowering shrubs of singular beauty ; whole tracts are covered with forests of acacia, from which rich gums distil, and with groves of the date and lotus, yielding sweet fruits and berries, which form the food of whole tribes. These districts on a great scale, occur chiefly on the northern and southern borders, where the desert generally mitigates its stern aspect, and imbibes some portion of that moisture which fertilizes Central Africa and the region of Atlas.

*Q.* Where is the Libyan Desert ?

*A.* It is in the N. E. part of Africa, lying between Egypt and the Oasis of Fezzan. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Nubian Desert ?

*A.* It is in Nubia, situated between the R. Nile and the Red Sea. (M. A.)

*Q.* Where is the Desert of Challahengah ?\*

*A.* It is in the S. part of Africa, extending N. W. from the Boshuana country, and crossed by the Tropic of Capricorn. (M. A.)

#### TROPICS, ZONES, &C.

*Q.* What three great circles pass through Africa ?

*A.* Tropic of Cancer, Equator, and Tropic of Capricorn ?

*Q.* In what zones is Africa situated ?

*A.* Torrid, and Temperate.

*Q.* In what zone is it mostly ?

*A.* Torrid.

Africa contains 37 degrees of north and 35 of south latitude.

*Q.* In what latitude then is it mostly ?

*A.* North.

It contains 50 degrees of east and 18 of west longitude.

*Q.* In what longitude then is it chiefly ?

*A.* East.

#### MOROCCO.

*Page 308.—Lesson 201.—Map No. 25.*

*Q.* What bounds Morocco on the north ?

*A.* Mediterranean Sea.

*Q.* South ?

*A.* Great Desert.

*Q.* East ?

*A.* Algiers, the Beled-el-Jerid, and the Great Desert.

*Q.* What strait separates it from Spain ?

*A.* Gibraltar.

*Q.* What islands lie west of Morocco ?

*A.* Madeira, and Canary.

*Q.* What mountains extend through Morocco ?

*A.* Atlas.

*Q.* Which is the principal peak ?

*A.* Mt. Miltsin.

*Q.* How high is it ?

*A.* 11,900 ft. (M. A.)

\* Called also the Karri-Harri Desert. (M. G.)

Q. What is the population of Morocco ?

A. 76,000. (M. A.)

Q. Fez ?

A. 80,000. (M. A.)

Q. Mequinez ?

A. 60,000. (M. A.)

Q. Rabat ?

A. 10,000. (M. A.)

Q. Mogadore ?

A. 10,000. (M. A.)

Q. Santa Cruz ?

A. 5000. (M. A.)

Q. How far is it from Morocco to Florida ?

A. 4200. (M. A.)

*For a further description of Morocco, see Key, page 418.*

## ALGIERS, OR ALGERIA.

*Page 310.—Lesson 202.—Map No. 25.*

Q. What bounds Algiers on the north ?

A. Mediterranean Sea.

Q. South ?

A. Beled-el-Jerid.

Q. East ?

A. Tunis.

Q. West ?

A. Morocco.

Q. What mountains are in the south ?

A. Atlas.

Q. How long are they ?

A. 1400 ms. (M. A.)

Q. What is the population of Algiers ?

A. 60,000. (M. A.)

Q. Constantine ?

A. 25,000. (M. A.)

Q. Bona ?

A. 10,000. (M. A.)

Q. Oran ?

A. 6000. (M. A.)

*For a further description of Algiers, see Key, page 419.*

## TUNIS, &c.

Q. What bounds Tunis on the north ?

A. Mediterranean Sea.

Q. South ?

A. Beled-el-Jerid.



Q. East ?

A. Mediterranean Sea, and Tripoli.

Q. West ?

A. Algiers.

Q. What cape on the north ?

A. Bon. (M. A.)

Q. What lake in the south ?

A. Lowdeah.

Q. What is the population of Tunis ?

A. 100,000. (M. A.)

Q. Kairwan ?

A. 30,000. (M. A.)

*For a further description of Tunis, see Key, page 419.*

### TRIPOLI.

Q. What bounds Tripoli on the north ?

A. Mediterranean Sea.

Q. South ?

A. Great Desert.

Q. West ?

A. Tunis, and Beled-el-Jerid.

Q. What gulf separates Tripoli from Barca ?

A. Sidra.

Q. What is the population of Tripoli ?

A. 25,000. (M. A.)

*For a further description of Tripoli, see Key, page 419.*

### BARCA.

Q. What bounds Barca on the north ?

A. Mediterranean Sea.

Q. South ?

A. Libyan Desert.

Q. East ?

A. Egypt.

Q. West ?

A. Gulf of Sidra.

BARCA is a district of North Africa, forming the E. portion of Tripoli, extending from  $30\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  to nearly  $33^{\circ}$  N. lat., and from  $20^{\circ}$  to  $25\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  E. long. The limits are, however, uncertain towards the S. and E.; in the former direction, terminating in the Libyan desert, and in the latter, being divided from Egypt by tribes of Bedouins. On the N. Barca is bounded by the Mediterranean Sea, and on the W. by the Gulf of Sidra (the *Syrtis Magna* of the ancients). It extends 200 ms. from N. to S., but the cultivated portion terminates at about the 31st parallel, or 120 ms. only, from the farthest N. point of the coast. The greatest length, from E. to W., is about 330 ms.; and the area may be estimated at about 48,000 sq. ms.

## BELED-EL-JERID, &amp;c.

*Page 312.—Lesson 200.—Map No. 16.**Q.* How is the Beled-el-Jerid bounded ?*A.* It is bounded N. by Algiers ; E. by Tunis and Tripoli ; S. by the Sahara Desert ; and W. by Morocco. (M. A.)*Q.* How is the Great Desert bounded ?*A.* It is bounded N. W. and N. by the Barbary States ; E. by Egypt and Nubia ; S. by Darfur, Bergoo or Waday, Soudan, and Senegambia ; and W. by the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)*Q.* What tribes are in the centre ?*A.* Tuaricks, and Tibboos.*Q.* On the west ?*A.* The Mongearts, Wadelims, Trasarts, and Braknaks.*Q.* What salt-mines are in the Great Desert ?*A.* Taudeny, Tisheet, and Aroan.*Q.* What Oases are in the Great Desert ?*A.* Fezzan, Tibesty, Bilmah, Agdass, Tuat, Augela, Siwah, El Dakhel, and El Khargeh.*Q.* What country in the south ?*A.* Ludamar.*Q.* How long and wide is the Great Desert ?*A.* 3000 ms. long, and 1000 wide. (M. A.)*Q.* What capes are on the coast ?*A.* Bojador, and Blanco.*Q.* How far is it to Mexico ?*A.* 5200 ms.*Q.* To Cuba ?*A.* 3600 ms.

## EGYPT.

*Page 314.—Lesson 204.—Map No. 26.**Q.* What bounds Egypt on the north ?*A.* Mediterranean Sea.*Q.* South ?*A.* Nubia.*Q.* East ?*A.* Red Sea.*Q.* West ?*A.* Great Desert.*Q.* What river flows through Egypt ?*A.* Nile.*Q.* How long is it ?*A.* 2800 ms. (M. A.)

Q. What isthmus connects Egypt with Arabia ?

A. Suez.

Q. How wide is it ?

A. 50 ms. (M. A.)

Q. What is the country at the mouth of the Nile called ?

A. Delta.

Q. What is a Delta ?

A. It is a term applied to those districts embraced by the outlets of rivers. (M. G., p. 72.)

Q. What is the population of Cairo ?

A. 300,000. (M. A.)

Q. Damietta ?

A. 25,000. (M. A.)

Q. Alexandria ?

A. 60,000. (M. A.)

Q. Siout ?

A. 20,000. (M. A.)

Q. Rosetta ?

A. 15,000. (M. A.)

Q. Cosseir ?

A. 6000. (M. A.)

Q. Suez ?

A. 5000. (M. A.)

Q. What three oases are included in Egypt ?

A. Siwah, El Dakhel, and El Khargeh.

Q. What do you observe on the west side of the Nile near Cairo ?

A. The Pyramids.

Q. What ruins are in the south part of Egypt ?

A. Ruins of Thebes.

*For a further description of Egypt, see Key, page 420.*

---

### NUBIA, &c.

*Page 316.—Lesson 205.—Map No. 25.*

Q. How is Nubia bounded ?

A. It is bounded N. by Egypt ; E. by the Red Sea ; S. by Abyssinia and the country of the Shilluks ; and W. by the Desert of Libya. (M. A.)

*For a further description of Nubia, see Key, page 420.*

Q. What river in Nubia ?

A. The Nile.

Q. What desert ?

A. Nubian.

Q. What is the population of Khartoom ?

A. 20,000. (M. A.)

- Q. Sennaar?  
*A.* 10,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Suakem?  
*A.* 5000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Shendy?  
*A.* 5000. (M. A.)  
 Q. New Dongola?  
*A.* 5000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Derr?  
*A.* 2000. (M. A.)

## ABYSSINIA.

- Q. What bounds Abyssinia on the north?  
*A.* Nubia.  
 Q. South?  
*A.* Ethiopia, and the kingdom of Adel.  
 Q. East?  
*A.* Red Sea.  
 Q. West?  
*A.* The country of the Shilluks.  
 Q. What lake in the centre?  
*A.* Dembea.  
 Q. What river flows from it?  
*A.* The Bahr-el Azrek (or Abawi).  
 Q. What is the population of Gondar?  
*A.* 6000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Antalo?  
*A.* 10,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Massuah?  
*A.* 8000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Axum?  
*A.* 3000. (M. A.)  
 Q. What countries lie west of the Nile?  
*A.* Kordofan, Darfur, and Bergoo.  
 Q. South of Darfur?  
*A.* Fertit, and Donga.  
 Q. What river flows through Bergoo?  
*A.* Misselad.  
 Q. The capitals of these countries?  
*A.* KORDOFAN, Ibeit; DARFUR, Cobbe; BERGOO, Wara. (M. A.)  
 Q. The population of Cobbe?  
*A.* 4000. (M. A.)  
 Q. What towns are on the Nile?  
*A.* In Nubia there are Derr, New Dongola, Old Dongola, Merawe, El Makkarif, and Shendy. (M. A.)

*Q.* On the Bahr-el-Azrek? (or Abawi.)

*A.* In Nubia there is Sennaar and Khartoom. (M. A.)

*For a further description of Abyssinia, see Key, page 421.*

# SENEGAMBIA, &c.

*Page 318.—Lesson 206.—Maps Nos. 25 and 27.*

*Map No. 25.—Q.* How is Senegambia bounded?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the Sahara Desert; E. by Soudan; S. E. and S. by Upper Guinea, and Liberia; and S. W. and W. by the British Colony of Sierra Leone, and the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

*Q.* Which rivers are the principal?

*A.* Senegal, Gambia, Niger, and Rio Grande.

*Q.* How long are the first three?

*A.* The Senegal is 1200 ms. long; Gambia, 700; Niger, 2700. (M. A.)

*Q.* What cape on the west?

*A.* Verde.

*Q.* On the south?

*A.* Palmas. (This forms the S. extremity of Liberia).

*Q.* What French settlement on the Senegal River?

*A.* St. Louis.

*Q.* British settlement on the Gambia?

*A.* Bathurst.

*Q.* What settlement on the Rio Grande?

*A.* Portuguese.

*Q.* What islands lie west of Cape Verde?

*A.* Cape Verde Islands?

*Q.* What British Colony in the south?

*A.* Sierra Leone.

SENEGAMBIA is a name given by geographers to a region on the W. coast of Africa. Originally it was applied to the countries settled by Europeans, between the Senegal and Gambia Rivers; but it is now used to designate the whole of that part of Africa which is W. of Soudan, and between the Great Desert and Guinea, lying between the 10th and 17th parallels of N. lat., and the 6th and 18th meridians of W. long.

It would be difficult and almost idle to attempt to fix the limits of this vast territory; but they may be stated at about 250 ms. along the coast, and reaching 500 into the interior. It is divided among a vast variety of little kingdoms, whose boundaries and condition are continually varying. This part of Africa is most remarkable for the great negro races who inhabit it, and who are in general more peaceable, more industrious, and more amiable than any of the others upon the western coast. They are chiefly three, the Foulahs, the Mandingoes, and the Jalofs.



LIBERIA.—*Map No. 27.*

*Q.* What are the principal rivers of Liberia ?

*A.* Gallinas, Pissou, St. Paul's, St. John's, Cestros, and Sinou.

*Q.* How long is the St. Paul's River ?

*A.* 300 ms.

*Q.* Which is the most northern cape ?

*A.* Mount.

*Q.* Southern ?

*A.* Palmas.

There are nine colonial towns.

*Q.* Which are they ?

*A.* Caldwell, Millsburg, New Georgia, Edina, Bexley, Bassa Cove, Louisiana Colony, Greenville, and Harper. (M. A.)

*Q.* Native towns ?

*A.* Sugaree, Trade Town, and the three Kroo towns, belonging to the Kroos or Kroomen. (M. A.)

*Q.* What Colony at Cape Palmas ?

*A.* Maryland Colony.

*Q.* At the St. John's River ?

*A.* Pennsylvania Colony.

*Q.* Near what cape is the town of Monrovia ?

*A.* Cape Mesurado.

*For a further description of Liberia, see Key, page 422.*

## UPPER AND LOWER GUINEA.

*Page 320.—Lesson 207.—Map No. 25.*

*Q.* What bounds Upper Guinea on the north ?

*A.* Soudan.

*Q.* South ?

*A.* Gulf of Guinea.

*Q.* East ?

*A.* Lower Guinea.

*Q.* West ?

*A.* Senegambia, and Liberia.

*Q.* What mountains on the north ?

*A.* Kong.

*Q.* What is the population of Coomassie ?

*A.* 25,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Abomey ?

*A.* 24,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Benin ?

*A.* 15,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* How is Lower Guinea bounded ?

*A.* It is bounded N. by Soudan ; E. and S. by unexplored

regions; and W. by Upper Guinea, the Gulf of Guinea, and the Atlantic Ocean. (M. A.)

Q. Which are its rivers?

A. Congo, Ambriz, Coanza, and Bembaroughe. (M. A.)

Q. Mountains.

A. Crystal.

Q. What islands in the Gulf of Guinea?

A. Fernando Po, Prince's, St. Thomas's, and Annobon.

Q. To what power do the last three belong?

A. To Portugal.

Q. What river divides Upper from Lower Guinea?

A. The Niger.

Q. What is the population of Loango?

A. 15,000. (M. A.)

Q. St. Salvador?

A. 20,000. (M. A.)

Q. St. Paul de Loando?

A. 3000. (M. A.)

Q. How far is it from Guinea to Brazil?

A. 4200 ms. (M. A.)

Q. From Angola to Brazil?

A. 3300 ms. (M. A.)

GUINEA is a name applied by European geographers to designate a portion of the W. coast of Africa. The origin of the word is not certainly ascertained, nor are writers agreed respecting the limits of coast to which the name should extend. D'Anville, and the older geographers, apply it to the line of coast from the Gambia to the Niger; whereas Ritter, and other more modern authors, extend its confines from C. Verga, lat.  $10^{\circ} 30' N.$ , to the mouth of Nourse's River, lat.  $17^{\circ} S.$ , and call the district S. of C. Lopez, lat.  $5^{\circ} S.$ , comprising Congo, Angola, and Benguela, by the name of S. Guinea; while under N. Guinea, or Guinea Proper, are comprehended Sierra Leone, Liberia, the Grain, Ivory and slave Coast, Ashantee, Dahomey, Benin, and Biafra. The description of this extensive line of coast, will be found under the heads of the countries above mentioned, in this Key.

## SOUTHERN AFRICA.

*Page 322.—Lesson 208.—Map No. 25.*

Q. What countries lie south of the Tropic of Capricorn?

A. Hottentots, Boshuanas, Cape Colony, and Caffraria. (M. A.)

Q. What is the most southern cape?

A. Agulhas.

Q. What other cape?

A. Good Hope.

Q. What rivers in this region?

A. Orange, Koussie, Great Kei, St. Lucia, and Manice. (M. A.)

- Q. How long is the first ?  
*A.* 1000 ms. (Orange R.) (M. A.)  
 Q. What mountains ?  
*A.* Snow.  
 Q. How high are they ?  
*A.* 10,000 ft. (M. A.)  
 Q. What desert extends N. W. from the Boshuana country ?  
*A.* Desert of Challahengah, or Karri-Harri. (M. A.)  
 Q. How far from Cape Colony to Swan River Colony ?  
*A.* 5200 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. What is the population of Kurreechane ?  
*A.* 10,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Mashow ?  
*A.* 10,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Lattakoo ?  
*A.* 6000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Cape Town ?  
*A.* 25,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Graham's Town ?  
*A.* 3000. (M. A.)
- 

## EASTERN AFRICA.

*Page 324.—Lesson 209.—Map No. 25.*

- Q. What gulf separates Berbera from Arabia ?  
*A.* Gulf of Aden.  
 Q. What capes on the coast of Ajan ?  
*A.* Guardafui, Orfui, and Bassas.  
 Q. How far is it from Ajan to Ceylon ?  
*A.* 1800 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. What country of Zanguebar lies north of the Equator ?  
*A.* Magadoxa.  
 Q. Which lie south ?  
*A.* Melinda, Mombas, and Quiloa.  
 Q. How far from Zanguebar to Sumatra ?  
*A.* 4000 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. What rivers are in Zanguebar ?  
*A.* Webbe, and Ozee.  
 Q. In Mozambique ?  
*A.* Zambeze, and Manice.  
 Q. What mountains ?  
*A.* Lupata.  
 Q. Capes ?  
*A.* Delgado, and Corrientes.  
 Q. What Channel separates Mozambique from Madagascar ?  
*A.* The Channel of Mozambique.

SOUDAN.

*Page 326.—Lesson 210.—Map No. 25.*

*Q.* How is Soudan bounded ?

*A.* It is bounded N. by the Great Desert ; E. by Bergoo or Waday, and other unknown countries ; S. by the Mts. of the Moon, and Lower and Upper Guinea ; and W. by Senegambia. (M. A.)

Soudan, or Bel-ed es Sou-dan, *i. e.* the “country of the blacks,” a name employed to designate all the countries along the S. border of the Great Desert, from Darfur on the E. to Senegambia on the W., extending from about 25° E. to 10° W. long. Its limits, on the N. and S., are almost entirely unknown.

*Q.* What are its rivers ?

*A.* Niger, Yeou, Shary, Tsadda, and Bagoe or White. (M. A.)

*Q.* How long is the first ?

*A.* 2700 ms. (Niger.) (M. A.)

*Q.* What lakes are in Soudan ?

*A.* Tchad, Fittre, and Dibbie.

*Q.* How long is the first ?

*A.* 200 ms. (Tchad.) (M. A.)

*Q.* What mountains ?

*A.* Kong, and Moon.

*Q.* What is the population of Sego ?

*A.* 30,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Jenne ?

*A.* 15,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Timbuctoo ?

*A.* 12,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Soccatoo ?

*A.* 60,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Kano ?

*A.* 30,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Zaria ?

*A.* 40,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Boussa ?

*A.* 12,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* Bornou ?

*A.* 10,000.

*Q.* Angornou ?

*A.* 30,000.

AFRICAN ISLANDS.

*Page 327.—Lesson 211.—Map No. 25.*

*Q.* Tell the population of the following islands, and the nations to which they belong : Azores, Madeira, Canary, Cape Verde,

Ascension, St. Helena, Mauritius, Bourbon, Almirante, and Seychelle.

*A.* Azore Islands, 250,000—to Portugal; Madeira Islands, 112,000—to Portugal; Canary Islands, 234,000—to Spain; Cape Verde Islands, 88,000—to Portugal; Ascension Islands, 250—to Great Britain; St. Helena, 5000—to Great Britain; Mauritius Islands, 95,000—to Great Britain; Bourbon Islands, 110,000—to France; Almirante Islands, 7000—to Great Britain; Seychelle Islands, 7000—to Great Britain.

*The above pop. is taken from Mitchell's Atlas.*

*Q.* What is the population of Madagascar?

*A.* 4,500,000. (M. A.)

*Q.* How long is it?

*A.* 1000 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* What is its northern cape?

*A.* Ambro.

*Q.* Southern?

*A.* St. Mary.

*Q.* How far from Madagascar to Australia?

*A.* 5200 ms. (M. A.)

*Q.* What islands lie west of Madagascar?

*A.* Comoro.

*Q.* What islands belong to Muscat?

*A.* Pemba, Zanzibar, and Monfia.

*Q.* What island belongs to Keshin?

*A.* Socotra.

---

## OCEANICA.

OCEANICA is considered the fifth great division of the globe. It comprises nearly all the islands lying S. of Asia, together with the greater part of those in the Pacific Ocean, situated between Asia and America. It extends from lat. 40° N. to 50° S.; and long. 95° E. to 108° W.; including 90° of latitude, and 160° of longitude; being 11,000 miles in length, from E. to W., and 6200 in width, from N. to S. Oceanica comprehends more than a fourth part of the entire surface of the globe. Its land surface is estimated at 4,500,000 sq. ms. Pop. upwards of 20,000,000. The chief divisions of Oceanica are Malaysia, Australasia, and Polynesia.

---

## MALAYSIA.

*Page 331.—Lesson 213.—Map No. 28.*

MALAYSIA, or the East Indian Archipelago, is the N. W. division of Oceanica. It comprises the islands lying immediately S. and S. E. of Asia, the principal of which are the Sunda Isles, or Sumatra, Java, and Borneo,



the Celebes, the Moluccas or Spice Islands, and the Philippines, besides other smaller groups and islands. Area estimated at 730,000 sq. ms. Pop. almost 19,000,000.

Q. What great circle passes through the middle of Mal.

A. Equator.

Q. In what Zone is Malaysia?

A. Torrid.

## ISLANDS.

Q. How long is Sumatra?

A. 1000 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Java?

A. 600 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Celebes?

A. 700 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Luzon?

A. 460 ms. (M. A.)

Q. Mindanao?

A. 340 ms. (M. A.)

Q. How long and wide is Borneo?

A. 800 ms. long, 700 wide. (M. A.)

Q. What is the population of Sumatra?

A. 4,000,000. (M. A.)

Q. Java?

A. 7,000,000. (M. A.)

Q. Borneo?

A. 3,000,000. (M. A.)

Q. Celebes?

A. 1,000,000. (M. A.)

Q. Philippine Islands?

A. 2,500,000. (M. A.)

## POPULATION OF TOWNS, &amp;c.

Q. Manilla?

A. 180,000. (M. A.)

Q. Batavia?

A. 60,000. (M. A.)

Q. Samarang?

A. 20,000. (M. A.)

Q. Acheen?

A. 30,000. (M. A.)

Q. Palambang?

A. 20,000. (M. A.)

## STRAITS.

Q. What strait separates Sumatra from Malacca?

A. Malacca.

Q. Sumatra from Java?

A. Straits of Sunda.

- Q. Borneo from Celebes ?  
 A. Macassar.  
 Q. How wide are the straits of Sunda ?  
 A. 30 ms. (M. A.)
- 

## AUSTRALASIA.

*Page 334.—Lesson 214.—Map No. 28.*

AUSTRALASIA is the S. W. division of Oceanica. It contains about three-fourths of its land surface, and lies wholly S. of the equator. It includes Australia, or New Holland, Van Diemen's Land, or Tasmania, New Zealand, New Guinea, New Britain, New Ireland, Solomon's Archipelago, New Hebrides, New Caledonia, besides others of less importance. Area estimated at 3,500,000 sq. ms. Pop. 1,335,000. About a fifth part of the inhabitants of Australasia are of European origin.

- Q. What great circle forms the north boundary of Australasia ?  
 A. Equator.  
 Q. What tropic crosses Australasia ?  
 A. Tropic of Capricorn ?  
 Q. In what zones is Australasia ?  
 A. Torrid, and South Temperate.  
 Q. How long and wide are Australia and V. Diemen's Land ?  
 A. Australia is 2600 ms. long, and 1900 wide ; Van Diemen's Land, 200 ms. long, and 150 wide. (M. A.)

Australia, now often called the Australian Continent, and formerly known as New Holland, is the largest island in the world. It extends from lat.  $11^{\circ}$  to  $39^{\circ}$  S., and from long.  $113^{\circ}$  to  $153^{\circ}$  E.; being twenty-five times larger than the British Islands ; and but little inferior in area to the whole of Europe. Of a large portion of this great region we are acquainted only with the coasts. In the S. W. and S. E. parts of the Island the British Australian settlements are established ; but a small portion of the country, however, is actually occupied by the colonists.

Q. How long are New Guinea and the two largest islands of New Zealand ?

A. New Guinea is 1200 ms. long ; Tavai Poenammoo, 500 ; Eahei Nomauwe, 450. (M. A.)

Q. What strait separates Australia and New Guinea ?

A. Torres'.

Q. Australia and Van Diemen's Land ?

A. Bass'.

Q. How wide are they ?

A. Torres' Strait is 120 ms. wide ; Bass', 130. (M. A.)

Q. What island is inhabited by convicts from N. South Wales ?

A. Norfolk.

Q. What is the population of the Botany Bay Colony ?

A. 120,000. (M. A.)

- Q. Van Diemen's Land ?  
 A. 50,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. South Australia ?  
 A. 16,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. New Hebrides ?  
 A. 200,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. New Caledonia ?  
 A. 50,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Swan River Colony ?  
 A. 4000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Sydney ?  
 A. 30,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Hobart Town ?  
 A. 13,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. How far is it from Hobart Town to London ?  
 A. 13,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. To New York ?  
 A. 13,600. (M. A.)  
 Q. Name the New Zealand Isles ?  
 A. New Ulster, New Munster, and New Leinster.

---

## POLYNESIA.

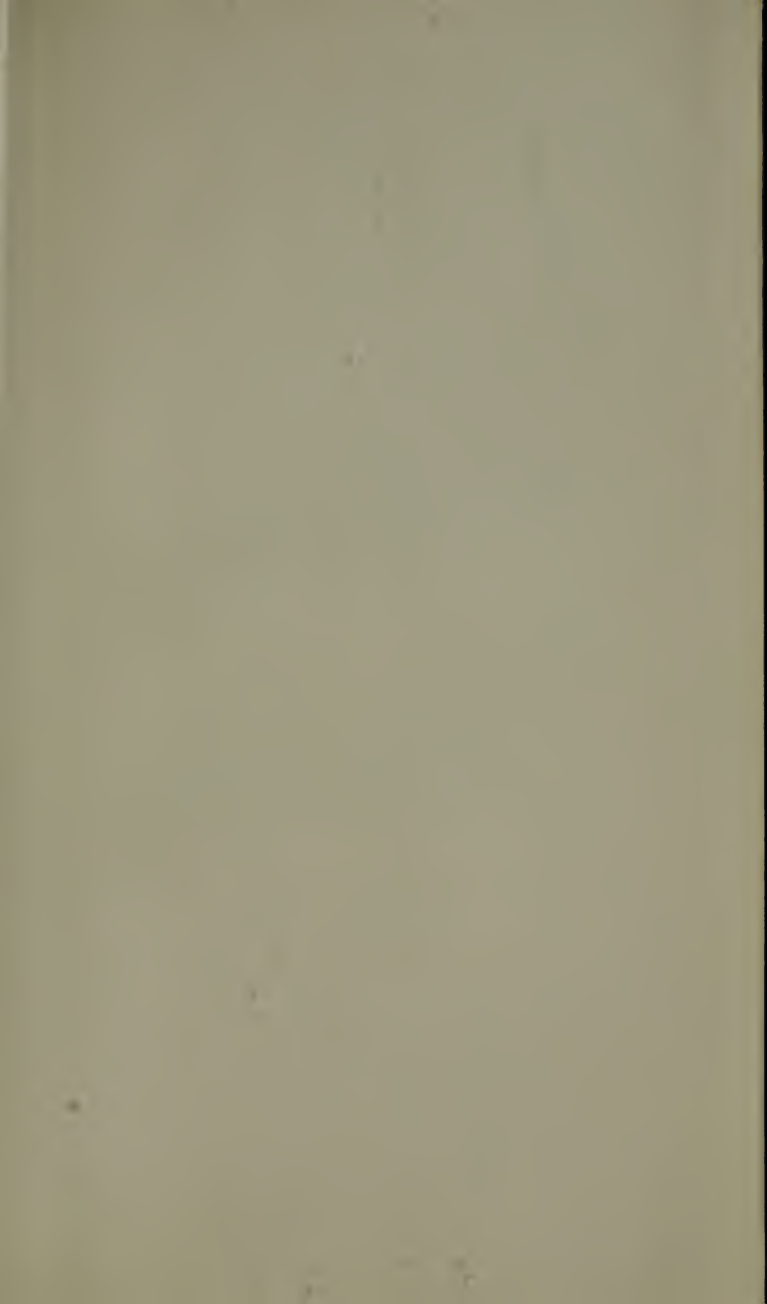
*Page 336.—Lesson 215.—Map No. 28.*

POLYNESIA, "*many islands*," is the term used to designate that division of Oceanica which extends nearest to America. This region lies on both sides of the equator, and comprises a vast number of groups and single islands. It is the largest section of Oceanica, and comprises almost two-thirds of its area, but consists mostly of water; in actual land surface and population it is greatly inferior to either of the other divisions. The area of all the islands of Polynesia is estimated at 150,000 sq. ms. Pop. 640,000.

- Q. What great circles pass through Polynesia ?  
 A. Tropic of Cancer, Equator, and Tropic of Capricorn.  
 Q. In what zones is Polynesia ?  
 A. North Temperate, Torrid, and South Temperate.  
 Q. What is the population of the Sandwich Islands ?  
 A. 150,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Washington Islands ?  
 A. 8000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Marquesas Islands ?  
 A. 7000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Society and Georgian Islands ?  
 A. 20,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Paumotu Islands ?  
 A. 4000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Cook's Islands ?  
 A. 18,000. (M. A.)

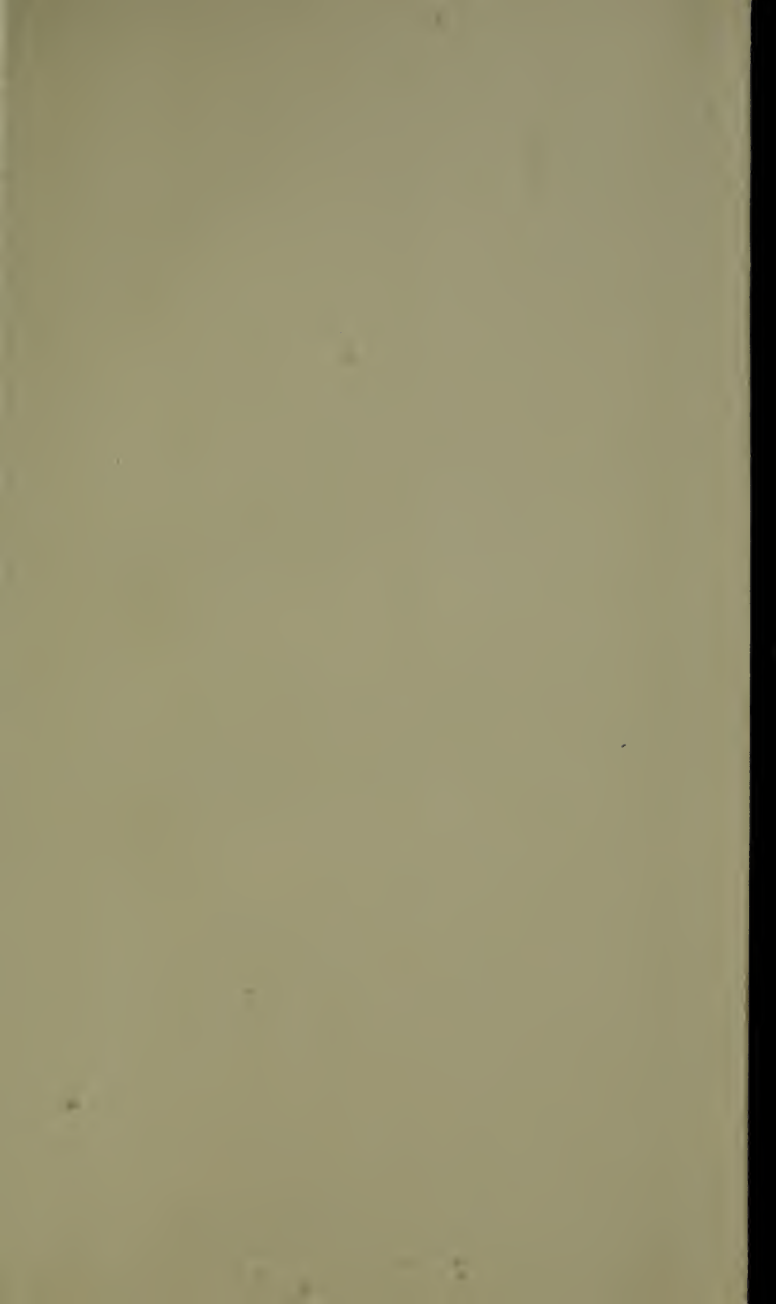
- Q. Austral Islands ?  
 A. 4000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Navigator's Islands ?  
 A. 160,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Vavou ?  
 A. 4000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Habaii Islands ?  
 A. 4000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Tonga Islands ?  
 A. 10,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Fejee Islands ?  
 A. 100,000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Gambier Islands ?  
 A. 1000. (M. A.)  
 Q. Pitcairn's Island ?  
 A. 100. (M. A.)  
 Q. Easter Island ?  
 A. 1200. (M. A.)  
 Q. How far is it from the Sandwich Islands to London ?  
 A. 15,000 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. To New York ?  
 A. 15,600 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. To the coast of Mexico ?  
 A. 3200 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. To the Columbia River ?  
 A. 2500 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. To China ?  
 A. 600 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. From the Marquesas to the coast of Peru ?  
 A. 4100 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. What islands have been converted to the Christian religion ?  
 A. Habaii Is., Vavou, Cook's or Hervey's Is., Society Is., Georgian Is., Austral Is., Palliser's Is., Pitcairn's Is., and Sandwich Is. (M. A.)  
 Q. Which have been partially converted ?  
 A. Navigator's Is., Tonga Is., Paumotu or Pearl Is., and Tongataboo Is. (M. A.)  
 Q. How many miles does the Pacific extend from east to west ?  
 A. 11,000 ms. (M. A.)  
 Q. From north to south ?  
 A. 7000 ms. (M. A.)

THE END.

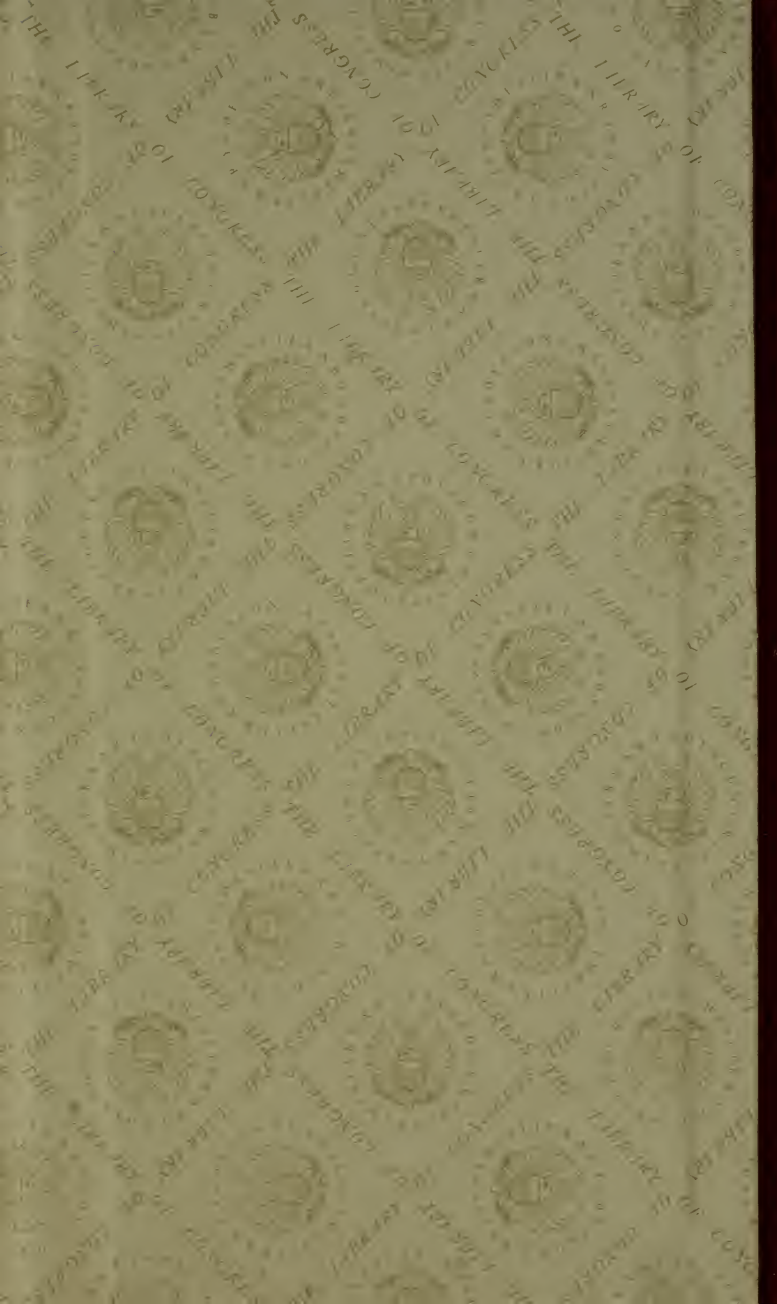












LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 021 650 964 A